



CHYRURGERIE.

—
P. LOWE.



1612







VI 4

62809/B

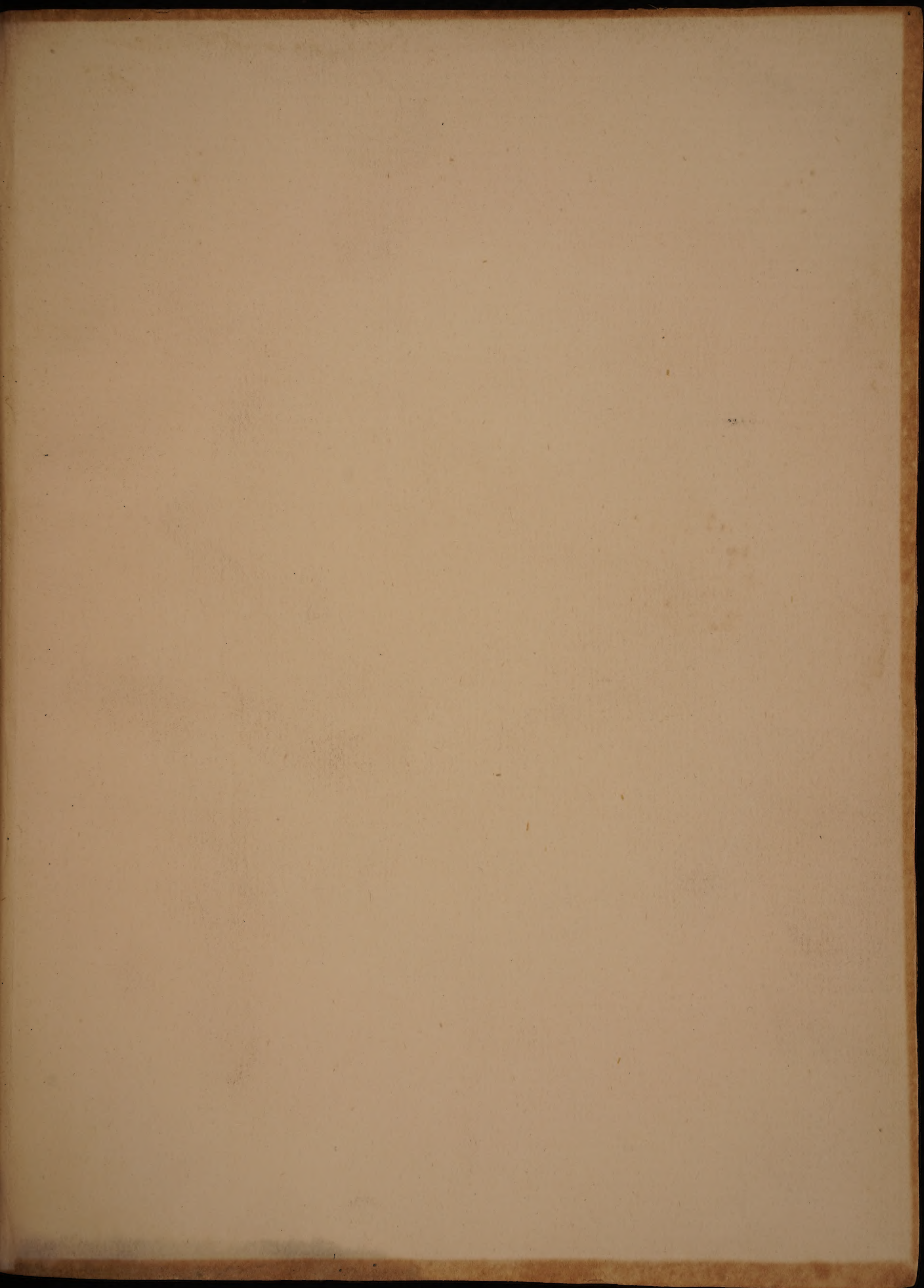
MEDICAL SOCIETY
OF LONDON

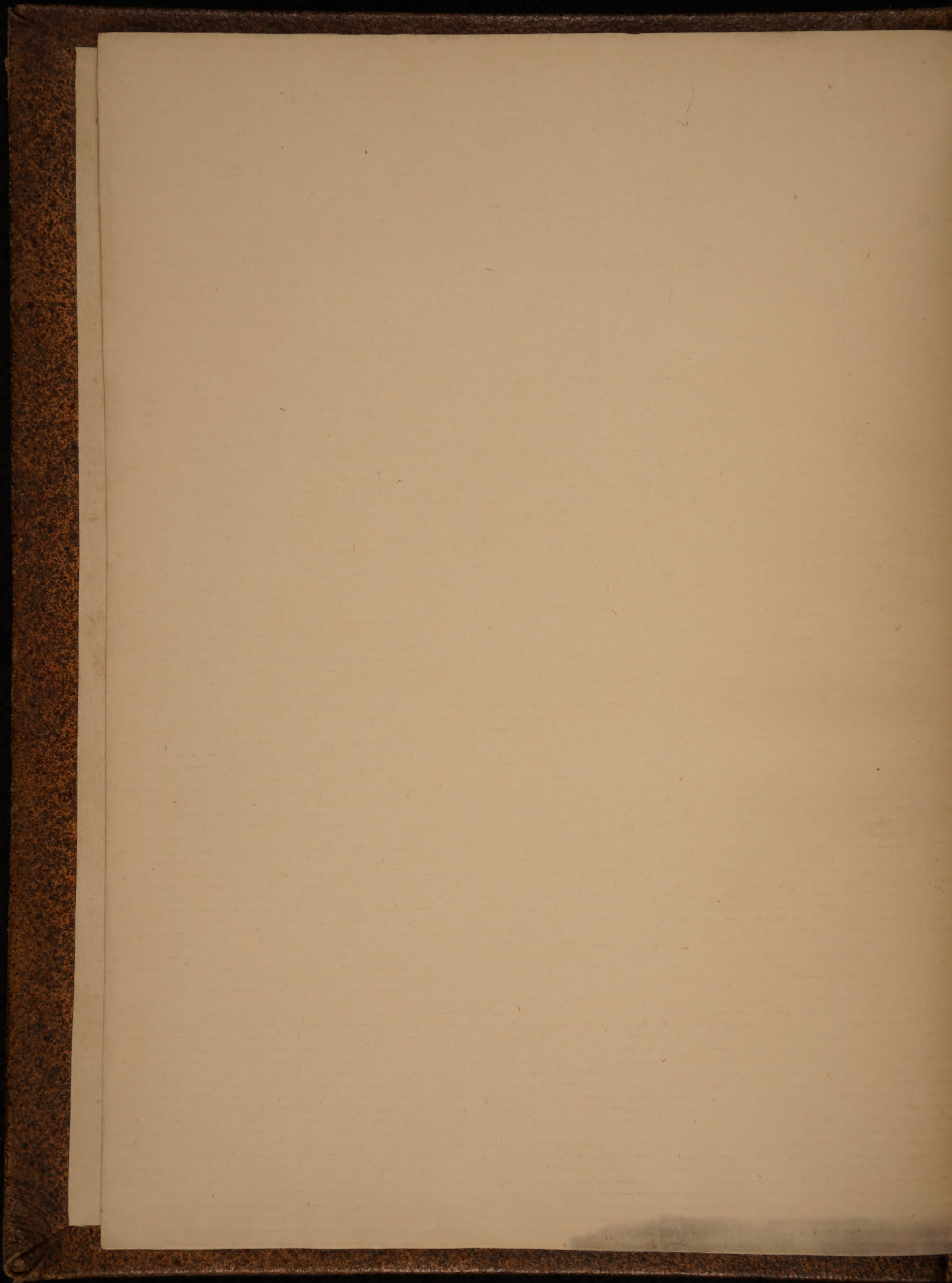


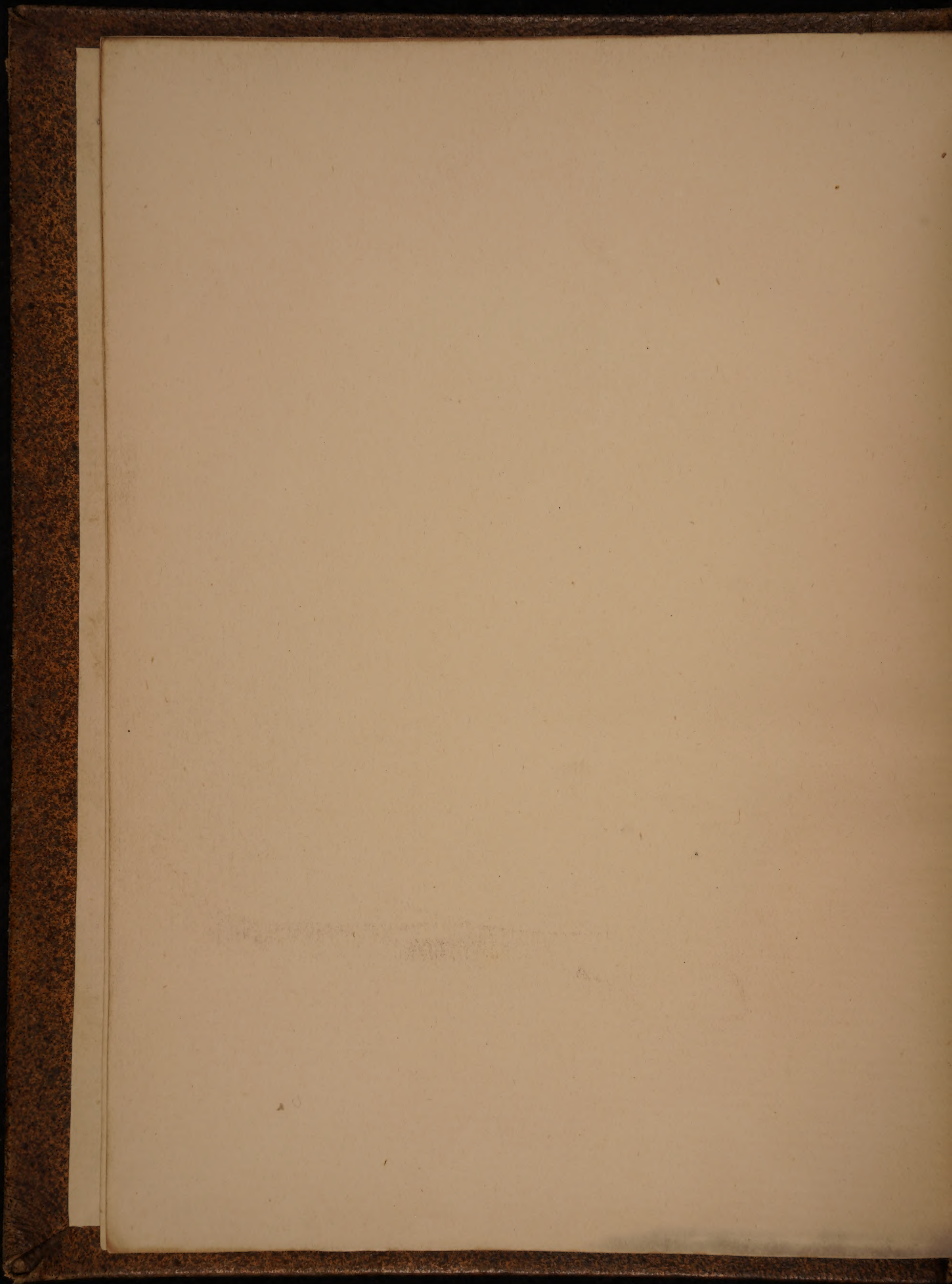
ACCESSION NUMBER

PRESS MARK

LOWE, Peter







March 1st 1866

Journal of J. H. K. By
J. H. K.

St. Louis

Left for the ... 6 ...

... ..

... ..

VI 3

A
DISCOVRSE
OF THE WHOLE ART
OF
CHYRVGERIE.

Wherein is exactly set downe the
Definition, Causes, Accidents, Prognosti-
cations, and Cures of all sorts of Diseases, both in
generall and particular, which at any time hereto-
fore haue been practized by any Chirurgeon : Accor-
ding to the opinion of all the ancient professors
of that Science.

*Which is not onely profitable for Chyrurgions ; but
also for all sorts of people : both for preventing of
sicknesse ; and recouerie of health.*

Compiled by PETER LOWE Scottishman, Doctor in the
facultie of Chirurgerie at Paris : and ordinary Chyrurgeon
to the French King and Navarre.

*Wherunto is added the rule of making Remedies which Chirur-
gions doe commonly vse : with the Presages
of Diuine Hyppocrates.*

The second Edition ; corrected, and much augmented,
and enlarged by the Author.

AT LONDON,
Printed by Thomas Purfoot.
An. Dom. 1612.





TO

The vertuous, Right Honourable,
and most worthy of all honors, & good titles, James
Hamilton Earle of Abircorne, Lord Paslay Kilpatrick,
Monkcastle &c. Knight of Mungton, Sheriffe heretable
of Linlithgowshire, one of his Maiesties most Honou-
rable Prinie Counsaile : Your honours dutifull louing
seruitour wisheth a long and happy life,
with increase of Honour, and
Vertue.



Y VERY GOOD

Lord, the vniuersall appro-
bation of the best practi-
sed in my professiō abroad,
of a few of my trauellis,
hath embolned me to re-
view them more curious-
ly, & renew them in more
comely fashion, detracting
what seemeth superfluous,

and supplying some defects. In which labour I haue ex-
perimented the vndoubted truth of the vulgar saying,
that our last workes smell of greatest perfection,
proceeding from riper judgement. The most suffici-
ent in all ages, *prouocarunt a prioribus ad posteriora cogi-
tata : Deus & natura vt nihil frustra sit, nec precipi-
tante* : as God in the production of the great world, v-
seth successiue creation, substituting the most cōsumate
workes to the antecedent ; Man the abridged Image of
the Diuinitie, the Crowne and end of all : but so, that
his matter precedeth his forme, *argillaceo ergastulo spira-*

The Epistle

culam vite insufflatum : so nature in the fabrication of the *Microcosme* of the *Embryon*, which time formeth *omnibus numeris absolutum hominem*. Thus fareth it with the Imitators of so accomplished Architypes; in whose number I enrowle my selfe, hauing already published the first fruites of my studies of the whole Art of Chirurgerie, in Theorick and practick, with the curation of a great many other diseases not yet practised by any Chirurgion : but yet as a matter somewhat endigest which now I recall and strue to perfect in a more methodicall order. All which I embolden my selfe to shroud vnder your honourable shield and protection, in regard of your Honours manifold curtesies and liberalities extended to all Schollers and strangers, whercof I haue good experience in infinite benefits bestowed by your Honour, for the which do I thinke my selfe principally bound to doe you all seruice. The which I being now willing to performe, as also tending the comoditie and benefite of my natie country, as likewise to exonerate my selfe of that burden which euery man is bound to vndertake for the common wealth. But if my Industrie could haue produced better effects, it would reioyce to passe vnder the protection of so honourable a Patron. May it then please your Lordshippe, (euen as *Minerua* harboureth her Owle vnder the target, *Citherea* the deformed *Cyclops* in her louely bosome, and *Apollo* the night rauen vnder the heauenly lute) to accept in good part, the painefull trauels of your humble seruant, as a manifestation of my vnfeined seruice, and particular dutie to your Honour : which I humbly offer to you as a pledge of my zeale and good will toward you, your Honourable and
matchles

Dedicatorie.

matchles vertues, which are sprung partly from your noble Parents, but more plentifully enriched by your iuincible mind, and peereles endeauors, whereby yee manifest to the world the true *Idea* of perfect nobilitie, Leauing to your posteritie a memorable remembrāce of your neuer-dying Fame. If your L. will vouchsafe to patronize my trauels, farre vnworthy so honourable a Patron, I shalbe safely protected from the malignitie of Calumniators, who pick out detractions of the perfectest workes; as the *Cantharides* poyson of the most fragrant flowers: but my labours want not your reward, if it win your L. goodwill: nor my mind his desire, if your L. vouchsafe to fauour. And thus beseeching God the giuer of all true honour, with wisdom to encrease both these blessings in you, with as many happy yeeres, as vertues, and whatsoeuer good thing else: commending my labours with my selfe to your L. honourable protection and good liking, as one that daylie entermit-teth not to wish the aduancement of your Honourable estate. So I humbly take my leaue at my owne house in *Glasgow*, the 20. day of December in the yeere of our Lord God. 1612.

Your Honours most dutifull

seruitour to command.

PETER LOVVE.



To the friendlie Reader.

IT is commonly sayd, as it is of truth (good friend) that Idlenes is the mother of all vices, which doth not onely engender them, but also nourisheth and entertaineth the same: for avoyding whereof, as also because thou hast had my first labours agreeable, I have taken courage to travell further for thy profit: for my greatest contentment is to aduance thy study, and to instruct thee in the whole course of Chirurgerie, with the manner to cure the most part of all diseases vsually practised by Chirurgians, as well by ancient as late writers, of diuers & sundry practises, & hidden secrets, not practised heretofore by any Chirurgian, as you shall clearely perceiue in this worke. Three things do I not publish, as Plato his common wealth, Cicero his Oratorie, and Sir Thomas More his Eutopia: Leauing to the world a wished perfection not practised. But I impart to you my labours, hidde secrets, and experiments by me practised, and dayly put in vse, to the great comfort, ease, and delight of you, and such as haue had occasion to vse my helpe in France, Flaunders, and elsewhere, the space of 22. yeeres: thereafter being Chirurgian maior to the Spanish Regiments at Paris, 2. yeeres: next following the French King my Master in the warres 6. yeeres, where I tooke commoditie to practise all points and operations of Chirurgerie. Upon which occasion I endeauoured my selfe to collect my practises at vacant houres, into this Booke, according to the opinion of the ancient & learned practitioners in Physick and Chirurgerie, in such plaine termes as I could, for the vse of the common sort: which now I doe offer to thee newly corrected and enlarged for thy greater comfort. Seeing then I doe not entreat of any vaine fable, but of such earnest and serious matter as toucheth the profit of all men in generall, and the benefit and the commoditie of euerie

To the Reader.

euery one in particular : so I hope the readers hereof will vouchsafe to attribute and graunt such diligence and willing eare, mind, and attention hereunto, as yee are accustomed in these cases which yee account most waightie, graue, and necessarie, and which yee are most desirous to know, learn, and vnderstand; herein thou mayest reape the frutes of my trauels and studies, and by thy friendlie accepting of my labours, or at least my good will, thou shalt gaine to thy selfe fruition and commoditie of such other things as I shall enforce my selfe in short time to entreat of, profitable for all men, as you shall perceine hereafter, specially in the treatise of the helpe of Women in their Infantment, with the curation of such diseases as happen to maydens, and married women, with the treatise called the Poore mans guide, which are workes esteemed by the learned: who haue seene them most necessarie for the common-wealth. Some men perhaps more respecting their owne priuate gaine, than publique profit, will thinke that I should haue concealed the misteries of this art, as the Egyptians, who were the first inuentors of it, did write in letters Hieroglyphiques, all their remedies. But I rather follow the Græcians, who vse once euerie yeere to write in the temple of Æsculapius, that was dressed in Epidauro in the presence of all the people, all the sicknes they had cured, together with their seuerall remedies: for as the philosopher Aristotle sayth, bonum quò communiùs, eò præstantiùs: also beeing moued by the counsell of Plato, who writ diuinely: and Cicero in the first of his offices saying, we are not borne for our selues, nor should haue regard to our owne particulars, but also to the commoditie of our parents, friends, and generally to the commonwealth of that Country where we tooke our birth. The which was also obserued amongst the old Romanes, when their estate most flourished: For they did account him among the number of the infortunates, that during his life did not manifest him selfe in some one publique benefit or other, his affections and thankfull heart to the place wherein he was first bred. Neuertheles there will be some enuious, malicious, and ignorant persons, who onely are borne to find fault, before they will or can vnderstand, not ceasing to barke at me, and my trauels, yet neither haue power to bite, nor doe better. Such I may iustlie compare

to

To the Reader.

to Aristarchus, or Antiphilos, those peereles pick-thanks, whose filthy hearts being so inflamed with malice, will find fault. To whome I will answere that of Erasmus Roterodamus, Vt ignaui canes omnibus ignotis allatrant; ita Barbari quicquid non intelligunt, carpunt ac damnant. Onely vppon this hope I rest, that as in good will and love I haue done this for the advancement of all men, specially young Chirurgions, so the well disposed and all such friends, who will weigh error in ballance of good will, will censure in the best sort, and where the defects are, they will in friendly and charitable manner correct, and amend the same. To such doe I addresse this worke: whome I hope will consider, that in man no perfection can be found, but onely belongeth to God. The Ignorants, and such as find fault, I would desire them to put to their hands and doe better: wishing euerie man as much profit, and benefit in reading hereof, as my willing attempt hath intended them. And so I end, bidding thee most hartely farewell, from my house in Glalgow, the 20. day of December in the yeere of our Lord God. 1612.

PETER LOVVE.

To



TO

My very **W**orshipfull, learned, and
well experimented good friends, Gilbert Primrose
Sergeant Chirurgian to the Kings Maiestie; IAMES
HARVIE cheife Chirurgian to the Queenes Maiestie; those of the
Worshipfull companie of Chirurgians in London, and E-
denborough, and all such well experimented men in this
Kingdome who are licenced to professe the Diuine art
of Chirurgerie: Peter Lowe wisheth all
happines of Life.



LL men of vertue, and well af-
fectioned to the Common-welch
(Worshipfull Brethren) ought
without all dissimulation to en-
deauour themselves by all means
possible, to instruct such as erre
and doe ignorantly in that which
is profitable to the Common-
wealth: as also to make such
know that which is hurtfull and

vnprofitable, to the effect, the simple or common sort, may
choose that which is commodious and profitable, and reiect
that which is hurtfull: For these, and diuers other good consi-
derations, ought all men (chiefely yee who haue authoritie,
Learning, and Knowledge in the Art) to stop such as worke
vnskillfully: as I doubt not, to the grieve of all honest men,
this art is seene dayly abused by a number of ignorant malici-
ous people, who passe away (but tryall, or punishment) like
as cosoners, quack-saluers, charlittans, witches, Charmers, & di-
uers other sorts of abusers; whose names I will for the present
omit, in hope they will desist, their owne consciences accusing
them;

them. But alas I doubt not, but the most part of them lacke both soule, conscience, and feare of God, are of more vnhappy life, ignorant, and voyd of all skill, giuing euer to the diseased *quid pro quo*, promising maruails, and to cure all things in short space : which I graunt is a sure *Maxime*, as I could giue ouer many examples to the destruction of many, and grieft of those to whome they appertaine. Of those abusers, there are eight or nine diuers sorts : For some runne from one towne to another, promising to heale all things by vomitarics, and laxates, chiefly with antimonie, præcipitatum, which is powder of Quicksiluer, Laureola, Elebour, Colocynth, *Æsula*, Catapus, and diuers other poysonayble medicaments, full of venom vncorrected, without eyther waight or measure : those are the death of infinite numbers, who for the most part end their daies by cruel vomiting, insatiable going to the stoole, with syncops and intolerable dolour of the stomacke and intestines; of those, some die the first or second day; the most robust, the seuenth or eight day at the farthest. Another sort of those deceiuers alleage to haue their knowledge by reading some other vulgar Bookes, those fellowes promise rare things, and are garnished with some words that are obscure, and not common, nor well can be vnderstood to themselves, or by their Auditor : But to make it the more plausible they euer thrust in those obscure words, in any purpose, and to make the matter to haue more faith, they enterlace Scripture, with sighs, and sobs, and diuers other circumstances. The third takes vpon him to heale all things by Charmes, and praying to Saints of the like name that the sicknes is of, alleaging the diseases to be some Saints euill, as for example : such as become paralitick through a deflux of humors on the nerues, they terme it to be a blast of euill wind, and by praying to S. *Blas*, it shall heale : such as are hydropick, doe pray to S. *Hidrop* : such as loose their sight, pray to S. *Cleere*, those who heare euill or hath disease in their eares, pray to S. *Owyn* : such as hath the gut called *Chiragra*, or any other disease in the hands, pray to Saint. *Main*, with diuers other which were long to repeat. Those
deceitfull

deceitfull ignorant people, consider not that all those diseases were long before any of those Saints. The fourth sort alleage to haue the curation of all diseases from their Parents, as heritage, and those be impudent deceauers. The fift sort vaunts to be skilfull in such like diseases, by experience vpon themselves, alleadging them to be most skilfull in the cure of the french Poxe, because he was cured himselfe sundry times of the same disease. The sixt takes vpon him to cure all things by poysonable Vomitories onely, chiefly antimony, by the which those deceauers peruersts all orders diuine and humane, in townes, and nations, as euer hath been obserued in Phisick, that hath many euils happening, expressely condemned by *Hippocrates* and diuers other of the learned. The seuenth sort of those ignorants, hauing some vlcers in their legs or armes a certaine space, takes vpon him to heale all sores, alleadging by some reuelation, to haue an vnguent, called *unguentum ad omnes plagas* : this fellow with the rest doth cure all their abuses & mischises, with a truce or stone. The eight sort who hauing almost drunken out one of his eies, and vseth some few remedies for the same, professeth himselfe to be a fine Eynest. The nynt sort who hath been cut of the stone, or rupture, or scene beasts cutte, takes vpon him to be most excellent in the rupture, or stone. All those with diuers others take on them to haue done many cures, yet they forget the infinite murthred by them. Such mischies was neuer suffered among the infidels, much lesse should be amongst Christians, to the great dishonor of god and his lawes. I read at Rome in the time of *Caro*, that ignorants were banished that common-wealth, the Learned onely & expert retained for the preservation of the publique weale, with power to such, to punish all abusers who durst bee so bold to transgresse the commaundements, constitutions, statutes and ordinances diuine and humane. I might recite heere many authorities both of the ancient and new writers, as well of Ethnicks as Christians, whereof sufficient witnesses remaine of the great paines they haue taken in keeping the Canons of this art, and punishing of Impostors, in such sort, that they were

esteemed as gods. Seeing those Ethnicks haue been so curious in this matter, how justly may we that take the name of Christians be euill thought of, for suffering of such abusers in our Art : yet I hope all honett men, especially you, who are towards his Maiestie, will be earnest in purchasing of priuileges and lawes, for restraining of all Ignorant abusers in this Kingdome, Like as is graunted to men of our Art, in other ciuill Countries, to the greataid and comfort of all Kings of those parts. It pleased his Sacred Maiestie to heare my complaint about some fowerteene yeeres agoe, vpon certaine abusers of our Art, of diuers sorts and ranks of people, whereof we haue good store, and all things fayling, vnthrifts, and Idle people doe commonly meddle themselves with our Art, who ordinarily doe passe without either tryall or punishment. The matter beeing considered, and the abuse waighed by his Maiestie and Honourable councell, thought not to bee tolerated, for the which I got a priuiledge vnder his highnes priuie seale, to try and examine all men vpon the Art of Chirurgerie, to discharge, & allow in the West parts of Scotland, who were worthy, or vnworthy, to professe the same. The which I obserued as I might, although there be men of greater authoritie & sufficiencie to punish, and correct such, if they would. But such is the iniquitie of time, that abusers are commonly ouerseene by such as ought to punish them : in such sort that one blind guides another, and most commonlie fall both into the ditch. In the meane time are permitted to vse charmes, lyes, execrable oaths, mortiferous poyson, fallacious and vncertaine experiments, whereby they destroy both friend and foe, euer detracting the true professors of the Art. Now worshipfull Brethren, in respect of those enormities with diuers moe, which were long to repeat, I doubt not but all yee who are learned and true professors, hauing accessse, and credit with his Maiestie, will seeke and obtaine such priuiledges, and lawes, as well to correct and punish abusers, as also to withstand the friuolous or fantastical opinions of such as vse them, and neither for request nor lucre, to admit any such ignorant abusers to professe

esse our Art, but say with the Learned Philosopher, *Plato*, *Socrates*, and the world are our friends, but the veritie above all. Which veritie maketh the flourishing of all Cōmon wealths, arts & sciences. The which if you endeavour your selfe to prosecute, no doubt but that God of veritie who doth recompence each one according to his merits, as also doth punish transgressors, shall reward you accordingly. The which God I beseech to blesse and prosper each one of you in your calling, with good successe in your Cures, happy end in this world, and life eternall heereafter. From my house in *Glasgow*, the 20. day of *December* in the yeere of our Lord God, 1612.

Your loving friend

Peter Lowe.

A 3

G. Ba-



G. Baker one of his Maiesties

chiefe Chnurgians in

Ordinarie.

WH O can deny, but he deserues great fame
that profit yeelds, t' all Nations where he goes?
His Country may reioyce to heare his name,
that in strange Lands, such books of knowledge shows.
His studie is how to make good Surgeons knowne,
rebukes the bad, and honours men of skill:
Then let him reape the corne which he hath sowne,
his haruest seekes no more but worlds good will.
The Schooles hath plac't him in a Doctors state,
The grauest heere his Learning doth commend,
The Learned sees his study hath been great,
Whereby he brings great things to perfect end.
A wonder is, how world bare men rewards
For ryding horse, or dressing meate you see,
And those that saue mens liues they least regard,
for they get neither stipend, gift, nor fee.
Blind is that age that doth the best despise,
And helps the worst, to worship, wealth, and grace.
A common thing, Vice lets not Vertue rise,
But holdes it downe, that ought have highest place.
Yet none can rob the learned of their right,
No more then take sweet smell from flower in field.
Then doctor *Lowe* thy Lampe doth giue such light,
That euerie one to vertue fame doth yeeld,
Passe on with prayse through euerie soyle and coast,
Where *Lowe* is knowne he shalbe honoured most.

G.B.

John

That awards more of Price

In praise of the Authour.

John Norden Phisitian in praise
of the Authour.

A Pollo seene in Simples, for his Art
In curing men, a God was nam'd to be:
Knowing all secrets in each hidden part
That vertue yeildeth to each hearbs degree.
And by his knowledge of hearbes simplicitie.
The Heathen tooke him to be a Dietie.

For when as Nature wounded, was oppress'd,
Not able to sustaine the grieve she bare:
The body dying, then for want of rest,
Simples recur'd, such their vertue are:
That who so seekes, and knowes each simple found,
Their Nature soone shall cure any wound.

See Chiron heere, *Apollos* Puple, hee
Declar's the secrets of his Matters skill:
He seekes no meede, nor looks for any fee,
Then giue him honour for his meer good-will:
That being Stranger borne, yet loues vs so,
To leaue his Art with vs to cure our woe.

In praise of the Author, Lenuoy.

Low is thy name, high growes thy fame
Amongst all English men,
Thy Booke shall saue my verse from blame,
When world well weighes thy pen,
If *Zoylus* or *Momus* brood,
Doe carp at thee, what then?
Feede thou thy hope with heauenly foode
Amongst wise learned men.

John Norden Phisitian.

In praise of the Author and his worke.

Thomas Churchyard Esquier, in praise of the
Author and his worke.

THe Noblest science vnder sunne,
That most mens liues doe saue,
The art that greatest praise hath won,
Whereby great helpe we haue,
Is Surgerie, for knowledge there,
In highest grace doth shine.
The skill is honoured euerywhere,
For specially griefes diuine.
When wrath and rage makes quarrels
And men in furie fight, (rise,
In Surgeon such great knowledge lies,
Greenewounds are healed streight.
Flesh cut, blood lost, and euery vaine,
And sinnewes stronke away,
He can by art restore againe:
And comfort their decay.
The mangled bones are set and knit,
In their owne proper place,
And euery Limme in order fit,
Comes to their force and grace.
By surgeons mean who quickly sees,
The dangers as they are:
And mends the mischiefes by degrees,
With knowledge and great care.
Hath instruments to search each ioynt,
Each skul or brused bone.
And can with balmes and oyles anoynt
The nerues and vaines each one.
Knowes all the nature, and each kinde
Of hearbes, of flouers, and seedes,
And can the secret vertue find
Of blossomes, leaues, and seedes.
Heales cankers, vicers, and old sores,
Hath precious powders small
To eate proud flesh, and rotten kores.
And drie vp humor all.
What grieve of body can be nam'd,
But he can helpe in haste.
Yeathough the liuer be inflam'd:
Or lights and lungs doe wast.
In time and temper he can bring,
The lack of each lame part,
As though in hand he had a string,
To leade mans life by art.
Halfegads, good Surgeons may be cald,
Much more then men they be,
And ought like Doctors be enstald:
In seats of high degree.
What doth preserve the liues of men,
May claime due honor right,
And should be prayd by tong and pen,
As farre as day giues light,
Long studie giues a glorious crowne,
A garland deckt with flouers,
Vnder whose shade of rare renowne,
The Muses makes their bowers:
To set and see whose gifts excell,
In wit and cunning skill.
Who best doth worke, who doth not well,
And who bears most good will.
To vertue, learning, and good mind,
The muses fauour those,
And giues them grace of their owne
Great secrets to disclose, (kind,
Remues

In praise of the Author and his worke.

Reuines their wits, make sharp their
To iudge, discerne, and know (sence,
Whose tong is typt with eloquence,
And whose fine penne do flow,
And who the liberall art detaines,
And more all vertue haue,
In whose a bidded skill remaines:
And cunning knowledge braue,
It seemes a stranger here of late,
Hath from the Gods diuine,
Got credit, honour, and estate,
To please the Muses Nine.
The Surgeons of our King likewise,
Doth praise him for his skill,
His printed bookes may well suffice,
To win the worlds good will.
His merites far surmounts the loue,
I beare to men of worth,
My pen doth but affection moue,
His deedes doe set him forth.

His knowledge makes blind bonglers
Their boldnes brings him fame, (blush,
Vaine Valentine not worth a rush,
Where Low, but shewes his name.
You paullry, senceles, saucie lackes:
That patch up wounds in post,
Trudge hence, crusse up your pedlers
He cares not for your boast, (packs,
His face and brow from blot is cleere.
The Sages of our soyle,
Bids Doctor Low, still welcome here,
To your great shame and foyle.
Who well deserues, is honoured much,
As tryall dayly shewes,
Who hath good name, is wise and rich,
And loued where he goes.
Since of this Doctor and his Art,
Those vertues I rehearse,
I him in every poynt and part,
Salute with English verse.

Qd. Thomas Churchyard Esquier.

In laudem Authoris.

In Commendation of M. Peter Lowe, By
Anagramme Let Power.

My simple Muse too simple to recite,
a Chorus of thy Chyrurgion prayse,
Yet from my willing mind accept this myte
Fraught with affection and no frivoul phrase.
Thy Booke, the beauty of thy brow bewrays,
This worke, thy worth and neuer-dying will,
Thy true reported discipline displaies
That learned seansen of thy former skill.
Goe on rare Lowe and vse thy talent still,
Grudge not, what speech those spitefull minds expels,
The Fates hath (*Let*) thee (*Power*) for to kill
Those murmuring *Momus*, apt for nothing els.
Now may you end your old Chirurgian strife,
Lowe's *Lauterne* can *Lett Power* to your life.

Ad virum vertute & doctrina
præstantem, *Petrum Lowcum*, Chirur-
giæ Doctorem.

Carmen Iambicum.

Sunt plurimi, quos esse splendidos iuvat,
Alterius & superstites virtutibus
Clarere posteris : Opus laudariæ,
Dignumq; creta scilicet notariæ.
Sic proditur Vappa hominis & mens degener.
Sunt quos priorum inuenta, clarioribus
Ditariæ multum suis, iuvat notis :
Opus mehercule laude dignus sua.
Namq; est boni quocunq; vel invamine
Bene posse : nec non velle posteris bene.

Sed

In laudem Authoris.

*Sed quid meretur ille, propria manus
Non qui addit inuentis, sed invenit prior?
Solum furere, polum ferire vertice,
Nec non haberi vel humanus Deus,
Homo velesse diuus in omne seculum.
Hoc differens solum a Deo viuus, quod is,
Dum illustrat humani tenebras ingenij,
Perdurat idem neutiquam mutabilis:
At hic velut candela, quæ dum illuminat
Nostros ocellos, proprio lumine deperit:
Post reliquum est: habemus hoc quod vidimus.
Tua ergo perge dare, foresq; hanc gloriam:
Nec proprijs vixit, nec obijt commodis.
Quod & fatentur ultro & vsq; prædicant
Qui vel tantum hoc videre opus chirurgicum:
Sic mortuo virtus alet famam tibi.*

I. M. C.

V. Med. Doctor.

*Ad doctissimum virum Petrum Lowen
Chirurgiæ Doctorem.*

*C*landis in angusto præcepta volumine cuncta,
Quæ Cons. Hippocrates, quæq; Galenus habet.
Considet hic viridi lauro redimitus Apollo,
Delphicus illa suo protulit ore Deus
Sed latuit nimium thesaurus tantus: amicis
profer: & in medium progrediatur opus.

M. I. O. Chir. Parisi.

In laudem Authoris.

In librum chirurgicum Petri Loevei chirurgi
Britanno-scoti carmen Encomiasticum.

Lectori.

Accipe phœbeit am nobile munus alumni,
In lucem eximie, qui dedit artis opus.
Nocturna versato manu versato diurna,
Hoc opus eximium Lector amice, præcor.
Nullus adhuc melius, morbos, medicamina, causas,
Et methodum docuit, artis Apollineæ.
Annos ante aliquot quæ Chirurgemata partu,
Fœlici peperit, parturit hæc eadem.
Ac multis auget numeris; genio, ingenio, se
Monstrat Chirurgum, nomine, reque bonum.
Felix Ambrosio quondam Gens Galla Pareo,
Nilque minus nostro Scotica gens Loevo.
Gratia magna suo debetur, lausque labori:
Perpetuum auctorem nam manet inde decus.
Maeste ergo virtute Petre, hæc tua Scripta tulerunt.
Artis Et ingenij clara trophæa tui: (runt.

Zoilo.

Dente Theonino, qui carpere cuncta; vel audes
Vel cupis hic dentem Zoile frange tuum.

Iacobus Haruæus Serenissimæ
Reginæ Chirurgus Primarius

The



The names of the Authors, both Hebrues, Arabians, Greekes, Latines, and French, whose helpe I haue vfed in this worke.

A

A Bdales.
Adamus Lonicerus.
Ætius.
Ærastus.
Albertus Magnus.
Albucasis.
Alexis Pedomontanus.
Alexander Aphrodisiensis.
Alexander Peripateticus.
Alexander Benedictus.
Alphonfus ferreus.
Ambrosius.
Amatus Lucitanus.
Andreas de Bruell.
Andromius de vinsor.
Antillus.
Antonius beneuenius.
Antonius Sebelicus.
Antonius musa.
Anaxagoras.
Andreas furnesius.
Apuleus Platonius.
Archigenes.
Arculens.
Aristoteles.
Arnoldus de villa noua.
Attilus.

Auerroes.
Auicen.
Azaramias.

B

B Accanellus.
Bayrus.
Baptista Montanus.
Baptista porta.
Bartholomeus.
Barta Pallia.
Blemor.
Bodinus.
Brunus.
Bruensueck.

C

C Ato.
Cardanus.
Capivaccius.
Celsus aurelius.
Chelmetius.
Chiron.
Cicero.
Clemens Alexandrinus.
Columbus.
Constantinus Africanus.
Constantinus.

Cornelius

Cornelius Agrippa.
Cornelius Celsus.
Cyreneus.

D

D Emocrates.
Dionisius.
Dioscorides.
Divus.
Dodoneus.

E

E Mpedocles.
Evonimus.

F

F Allopius.
Fernelius.
Fioronantus.
Franciscus rosetus.
Franciscus pedomontan.
Fuchius.
Fumanellus.

G

G Alenus.
Gellius.
Georgius pistoreus.
Georgius Cufnerus
Gordonius.
Gualterius Brant.
Gualterius Riff.

Guydo de Canliato.
Gulielmus de saliceto.
Gulielmus placentinus.

H

H Aly abbas.
Heliogabalus.
Henricus.
Henricus Rantzovius.
Herodotus.
Herophilus.
Hippocrates.
Holerius.
Homerus.
Hurnius.

I

I Acobus divus.
Iacobus dondus.
Iacobus hoterius.
Iesus filius hali.
Iohannis frant.
Iohannis Langius.
Iohannis Lebot.
Iohannes de vice.
Iohannis de Vigo.
Iohannes Separionis.
Iubertus.
Iustinianus.

L

L Angfrancus.
Laurentius.
Leonellus fauentinus.

Magninus

M

M Agnius mediolanensis.
Marcus Antonius.

Marcellus.

Marcus Lepidus.

Macrobius.

Marianus Sauctus.

Matheolus.

Messalinus.

Mesues.

Menodotus.

Mizaldus.

Moses.

N

Nicholaus Alexandrinus.
Nicholaus Abraham.

Nicholaus Leoniceus.

Nicholaus Monardus.

Nicholaus Myrepsus.

Nostradamus.

O

Olphanus ferreus.
Oribasius.

Orisis.

Orphe.

P

PAlmareus
Paracelsus.

Pareus

Parmenides.

paulus ægineta.

Petrus hispanus.

Petrus de argilla.

Petrus franco.

Petrus primandey.

Petrus Tuxiganus.

Petrus angelus agathus.

Philippicus gauilonius.

Plato.

Plantin.

Plinius.

Pithagoras.

Possidonius.

Primander.

Ptoleme.

Q

QVerfitanus.

R

RAsis.

Rogierius.

Robertus gropretius.

Rollandus.

Rondoletius.

Rosa anglicatia.

Sardinus

S

Sardinus.
 Shelandar.
 Scribonius Largus.
 Soranus.
 Stephanus Grumlen.
 Statias.
 Synecius.
 Sylvius.

T

Tangacius.
 Tertullianus
 Thales.
 Thesaurus pauperum.
 Theodoricus.
 Theodorus.
 Theophrastus Paraselsus.

Titus Lilius.
 Trallianus.

V

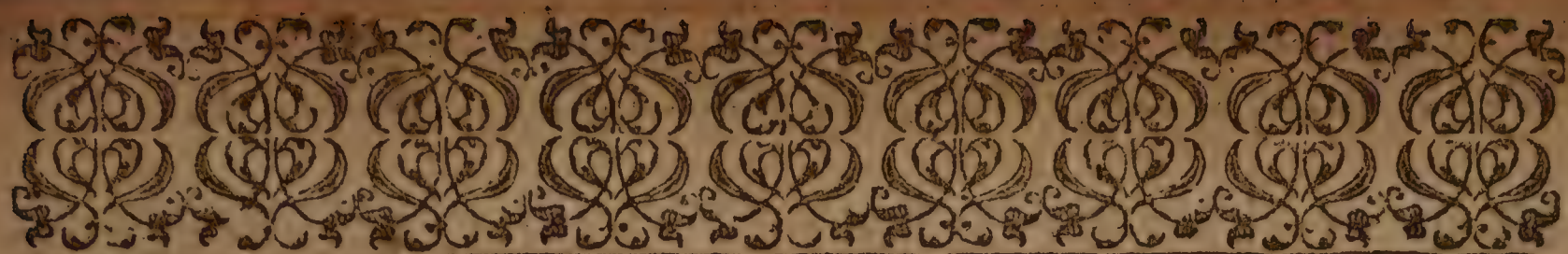
Valerius Maximus.
 Vezatius.
 Viaticus.
 Vickerus.
 Vido Vidio.
 Vlpianus.

Y

Ysidorus.

Z

Zenophanes.



A Discourse of the whole Art of *Chyrurgerie.*

By PETER LOVVE Scottishman.

This Discourse is diuided into tenne Bookes;
the first whereof containeth 14. Chapters;
whose Contents be these.

- Chap. 1. Of the originall, antiquitie, and excellency of Chyrurgerie.
2. Of Chyrurgerie in generall, the operations and instruments
3. Of Naturall things in generall. (thereof.
4. Of the Elements and consideration thereof.
5. Of the Temperaments and complexion of mans body.
6. Of the foure humors, in particular and generall.
7. Of Members, and parts principall of the body.
8. Of Vertues, and faculties, and whereof they proceed.
9. Of Actions, and operations of vertues.
10. Of Spirits, and whereof they proceed.
11. Of Age.
12. Of the entertainment of old age.
13. Of remedies to be vsed by aged people.
14. Of Colour, figure, and kinde.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Originall, Beginning, Antiquitie,
and Excellency of Chyrurgerie.



Considering with my selfe, that all men are
naturally obliged to serue the common
wealth by some honest profession, and that
no man is able to discharge that dutie and
benefit to his native countrie, except hee
learne in his tender age, the Science wher-
in the ornament therof consisteth; after full deliberation I ap-
plied

plyed my selfe to the studie of Chyrurgerie, which is by the
 consent of all learned men, not only a science very profitable
 & necessary to all sorts of people, but also most ancient and ho-
 norable, as manifestly testifieth all the antiquitie: in reading
 wherof we find the invention of Chirurgery ascribed (for the
 excellency therof) to the Gods themselves, to wit, to Escu-
 lapius Son of Appollo, from the which Podalire & Macha-
 on his Sons, learned the same and cured sundry and diuers
 which were deadly hurt at the siege of Troy, as reporteth
 Homer the poet. Clemens Alexandrinus saith, that the first
 operator was Mizram sonne to Ham the Nephew of Noah,
 & after him Apis and Orizis Kings of Egypt. Cornelius Cel-
 sus saith, that it was found and exercised long before any o-
 ther sciences. But passing with silence, Appollo, Esculapi-
 us, Machaon, Podalire and all that sort of gods, as also Hip-
 pocrates, Galen, Pithagoras, Empedocles, Parmenides, Pi-
 mander, Democritus, Chiron, Pæon, Heraclides, Diocles,
 Caristius, Herophilus, Erasistratus, Sanctus Cosmus, and
 Damianus two worthy Arabs, Mesues, Avicenna, Auer-
 roys, Paulus, with infinite others Arabs, Hebrues, Greeks,
 and Latins, and all the ancient Philosophers, together with
 Alexander the great, Iosina the 9. King of Scotland, who
 liued before Christ 161. yeares, Marcus Antonius, and di-
 uers others Emperors, Kings, and Princes which professed
 the same, as is evidently shewed vnto vs by the holy scrip-
 tures and prophane writers, like as by the writtes of the
 learned, who professed the same, that the medicine Chirur-
 gion with the medicaments was inuented and approued by
 God himselfe, for in the 20. chap. of the 2. booke of the kings
 we reade how Esay healed by Gods commandement Ezechi-
 as by laying a figge on his biles and sores: as also in the 6.
 and 10. chap. of Tobias, how the Angell commaunded him
 to slay a fish call Cassidill, and to take the gall thereof to the
 web of the eyes. In the 12. and 13. of Leuiticus God com-
 maunded the Israelites when they entred in Capernaum,
 that if there appeared any signes of leprosie, like as pustules
 of

Medicines
 most ancient
 and honora-
 ble.

The author
 of Chirurge-
 rie.

Illiad. Lib. 12
Gen. 6.

Chirurgerie
 was before al
 other Scien-
 ces.

Iosina king.

Chirurgerie
 inuented by
 God.

2 Kin. 20. 7.

Tob 6 8.

10. 11.

12. 13.

Leuit. 12. 13.

of diuers colours vppon the skinne, that such should bee brought befoze Aaron, and reiected foꝛ lepers, by such signes as is set downe in that chapter. But what, not onely was it inuented by the diuine power, but in like manner expꝛessly commaunded in the 38. chap. of Eccles. and diuers other places, that the professors thereof should bee honoured by all men, foꝛ God created him to the effect that he remaine with thee to assure thee, and them which are with thee, and that thou defraud him not of his wages, foꝛ God created the medicines of the earth, and the wise will not disdain the same: foꝛ hee gaue this science to man, that hee may be glorified in his meruailous woꝛkes, foꝛ hee is the curer of all thinges. Now seeing I haue sufficiently both by the scripture and otherwise pꝛoued the excellency of Chyrurgerie, it is not needfull to compare the same with other arts and sciences, foꝛ if any art be pꝛaised because it was and is professed of noble men, yee may clærely perceiue that the Gods, Emperours, Kings, and Princes haue practised the same. If wee consider the sentence of the diuine Philosopher Plato, that things good are difficile, there is nothing harder then Chyrurgerie, the which will occupie a man all his life tyme, to seeke out the nature of things pertaining thereto. If things be pꝛaised foꝛ their strength and foꝛce, what thing is of moze strength then to restore man to his health, which otherwise was altogether lost: some man may perchaunce obiect to mee and alleage, that many professors of Chyrurgerie, with their charmes, hearbes full of poyson, and false promises destroye many people, who would easily haue recovered their health if they had giuen no credit to such dissemblers. I answer that such deceauers deserue and merite to bee grievously punished, and banished out of all countreyes, as I haue said in my epistle to Chirurgions. I reade foꝛ the restraining of such abusers, that the wise Iuriconsult Vlpian in the 50. and last booke of the Digests expꝛessly defended, y any bailly, gouernour of Prouince, oꝛ Iudge, should chosse, constitute, oꝛ licence any of our profession, but to leaue that to the Doctors & Bai-

Eccles. 13.8

Chirurgions
esteemed by
all men.Iohannes
Nazerane
filius meſue
medi. morb.
partic.God cured
all things.Compa-
rison of Chi-
rurgerie
with other
arts and Sci-
encies.Worthy men
practised
Chirurgerie.The studie
of Chirurgie
asketh long
time.Deceiuers
should be
punished and
banished.Vlpian l. b.
50. digest.Professors
of Chirurge-
rie should be
licenced only.

*Iustin. lib.
de gest. cod.
10. tit. 52.*

Liberties
and exempti-
ons of Chi-
rurgions.

sters of each Citie, to choose the best experimented, to the end the country and citties may be the more safely with their families and friends committed to their charge. Iustinian libro de gestis inhibites any to practise, but such as are lawfully admitted by the maisters of the art. The sayd Iustinian likewise saith, that those of our profession were in such estimation, that their wives and families were maintained in all liberty, and exempted from all publike charges, subsidies, tributes, imposts, watching, warding, riding in hosts, or inquests, and all other such common charges, which lawes are all yet obserued in Fraunce, Italy and diuers other ciuill parts. Would to God it were so in this Isle, so god would be glorified, his highnes subiects well serued, and honest men relieued of great burden; as no doubt the best disposed do so thinke. And so I end this chapter of the Antiquity and Excellency of the diuine art of Chyrurgerie.

CHAP. II.

Of Operations, and Instruments of Chyrurgerie.

Interloquitors, } Peter Lowe, Doctor of Chyrurgerie,
and
} Iohn Lowe, his Sonne.

Pe. **Y**EE might haue perceiued by my former discourse touching the originall of Chyrurgery and the excellency thereof, the great desire I haue to profit you therein, and to giue good example to all those who would professe the same. In consideration wherof, I am determined to conferre with you in that matter, seeing leisure doth permit me, as also because I am mindfull to cause you to remaine in Paris for your further instruction, and passing of the degrees there accustomed in the sayd Arte, for the which I will in these three Books following, as also in euery generall chapter ensuing, set downe so briefly as I can, the forme and method

thod that the Doctors of Chyrurgerie in *Paris* vseth, in their first examination called the examination tentative, where the Prouoste of the sayd Colledge, and sixe other Maisters that hee will choose, will examine you exactly vppon the whole groundes of Chyrurgerie, according to the which form I will begin & demand of you in few words, the whole principall points of Chyrurgerie: but according to *Cicero*, seeing all doctrine whatsoeuer which is grounded vppon reason, should beginne at the definition, to the end we may the better vnderstand that whereof we entreat, first than will I aske of you what is Chyrurgerie?

Forme of
examination
at *Paris*.

*Cicero lib. i.
Officio.*

Ioh. It is a Science or Arte, that sheweth the manner how to worke on mans body, exercising all manuall operations necessary to heale men, in as much as is possible by vsing of most expedient medicines. It is an old greke word composed of the word *Cheir* which signifieth hand, and *Ergon* which signifieth operation. Yet no operation manual is comprehended vnder Chyrurgerie, but such as is practised on the body of man for healing of diseases.

Pe. Why say you Arte or Science?

Ioh. Because it is diuided into Theorick & Practick as saith Hieronymus Mantuo.

Diuision of
Chirurgerie
as saith Hiero-
nymus mantuo

Pe. What is Chyrurgerie Theorick?

Ioh. It is that part which teacheth vs by rules onely the demonstrations, which wee may know without vsing any worke of the hand, and therefore we call it Science.

What Chi-
rurgerie the-
orick is.

Pe. What is Practick?

Ioh. It is that part which consisteth in operation of the hand, according to the precepts in healing infirmities, as Apostumes against nature, byles, wounds, fractures, bones that be out of their naturall place, with diuers other operations belonging to the worke of the hand, as yae shall heare in the first Booke.

What Prac-
ticke is.

Pe. Ere you goe further, let vs know what is the subiect of this Arte?

The subiect
of Chirurge-
rie.

Ioh. Mans bodie, which as Abdale the Sarracen saith,

the most diuine and admirable thing in the world.

Pe. Seeing the subiect is so excellent, it is necessary that the Chyrurgion bee learned and wise, as well for the preservation of sicknes, as recovery of health.

How the chyrurgion should learne his art.

Ioh. It should be so.

Arist. prim. ethico.

Pe. How ought the Chyrurgion to learne his Art?

Ioh. *Arist.* the Prince of Philosophers counselleth vs to beginne at generall things, thereafter to proceede to things more particular, from easie and facile things, to obscure and difficile, as is obserued in all other sciences.

The operations of Chyrurgerie.

Pe. How many operations vseth the Chyrurgion most commonly?

Ioh. Five.

Pe. Which be they?

1. To take away.

Ioh. The first, is to take away that which is hurtfull and superfluous, as to take away tumors against nature, lups, cankers, wartes, and such like; to draw the water out of the hydropickes; to take away a sixt finger, or toe; to drawe forth a childe being dead, out of the mothers wombe; to cut a legge being gangrened or mortified, and such like.

2. To helpe and adde.

Secondly, to helpe and adde to nature that which it wanteth, as to put an artificiall eare, nose, or eye, a hand or leg, a platten in the roose of the mouth, which is needfull to those who by the Spanish sicknesse or like disease, haue the roose of the mouth falling, as is set downe in my treatise of the Spanish

3. To put in that which is out.

sicknes. The third, is to put in the naturall place, that which is out of his place, as to put in guttes, the casole, or nette that couereth the guts, called the *Epiploon* or *Omentum*, after they be fallen in the *Scrotum*, *Inguen*, or *Vmbilicke*; to put

4. To separate.

bones in their own place, being out of ioynt. The fourth, to separate that which is contained, as aposthumies, opening a vaine, scarifying, applying of horseleaches, ventoses, by cutting the ligament vnder the tongue, cutting twoo fingers growen together, by cutting the prepuce of the yarde, by cutting the naturall conduit of women being closed naturally together, or else by accident, as oft chaunceth after wounds, vlcers,

ulcers, and such like. The fift, to ioyne that which is separated, as in healing broken bones, bones that be out of their place, healing of woundes, vlcers, fistuloes, and such like.

Pe. What method is to be obserued of the Chyrurgion in working those operations?

Ioh. First, to know the disease; next, to doe the operation as soone as may be, surely and without false promises or deceits; to heale things that cannot bee healed: for there are some, who being boide of knowledge or skill, promise for lucre sake, to heale infirmities, being ignorant both of the diseases and the remedies thereof. These faults be often committed of some, who vsurping the name of Chyrurgion, being unworthy thereof, haue scarce the skill to cut a bearde, which properly pertaineth to their trade.

Pe. It seemeth by your wordes, that there are some infirmities pertaining to our Art, which are incureable.

Ioh. There be diuers, like as Cancer occult, leprosie, elephanticke particular: also when the diseased refuse the remedie proper for the cure thereof, as to cut a member beeing mortified, to make incision of the hydropycke: and also when by the curing of the maladie, their ensueth a greater disease, like as to stay altogether suddainly the hemerods which haue long runne, or any other naturall euacuation voluntary. (I saw in Paris a woman that had a fluxe of blode which flowed quarterly, sometime monethly, the which being stopped, shee dyed immediatly thereafter) to cut the varice in the leg, or else where, because the humors taketh the course oftentimes to some principall part, which is cause of death, also in healing the biles which come in the legges or armes, called *malum mortuum*.

Pe. What remedies then are most expedient to bee vsed in those diseases?

Ioh. Remedies palliative and preservative to let the euill that it encrease not, as wee shall intreate of each of them in their severall places.

Pe. To doe all those operations, what quallities are required

5. To ioyne together.

What method is to be vsed by the Chyrurgion.

Vagabonds and simple Barbers.

Diseases incurable.

History.

Remedies palliative and preservative are to be vsed.

quired of the Chyrurgion?

Ce'sus.

The qualites
which are re-
quired in a
Chirurgian.

A Chirurgion
should not be
auaricious.

Conditions
of the patient

Two sortes
of chirurgical
instruments.

Good regi-
ment.

Handie in-
struments.

Ioh. There are diuers, and first of all as Celsus saith, that he be learned, chiefly in those things y^e appertaine to his arte, that he be of a reasonable age, and haue a good hand, as perfect in the left as in the right, that hee bee ingenious, subtile, wise, and tremble not in doing his operations, that hee haue a good eye, and good experience in his art before hee beginne to practise the same, also that he haue seene and obserued of a long time of learned Chyrurgions, that he be well manned, affable, hardye in thinges certaine, fearefull in thinges doubtfull and dangerous, discrete in iudging of sicknesse, chaste, sober, pittifull, that he take his rewarde according to his cure, and ability of the patient, not regarding auarice.

Pe. What conditions ought the Patient to haue.

Ioh. Diuers also, and first he must haue a good opinion of the Chyrurgion, that he haue a good hope to be cured of him, to be obedient to his counsels, for that auailleth much in healing of maladies, that he indure patiently that which is done for the recouerie of his health.

Pe. Which are the instruments that the Chyrurgion ought to vse in his operations?

Ioh. They are of two sortes, for some are common, others are proper; and the instruments and remedies common, be also of two sortes, for some be medicinals, some be ferramentals.

Pe. Why do you call them common?

Ioh. Because they serue indifferently to diuers parts, and may be vsed in all parts of the body.

Pe. Which are the medicinals?

Ioh. They consist in ordaining good regiment in thinges naturall, unnaturall, and against nature, in letting of blood, also in applying plasters, cataplasmes, lineaments, pouders, unguents, and such like.

Pe. Which be the instruments ferramentals?

Ioh. Some are to cut as razors, some to burne as cauters actuals, some to drawe awaye, as tenals incisives, pincets, tirballs,

tirballs, some are to sound, as to sound a wound, the stone in the bladder, and such like : some are to sowe wounds and knit vaines and artiers, as needels.

Pe. Which are the proper instruments?

Proper instruments.

Ioh. Those which serue to one part onely, as in the head a trepan, with sundrye other capitalls : in the eye an instrument called *speculum oculi*, a needle proper to abate the Cataract : in the eare a squirt for deafnesse, or to draw forth any thing inclosed in the eare : some in the mouth as *speculum oris*, or *dilatorium* for convulsion : others are proper for the plurisie, others for the hydropisie : some to drawe the stone, which are made of diuers fashions : some are proper for women as *speculum matricis*, sundry are proper for the birth, as ye shall here in my treatise of the sicknesse of women : some are for the fundament as *speculum ani* : some for broken bones and such as bee out of their place, as machines, laks, glossocomes, as is set downe by Oribasius in his booke called

Oribasius in antidotario.

Antidotarium.

Pe. Which of those remedies are most necessary to be had alwayes with him?

Remedies that a chyrurgion should haue alwaies with him.

Ioh. *Arnoldus de villa noua* counselleth alwayes to haue sixe to helpe in necessity for things that are common; the first an astringent or retentive, to staye a bleeding or fluxion that commeth in any part : the second is *Basilicon*, to make matter in a wound or an Aposthume : the third, some cleansing salve as *Apostulorum* or *Diapleo* : the fourth, is to fill vpp a wound or bile with flesh that is hollowe, like as *unguentum aureum* : the fift, is *cerat galen*, or *rosat mesues*, proper to appease a great dolour or heate which oft chanceth : the sixt, is called *Desiccatorium rubeum*, or such like, to drie and cicatrize the skinne.

Arnoldus de villa noua.

Pe. How many kinds of ferraments ought the Chyrurgion commonly to carry with him?

Ioh. Diuers, as a paire of sheeres, a raso, pincets, a lancet, a sound, a tirball, a needle, and a cannon for needles.

Instruments

Instrumentts for a little case.

Pe. How many things are to be obserued by the Chyrurgion before he vndertake any operation?

Io. According to Haly Abbas, there are five; the first, to know well the temperament of the patient: the second, he must know the sicknesse and nature thereof: the third, whether it be curable or not: the fourth, remedies proper and meete for the disease: the fifth, the right waye to apply such remedies as be needfull: of all those hee ought to giue good reasons and authozitie, of such famous men as haue written of this Science.

Haly A'bas
in his Chyrurgerie.

Things to be knowen of the Chyrurgion before he beginne.

Pe. In how many thinges consisteth chiefly the contemplation of Chyrurgerie?

Io. In three things, according to Fuchius.

Pe. Which are they?

Io. The first, are those things that concurre to the making & constitution of our body, and therfore are called things natural. The second, are those things which conserue y^e body from sicknes, & being rightly vsed, nourish the same; our ancients call them things vnnaturall, because if they be immoderately and ill vsed, they be altogether contrary to our bodies. The third, are those thinges indeede which are contrary to our bodies, and therfore are called things contrarye to nature, as Galen writeth.

Contem-
platiue Chyrurgerie.

Compendium
medicinae *fu-*
chij.

Pe. Tell me something more particularly of those contemplations of Chyrurgerie.

2. *Therapen-*
multis alijs
locis.

Io. I am content, if your leisure permit.

Pe. Then we will in the next Chapter, proceed to naturall things.

CHAP. III.

Of Naturall things in generall.

Ioh. **M**A if it please you to prosecute the discourse of naturall things, seeing wee haue already intreated of

of Chyrurgerie in generall, of the operations and instruments Chyrurgicals.

Pe. I like very well of this methode, then tell mee how many naturall things are reckoned by the Chyrurgion?

7. Naturall things are reckoned by a Chirurgion.

Io. Heauen, the first is called Elements. The second, is Temperament or Complexion. The third, Humors. The fourth, Members. The fifth, Vertues or Faculties. The sixth, the woorkes and effects of Vertues. The seauenth, Spirits.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Elements.

Pe. Seeing, according to your former diuision of naturall things, Element is the first; then tell me what is an Element?

Arist. 5. metaph. cap. 3.

Io. It is the most simple part whereof any thing is made, and in the destruction thereof, is lastly resolved.

Pe. How many Elements are there?

2. Sorts of Elements.

Io. Two according to the contemplation of Chyrurgery, viz. simples or intelligibles, and composed or sensibles.

Pe. Which are the intelligibles?

Speculative Chyrurgerie first obserued by Hippocrates.

Io. Those which are known onely by speculation and iudgement, the which was first obserued by Hippocrates.

Pe. How many are they in number?

4 Elements. *Arist. 2. lib. de gen. & corrupt.*

Io. They are foure according to Arist. to wit, the fire, the aire, the water, and the earth, the which haue diuers qualities, hote, colde, moyst, and drie.

Pe. Are these foure Elements otherwise distinguished?

Another diuision of Elements.

Io. They are distinguished also according to their lightnes and heauinesse.

Pe. Which are the light?

Io. The fire, and the aire, and seareth upward by reason of

of their lightnes.

Pe. Which are the heauy?

Io. The water, and the earth; for by reason of their heauynesse, they moue downwarde.

Heauy Elements.

Pe. Which are the sensible Elements?

Io. They are similar or like partes of our bodie, as sayth Galen.

Pe. How many are they in number?

Io. Twelue, to wit, the Bones, the Cartilages, Flesh, Nerves, Arteries, Vannicles, Ligaments, Tendons, Membranes, the skin, the fat grease, the marrow: to the which similar parts, some adde partes made of the superfluitie of our body, as the haire, and nailes, which are also profitable.

12. sensible Elements.

CHAP. V.

Of Temperaments.

¶ Wherein is shewed the Temperature of mans body; of euery Nation; and foure seasons of the yeare.

Pe. **W**hat is Temperament?

Definition.

Io. It is a mixtion of the foure qualities of the Elements as saith *Avicen*: or, as saith *Galen*, it is a confusion or mixing of hote, colde, drie, and moyst.

Avicen.
Galen. cap. 1.
de complexio.

Pe. How many sorts of Complexions are there?

Io. Two, to wit, well tempered and composed, or euill tempered.

Pe. What is temperament well tempered.

Io. It is that which is equally composed of the foure qualities of the Elements, of the which composition and substance among all naturall things, there is but one so tempered, which is the inner skinne of the hand, chiefly in the extremitie of the fingers, as saith *Galen*, and is called *Temperamentum*.

Temprature
equallie
disposed.

Lib. de Temperamentis. *peramentum ad pondus.* There is another kind of this, called temperament *ad Iustitiam*, which is according to Judgment.

Temperament *ad Iustitiam*. what.

Pe. What is Temperament *ad Iustitiam*?

Io. It is that which is composed according to exigence and dignity of nature, and is known by his operations, for when any thing naturally hath his operations very perfect, wee esteeme it tempered *ad Iustitiam*.

Euill temperaments.

Pe. What is temperament, euill tempered?

Io. It is that, in which one Element governeth and hath dominion more than other, as the hote doth surpasse the colde, and so forth.

Pe. How many euill temperaments are there?

Io. There are diuers, which indeede passe not the limits of health, for some surpasse the temperate in one simple quality, some in two composed, and so forth.

Pe. How many simple qualities are there?

Four simple qualities.

Io. Four, as yee haue heard, hote, drie, colde, and humide: in like manner there are foure composed, to witte, hote and drie, hote and humide; colde and drie, colde and humide, of the which *Galen* hath openly written.

Lib. 1. artis parue.

Pe. What parts of our bodies are attributed to these qualities?

Galen Lib. de ligamentis.

The temperature of our bodies in particular, and what temperature euery one is of.

Robertus grosssetus reg. sanitat.

It is necessary for the

Io. To the hote, wee attribute parts most hote in our bodies as the Spirit, the heart, the bloud, the liuer, the kidnies, the flesh, the muscles, artiers, vaines, skinne, and splene. To the colde we attribute the haire, bones, cartilage, ligaments, tendons, membaines, nerues, the braines, and the fatte grease, the flesh, the paps, the stones, lights, liuer, kidnies, marrowe. To the drie, the haire, the bones, cartilages, membaines, ligaments, tendons, artiers, vaines, nerues, the skinne. Neuerthelesse, some excede others in these qualities, as you may perceiue by their order: for it is necessary in healing woundes and vlcers, to knowe the temperature of euery part, for other remedies are to be vsed in harde and drie parts, then in soft and humide parts.

Pe. How

Pe. How are the foure qualities compared to the foure Chyrurgions to know the quarters of the yeare? temperature of the patient.

Io. The Spring time is hote and humide, most healthfull as sayth Hyppocrates, and continueth from the tenth of March, to the 11 of June. The Summer beginneth at the 11 of June, and endeth on the 13 day of September, and is hote and drie. The autumnne or harvest from the 13. day of September vnto the 13. of December, and is colde and drie, very vnhealthfull, sickly, the which sicknesse if they continue till winter, are most dangerous. The winter from the 13 daye of September untill the 10 day of March, is colde and humide, in this time of the yeare men eate much, ingender abondance of crudities, of the which commeth diuers sicknesses. Compari- son with the foure quarters of the yeare. *Aphor. 19. & prim. de natura humana.*

Pe. How many wayes know ye the temperature of mans body? Sicknes in autumnne very vnhealthfull. *Petrus Tuxiganus de regi. sanitate.*

Io. Fiue, to wit, by the constitution of mans body; by the operations and functions; by the countreyes wherein men are bozne; by the colour; and by the age; which being all well considered, we may iudge of euery mans complexion. Fiue wayes to know mas temperature.

Pe. How know you the temperature of mans body by the constitutions?

Io. Galen sayth, those which are fat bee colde, like as fatnesse is ingendred of a colde habitude; those that bee grosse and full of flesh bee hote, because much flesh is gendered of great abondance of bloud, as sayth Auicen. *Lib. 2. de temperamentis cap. 6.*

Pe. How knowe you the temperature of mans body by the operations? To know the temperature by the constitution.

Io. Galen saith, that any creature, plant, hearbe, is of a good temperature when they doe well their functions naturall. *1. Treatise cap. 1. Galen. Lib. 1. de temperam. cap. 6.*

Pe. How by the Nations and Counries know you the temperature?

Io. The people towardes the South are melancholique, cruell, vindicative, always fearefull, they are subiect to madness.

The constitution of those towards the South.

Lib. 2. de temperamentis. cap. 6.

They are subiect to venus games, and why.

A thousand viues.
Bodin.

They are very temperate.

The complexion of the people towards the north, colde and humide.

They of the North are strong and cruell.

They are good drinkers

Subiect to ielousie.

Laborious men towards the North.

nesse and furiousnesse, as often chaunceth in the Realme of Fez, Morruecos, Affricke, Ethiopia, and Egypt, where there is a great number of mad men ; they are also subiect to leprosie, cheifly in Ethiopia, they be leane, pale coloured, blacke eyed, and are hote by the naturall ayze, and as *Galen* saith, they are also subiect to Venus games, because of the melancholique spumous humoz, which is the cause that the Kings of Affrica, Ethiopia, and Egypt, haue had at all times a great number of wiues and concubines : so that some haue had three hundred or foure hundred, some a thousand as reporteth *Bodin* in his *common-wealth* : they are subiect to the falling sicknesse, scrofuls, and feuer quartaine ; yet they are wise, modest, and moderate in their actions : they are also proper for the contemplation of naturall and diuine thinges, they haue little interioze heate, and for that cause are verie temperate, because they cannot digest much meate. So we may saye, that those people being subiect to greatest sicknesse and vices, are also adozned with great vertues, where they are good. The people towards the North are colde and humide, neither so wicked and deceitfull : they are faithfull and true, yet because they are of a grosser witte and more strength, they are more cruel and barbarous, they haue greater force and are stronger by reason of their thickenesse and coldenesse of blood : they be very couragious, for the great aboundance of blood, & of smaller iudgement : they haue great heat in their interioze parts, and therfore eate well and drinke better, which is an unhappy vice : They are high in stature, great bodied, more beautifull than those of the South, lesse given to the lust of the flesh, and lesse subiect to ielousie, which is a comon vice to the people towards y^e East, as the Grecks and Turkes ; or West, as Spaine, and such like countries : but principally the people of the South, from whome is come the vse to geld men, whom they call Eunuchs, to keepe their wiues. Moreouer, they who are toward the North, are more laborious, and given to artes mechanickes, and more proper for warres, than Sciences. The people betwixt the South

South and the North, as Italie, Fraunce, and such like, bee almost of the Northern peoples temperature, but somewhat hotter : they haue lesse internall heate and force then the Northern people, but more then they of the South, and therefore decide their quarrells oftener by reason, than force. Yet it is certaine, that those of the West drawe more to the qualities of those of the North : like as those of the East to the conditions of the South.

The complexion of those of the west and East

Pe. How know you by the colour, mans temperature?

Io. Galen sayth, those which are of colour somewhat red, yellow, or blew, bee of a hote temperature; those which are blacke, white, or leade colour, are of a colde complexion : otherwise be the foure colours, red, yellow, blacke, and white; the red is ordinarily sanguine, the blacke melancholique, the yellow collicke, and the white phlegmaticke.

Galen de Sanitate tuenda.

Pe. How know you mans temperature by the age?

Io. Forasmuch as there is a particular of the age, we will deferre it till we come to that Chapter.

To know the temperature by age.

Pe. By what outward markes knowe you euery mans complexion?

Io. He of the sanguine complexion is fleshy, liberall, louing, amiable, gracious, merrie, ingenious, audacious, lubricke, giuen to Venus game, red coloured with diuers other qualities, which sheweth the domination of the bloud, and it is hote and humide, and is in good health in Sommer and in winter by reason of his humiditie.

The Cholerique is hastie, prompt, and in all his affayres enbious, couetous, subtile, hardye, angrie, valiant, prodigall, leane, yellow coloured, and is hote and drie, and is in good health in winter.

The Phlegmaticke is fat, soft, white, sleepe, slothfull, dull of vnderstanding, heauie, much spitting, and white coloured : finally his temperature essentiall or accidentall is colde and moyst, and in good health in Sommer.

The Melancholique which is either by nature or accident of colour, liuide, & plumbine, solitary, coward, fearefull, sad, enbious,

envious, curious, auaritious, leane, weake, slowe, and so forth: mozeouer, colde, & drie, and are well in haruest: as touching the complexion of euery Age, you shall heare in the Chapter of Age: and as for the complexion of euery part of the body, you shall heare in the poore mans guide.

CHAP. VI.

¶ Of Humors.

All sicknes
procedeth of
some humors.

What hu-
mor is.

Pe. **T**Hou knowest that the most part of all sicknesses proceedeth and are entertained by some Humor, and sometime by sundry humors together; therefore it is most necessary that the Chyrurgian know perfectly the humors of our bodies, to the end hee giue the better order for the curation of maladies: then tell mee what is an Humor?

Ioh. It is a thinne substance, into the which our nourishment first is conuerted: or it is a naturall Juice wherewith the bodie is entertained, nourished, or preserved.

Pe. Whereof proceedeth the Humors?

Whereof hu-
mors do
proceed.

Io. Of the iuice or Chyle which is made in the stomacke, of the aliment wee are nourished with, changed by the naturall heate of the stomacke and parts nere therto: thereafter brought by the veines *Meseraikes* to the liuer, and maketh the foure Humors which differ in nature and kind.

Pe. How many Humors are there?

There are 4.
humors.

Io. There are foure, which represent the foure Elements, aswell by the substance, as qualities, whereof euery thing is made; *Galen* calleth them the Elements of the body.

Pe. Which are the foure Humors?

Io. The Bloud, the *Phlegme*, the *Choller*, and *Melancholy*.

Pe. What

Pe. What is blood?

Io. It is an Humor hote, aerious of good consistance, red coloured, swete tasted, most necessary for nourishment of the parts of our body, which are hote & humide ingendered in the liuer, retained in the vaines, and is compared to the aire, as sayth Galen. The bloud nourisheth the body. 2. De placitis.

Pe. What is Flegme?

Io. It is an Humor colde and humide, thin in consistance, white coloured, when it is in the vaines it nourisheth the parts cold and humide, it lubzifieth the moving of the ioints, and is compared to water.

Pe. What is Choller?

Io. It is an Humor hote and drie, of thinnae and subtile substance, blacke coloured, bitter tasted, proper to nourish the parts hote, and drie, it is compared to the fire. Trallianus lib. 7. Cap. 16.

Pe. What is Melancholie?

Io. It is an Humor colde and drie, thicke in consistance, solwer tasted, proper to nourish the parts that are colde and drie, and is compared to the earth, or winter.

Pe. How many sorts of bloud are there?

Io. Two, Naturall and Vnnaturall.

Pe. How many wayes degendereth the bloud from the Naturall? The bloud degendereth two wayes.

Io. Two wayes; first by some alteration or transmutation of the substance, as when it becommeth more grosse and more subtile then it should bee, or else by adustion, when the most subtile becommeth in choller, and the most grosse in melancholie.

Secondly, through vnnaturall proportion and euill mixture with the rest of the Humors, and then it taketh diuers names: as for example, if with the bloud there be abundance of Pituit, such is called Flegmaticke, if the choller exceed the chollericke, and so forth in the rest. Whereof euery humor doth proceed.

Pe. How many sorts of Flegme are there?

Io. Two in like manner, Naturall and vnnaturall.

Pe. How many kinds of Pituit vnnaturall are they?

2. de diffe-
rentijs febrilij
Cap. 6.

Io. According to *Galen* there are foure sorts; the first called *Vitrea*, because the Humour is like unto melted glasse, it is cold and proceedeth of gluttony and idleness, it prouoketh to vomit, causeth great paine in the parts where it falleth, as on the threath, and Intestines.

The second, is called the sweete *Flegme*, because in spitting of it, it seemeth sweet, it prouoketh the body to sleepe.

The third, is called bitter *Flegme*, because in spitting, it seemeth bitter, it is colde and maketh the body hungrie.

The fourth, is salt *Flegme*, it maketh the body drye and thirsty. There are some who make another kind called *Gipsi*, because of the forme and hardnesse it hath like *Lyme* called *Gypsum*: It is often in the ioynts and is reckoned vnder *Vitrea*.

Pe. How many sorts of Choller be there?

2. Sorts of
choller, natu-
rall and vn-
naturall.

Io. Two in like manner, *Naturall* and *Vnnaturall*.

Pe. How many wayes becommeth the Choller *Vnnaturall*?

Io. Two wayes; first, when it spilleth, rotteth, and is burnt, and then it is called Choller *Adust* by putrefaction. The other is made of the mixture of the other Humours.

Pe. Into how many kinds is it diuided?

Tractatu de
atra bile &
multis alijs
locis.

Io. In foure, as sayth *Galen*. The first, is called *Vitellin*, because of the colour and thicke substance: It is like the yolke of an egge, it is ingendered in the Liuer and vaines, when by the vnnaturall heate it doth dissipate and consume.

The second, is called *Verrucose*, because this colour representeth a wart called *Verruca*.

The third, is called *Eruginus*, because it is like the rust of brasse or copper called *Erugo*.

The fourth, is called the blew Choller, because it is blew like *Azur*. These three last Humours as saith *Galen*, are ingendered in the stomacke by vicious meats, and euill iuice, which cannot be digested and conuerted into good iuice.

Pe. How many sorts of melancholique are there?

Io. Two, *Naturall*, and *Adust*.

Pe. How

Pe. How many kindes of Vnnaturall or adust are there?

Io. Twoo, the first is that whereof commeth the Humoz Melancholique, which is like the lee of bloud when it is very hote and adust; or by some hote Feuer, that the blood doth putrisie, as sayth *Auicen*, and differeth from the naturall melancholique, as the dregges of wine burnt, from the vnburnt. *Galen* saith, that Humoz which is like the lees of wine, when it becommeth moze hote, it ingendereth an Humoz against nature called *Attabilis*, of the which no beast can tast. 14. Method.

Pe. Knowing these foure humors and their generations, we must know in like manner, that in our bodies there is concoction, therefore tell mee how many kinds of concoctions are there?

Io. There are thre as sayth *Iohannes Bacchanellus*. The first, is made in the stomacke which conuerteth the meat we eate into the substance called *Chile*, in the which the foure humozs are not, but potentially. The second, is done in the liuer, which maketh of the *Chile* the masse Sanguinarie, as saith *Galen*. The third, is made through all the body, of which are ingendered the foure humidities which the Arabians call humozs nourishing, or Elementaries, as saith *Auicen*. The first hath no name, and is thought to bee the humoz which droppeth from the mouth of the vaine. The second, is called *Ros*, the which after it is drunken into the substance of the body it maketh it humide, whereof it taketh the name. The third, is called *Cambium*. The fourth is called *Gluten*, and is the proper humiditie of the similar parts. Lib. de con-
censu med.
4. de vsu
partium.
2. Cano cap. 1.

Pe. Haue not these humors a certaine time in the which they raigne more than other in mans body?

Io. Yes indeede, for the bloud raigneth in the morning from thre houres vntill nine: in like manner in the spring time the Choller from nine in the morning vntill thre in the afternone, as in Sommer: the Flegme from thre in the What time
euery humor
raigneth.

afternoone vntill nine at night, as in autumnne : the melanc-
cholicque, from nine at night vntill thre in the morning, like
as in winter, and this is the opiniō of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*
as touching humors. Such things being well vnderstode,
yee may know what humor raigneth in the sicke, and what
time he shall be most grieved.

CHAP. VII.

C Of Members and Parts.

The definiti-
on of mem-
bers.

Anicen.

Pe. What call you Members or Parts?

Io. *Anicen* speaking of Members saith, they
are bodies ingendered of the first commixtion of humors.

Pe. How many sorts of Members are there?

Io. Five, of the which the first is called principalls. The
second, are Members that serue the principall Members.
The third, are Members that neither gouerne, nor are go-
uerned of others, but by their owne proper vertues. The
fourth, are Members which haue proper vertues of them-
selues, and also of others. The fift, is called Members excre-
mentals, and not proper Members, as others.

Pe. How many principall Members are there?

Io. Amongst the parts of the humane bodie there are
found foure, which are most chiefe and principall, to wit, the
braines, the heart, the liuer, and the testicles. The first thre
are called principalls, because by them all the body is gover-
ned, and without them men cannot liue. The fourth, which
are the testicles is called principall, because without them
men cannot be procreated, saith *Galen*.

Parts seruing
the principall
members.

Pe. Which are they that serue the principall Members?

Io. The *Serues* serue the braines; the artiers the heart;
the instruments *Spermaticks*, the testicles: by the *Serues*
the spirit *Animal* is carried through all the body; the spirit *Vi-*

call

all is carryed by the Arteries; the vaines serue to carrye the blood through all the body, as also to bring the *Chile* to the liuer: the instruments *Spermatike* for the bringing and casting forth of the seede.

Pe. Which are the Members which neither gouernes, nor are gouerned of others.

Io. The bones, the cartilages, membraines, glands, tendons, ligaments, fatte, simple flesh, and so forth.

Pe. Which are they that haue proper vertue of themselves, and also of others.

Io. The bellie, the kidneis, and the matrix.

Pe. Which are the Members called excrementous?

Io. The nailes, and the haire.

Pe. Are the Members no otherwise diuided?

Io. They are diuided into two parts, similars and dissimilars.

Pe. Which are the parts similar?

Io. The Bones, Nerues, Flesh, and so forth, which are so called, because the least part of them hath the same name that the whole hath.

Pe. Which are the parts dissimilars?

Io. The eare, eye, legge, hand and foote, &c.

Pe. Why are they called dissimilars?

Io. Because when they are diuided, they lose the name of the whole, as the membraines of the braines are not called braines, nor the membraines of the eye, the eye, and so forth in other dissimilar parts.

Members
which haue
proper vertue
of others and
also of them-
selves.

*Galen de differ.
ren. morb. ca. 3*

CHAP. VIII.

Of Vertues.

Pe. **W**hat call you Vertues?

Io. They are the cause whereof proceedeth

Lib. 1. de fa-
cultatib. na-
turalib.

the actions or powers, as saith Galen.

P E. How many Vertues or Faculties are there?

I O. Thre; to wit, Animall, Vitall, and Naturall, which haue a certaine sympathy one with another, for if one be hurt, all the rest suffer with it.

P E. What is Animall?

I O. It is that which cometh from the braines, and sendeth the sence and moving through all the bodie by the Nerves.

P E. How many sorts of Vertues Animall are there?

I O. Thre; to witte, Motiue, Sensitiue, and Principall.

P E. Wherein consisteth the Vertue motiue?

I O. In the instruments that moue voluntary, as the Muscles and Nerves.

P E. Wherein consisteth the Vertue Sensitiue?

I O. In the senses externall and internall.

P E. Into how many parts is the Vertue Sensitiue externall diuided?

Sensitiues
external,
diuided
into five.

I O. Into five; Seeing, Hearing, Tasting, Smelling, Feeling.

P E. What is the vertue Sensitiue interior?

I O. It is a vertue that correspondeth to the five externall vertues, by one Organ onely, and therefore is called Sence common.

Wherein the
vertue princi-
pal consisteth.

P E. Wherein consisteth the vertue Principall?

I O. In imagination, reasoning, and remembzring.

P E. May those vertues be diuided seuerally one from another?

I O. Yes, because one may be offended without another, which sheweth them to haue diuers seates in the braine particularly.

P E. What is the vertue Vitall?

I O. It is that which carryeth life through all the body.

P E. How many sorts of vertues vitall are there?

I O. Two; to wit, vertue Vitall Active, that is, in doing
opera

operations : & vertue vitall passive in suffering operations.

Pe. What is the vertue active?

Io. They are those vertues which dilateth the heart, and artiers, as chanceth in mirth and loue.

Pe. What is vertue Passive?

Io. They are those vertues which constrain and binde the artiers and heart, as happeneth in melancholique, sadness, and reuenge.

Pe. What is the vertue Natural?

Io. It is that which cometh from the liuer, and sendeth the nourishment through all the bodie.

Pe. Into how many parts is it diuided?

Io. Into foure, the first in attraction of things proper: the second in retaining that which is drawen : the third, in digesting that which is refrained : the fourth, in expelling that which is hurtfull, and offensive.

Pe. Do all those vertues do their operations at once?

Io. No, for first attraction is made, then retained untill perfect digestion be made : lastly, vertue expulsive, casteth forth all things hurtfull to nature.

CHAP. IX.

¶ Of Actions and Operations of Vertues.

Pe. **W**hat call you the actions of vertues?

Io. They are certaine affections or mouings actiues, proceeding of vertues.

Pe. How many sorts are there?

Io. Three; like as, vertues Animall, Naturall, and Vitall.

Pe. Seeing the difference is not great betwixt Vertues and operations of Vertues, it is superfluous for the present to insist further in that matter?

CHAP. X.

¶ Of Spirits.

Definition
of Spirits.

P E. **W**Hat are Spirits?

I o. They are a substance subtile and acrisious of our body, bredde of the part most pure and thinne, of the bloud sent through all the body, to the effect the members may doe their proper actions.

P E. In what part of our bodies abound they most?

*Andreas de
Lorrain.*

I o. As saith *Andreas de Lorrain*, they abound in the heart and artiers, in the braines and perues.

P E. How many sorts of Spirits are there?

I o. Thre; Animall, Vitall, and Naturall.

P E. What is the Spirit Animall?

*Democritus
put forth his
eyes, and why*

I o. It is that which remaineth in the braines, of which a great part is sent to the eyes, by the perues optickes, some to the eares and diuers other parts, but most to the eye: therefore those who haue lost their sight, haue their other vertues more strong, the which caused *Democritus* and other Philosophers to put out their eyes, to the end their vnderstanding might bee more cleare.

P E. Is the Spirit Animall brought through all the Nerues substantially?

I o. No, but onely by the perues optickes, because they haue manifest hollownes, and not the rest.

P E. What is the Spirit Vitall?

I o. It is that which is in the heart and artiers & is made of the euaporacion of the bloud, and of the ayre laboured in the lights by the force of Vitall heate, and thereafter is diffused through the members for the conseruation of the naturall heate.

P E. What is the Spirit Naturall?

I o. It

Io. It is that which is ingendered in the liuer and vaines, & there remaineth while the liuer maketh the bloud & other naturall operations. The vse of it, is to helpe the concoction: and there be foure thinges which bee annexed to those naturals, which are Age, Colour, Figure, and Kind.

CHAP. XI.

¶ Of Age.

Pe. Seeing, heretofore we haue discoursed of things naturall and their number: it shall be needfull in this place to speake of such thinges as are annexed to naturall things, beginning at Age which is the first: So I will demaund of you what is Age?

Ioh. It is a space or part of our life in which our bodies are subiect to many mutations.

Pe. Thou knowest that all things which are created, if they bee materiall, should haue an end, and that there is nothing vnder the heauens, except the soule of man, but it is subiect to corruption and change, as all the Philosophers grant, like as *Aristotle*, *Hippocrates*, and *Galen* do testifie; and it is certaine, that we from our birth are subiect to diuers alterations: therefore tell me into how many diuers apparant mutations haue our ancients diuided the life of man?

Ioh. In that there is found very great controuersie: For the *Egyptians*, and *Pythagorians*, were so superstitious, that they did publish by their writs, and were of opinion, that there were so many Ages as there were signes in an hundred yerres: thinking therby a man to liue onely a hundred yerres, and that euery seuenth yeare we should perceiue some notable change, besides the particular change of euery signe both in the temperature of the body, and manners of the minde. Yet I am of opinion, that Age should not bee diuided according

*Arist de longit.
tud. & breuit.
vta.*

*Hippoc. lib. i.
De dieta.*

*Galen lib. i. de
sanit.*

The *Egypti-
ans* and *Pitha-
gorians* opini-
on concerning
mans life.

ding to the number of the yeares : thinking that herebyupon should either depend youth, or olde age : but rather after the temperature of the body, for old men y^e are cold & drie may be termed old, so there be many old folkes of 40 yeares, and diuers who may be thought yong of threescore. There be some complexions that were some olde, in other later : these of the sanguine complexion be long in growing olde, because they haue much heate and humiditie. The melancholique warreth some olde, because they bee colde and drie. As touching the Feminine sere, it becommeth sooner olde than the Masculine. Hippocrates reporteth that women in the mothers wombe are formed in seven moneths, and growe slower than men ; but being borne, doe grow faster, and become sooner wise, olde, or failed : for the feblenes of their bodie, and fashion of life, being for the most part idle : and there is nothing that bringeth sooner old age, than idleness and want of exercise.

Hippocrates
de partu.

Pe. Is mans age no otherwise diuided amongst the olde writers ?

Plato and Pi-
thagoras opi-
nion of Age.

Ioh. Amongst the olde Philosophers there be sundrie opinions. Plato affirmeth man to liue fourescore and one yerres. Pithagoras onely fourescore, and did diuide them in twentyes, comparing the ages to the foure times of the yeare : to wit, the Spring-time, to childhoode : the Sommer, to youth ; the autumnne, to manhoode : and winter, to old age.

Varro diuided
age five ways.

The Philosopher Varro did diuide age five wayes, to wit, childhoode, to fiftene yerres : from fiftene to thirty, young men : from thirty to forty five, men : from that to threescore, old men : from thence, they be termed very olde.

The opinion
of the Aegip-
tians and A-
lexandrians.

The Egyptians and Alexandrians were of the opinion, that men did liue according to the increasing and diminishing of the heart, thinking the heart to grow till fiftie yerres, and that euery yeare it did augment two dramme weights : and after fiftie yeares, did euer diminish, till in the end it became to nought : Which opinion I doe not approve, because I haue opened (sundry) very olde people, in whome I haue

haue found the heart as bigge and heauie, as in those of yonger age.

The learned Philosopher & mediciner Staseas was of opinion that men should not liue long, by reason of the sundrie chaunces of fortune and doubtfull health of their bodies, for he sayth, wee ought onely to liue so long as the commodities of our life be more in number, than the discommodities thereof.

Pithagoras and Cicero did both accuse Nature, for giuing of long life to Crows, and Harts, who were vnpromisable creatures, and so short to men: To the which the Philosopher Possidonius doth agree, and sayd, that one daye of a learned mans life is better than neuer so long of an ignorant: Some doe adde another kind of olde age called *Senium ex morbo*.

The most part of our late writers are of opinion, that the naturall course of our life indureth five speciall mutations, which they doe call ages, to witte, Infancy, Adolescence, Young age, Mans estate, and olde Age: the infancie is hote and humide, but the humiditie surpasseth the heate, and lasteth from the houre of our birth till thirtene yeeres, and is gouerned by the moone as saith Ptolomeus: In this time man is subiect to many griefes and diseases, like as feuers, fluxes, Wormes in the belly, the Stone, Aposthumes, and sundry others.

The Adolescence is hote and humide, but the heate beginneth to surpasse the humiditie: the voice beginneth to grow great in men, and paps in women, and it lasteth to twentie five yeeres, which is the time preferred for growing in height; in this time men incurre many diseases, chiefly the Siatike, as saith Gordon. & is gouerned by Mercury who formed the manners and wit.

The third age is youth, which is hote and drie, but more hote then drie, and lasteth till thirty and five yeeres, and is subiect to hote feauers, frencies, with sundry other diseases, and is gouerned by Venus, and ingendereth great cupiditie

Staseas opinion of mans age.

Pithagoras & Cicero de senectute.

Possidonius opinion.

1. Age gouerned by the moone.

2. Age hote and humide, gouerned by Mercurie.

Gord.

3. Age hote and drie, gouerned by Venus.

of.

of lust.

4. Age temperate governed by the Sunne.

The Fourth, is mans estate, most temperate of all, and lasteth till fiftie yeares, and neither augmenteth nor diminisheth: in this time men are subiect to hote Feuers, Fluxes of bloud, Plurisie, Lythargie, Phrensie, and such like, and is governed by the Sunne, Anthoz of wisdom and grauitie.

1.

Then commeth old age, which lasteth the rest of our life, and may be diuided into thre. The first, called greene age, which is prudent and full of experience, fit to gouerne common wealths, and lasteth to seuentie yeares, and is governed by Iupiter, anthoz of wisdom and counsell.

2.

Then beginneth the second part of olde age, accompanied with diuers little incommodities, the heate then almost decayeth, and is cold and drie, like plants which doe become rotten and decayed: in this time man is subiect to many diseases, as Epilepsie, Lithargie, Pumes, and such like, as saith Gord: and is governed by Saturne, then they be full of sloath, dull, froward, and vneasie to be governed.

3.

Lastly, followes the third part of olde age, which is called *Decrepit*, vnto the which (as saith the royall Prophet) happeneth nothing but grieve and sorrow. All the actions both of body and spirit are weakened, the feeling groweth remisse, the memory decayeth, and the iudgement faileth: so returneth to infancy, whence proceedeth the Greeke prouerbe, *Bis pueri Senes*.

Eccle. Cap 12.

This last age is set downe in Eccle. 12. Be thou wise Salomon. With such a braue Allegorize, that nothing in the world can bee found so excellent, for the which I shall set it downe at large in this place.

The allegory.

Haue mind (saith he) of thy Creator in the daies of thy youth, or in the daies of aduersity: Come, while the Sunne is not darkened; nor the Moone; nor the Starres; nor the cloudes returne after the raine: When the keepers of the house shall tremble, and the strong men shall bowe themselves. And the grinders shall cease, because they be few

in number ; and they shall waxe darke which looke out by the windowes, and the dores shall be shut without, because of the base sound of the grinding. And all the daughters of Singing shall bee abashed, also they shall bee affraide of the high things : And feare shall be in the way : And the Almond tree shall flourish : and the Grasshopper shall be a burden : and concupiscence shall be driuen away : while the Siluer cord is not lengthened, nor the Golden Ewer broken : nor the pitcher broken at the well : nor the wheile broken at the Cesterne, and dust returne to the earth as it was, and the Spirit to God that gaue it.

This is the true description of the last age, which is admirable, and required a good Anatomist to expound the same; the Allegorie followeth. Haue mind (saith he) of thy creator in y^e dayes of thy youth, while the Sun is not darkened: that is to saye, while the eyes haue not lost their sight : nor the cloudes returne after the raine, which is, when the eyes hath long wept, their passeth befoze them grosse thicke vapours like clouds. When the keepers of y^e house shal tremble: which is, when the armes and handes which are giuen for the defence of man, are failed. And the strong men shall bowe themselues : which is, the legges wherevppon the whole body stands, doth bowe and becommeth weake. The grinders shall cease : that is, the teeth which breaketh and grindeth the meate, shall be decayed. And they shall waxe darke which looke out by the windowes: that is, when the eyes are ouerwhelmed with some cataract or taye which couereth the p^runall called the windowe of the eye. The doze shall be shut without, by the base sound of the grinding: that is, the chappes and lips which cannot well open, and the chanells whereby the meat doth passe, groweth narrow. And he shall rise at the voice of the bird, that is, olde people cannot sleepe but doe rise at the crowe or calling of the cocke. And all the daughters of Singing shall bee abased: which is, when the voice doth decay. The Almond tree shall flourish: that is, the head and beard of all people becommeth all white. The
Grasse

The explication of the allegory.

Grashopper shall bee a burden : which is, when the legges groweth great, swelling, and tumified with abundance of colde watery humors. Concupiscence shall be driven away : which is to say, olde people shall haue little or no appetite to meate. When the Silver cord is lengthened : that is, when the marrow that goeth along the backe groweth supple, and boweth the backe forward. When the Golden Cwer is broken : that is, the heart which containeth y^e arteriall blood and vitall spirits, shall be weakened. The Pitcher broken at the fountaine: that is, the great vaine Cawe, that may no more shote blood from the liuer, which is, the Spring that humecteth the whole body in such sort, that it serueth no more then a broken vessell. The wheele broken at the Cesterne, that is, the Perues and bladder doth growe so weake, that they can no more retaine the water. When all these things do arriue, the dust returneth to the earth as it was, which is, when the materiall body returneth to the earth : and the Spirit shall turne to God that gaue it. These bee the best descriptions that can be giuen of olde age, with their times and yerres, according to the opinion of our ancients.

CHAP. XII.

Of the entertainment of olde Age.

Pe. **B**Eeing earnestly requested by some of my friends, (who are aged and sickly) to prescribe some forme of regiment for the better entertainment of their life, which I am willing to doe, although it bee more medicinall then Chyrurgicall : Yet in respect of their intreaty, and the great number of aged people in their countries, who may not at all times haue the counsell of the learned : for the which cause I thought good to speake some thing briefly of that matter:

matter. And therefore I will demaund of you, how many principall rules were necessary to bee obserued by old people in their dyet?

Job. Eight.

Pe. Which be they?

Jo. The first is, that they neuer eate while they find some little appetite, for then meate is most agreeable to the stomacke, and will better digest the euill meate hauing some appetite, then the best meate hauing no appetite, as at length is set downe by Hippocrates.

The second rule is, that the meate should bee well sodden and chewed before it bee let ouer, otherwise it chargeth the stomacke too much, and troubleth the concoction not being cut small with the teeth or knife, which being done, aduanceth the first digestion. This is the reason that they that haue many teeth liue long, as saith Hippocrates.

Lib. 2. aph. 38.

Thirdly, they must be very wary to overcharge their stomacke, but euer rise from the table with appetite to eat more, for in ouermuch charging the stomacke, the naturall heat is weakened. Hippocrates saith, a man should neuer eate till hee bee full, neither busier to exercise; for moderate trauell exercitates the naturall heat: so, very necessary for all people to be vsed before meate.

Lib. 2. epid. sect. 6.

Petrus Luxiganus. 6. epid.

Fourthly, that they eate only of one or two sorts of meate, at once, otherwise it troubleth the stomacke, for all meates are not of one qualitie, and some digest sooner than other: besides, the eating of diuers meates and sundry saluces, provoketh much drinke, which is an hinderance to the digestion as saith Hippocrates, Plutarch, Plinius, and Macrobin, who were of opinion, that one sort of meat is best, & of most easie digestion.

Petrus Luxiganus de sanit.

Plutarch. Plinie Macrobin. 6. epid. 3. Sec.

Fifthly, there ought an order to be obserued in eating, and those meats that digest easiest, should first enter into the stomacke, like as pottage, prunes, and such other, as hath the vertue to loose the bellie; grosse and rude meate should last be taken.

The first, they shall eate more at supper then at dinner; provided, they bee not subiect to catars, and distillations, and that because there is more time betwixt the supper and dinner, then between dinner and supper, to digest and distribute the aliment through the body: so; certaine it is, in sleeping the heate retyzeth to the center, so it digesteth the better: besides, all digestion would haue rest, and so it digesteth the better.

Seauenthly, that which they eate should be of good nourishment, and easie of digestion, abstaining from all grosse, viscons, windy, flegmaticke, and melancholique meates, by reason old people hauing the naturall heate cold, dissipate not the grosse superfluity, easily.

Eighthly, that they be nourished oft and little at one time, which is meete to be obserued both by olde and young, as is at large set downe by Galen, speaking of Antioch mediciner, and Telephus grammariour. According to those rules, we find the olde mediciners as Hippocrates, Galen, and Auicenn haue euer practised. Galen remarketh that the Athlits eate flesh neuer but at night. Aristoxenus writeth, that the Pythagorians eate onely at dinner a little bread and hony. Philemon the olde wyter saith, that the Greeke souldiers at Troy tooke foure meales a day; the first thre, onely a little bread and wine, and at night a little swines flesh. These rules shall bee sufficient in this place, in respect wee are to speake heereafter (of the nourishment most proper to be vsed, and to be abstained both by olde and young) at length in the chapter of meate and drinke: as also concerning the ayre and exercise, shall be set downe in sundry chapters in the second treatise of this booke.

3. Galen con-
seru. health.

Hippocrates.
Galen. Auicenn.
5. conseru. of
health.

Aristoxenus.
Philemon.

Wide lib. 2.
Cap. 2.

Wide 2. trea-
tise, cap. 2.

CHAP. XIII.

¶ Of such remedies or helps as should
be used by old people.

Pe. Seeing age is subiect to sundry inconueniences and diseases, I would faine know certaine remedies for correcting and helping of the same? The diseases of olde age.

Io. They be so many in number, that it will be tedious to prescribe remedies for them all.

Pe. I will shew you those which I haue found most commonly in those people, like as constipation and hardnes of the belly, flowing, stopping, or binding in the breast, weake, salt, and bitter humors, whereof proceedeth great aching, heate, and acrimonie in the making of water, much winde, with vniuersall faintnes, by reason of the weaknesse of the stomake and the decay of naturall heate, subiect to many defluxions, euer spitting, coughing, and watering at the eyes. For the which afflictions I would prescribe some familiar and weake things : for strong and violent thinges must not be vsed to such people?

Io. As concerning the hardnes of the belly, diuers things may be prescribed, yet I find broth most familiar, which may be made diuersly : like as to take the tender leaues of mallowes, mercuriall, and of the Barbary tree, beetes, Horse-hoofe or Coltsfoote, with a few Prunes Damaske : let all bee well purified and sodden with a soft fire, a piece of Meale or Mutton, and take a draught of that in the morning next your heart : or you may make a broth of gremcall, or colward, with a little oyle de Olive. But for the wealthier sort, may be made thus which is most good : Take an olde Cocke and pull him quicke, bruse him well, and kill him, pull out the guts, and wash him twice with white wine, then fill vp his belly with Perceley rootes, leaues of Burridge, and

Strong and violent things must not be vsed by olde men.

Broth for the wealthier sort.

Remidies for
the oppressed
stomacke
with wind.

Buglosse, Pimpernell, Mercurie, Spinnage, Figges, Ray-
sons, Plowdamas, Dates, Hyslope : Sæth all at a soking
fire till it bee well sodden, take of the broth a reasonable
draught, thræ mornings together. It hath the vertue to
loose the belly, it cleanseth the passages of the water, and gi-
ueth bzeath. Clusters and suppositours were necessary some-
time to be vsed. For the heate of the Water a little of Cas-
sia were good, and sometime a little Turpentine washed in
Rose water, & taken with white Wine, it being first allayed
with the yolke of an egge. It may be likewise taken in pilles
the forme whereof yee shall heere in the poore mans Guide.
As for the weaknesse of the stomake, and wind that oppres-
seth y^e same, confected ginger, suger, aniseedes, cannell, carro-
way confected, are good : or tablets of *Aromaticum rosatum*
Cannell water, spirit of aniseedes, and cloues. To helpe
the naturall heat, external and internall things may be vsed,
as cappes of capitall, powders for the braines, amongst the
which, cloues is best, plasters of vnguents, and pore on the
heart, vnctions on the stomake, or the weight of two crowns
of Amber grease in a new layd egge, *Teriata* and *metridate*,
confection of *Alcervis* imperiall water : the formes thereof
are common, so not necessary to be set downe in this place.

CHAP. XIIII.

¶ Of Colour, Figure, and Kind.

Pe. **V** Hereof proceed the Colours?
Io. Of iust proportion of the humors, which
rule doth gouerne in mans body : as if there bee a iust pro-
portion of the foure humors, the colour is red : if aboun-
dance of melancholique humor, it is liuide and blacke : if a
boundance of choller, the colour is citrim and yellow : if
phlegme, the colour is white and pale.

Pe. What

Pe. What is Figure, or habitude?

Io. It is a thing that sheweth the temperature whereof the body is composed.

Pe. How many sorts of Figures are there?

Io. There are foure ; the first, is called Quadrature, which is of good temperature. The second, is Crassitude or thicknes, and sheweth exceeding heate and humidity. The third, Extenuation, which is hote and dry. The fourth, is very fatte, proceeding of exceeding coldnes and humidity.

Pe. What is a Sex?

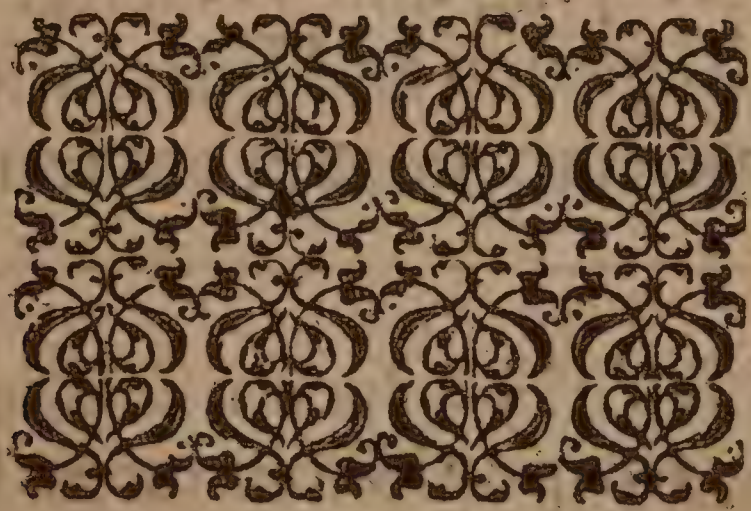
Io. It is nothing but a distinction betwene man and wo-
man ; the man is of a hote temperature, but the woman, and
Eunuchs are cold.

The tempe-
rature of man
and woman.

Pe. Is it a generall rule that men are hote, and women cold?

Io. No, for Galen saith, that it is possible to finde women
of more hote temperature then men, but seldome : and so
we end naturall things, wherein consisteth the constitution
of mans body.

Lib. de pulsib.





THE SECOND BOOKE,

Of Unnaturall things.

The consideration whereof is most needfull
for the preservation of health ; and con-
taineth six Chapters. By

PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.

- Chap. 1. Of the Ayer.
2. Of Meate and Drinke.
3. Of Moouing and Exercise.
4. Of Sleeping and Waking.
5. Of Repletion and Euacuation.
6. Of perturbations & passions of the mind.

Pet.



Anicen.

HAVING spoken sufficiently of naturall
Things, which are proper for the constitu-
tion of mans body : Now, in like man-
ner it is necessary, that wee goe forward
with those things which are called vnna-
turall things, and conserue the body, if
they be rightly vsed; and if otherwise, they
destroy the nature and health of mans body, as saith *Anicen*
Prince

Prince of the Arabians, and therefore are called vnnaturall thinges : of the which I would very gladly knowe the number?

Io. There are Sixe ; To wit, the ayre that goeth about vs, the meate and drinke we vse, the motion and rest of our bodies, sleeping and waking, repletion and euacuation, together with the perturbations of our mind.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Ayer.

Pe. Seeing the Aire is so needfull to vs, that no health Nothing can
 may be maintained, nor no defection cured without liue without
 the same, as wee see by the continuall inspiration, that all the ayre.
 naturall creatures draweth for their refreshing, as also for
 the regendring of the spirit Animall. In like manner, the
 Ayre may alter our bodies in three manners : to witte, by
 qualitie, substance, and mutation, as ye shall reade more at
 large in the poore mans Guide, and is no lesse profitable and
 necessary to our life then respiration, without the which we
 cannot liue a moment, as saith *Galen*. Therefore I would
 know of you what aire is? 6. Method. et.
8. de Placitis
Hipocrates
Platonis.

Io. It is the matter of our respiration.

Pe. How many sorts of Aire is there?

Io. Twoo ; to wit, that which is good, and that which is euill.

Pe. What call you good Ayre?

Io. That which is pure, cleane, thinne, exempt from euill euapozations, deepe valleyes, clouds, rotten smelles, farre from stinkes, mosses, cauernes, carrions and all corruption: such ayre is best against all sicknesse, as well for the preservation of health, as curing of sicknesse, as saith *Cardanus*.

Pe. What is euill Ayre?

Lib. I, de diffi-
cultate spiran.

Herricus
van. 20. lib. 7.
de conseruan.
valetud.

Lib. de sub-
nitate.

Ioh. It is that which is contrarie to the other, thicke, rotten, neere hilles, mosses, stinkes, the sea, and all such toynes as bee loue and close, infected with euill saours, or scituated betwixt twoo hills or places where passeth the filth of toynes: also that which is nebulous, and commeth from stinking breaths, also by the celestial influence, as saith *Hippocrates*. In like manner, that which is exposed to the South wind, and the aire which is inclosed in close houses for a certaine time, which becommeth mouldie and putrified, because euery thing that is hote and humide and wanteth e- uentilation, becommeth putrified. The great toynes neere the sea, as often we see in the end of autumne and Sommer great maladies, and dangerous, sometimes the plague as writeth *Cardanus*: for it entreth into our bodies by the mouth and nose, when we breath, of the which often are ingendred maladies very difficult.

Pe. Whereof proceedeth the variety of the qualities of the Ayre?

Ioh. Of three things, like as of Regions or Countries, of wounds, and of the scituation of the place where we are.

Pe. How proceedeth the varietie of the Ayre by the Countries?

Ioh. There are some which are euill tempered, and others well tempered, according to the climate where they are scitu- ated, like as vnder the Pole Articke and Antarticke the farre distant Sunne beames, which maketh the temperature ex- treame colde, for the which it is uninhabitable: yet there are some inhabited, as Scythia and other such Countreyes vnder the equinoctiall line: The vntemperature is so extreame hote, because of the right reflexion of the Sunne, especially betwixt the circle Articke and Cancer: Like as in the An- tarticke and Capricorne the aire is more temperate, cheifly in the middelt according to the approaching of the Sunne, as we see in the foure seasons of the yeare. *Cardanus* saith, that those countries which are mountainous are most temperate, and that a man may liue an hundred yeeres in such places.

Cardanus lib.
antis parue.

Plinie

Plinie saith, that Men, Beastes, and Trees, are farre *Plinius.*
stronger and more barbarous in hillie parts, and that for
their great liberty. Those which dwell in the lower parts
and valleyes, are more effeminate, as saith *Titus Linius.* *Titus Linius.*

Pe. Seeing the Ayre is so necessary for the curation of
maladies, is there no waye to alter and accomodate it by
art, to the sickness?

Io. Yes verely, and for this cause *Hippocrates* counsaileth
in maladies cronickes, to change the aire and countrey,
and maladies comittialles, to change the ayre, countrey, and
nouriture.

Galen counsaileth those who haue vlcers in the Lights, to
dwell at Rome, because there the aire is very drie : in com-
mon sicknesses wee helpe the ayre somewhat by art, like as
in feuers, which are hote and drie, we chouse a house which
is colde and humide : Diuers windowes for the euentila-
tion thereof, or winds made by art, also by casting cold wa-
ter through the house, by spreading and strewing of flowers
and braunches of trees which are cold and humide, like as
violets, roses, wilde vine berry trees, and such like : Also
beware to haue many people in the chamber, as counsaileth
Cardanus.

Cardanus lib
5. artis parue.

But when the sicknesses are cold and humide, as feuers
putrified, catarrhes, hydropses, tumors pituitous, we chouse
houses which are hote and drie. Also to spread & straw flow-
ers, hearbes, branches of trees which are hote and drie, as
commonly Sage, Lauender, Marigold, Spinnage, and
such like.

Under the signification of the aire in this place, wee vnderstand
all manner of windes, little and great, the which
is most necessary to be considered, because they doe not one-
ly alter and change the body, but also the spirit. It goeth
by the nose to the braine, by the mouth to the heart, by the
pores of the skinne and moving of the artiers, through all
the body, It furnisheth the aliments to our spirits : For
this the diuine *Hippocrates* noteth, that the good and euill
disposition

disposition of our spirits and humors, dependeth vppon the constitution of the ayre and winds. For we see where there is great trouble and variety of windes, the people are arrogant, difficult to be gouerned, and very cruell.

Pe. Seeing that of the wind those accidents fall, let mee know what is winde?

Hippocrates.

Iob. *Hippocrates* saith, it is no other thing but an vnsustainable motion of the ayre, the which being stirred by some motion it purgeth.

Pe. What nature is it of?

Io. It is hote and drie, like as it is made of an exhalation hote and drie.

Pe. How many diuers sorts of winds are there?

Io. There are foure principall, to witte, *Eurus* from the East, hote and drie : *Zephyrus* from the West, colde and humide : *Auster* from the South, hote and humide, putrefactive, it passeth by the sea *Mediterrane* : *Boreas* from the North, cold and drie, resisting against putrifaction.

Arist. attributeth two collaterall to each of those foure, and so in all maketh twelue, some make two and thirtie, like as the mariners, but the contemplation of these matters is not much requisite in a Chyrurgion.

Bodin.

Bodin saith, in his *Common-wealth*, that the winds make great variety in vs, for in countreyes where the wind is violent and great, the people are turbulent in spirit : and there where the winds are not so violent, the people are of a more quiet spirit.

Pe. What meane you by scituation or place?

Io. I meane, as to be scituated towards the sea stinkes, dools, molles, and such as you haue heard. Also those who haue no other aspect, but either to the South which is humide and putrefactive, or to the West which is colde and humide. Also to be dwelling in ground which is fatte, the aire is hote and humide ; and in ground that is full of sand, hote and drie.

Titus Livius.

Titus Livius saith, that the places change the nature of our bodies,

bodies, as those which dwell in mountains differ from those which dwell in lower places : Also saith he, those countries which are fertile, the men are ordinarily cowards, given to lust : the countries and places barren, the people are more hardy and ingenious, quicke spirited.

Arist. saith, those that dwell in cold regions, are proude, cruell, and barbarous in their manners, very strong : in hote countreys they are wise, and more fearefull; those which dwell in lowe Marsh Countreys are dull, sleepe, the which proceedeth of the disposition of the aire.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of Meate, and Drinke.

Pe. Seeing the aliments are no lesse to be considered for the preservation of the health, then the aire; it is therefore necessarie to knowe what is aliment, with diuers sortes thereof?

Io. Aliment, is that which augmenteth and nourisheth our bodies.

Pe. How many kinds of aliments are there?

Io. There are diuers sorts; flesh, fishe, hearbes, fruites, corne, drinke naturall and artificiall, condiments simple, and composed.

Pe. Are they all vsed after one intention?

Io. No, they are of diuers natures, and must bee vsed in diuers manners, according to the temperature of the body, as writeth *Cardanus*.

Pe. What sort of nouriture ought we to vse most commonly?

Io. That which nourisheth well, ingendereth good iuice: of the which *Galen* hath written in his booke of the Faculty of Aliments, and in the booke of Conservation of health, as

Galen lib. de facult. aliment.

also

also *Hippocrates* in diuers places.

Pe. In the vling of Aliments, how many things are to be obserued.

Io. Pyne ; to witte, the goodnesse, quantitie, qualitie, *Trallianus lib.* vse and custome, appetite, order, howze, age, and time of the 7. yeere.

Pe. First then, we must consider, that he who would haue his body entertained in good health, must vse meats of good nouriture or aliment : then tell me what is aliment which ingendereth good iuice?

Io. It is that which is light of digestion that nourisheth well, maketh little excrements, and ingendereth good bloud, as saith *Cardanus*, such as Capons, Partridges, Larkes, Weale, Gutton, Kiods, yolkes of Egges, Fesants, Quailles, Tortozalls, all mountaine birdes, being larded with sage or hyslope : Also some kind of fishes may bee vled, as witnesseth *Cardane*; such as Soles, Trouts, Guggins, & Perches. Good bread of wheate, that is neither ouer new, nor too stale, *Lib. 3. de sanitae tuenda.* as counsaileth *Auicen* : for ouer new and hote bread doth digest euill, altereth the body, and ingendereth obstructions, sending vapours and fumes to the head. And being too old drieth too much, and remaineth long in the stomacke. In breaking of this bread, it were good to mire some pouder of Carway, fennell, or Anniseedes, specially for such as are euill disposed and weake stomacked. Such as bee well disposed, oftentimes euill bread or drinke commeth in good season, like as it happened to King *Ptolomy* wandring thzough Egypt, who did cate of sheapheards bread, which hee did esteeme the best bread that euer he did cate. Likewise, *Darius.* Darius flying from Alexander, and being soze thirsty, did drinke muddy water, wherein had been thzowne a great number of dead carkasses, yet hee thought with himselfe that hee neuer did drinke better drinke.

Pe. What drinke is meetest to be vled?

Io. Good cleane wine that is of good colour and taste, moderately taken, for it hath the vertue to nourish, strengthen, *corro-*

corrobozate the naturall heate, tempereth the humors, and purgeth both by sweate and vrine, giueth appetite, helpeth the facultie concoctrix, and maketh men ieyefull; and olde wine is best being hote in the third degree, and new wine in the first degree. The strongest wine hath most heate, and the sweetest wine vnhealthfull. Yet burnt wine that is boyled with suger, is very good for old weake people, who haue their naturall heate decayed, it nourisheth in those good blood, but wine must be moderatly taken by all men, for being ouer largely taken, it hurteth the engine with the whole sences of the body, weakneth the same, and rendereth it dull and hebet, debiliteth the perues and braines, prouoketh trembling and shaking of the members, spasme, apoplexie, palsie, and oftentimes suddaine death: so it is meetest both for body and goods, to be moderatly taken.

Henri. us Ranzouius de confer. Valetud.

But, because euery countrey or nation doth not afforde wine, therefore in stead thereof we vse Hydromell composed of water and hony: or Hypocras made of water, white bread, suger, with a little hony: or Tisen made of water, Barley, Licourish, and a few prunes boyled together. Also beere and Ale that is olde, cleane, and well made, which is now our ordinary drinke.

Pe. Haue our ancient writers made any mention of Ale?

Io. Galen or Hippocrates hath made no mention; yet I reade, that the old Arabians did esteeme much of it, and inuented diuers formes of compounding it, yet much different from our forme.

Anicen, Auerroys, with diuers others, but specially *Magninus Mediolanensis* hath largely written of it: saying, it hath great force to quench thirst, loose the belly, temper the body, and prouoke sleepe, and is as necessary as meate, both to humect the body, and restore that humiditie which is dissolved, as also to put downe grosse meates to the lower parts of the stomacke.

Anicen, Auerroes.

Magninus, his regiment of health.

Henricus Ranzouius in his regiment of health.

Pe. What sort of grain is Ale most commonly composed of?

Io. Of Barly, Dates, or Wheate; but according to the diuersity

diuersity of the graine, it is of diuers qualities: that which is composed of barlie and oates, doe lesse nourish, and ingendereth fewer obstructions and ventosities, then that of wheate. And that Ale which is most grosse and thicke, is worst: that which is thinne and cleare is healthfull, yet it is more grosse than wine, and more harder to digest. Also it maketh more obstructions: that which is new made, doth engender inflammations, wind, vapours, & dolour of the head, specially being immoderately taken; but being moderately taken it digesteth well, nourisheth much, and maketh people fatte.

I find that our auncients in default of other graines, did make their drinke of the graine called *Lolium*, in the vulgar language called Rye or Darnell, it groweth commonly among wheate, and of all those graines it is the worst. It prouoketh great dolour and giddinesse of the head, hurteth the Nerves and sinews, as saith Ouid and Virgill.

Ouid. 1. Fasto

Virg. 1. Geor.

Plini. lib. 18.

cap. 7.

Infelix Lolium, & Steriles dominantur Avena.

Pe. Which are the elements that ingender euill hu-

iors?
Iob. All such as are of euill digestion, like as Bacon, yet *Galen* greatly commendeth it for the similitude it hath with humane flesh: but it hath bene found by experience, that the great vsage thereof sometime causeth leprosie, because as is alleadged, some swine among all other beasts are most subiect to that sicknesse, for the which, as saith *Tertullian* and *Baptist Mantuan*, *Moses* did forbidde it to the Iewes, because they were already subiect to that sicknesse. Salt brese is also found vnhealthfull, as also Hearts flesh, Hares, Hammies, Goates, Geese, and all sorts of water fowles, Cheese, Fruit, all sort of *Ligumena*, with all sorts of bread, except that which is made of wheate, as writeth *Galen*. As touching the propriety of euery sort of aliment, ye shall heare at large in my treatise intituled, *The poore mans Guide*.

Tertullian.

Bapt. st. Moses.

Henricus Ran-

zouus de em-

ser. & aletud.

Gal. Lib. de

bona & malo

succo.

Pe. What meane you by the quality of meate?

Io. That we neuer create more than contenteth nature, and not

not according to appetite. *Hippocrates* counselleth a man *Hippo. 2. apho.*
 who will live in health, not to fill himselfe too full of meate,
 neither bee slowe to exercise and trauell, in so doing hee shall
 seldome be sicke: for as *Cicero* and some other olde writers *C. cero.*
 say, that we should eate to live, but not live to eate, as many
 doe now a dayes, like as the one halfe of the people do burst
 with morning drinckes, breake-fastes, dinners, afternoones
 drincking, supper and collation: so that they give no let
 to nature, to digest that meate which they have formerly ta-
 ken, which both weaketh their bodies, and offendeth God by
 such gluttonie: the other sort of people be halfe hungry, who
 labour and trauell soze, yet wee doe see they be lesse subject
 to sicknesse, and live longer. *Possidonius* saith, that intempe- *Possidonius.*
 rancie and gluttonie wealeth the body, dulleth the mind, and
 bringeth soone old age, whereof proceedeth this saying,

Many more persons by gluttony are slaine,

Then is by warre, famine, or other paine.

For, saith he, there is no riches nor treasure so great, which in
 small time may not be swallowed up in their bellies, & at last
 bringeth man to servitude. *Cato* forbiddeth feasting and ban- *Cato.*
 quetting, for diuers respects: First, it is chargeable, and un-
 certaine whether it purchaseth the fauour of him who is bid-
 den, or displeasure to those that are not bidden, with diuers
 other discommodities which are set down in the methode of
 Ciuill Politie written by the Bishop of *Caletane*.

Pe. Is there alwaies a iust measure to be obserued in
 meate?

To. No, for in those which are well wee vse according to
 their temperature; and in the sicke according to the diuersity
 of the sicknes.

Galen doth counsell in long sicknesse, the sicke to vse a
 more larger dyet; and in shorter sicknesse a lesser diet, and
 when the sicknesse is in the vigoze force, there must be a be-
 ry spare dyet vsed, as saith *Hippocrates*.

Cardanus is of opinion, that euery man should eate but *Gal. Lib.*
 little at once, for the concoction is the better made, and *Glauc.*
 fewer *Hipocra. 5.*
aph.
Carda. Lib. 1.
de sem. lucid.

fewer superfluities and excrements will remaine.

The olde Remaines were accustomed at certaine times to suppe in their open closes and courts, to let the people see their great sobriety.

Pe. what doest thou obserue touching the qualitie of meat?

Io. In those people which are well, according to their temperature : and in those which are sicke, according to the diuersity of the disease : in children, aliments that bee hote and humide : in hote diseases, colde meates : and in colde sicknesses, hote meates, and so forth.

Pe. What do you obserue touching custome or vs?

Io. Custome should bee obserued ; for, as saith some of our ancients, custome is a second nature : we see, that which is accustomed, although it be not ouer good, yet is needfull to be obserued : and if it bee altered, it must bee done by little and little, as saith *Hippocrates*. I haue diuers times in other countries seene men become sicke, by changing of their aliment and custome. *Hippocrates* doth counsell vs to eate of that wherunto we haue best appetite, although it be worse then that wherunto we haue no appetite: for it is better saith he, because the stomacke doth more quickly and better digest it, than that which we take unwillingly.

Hippoc. 9. aph.

Hippo Lib. 1. aph. 3.

Pe. Thou knowest that good order is to bee obserued in all things, and cheifly in meate and drinke, for the great effects that ensue of them: then tell me what order should be vsed in eating and drinking?

Cardan. Lib. de sanitate tuenda.

Hippoc. Lib. de victu. in morbis acutis.

Io. *Cardane* counsaileth vs, to eate that first which is easiest to be digested, otherwise we force our stomacke. *Hippocrates* doth counsaile vs, to vse light and humide things in the morning, to open the belly : and such things at night as nourisheth the body : And it is best euer to eate before yee drinke, for the digestion is best wrought in so doing.

Pe. Is there any time obserued when man should eat, and drinke?

Io. It is alwayes best after some exercise, and then to eat moderately, the exercise helpeth the digestion, and augmenteth

teeth the naturall heate: in sicke folkes, the time is obserued according to the force of y^e sicknes & custome of the diseased. Yet in the beginning of the excesse, it is best to bee very sparing in eating and drinking, except in great necessity; some after meate it is best neither to write, reade, nor vse any profound meditation, for such thinges returneth the naturall heate which should be occupied in digestion.

Pe. What obserue you touching age?

Io. I obserue in children humide aliments are best, for in vsing of ouer drie meates, you drie vp the body, and so hinder the growing. To young men who are exceeding hote and drie, aliments of contrarie qualities must be vsed like as to olde, who are cold and drie, we should vse meates that humecteth the parts solide. In like manner, yong people should *Hippo. aphor. 1.* eat oftener and more than olde, because they haue abundance of naturall heate. *Hippocrates* saith, that olde people fast easily; next, those who are of manly age; then adolescence and young men; but last of all children, for long fasting heateth the blood.

Pe. What distinction make you touching the time of the yeere?

Io. In winter which is colde and humide, we should vse meates hote and drie, and in greater quantitie than in summer, and drinke little and good: in the Spring time which is hote and humide, we should eat lesse and drinke more, but weaker, vsing meates of good nourishing: In Sommer, which is hote and drie, wee must vse meates colde and humide, diminishing the eating, and augmenting the drinke, more then in the Spring. In Autumne, which is cold and drie, we should begin to eat a little more, and drinke lesse then in sommer or spring time.

Pe. What is drinke.

Io. It is any liquoz which appeaseth the thirst, and mixeth the meate in the stomacke.

Pe. What is thirst?

Io. It is an appetite of a thing colde and humide: for, the
C
Drinke

drinke doth humect and refresh either actually present, or potentially to come. *Plinie* saith, that hote drinke is contrary to nature, and we must not drinke so soone as we be set down at the table, for that doth moue and augment catarrhes and distillations, and drinking when wee goe to sleepe doth the like.

Crinus of
drunkards.

Here we must obserue in drinking, that wee neuer drinke so much till it swimme in the stomacke, as diuers doe now a dayes, who drinke for pleasure, of whome *Crinus* hath made mention: saying, the first draught quencheth the thirst; the second, maketh man ioyefull; the third, drunke; and the fourth, putteth him cleane out of his senses.

Macrobius.

Macrobius maketh mention, that eating doth make a man quiet, and drinking causeth men to clatter. Drinke moderately taken, hath three offices: first, it helpeth the digestion; secondly, it mingleth the meate in the stomacke: thirdly, it bringeth to the liuer, vaines, and artiers. Of it, there be two sorts, the one doth nourish, like as Wine, Beere, and Ale: the other doth not, as water.

Pe. What kind of hearbs are meetest to be vsed?

Atius.

Io. The Arabians doe commend Sage, Mint, Marjoram, Rosemary, Pimpernell, Carway, Fennell. *Atius* permits Colwort, or redde coale, but hee defends Leekes, and Onions, because they are vapoorous: hee forbiddeth also colde hearbes, such as Lettise, Poppie, and others of that quality.

CHAP. III.

Of Moouing and Exercife.

Pe. **V**hat meane you in this place by moouing?

Io. All kind of voluntary exercise, as labouring, running, resting, playing, wrestling, leaping, dancing,

ring, and fencing.

Pe. Dorth those exercises bring any commodities to our bodies?

Ioh. In right vsing of them, there commeth great commodities for the preservation of health, and in euill vsing of them, great and perillous accidents. *Hippocrates* saith, who *Hip. rates.* desireth health, let him not bee dull to labour, for a man may not bee healthfull, if hee trauell not to dissipate the extremities of the third digestion, that is much recommended by *Galen*: but hee blames all exercise that moues the body vnequally.

Pe. What particuler commoditie haue we of exercise?

Io. It helpeth the naturall health, it quickeneth the spirit, it openeth the pores of our body whereby the excrements *Robertus Grossetestus* are consumed and wasted, it comforteth all our members, it *peti. s. regi. fanila.* confirmeth the inspiration, and other actions of our bodies.

Pe. What time is most meete for exercise?

Io. It is best before meate, or long time after meate, for the stomacke being full of meate, it hindreth the digestion. *Fachius* reporteth, that the schollers of *Almaine* playe immediately after meate, which causeth them to bee full of humors, crudities, scabs, and vlcers. *Hippocrates* saith, that labour, meate, drinke, sleeping, playing, and women, ought to be moderately vsed, like as all other exercises, the exercise should be afore or long after meate, as yee haue heard when the digestion is perfect in the stomacke and vaines: if otherwise it be vsed, there gathereth aboundance of crudities and chollericke humors: the exercise duely done, it purgeth the body of many excrements: the exercise ought to be done in this manner, after yee rise in the morning yee shall walke a little, to the end that the excrements of the first digestion may fall into the intestines, and those of the second into the bladder, that done, spitte out all in the mouth, throate, and stomacke, wash thy hands, face, and eyes, with water of Eye-bright mixed with white Wine, vse frictions on the thighes and legges downe, euer to diuert the vapours which ascend,

ascend, write not, nor read presently after meate, rub your face with a rough cloth, to cause it to exhale, and dissipate the vapours which are ascended.

Pe. What sayest thou touching rest?

Io. Like as exercise duely used, hath great force for the conservation of health : so on the contrary, much rest not only dulls the principall instruments of our body, but also of our mind, saith the Poet.

Variam semper dat otia mentem.

It maketh many crudities, and thereupon great abundance of great humors. Galen reckoneth idlenesse to be the cause of many colde maladies, as also the mother of many mischiefes, the which were too long to recite in this place.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Sleeping and Waking.

*Lib. i. sympt.
causis Paul.
Ægin.*

Pe. What is sleepe?

Io. Galen saith, it is a rest and quietnesse of the body, and chiefly of the spirits and faculty animall, fortifying the strength, helping the concoction, correcting the perturbations of the mind, and humecting the internal parts of the body.

Pe. What is the cause of sleeping?

*Hippo. lib. i. de
insomnis.*

Io. The chiefe cause is in the braines, when the vapours ascend thereunto, and by the coldnesse of the braines, those vapours are turned vnto humors, the which closeth the conduits of the perues.

Pe. What things do prouoke sleepe?

Io. All such thinges as make abundance of vapours, like as wine, Ale full of barme, milke, and all things that are moist and colde, and commonly after meate vapours ascend first to the head, and so prouoke sleepe : for this cause some

use

Use a little oyle of Roses, and Camphier, mixed with womans milke, and apply it to the temples of the head.

Pe. Doe all men sleepe alike in quantity?

Io. That is according to the temperature of the person, for some sleepe longer, and some shorter.

Pe. What time is ordinarily ordayned for man to sleepe? *Lib. de tuend.*

Io. Seauen, or eight houres, some nyne as sayth *Galen.* *valetud. cap. 3*
Plinie. *Plinie* saith, that in sleeping we spend the halfe of our time, it dulleth the head, it hindereth to digest the crudities, it gathereth abundance of excrements, it hebeteth & maketh grosse the spirits of olde folkes and children, it retaineth the excrements; in sleeping couer well thy head, and fete, for cold of the extremities is very contrary vnto those that haue their braines cold and humide.

Plinie in the 7. of his naturall History sayd, that Epimenides did sleepe in a caue the space of 57. yeeres, being wearyed, and by the heate of the Sunne; yet when he wakened, he thought he did sleepe but one day.

Pe. What time is most meete to sleepe?

Io. Hippocrates, Aetius, and others, are of this opinion, to walke on the day, and sleepe on the night, for that is the institution of nature; Also that sleepe should begin two houres after supper, such time is most meete for the digestion of our meats, for by sleepe the naturall heate is in the center of the body. Sleeping on the day filleth the braines full of humidity, also it hindereth the concoction, of the which commeth ganting, risting, winds, heauines of the members, chiefly of the head, and diuers sicknesses, as catarhes. *Cardane* counsaileth to sleepe in the day, but meaneth of such folke as doe not rest in the night. *Not good to sleepe in the day.*

Pe. When men goe to sleepe, which side should they lye vpon?

Io. First on the right side, because thereby the meat goeth more easily to the bottome of the stomacke; thereafter on the other side; in no wise on the face, for that causeth defluxions in the eyes, as saith *Iesus*; nor on y^e backe, for that heats *Lib. de oculis.*

the great vaine Caue, and sendeth vapours to the head, maketh hote in the raines, the apoplexie, maire, grauell, and diuers other accidents : in no wise the hands vnder the head, as some doe, for that causeth defluxion of humors on the lights : sleepe not soone after meate.

Pe. What is to be obserued in sleeping, of sicke folkes?

Io. Hippocrates saith, those sicknesses wherein sleeping is painfull, esteeme them to bee dangerous and mortall; if not painfull, it is a good token.

Pe. Is it needfull to obserue dreames in sleeping?

*Libro de som-
nijs.*

Io. Cardane saith, dreames are not to bee neglected, because sometime by that wee knowe the affections of the humors, which duraneth : as for example, the sanguine dreames are merrie, the cholericke dreames are fiery, the melancholique sadde, the flegmaticque cold.

Pe. What meanest thou by waking?

Hippocrates.

The cause of waking, is the drines of the braines.

Io. Waking should be moderately vsed, for much waking corrupteth the braines, and the good temperature, it debilitateth the senses, altereth the spirits, moueth crudities, alterations, heauines of the head, resolution of all the body, dissipateth the naturall heate. Hippocrates saith, that sleeping and waking if they be excessive, they are euill and perilous : so mediocrity is best in all things : the cause of waking is drynesse and heate of the braines, it dryeth the habitude of the bodye : thus much concerning sleeping and waking.

CHAP. V.

Of Repletion and Euacuation.

Pe. **T**Hou shalt vnderstand that Repletion, Plenitude, and Aboundance, is all one matter : Therefore I would know, how many kinds of repletion there are?

Io. There

Io. There are two, to wit, in quantity and quality.

Pe. What meane you by repletion in quality?

Io. I meane, when the quality of meat exceedeth without the humors.

Pe. What meane you by quantity?

Io. I meane, when meat, drinke, and humors, are in so great quantity, that nature cannot overcome, and it is called excesse or sacietie, of the which commeth most infinite maladies.

Pe. How many kinds are thereof?

Io. Two; the one of meat, called *Sacietas* of the latines, the other of humors.

Pe. Is sacietie of meat otherwise diuided?

Io. It is yet diuided in two; The one is called *Sacietas ad vasa*, that is, when the stomacke and vaines are so full that it maketh them ouerlarge, as happeneth to them that are alwayes eating and drinkeing in such quantity, that they are constraigned to vomit it vp againe: for that not onely offendeth God, but weakeneth their own bodies. Two sorts of excesse of meat.

The other sort of plenitude is called *Sacietas ad vires*, which is, when there is so great aboundance, that the vertue, force, or faculties of our bodies cannot digest.

Pe. Tell mee what the qualitie of repletion of humors is?

Io. It is, when all the humors, or one alone, exceedeth and dimaneth, such as are good and lovable.

Pe. How callest thou it, when all, or one onely dimaneth?

Io. When all, it is called *Plethore* by the Greekes, and *Plenitudo* by the Latines: when one dimaneth, as the vitious humors, it is called *Caco-chymia* or iuice vitious, either of the choller, flegme, or melancholique.

Pe. What is euacuation or inanition?

What euacuation is.

Io. It is an out-drawing and taking away of the humors which dimanes and molesteth our bodies, which are euacuated either vniuersally or particularly.

Pe. Which are the vniuersall euacuations?

Io. Those which are done by purgation, vniing, bleeding, vomiting, scarification, exercise, friction, bathing, medicaments, digerents, hemerodes, menstruous, purgations: also by the act venerian, in like manner by abstinency of meat, but that is done by accident.

Pe. Tell me by what manner the euacuation vniuersall is done?

Ioh. By purgations, and by medicaments catartickes accommodated to euery kind of humor, by things diureticks, vomitors, things which prouoketh spitting: and diuers others, which I leaue to the learned mediciner: Phlebotomie, how it is vsed, when, and after what fashion, yee shall heare at length in the sixt Booke: like as of frictions the body is euacuated by the immoderate act of Venus, like as diuers other mischeifes ensueth therevppon. And first of all, it is hurtfull for the eyes, and all the organs sensitiues: the nerues, the thorax, the neires, and diuers other parts of the body, maketh men forgetfull, prouoketh the gout, dolours, nephretickes, and diuers diseases of the bladder, bringeth soone old age, consequently death.

The mis-
cheifes of Ve-
nus.

Galen saith, that those beasts who often ioyne together, are of shorter life than those who ioyne seldomer: it doth hurt being immoderately vsed, not onely to the man, but to all animals. Plinie telleth of two that dyed sodainly in the act venerian: women are alwayes better disposed, saith Hippocrates?

Plinie.

Notwithstanding the Bishop of Illerden in Spaine, in his Booke intituled *Consilium fraternitatis*, reporteth that a woman in his time did complaine to the king of Arragon, that her husband did know her thirty times a day, and her husband confessing the same, was commanded vppon paine of death not to know her aboue six times a day; least the woman should be in danger of her life. Wherefore saith he, we are not so much to maruaile at the ability of the husband, as at the complaint of his wife, seeing the verse sayth,

Et

Et lassata viris nondum satiata recessit.

And also in the 30. chapter of Salomons Proverbs: three things are insatiable, and the fourth was neuer satisfied. But, because such as delight in this pastime, will formalize; as also, because the vsage hereof is sometime profitable to the Chyrurgion; I will not altogether condemne it: but like as I haue set downe the discommodities, so shall ye heare the commodities hereof, according as some learned men haue written. *2 Prou 30. Lib. 1. cap. 15.*

Paulus Aegineta sayth, the vsage of Venus moderately vsed, maketh the body more agill and quicke, it softeneth the instruments being hard, it openeth the conduits, it purgeth the flegme, and is profitable for all phlegmaticke passions, and heavines of the head, driueth away anger, sadness, melancholique imaginations, nocturnals, and procureth appetite. *Haliabes l. 5. Philippus Gauiolus.*

Aetius calleth it a worke of nature, and being moderately vsed, doth good. It euacuateth the sperme, which otherwise might become to some venomous qualities; & so deliuereth man of many euils, as Galen saith. *Lib. 3. cap. 7. Henrius Ranwinus.*

Hippocrates reporteth, that the first act of Venus ceaseth many great sicknesses: abstinency doth also euacuate the body both in the sicke and in the whole. The which is diuided in two wayes: The first, when yee neither eat nor drinke at all, and that is called abstinence. The second, when wee take meate, but not so much as is needfull for the conseruation of the vertue, and that is properly called dyet. *Gal. 5. de locis aff. etis.*

Pe. Which are the particular euacuations?

Io. When the braines are discharged by the roose of the mouth, and nose evidently, by the eyes and eares obscurely: the lights by the trach artiers by spitting, & stomake by vomiting; the intestines by the excrements at the fundament; the liuer, splene, kidnies, and bladder, by vrine; the priuy parts of women, by naturall purgation, or monethly courses

courses: as y^e shall heare in my Booke of Womens diseases.

CHAP. VI.

¶ Of the Passions and Perturbations of the Mind.

Pe. **A** *Rist.* doth diuide the mind into two parts; to wit, that of reason, and the other without reason. It is subiect to diuers passions, therefore shew me what thou callest the passion of the mind?

Ioh. It is a suffering of the mind by the iust course, the which maketh maruailous mutations in the body, and therefore most necessary to be remarked, because of the great chaunces which ensue therevppon, as we may perceiue by

*Agr' ppa lib. 1
de occult. phi-
loso.*

Arist. who sayth, that the motions and perturbations of the mind, bringeth great mutations into the naturall heate.

*Hippo. 6. epid.
Gal. 2. de sum.
can. cap. 5. &
method. 2.*

*Henri. us Ran-
zen. us de con-
se. Valetud.*

In like manner *Hippocrates*, and *Galen* do shew, that many dye by the motions and perturbations of the mind: for they either dilate, or comprime the heart, for y^e which the vitall spirits are rather cast forth by the great dilatation of the hart, or els retained by the great compression thereof; amongst the which, ioy, hope, and loue, casteth the spirits outwardly: sadness, and feare recalleth them inwardly to the center of the body in diuers manners.

Pe. How many such passions are there?

Io. There be diuers: But heere I will tell of such which are most common, like as mirth, sadness, feare, anger, shame, fastnes, enuie, hatred, hope, and loue.

Pe. What

Pe. What is mirth?

Ioh. It is an affection of the mind, of a thing good and pleasant, by the which the blood and spirits are pleasantly spread for the present goodnes, by the dilatation of the heart: but if it be great and last any long space, oftentimes death ensueth, because the heart is altogether destitute of blood. *Arist.* reporteth of a woman named Policrita, that dyed for ioy. I reade that one Philippides a writer of Comedies, being contending with an other, and ouercame him beyond his expectation, did die for ioy.

Policrita.

Philippides.

Valerius Maximus writeth of two women, one Chilon a Lacedemonian, and Diagore a Rhodian, that did die for ioy, for the happy returning of their sonnes from the warres, as also because they had overcome their enemies.

Valerius lib. 9

cap. 12.

Chilon.

Diagore.

Gellius reporteth of one Diagoras, when hee did see his three Sonnes crowned at Olympus for their vertue, died for ioy, embracing them in presence of the whole people. These accidents happen oftener to women, then to men, because they haue the heart more cold, & the fewer vitall spirits, & so doth sooner dissipate, and so die. In like manner, men who be faint hearted and feeble spirited, yet ioye moderately used, worketh many good things in vs. It resuffocateth the spirit, helpeth the concoction, and all the habitude of the body, fortifieth the vertue animall; but much laughing is hurtfull, chiefly to yong children.

Pe. What is sadnes?

Io. It is an affection that doth reuoke the naturall heat inwardly, to the center of the body, but at great leisure it presseth the heart, dryeth vp the body, that hardly the spirit vitall can gouerne as befoze, and is so weakened, that it may not go with the blood thzough the rest of the body, so wasteth the bodye in such sort, that it becommeth atrofied and leane, wherupon death often ensueth.

Henricus

Ranzovius de

conser. valetu.

Cicero sayth, it were a great good amongst men to liue on eating and drinking, but it were a greater good if men could liue without sadnesse and melancholly, because the meate we

We eat doth make corruption of humors in our body, but sadness and melancholly doth consume the flesh, bones, & gnaweth the entrails, of the which diuers dye. Salomon sayth, a sad spirit dryeth vp the bones, and a merry heart reioyceth the mind.

Plinius reporteth, that one *Petrus Rutilius* after hee had heard that his father had a repulse of his petitions, died with sadness. *Marcus Lepidus*, after his wife was diuorced from him, did likewise dye; with *Elye* the high priest of the *Ierus*, and diuers others.

Pe. What is feare?

Cornelius Agrippa, de occult. philof. lib. 1. cap. 53.

Io. It is a motion which reuoketh the spirit to the center, to the heart by the artiers, which suffocateth the vitall and naturall heat, causing trembling, whereof sometime the belly loseth, and sometimes death ensueth.

So I find that feare maketh the like accidents which melancholly do, but greater, and in shorter time it draweth the blood and spirits to y heart, the visage becometh pale, the extremities cold, with vniuersall trembling, intercepting the voyce, with palpitation of the heart, being suffocated by the great abundance of blood and spirits, that it cannot moue freely.

Zenophon.

Galen sayth, that this passion happeneth oftener to women, & those of cold temperature, then to others. *Zenophon* sayth, that the great torments of feare are more vehement, then all present aduersities. Diuers learned men do affirme that men haue growen white in 25. yeares onely by the apprehension and feare of death.

Antonius de abditis morb. causis.

Antonius Benuenentus writeth, of a boy that dyed for feare, by seeing two men clad in blacke going to y stole: the which boy dyed eight dayes after about the same houre, like as doth the most part.

Pe. What is anger?

Io. It is a suddaine reuocation or calling backe of the spirits, to the externall parts with an appetite of reuenge: or it is an ardent heat or ebullition of blood in the heart, with desire

fire of reuenge: it enflameth the whole habitude of the body, causeth feuers by reason of the inflammation of the heart, the spirits and blood are troubled, as also the braines and nerues, of the which commeth frenzies, and other euill accidents, it bindeth the heart and lights.

Pe. What is shametaines?

Io. It is a motion of our body mixed with anger, by the which one knowing and suspecting his own fault, would be angrie with himselfe, seeing the iudgement of others. *In Haly Abbas Lib. 5.*
this passion the blood returneth in, and suddainly doth come out, the cheekes and face becommeth red, of this passion some dye. Plinie telleth that one Diodorus professor of Dialecticke, who hauing a question propounded vnto him, and not answering as he should, dyed for shame. *Plinius. Diodorus.*
Valerius Maximus reporteth, that Homer dyed for shame, because he could not answer a question propounded to him by certaine filthers. *Valerius Maximus.*

Pe. What is enuie?

Io. It is a heauy oppression of the heart, angrie at the felicity of some other man.

Pe. What is hatred?

Io. It is an old malicious habitude bred of anger, by the which the heart would reuenge the iniurie.

Pe. What is hope?

Io. It is a motion, by the which the heart desireth the good future: it openeth and dilateth the heart, like as toy for the present good.

Pe. What is Loue?

Io. It is a feruent motion, by the which the heart desireth ardently, and endeauoureth to draw vnto it, a good, assured, and apparant, not much different from hope, except the loue be moze ardent.

The



THE THIRD BOOKE,

*Of things altogether contrary to
our Nature.*

*Which containeth three Chapters. By Peter
Lowe Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Maladie.
2. Of the cause of Maladie.
3. Of Accidents and Sumptomes.

Pet.



Haue discoursed with you of Naturall things, whereof our body is composed; as also of Vnnaturall things, which may alter our body being not duly vsed: So, now I intend to speak vnto you of things which are altogether contrary to our nature, and destroyeth it. For the which

*Galet 2. de lē-
per & 1. de
sump. om. caus.*

cause *Galen* calleth them things contrary to nature. Therefore let me know what things be those which be altogether contrary to our nature, with their number?

Ioh. They be three; to wit, Malady, cause of Maladie, and accidents of Malady.

Chap. I.

CHAP. I.

Of Maladie.

Pe. Seeing thou callest the first of the three things contrary to Nature *Maladie*, then tell me what is the definition thereof.

Io. It is a disposition against nature, which hurteth manifestlie the operations of the body. Definition.

Pe. What is health?

Io. It is a constitution according to nature, which maketh the actions of our body perfect.

Pe. How many kinds of Maladies are there?

Io. Three; to wit, Intemperie, Euill confirmation, and Solution of continuitie. Three kinds of Maladies.

Pe. What is Intemperie?

Io. It is a malady in the similar parts, digressing from the owne temperature.

Pe. By how many wayes was it diuided?

Io. Two wayes; to wit, either by the simple intemperie, or by the aboundance of the humors onely, as by colde, hote, moist, and drye.

Pe. What is euill confirmation?

Io. It is a vice in the parts organickes, either in figure, magnitude, or scituation, as for example, that which should be naturally right, is oblique, and so forth: as if a part were augmented or diminished contrary to nature: also in the number of the parts, as if a man had five fingers, or six: also in the scituation or collection, as if parts naturally ioyned were disioyned, as happeneth in dislocations. What euill confirmation is.

Pe. Which is the third kind of Malady?

Io. Solution of continuitie both in the similar and organicke parts, which haue diuers names, according to the variety of the parts where they are.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of the cause of Maladie.

The cause of
Malady.

Pe. **W**hat is Maladie?

Io. It is some affection which maketh sickness, of the which some are externall, some internall.

Pe. Which are the externall?

Io. They be called procatactickes, or primitives, as strokes, falles, wounds, shot, and such like : as also euill nouriture.

Pe. Which are the internals?

Io. They be two antecedents, and coniuncts.

Pe. Which are the antecedents?

Io. Euill humors in the body.

Pe. Which are the coniuncts?

Io. It is that which maketh the sickness presently, and is alwayes accompanied with the sickness.

Pe. How cometh the cause of Malady?

Io. There are some who haue it from their mothers wombe and from their parents, which wee call hereditarie sickness : some doe ingender after our birth, as by the euill regiment of life, strokes, and falles, as ye haue heard.

CHAP. III.

¶ Of Accidents and Symptomes.

*Lib. de symp-
tom. differen.*

Pe. **W**hat call you Accident or Symptome?

Io. Galen saith, that symptome is any thing that chaunceth to man by nature : so the causes interns of sicknesses, may be called symptomes.

Pe. How many kinds of Symptomes are there?

Io. Three

10. *Three*; the first, is when the action is offended; which Three kinds
may be diuided three wayes: that is, either by aboliti- of symptomes.
on, diminution, or depriuation. As for example, in blind-
nesse the sight is abolished. Diminished, as suffusion, which
happeneth in the beginning of the cataract of the eye. De-
priueth, as for a certaine time, like as in changing the sim-
ple affections of our body, or the whole habitude from one ex-
treame to another: as the naturall heat to the inflammati-
on, the scabbe of the flesh to leprosie. The third is, in the
vice of the excrements by immoderate extention or expulsion,
as the hemoroids, the purgations or monethly courses
of women, and vrines. These or either of these be-
ing retained or euacuated ouer much, maketh
many great and euill accidents
in the body.



F

THE



THE FOVRTH BOOKE:

*Of Tumors, or Aposthumes against
Nature ; the Contents whereof containeth
XVI. Chapters ; By PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Tumors in generall.
2. Of Phlegme.
3. Of Epinitis Terminthus, and Theribinthus.
4. Of Furuncle, or Dothin, which proceedeth of phlegme.
5. Of Anthrax, or Carbuncle.
6. Of Gangrena, and Histiomen.
7. Of Sphasshell.
8. Of the extirpation of fingers or toes.
9. Of the Tumor called Herisipilis.
10. Of Herpes.
11. Of Ædema.
12. Of the windy Tumor which proceedeth of Ædema.
13. Of the watery Tumor which proceedeth of Ædema.
14. Of Atheorema, Steotema, Melleriferis.
15. Of the Melancholique Tumor, called Schirre.
16. Of Cancer, or Carcinoma.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Causes, Signes, and Curation of
Aposthumes in Generall.

Pet.



Now it shall be necessary that I instruct thee
in the exercise of Chyrurgery : For the
better vnderstanding of the same, I will
beginne at Tumors against Nature, in de-
maunding first of thee what is a Tumor or
an Aposthume?

The definitiō
of aposthums.

To. It is a disease composed of three diuers maladies ; to
wit,

Wit, euill complexion in the similar parts, euill composition *Gal. 2. ad glan.*
or constitution in the instrumentall parts, and solution of *cap. 7.*
continuitie in both similar and instrumentall parts, offen-
ding the action of the member where it is.

Pe. What are the causes of Aposthume?

Io. Some are generals, and some are specials.

Pe. Which are the generall causes?

Io. Either fluxion, or congestion.

Pe. What is fluxion?

Io. It is a motion of the humors of the body, to some cer- *Gal. lib. 13.*
taine part, the which either by quantity or quality, or both *method. cap. 5.*
together, may not be receaued by the part without offence. *6.*

Pe. Which are the causes of fluxion?

Io. They are double; to wit, either in part or parts that
send, or in the part or parts that receaue.

Pe. How is the fluxion made in the parts that send?

Io. When the faculty retentrix of the part is overcharged
with humors, which doe either offend in quantity, quality,
or both: for then the part dischargeth it selfe by the vertue ex-
pulsrix, chiefly being strong: as likewise when the part that *Alexander. A-*
sendeth hath connerion with the part that receiueth, or the *phroditus pro-*
part that receaueth being inferiour to the part that sendeth: also *blem. 74. lib. 2.*
if the said parts haue any simparchy together, as the stomacke
with the braine.

Pe. Which are the causes in the parts that receaue?

Io. They be diuers, like as weaknes, not hauing force
to expello: put themselves elsewhere: also when the vessels
and conduits are large where the matter doth passe, or be-
cause it is soft in substance, so more easie to receaue, some-
time for the dolour which maketh attraction of the matter
from the parts neere vnto it, as likewise great heate which
draweth and prouoketh fluxion.

Pe. What is congestion?

Io. It is a masse of matter contrary to nature, ingendered
of the superfluities of the third concoction of that aliment and
foode, which are distributed for the nouriture of the parts of

the body, which chaunceth when the aliment is not so digested, that it may well bee appropriated to that part which should be nourished.

Pe. Which are the causes of congestion?

Io. They are either imbecility of the faculty concoctrix, of the part which cannot digest that which is sent to it by nature, for the nouriture thereof: or imbecility of the faculty expultrix, which cannot expell the superfluities that resteth commonly in the part.

*Comment. in
aphorif. 2. sect.
1. lib. 4.*

Pe. By what meanes know you the Tumors made by fluxion, and that by congestion?

*Haly Abbas.
lib. 8.*

Io. The Tumors which bee made by fluxion are with great dolour, rednes, pulsation, and maketh the degrees faster than those which are done by congestion: those which are done by congestion doe grow little and little, and in like manner doe diminish when they come to their declination.

Pe. Which are the speciall causes of Aposthumes?

Io. They are three, primitive, antecedent, and coniunct.

Pe. Which are the primitive causes?

*Augustinus lib.
tumor preter
naturam.*

Io. They are externall, like as falles, strokes, and other externall violences which may moue the humors of our body: also great heate of the ayre, as likewise meate or drinke taken ouer-cold.

Pe. Which are the causes Antecedents?

Io. They be internall, not knowing as the precedents, the which doth ingender not onely the malady, but also entertheyned; such as the humors naturalls offending either in quantity or quality: also the intemperature, weaknes, euill confirmation, and dolour of the parts.

Pe. Which are the coniunct causes?

Io. The coniunct is the matter gathered together in the place and so is called, because it is with the sicknes, and nourisheth it with the disposition of the member.

Pe. Which are the generall signes of Aposthumes?

Gal. cap. 6. lib.

10. met. & ca.

7. lib. 2. me h.

Io. Tumor or swelling in any part by the naturall disposition, offending the action: also differing of the parts which should

should be like to other: also dolour and heate.

Pe. By what signes know you euery kind of Tumor?

Io. Either by the colour, intemperature, hote, cold, hardnes, softnes, dolour, tention, gnawing: as also by the continuation of the fluxion: for first the colour is like unto the humors, as if it be red, it proceedeth of the sanguine humor, if white of pituit, if blacke of melancholique, if yellow of choller: Furthermore, if there be heate, it signifieth either sanguine, choller, or burnt humor, if cold, watery, or windy, it signifieth the humor pituitous or melancholique, to be in the part: also hardnes with dolour signifieth plegme, if without dolour, schir: if softnes without dolour, it signifieth Edema: great tention betokeneth repletion of wound: if mortification or gnawing it signifieth the acrimonie of the humor, which maketh the tumor.

Gal. 14. meth. cap. 9 & 6. de morb. cau. & comen. in apho. 38.

Pe. How many sorts of aposthumes is there?

Io. Two, hote and cold.

Pe. Which are the hote?

Io. Those, which proceed of blood and choller.

Pe. Which are the cold?

Io. Those which come of phlegme or melancholy.

Pe. Which are those that proceed of blood?

Io. They be diuers; like as Phlegmon, Carbunculus, Fimous, Figetlon, Terminthus, Terebinthus, Ecthime, Gangrena, Anthrax, Tuberculus, Ophthalmia, Scirrantia, Bubo.

Pe. Which are those that come of choller?

Io. Eresipilis, Herpes, Formica, Empetugo.

Pe. Which are those that proceed of pituit?

Io. Edema, with all watry and windy aposthumes, As theozema, Steotema, Helleriseris, Asitois, Leuchophlegmatia, Buncocele, &c.

Gal. lib. 11. mor. contra naturā cap. 5. & 13. meth.

Pe. Which are those that come of melancholy?

Io. Leprosie, Schirrous, Cancer, Gracunculus, Warts, Clauus, Fimous, Morphea, alba & nigra: Of all which we shall hereafter intreat particularly in seuerall Chapters.

Here it shall suffice to know that they do proceed of the foure humors.

Pe. What iudgement giue you of Tumors?

Io. Some be curables, some dangerous, others dolorous, some long in healing, and some to be mortall.

Pe. Which are curable?

*Gal. ad glauc.
cap. 4. & lib. 1.
& 4. meth.*

Io. Those which are in the parts musculous, and bodies of good temperature.

Pe. Which are the dangerous?

Io. All those which doe penetrate internally in the body, and those which are very large, not pointed as saith Hypocrates, and those which are in parts very sensible.

Pe. Which are the dolorous?

Io. Those which are in the parts neruous and membranous, and are ingendered of a sharpe and biting humor.

Pe. Which are long in healing?

Io. Galen saith that those, which happen in rich and delicate persons, because they refused fit remedies for the curati- on of such tumors, also all those that are hard, and in euill dis- posed bodies and hydropickes, elephantickes, all such are long in healing.

Pe. Which are mortall?

Io. Those which are venomous, or taken the course in- wardly towarde the noble parts, or those which are in the noble parts.

Pe. How many times or degrees haue the Aposthumes?

*Gal. lib. de tot.
morb. cap. 3 &* Io. Foure, to wit, the beginning, augmenting, state or
*ca. 1. de morb.
tempori.* vigour, and declination.

Pe. What is the beginning?

Io. It is when the humor doth first appeare and begin- neth to swell.

Pe. What is augmentation?

*Aetius lib. 4.
Gal. li. 4. ca. 4.
meth. & 6. epi-
men.* Io. It is when the tumor groweth more and more, as al- so the accedents,

Pe. What is the state or vigor?

Io. It is when neither the tumor nor accidents grow, but remaine

remaine in one estate.

Pe. What is the declination?

Io. It is when we perceiue the tumor and also the accidents, to diminish with a dissipation of the humor, either by resolution or suppuration. *Aetius lib. 4. cap. 31.*

Pe. What is resolution.

Io. It is the euacuation of the humor, by the pores of the flesh insensible to vs.

Pe. What is ruppuration?

Io. It is a vertue which maketh the humor gathered in the place into matter : so all aposthumes doe either end by one of those determinations, or else by induration or corruption ; so in all, there are but foure terminations, the best is resolution in the beginning, the worst corruption, but suppuration is better then induration.

Pe. Which are the signes of those terminations?

Io. The signes of resolution are lightnes or ease, of the member tumified, diminution of dolour, pulsation, and tension, with itching in the part. The signes of ruppuration, are dolour pulsation, augmentation of hote and feuer, with eminent tumor. The signes of induration are diminution of tumor and the accidents precedent, with a manifest hardness. The signes of corruption are diminution of feeling of the dolour, with change of the colour and so becommeth by little and little blacke, and euill sauoured.

Pe. What is the generall cure of aposthumes?

Io. As for the cure we must vnderstand, that either the tumor or swelling is in making or is already made, for the which cause we haue two intentions the one to stay the fluxion of the humor to the place, the other to euacuate the humor gathered in the place.

Pe. How stayest thou the fluxion?

Io. First I consider, if it come of plenitude of all the body, and then I stay it by letting blood : if the region, age, time of the yeare, and strength of the patient do permit, after the forme you shall heare in the 9. Booke : also by bathing

Gal. ad glauc. ca. 2. & lib. 3. meth. ca. 4 &c

exercise, vnctions, degerents, and abstinence. In like manner if cacochimie or plenitude of humors, I heale it by vomiting, purgations, and glisters. If through imbecillity of the part, I fortifie it by fit remedies. If by the scituation which is lower, I scituate the parts in such fashion, that the part which offendeth is higher than the whole. If dolour bee the cause, I stay it, by vsing anodine remedies, as ye shall heare in the tenth Booke. If great heat, I stay it by cold things, and returneth the fluxion by scarrifications, ventosing, cornets, Ho:seaches, straight binding, frictions, and such like.

Gal. lib. 4. sim-
tom ca. 10

Pe. By how many wayes do you fortifie the part?

Io. By three wayes, that is, by cold and humide things, or cold and drie, or cold and stipticke, so any part may be delibated three wayes, that which relaxed with heat and humidie, must be comforted with cold and drie things: the hote and drie is healed by cold and humide things: if hote and open of the pores, it is cured by things cold and stipticke.

Pe. Which is the second intention?

Ioh. It doth consist in euacuating that humor, which is made, to the end the member may returne into his owne estate.

Gal. lib. 14.

meth. ca. 1. 4. 5

Pe. How is euacuation vsed?

Io. Two waies, first by drawing the humor to some other part, as to repell it inwardly: also in fortifying of the member.

Pe. When shall repercussives be vsed.

Gal. lib. 1.

prognost. com.
apo. 35.

Io. In the beginning, and that aswell on the soze as about it, but that which is on the soze must not bee so astringent, nor corroboratiue as that which is about.

Pe. How many kinds of repercussives are there?

Io. There are diuers, for some be cold without astringtion, like as Bolarmine, Plantine, the Stone, Hermatite: some be hote, as galls, red wine, nuts of Cypres, wormewood, masticke, and such like.

Pe. Are they not otherwise diuided?

Io. Guydo

Io. Guydo of Coleac doth diuide them into proper, and commune : the proper as Oricrate, Solanum, Bol armez Chyrurgery. nie, Wormewood, and such like : the communes are these, whites of Egges, Mallowes, oyle of Roses, Camomile, Masticke, and such like.

Pe. How shall these diuers sorts be vsed?

Io. When the matter is hote the repercussives shall bee cold, and when it is cold, they shall be hote.

Pe. Are repercussives indifferently vsed in all sicknesses?

Gal. li. 14. meth. cap. 3.

Io. There are ten exceptions wherein the proper are not vsed. First, when the matter is in the emunctoires of the noble parts. Secondly, if the matter be venomous. Thirdly, being thicke and euill to remoue. Fourthly, when it is very hard impacted in the place. Fifthly, when it happeneth in the crisis of a sickness. Sixthly, when the matter cometh of a cause primitiue. Seauenthly in a bodie plethoricke. Eighthly, when the part is weake, and the body destitute of force. Ninthly, when it is in the noble parts. Tenthly, when it is with vehement dolour, and in that we vse anodines, and not repercussives.

X. exceptions of vsing repercussives.

Pe. How is the second intention done?

Io. By euacuating that is done in the place, and that by resolving and disculent medicaments and euaporatiues, that are meanly hote and humide. In like manner by drawing emplasters, by sucking, ventosing, of the part griued as saith Auicen.

Auicem.

But yet in both the euacuations, wee must regard the quantity and quality of the matter which the tumor is composed of : As also to the nature of the place where it is, for we must not cure those which proceed of blood, as those which come of phlegme, choller, or melancholie.

Also wee must respect the nature of the parts ; for wee must vse other remedies in soft and humide parts, as the flesh and glands, then in hard and dry parts, as nerues, ligaments, cartilages, and bones.

Gal. ad glauc. cap. 2.

*Gal. 2. ad glau.
Gal. 7. meth.
cap. 13.*

Wee must also haue respect to the parts of the body, for some are simples others composed, some of one temperature, some of another, so the remedies which must be vsed, to the part. We must also respect the confirmation of the part, for some are hollowe without or within, some are soft, easy to receaue refluxion.

*Gal. artis. par.
cap. 9.*

In like manner, we must regard the communications of the veines one with another, also the commodity of the condites, to expell the excrements: as also to the vertue of the place, for some are sensible, some not: as also to the diuersity of the parts, for some are noble parts, as the braine, the heart, and the liuer, which send the vertue through all the body by the nerues, artiers, and vaines: others doe serue the principall parts, without whose action wee cannot liue, like as the stomacke, kidnies, bladders, and sundry others.

*Gal. lib. 2. ad
glau. ca. 2.*

In parts that are sensible, we must beware to apply medicines that loose and resolute immoderately, or to applye any thing that is of a strange quality, and venomous.

Pe. Are there no other things to be obserued in the cure of tumors?

Io. Wee take our indication according to the diuersity of the tumor.

Pe. How many sorts of tumors are there?

*Four sorts of
tumors.*

Io. Foure, some are hard, others soft: some inward, and some vlcered.

Pe. What remedies vse you in those aposthumes?

Io. In hard aposthumes, we vse remedies that soften and haue a hote and somewhat drie vertue, wee vse no resolutes in such tumors, by reason the matter wareth hard like a stone: the soft are cured by hote things, that resolute and open the pores: the vlcered aposthumes, like as *Foronica*, are healed by cold things: the inward are cured by diminishing the matter, with bleeding, purging, and other general remedies, abstaining from all strong drinke, violent exercise, and perturbations of the minde, like as anger, feare, and the rest, which yee haue heard in the Booke of Annaturall things.

things.

The rest of the cures pertaineth to the iudgement of the expert Chyrurgion, ever vsing such remedies that hath the vertue to soften and make ripe, like as Cassia, Fistula, Triacle, and such others, which haue the vertue to resolue hidden aposthumes.

*Marianus Sc.
Et is de modo
exam. Chyrur.*

Pe. If the aposthumes neither end by resolution, induction, nor corruption, but by suppuration, what shall be done?

*Antonius Bonu-
uenius de ab-
dit. morb. cau.*

Io. They must be opened.

Pe. How many wayes must they be opened?

Io. Two wayes, either by themselves, or by helpe of the Chyrurgion.

Pe. Which are those that be opened by themselves?

Io. Those which are hote, eminent, soft, and tender skinned.

Pe. In what time do they open most commonly?

Io. Some in tenne, fiftene, or twenty dayes doe open, others in fortie or threescore dayes: and this happeneth according to the temperature, or by the application of fit remedies.

Hip. 2. progno.

Pe. Which be those that be opened by the helpe of the Chyrurgion?

Io. Those which are hard, cold, large in bodies, euill disposed, and thicke skinned: in cold membrainous parts, and in the emunctoires.

Pe. How many wayes doth the Chyrurgion helpe?

Io. Three wayes, either by Canter actuall, potentiall, or incision.

Pe. How many waies maketh the Chyrurgion his incision?

Io. Three wayes; some incisions are made in length, breadth, and circular, according to the part.

*Three wayes
of incision.*

Pe. What meane you by length?

Io. When it is according to the rectitude of the muscles, nerues, and membraines, to the end the action of the part, may

may be preserved.

Pe. When make you your incision by bread?

When incision
by bread is to
be made.

*Cornelius Cel-
sus lib. 7. ca. 2.*

Io. When we have intention to destroy the action of the part, as in spasm or convulsion we cut the nerve or muscle overthwart, to save the rest of the body, for better it is to debilitate one member then lose the whole.

Pe. When use you incision circular?

Io. When the cavities is great, to the end the humor or matter may evacuate the better. And heare I doe remarke that sometime in opening those Aposthumes, there is error committed, in those which penetrates under the wombe, for they appeare to the simpler sort to bee Aposthumes, and are onely called ruptors, whereof good heed would be taken.

*Gal. 13. meth.
cap. 1.*

Pe. I have enformed you sufficiently touching Aposthumes in generall, I will hereafter perticularly intreat of every one of them by themselves, beginning at those which proceede of blood, and first with phlegmon, because it is most common, and causeth diuers accidents. Then I will follow out the rest in order, as well generally as perticularly, which being downe, I will entreate of woundes after the same methode.

CHAP. II.

Of Phlegmon.

Definition.

*Gal. lib. 4.
method. ap. 2.*

Phlegmon, is a tumor or Aposthume against nature, ingendered of defluxion of blood, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, but most commonly in the soft parts, and is of colour redde, hard, inflameth sore, accompanied oftentimes with fevers, and diuers other accidents, of the which there are two sorts. The true flegmon that is ingendered of blood, being in any part more than is needfull for the use thereof: The other proceedeth of unnaturall blood, altereth by some

some change, as by mixing one or more of the other humors with it : so according to the domination of the humor it taketh the name, as for example, if the cholericke humor dominate amongst the blood more than the rest of the humors, the humor shall be called phlegmon Ercipilus, and in like manner in the rest, as phlegmon, Edematus, or Schirus : so that these humors are seldome found alone, but mixed together.

The causes are triple, primitive, antecedent, and coniunct: the primitives are externall and first motives, like as great usage of meate which engendereth much blood : also all those things which may move the humors and provoke fluxions, likewise falls, strokes, contusions, broken or bruised, excessive heate, labour, and such like. The antecedent cause is of great superfluitie and abundance of blood, offending either in quantity, quality, or both : also intemperancie, euill confirmation and dolour of the part. The coniunct or continient cause is the blood or matter affixed in the afflicted part. The signes are inflammation, rednesse, hardnes, feuer, dolor, pulsation, chiefly being in maturity : the Judgements, the small ones doe often resolue : the great ones doe oftentimes aposthume, and sometime do ingender into great sicknesses, according to the euill disposition of the body and parts where it chanceth, as in mortification and schir : sometime it doth returne to the place from whence it came, as happeneth in the emundours of the noble parts : as for the curati- on, it shall be reduced to foure points : the first, shall consist in good dyet of life : secondly, in staying of the tumor that floweth to the place or part : thirdly, in euacuating that which is within the place : fourthly, in correcting the accidents which often doe chaunce. As touching the first which is good dyet, it shall bee obserued in six thinges not naturalls, which must bee colde, contrary to the humor which is hote, sometime it must be cold and humide vsing weake drinke, or in time of feuer vse onely tisung with a pure cleane aire, rest and hold thy belly loose, either by suppositours or glisters, and abstaine

Gal. lib. tumor

cap 5.

Gal. de dffer.

morb. cap. 12

Gal. meth. ca. 1

Haly Abbas

lib. 8.

Iohannes To-

gatus institut.

chyrur. lib 1.

ca. de phleg.

*Gal. 12. meth.
cap. 6.*

abstaine from women. If it happeneth with feuer, the humoꝝ that floweth must be diuerted, by taking away the cause as repletion of the euill humoꝝ, by bleeding and purgations, also by strengthening the part if it be weake. Likewise by frictions, ventosing, and binding of the part. The humoꝝ shall be euacuated diuers wayes, according to the time oꝝ degree of the aposthumes, in the beginning we must vse repercussives made of whites of egges, ocreate, rose and plantaine waters, cataplasmes made of bol armenie, Terra sigillata, barke of pomegranet, henbane, oyle of roses, vnguent rosat, mesues, album rasis, diacathisecs, mingled with oyle of roses oꝝ pupilion.

How to vse
the augmentation.

For the augmentation which is the second degree, we vse repercussives and resolutives made of mallowes, roses, plantaine, wormewood, barley flower, oyle of camomill, ocreate, powder of roses, and mercuries, sodden in wine, called sapa, rose water, vinegar, saffron : Also yolkes of Egges, with milke, bread, and a little saffron, of which things you may make cataplasmes, linements, fomentation, as you shall find expedient : in the vigour we vse repercussives and resolutives, in like force made of mallowes, parietarie, and althea roasted vnder the hote ashes, oyle of roses, cammomell, with a little beane flower.

Auicenn.
The declination how to
be vsed.

In the declination we vse onely resolutives : *Auicenn* doth counsell to soften a little, which may be done with fomentations made of althea oꝝigan, lintseed, fenigrec, with flowers of roses, and cammomell, which thinges must all be sodden in white wine with a little barley meale, and hony : also vnguent of Aragon, Martiatum, Agrippa de althea, de melelocho diachylon parvum, vnguentum resumptivum, occi. otium, oꝝ enulatum, these oꝝ either of them may be vsed.

Galen.

We correct the accidents, which is the fourth point, as dolour, which must bee appeased by all meanes, when the great accidents, which often doe ensue, for the which we do vse oile of roses, waꝝe and wine sodden together, as counsaileth *Galen*.

Also

Also cataplasmes of bread and milke, with butter and saffron, water, oyle of roses, violets, cammemell, aniseedes, or sweet almonds. Likewise the flowers of mallows, cammemell and meclot sodden in wine, putting thereto a little barley flower, goose-grease, and lintseede. Also buguent, rosat, and pupilion, if those things be not sufficient we take the leaues of the henbane and poppy, roasted under the hote ashes, then tempered with the iuice of sorrell and houseleke, putting to it a little hennes grease and saffron.

Gal. l. b. r. sim-
pl. ca. 6. & 13
meth. cap. 6.

If the matter taketh the course inwardly to some noble part, we remedy it by application of ventosies and cornets, straight ligatures, and such like.

If the matter doth come to a disposition schirrus, we must vse medicaments that soften and digest, like as you shall heare in the Chap. of Schir.

If it tend to putrifaction, it must be helped by deep scarifications, labiments, cataplasms made of beane flower, sodden in vinegar and homie, with such other remedies, as you shall heare in the Chap. of Gangrena.

Gal. lib. 5.
meth. ca. 13.

It happeneth oftentimes, that this tumor tendeth to suppuration, which is knowne by the great swelling and rednes of the place, eminency, great heat, dolour, pulsation, feuer, and such like. These things being perceiued, we passe from resolutiues to suppuratiues, as to foment the place with hote water or oyle, also with hony and water mingled together, called *Hydreleon*: or a cataplasme may be made of white flower sodden in *Hydreleon*, with a little fresh butter, Calfs, Hennes, or Goose grease: or you may make a suppuratiue of little roots, Sorrell, Parrataris, and Mallows, sodden in *Hydreleon*, whereunto you shall adde a little flower of Fenegrec and linsede, oyle of Lillies, with a little leauen.

Paulus lib. 4.
cap. 17.

After it be taken from the fire put to it two yolkes of egges: this remedy appeaseth the dolour and procureth matter. For the same effect we vse the emplaster called *Diachelon magnum* or *Basilicon*: the suppuration made, we know by the diminution of the accidents, and the tumor which is pointed,

Gal. 2. ad glan.
ca 7. & l. b. 5.
simpl. cap. 8. &
apho. 22. l. 1.

also

Gal. 13. meth.
cap. 5.
How to make
the incision.

Avicen cap. 6.
lib. 1

Gal apho. 27.
lib. 6.

Ce f. 2. 7. ca. 2.

also by pressing on it with the twoo thombes, wee find it soft
with great induration : then if it open not shortly of it selfe,
it must be done by a cauter or lancet, otherwise it waxeth hol-
low and putrified within : in the opening of it there are three
rules to be observed, as you have heard in the generall chap-
ter : in making of your incision, let it be in the inferiour part,
that the matter may euacuate the better, but take heede it e-
uacuate not too much at one time : the incision must be made
in length, eschewing nerues, sinowes, vaines, and artiers.
Avicen counsaileth to open by the breed which I doe not ob-
serue : when it is opened we vse the yolke of an egge, with
a little Turpentine, and oyle of roses for a certaine space,
thereafter hony of roses, or sirrope of roses, Mundificatiue
de appio, *Apostulorum* or other Mundificatiue set down in the
fenth Booke of this worke, sometime I doe adde a little *E-*
giptiacke specially to those vlcers which withstand the former
remedies. The vlcer being cleansed, I mingle a little Tur-
pentine and Hony, with the powder of Iris, Aloes, and Thus,
or a little *Unguentum aureum*, with these powders : there-
after, the plaster of *Diacalcytheos desiccativum rubeum*, *Di-*
apompholegos serussa, *Deminio* and such like, that hath the ver-
tue to siccatrice and heale the vlcer.

CHAP. III.

¶ Of Epiniætis, Terminthus, Terebinthus,
Figethlon, Fima, and Ectimata, which pro-
ceed of Phlegmon.

BEcause that the most part either of old or new writers,
hath made small mention of those tumors. So that the
young Chyrurgion may be the better instructed, I thought
good to speake of them in this place, beginning with Epinic-
tis,

tis, which is an euill pustule brownish of colour and very painfull, chiefly in the night : this vlcer by it selfe often times doth occupy the corner of the eyes, auoiding a water sanguinolent which sheweth it to be ingendered of the like cause, as Carbuncle. Yet not so vehement, in respect it hath no communication with the contagion : for the cure whereof haue recourse to the Chapter of Carbuncle. *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28* *Paulus lib. 4. cap. 9.*

Terminthus is a tubercle or little tumor, almost of the same nature, proceeding of an hote burnt blood couered with little blacke round pustules, which by their vehement heat produce an eschar : it possesse for the most part the thighs, and is cured, as the former.

Therebinthus is thought by Oribasius to be a kind of *Phima*. Upon it appeareth little blacke round pustules, which being opened, auoideth a filthy frothing matter, and is cured as the former. *Pa. li. 4. ca. 29*

Phigethlon is a tumor or inflammation in the glandulous parts, ingendered of an hote fiery blood, when it doth appeare in the inguen, it is called *Bubo*. *Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 1.*

Amatus Lusitanus is of opinion, that this tumor proceedeth of a cholericke humor mingled with some pituit. There is a sort of it that appeareth vnder the oxter and iawes, or cragge, and is pestiferous.

Of those, small mention hath bene made of our antients, which maketh me believe they haue not been known in those hote countreyes : it is commonly with feuer, sometime it cometh befoze the feuer, other times after the same, proceeding of the like humor as Carbuncle, saue onely the matter is not so fiery and hote, but the cure is little different : in this ye must abstaine from repercussiuues in respect of the malignitie; vse suppuratiues, as counsaileth *Fernelius*. *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28*

Phima is also a tumor in the inguen and parts glandulous, ingendered for the most part of the like humor, as the rest, it groweth slowly, and suppureth hastilie. It is thought by Hippocrates, not to occupie alwaies the inguina : The *Graekes* tearmeth it *Raccodes*, which is a tumor in the priuy parts. *Fer. li. 4. pa. 18*

Gal. ad glauc.
cap. 1.

Hippo. lib. 4.

cap. 9.

Plinius.

Plinius.
Fernel.

Lonicarius
Francofimen-
cis.

Paulus lib. 4.
cap. 8.

parts. Galen saith the like : for the cure vse anodils, sup-
puratiues, and mundificatiues.

Estimata or Exentemata are called by Hippocrates and some
other Latine interpreters, such as Plinius, Papulas, which
are little bubs or pustules, that breake out by themselves
through the skinne, sometime in the head, and are ingende-
red of a corrupt, malignant, grosse humoꝝ, thought by the
learned to be the rest of the menstruous humoꝝ : yet it is
mingled with some pituit, as saith Plinius, and Fernel. It
is called by some Latine writers *variole*, or *pituita ruptionis*,
in vulgar, the small pockes : there is one sort of them called
morbilli, or *scopuli*, which are white in the midst, and red
in the borders, they are little blobs upon the skin, produced
of an ebulation of blood, putrifaction of the aire, ouer great
repletion of meat, specially fruite, retention of the moneths,
or reuolution of venomous blood : such blobs for certaine,
are discerned the first or second day, the third and fourth day,
they ryse in tumors, and becommeth white, thereafter cru-
stous : yet, in some the malignity is so great, that it doth
not onely corrupt the soft parts of the body, but also the so-
lide and hard parts, as the bones, thereafter death ensueth,
as I haue diuers times obserued. As for the cure, in respect
it is impertinent in this place, I will supersede the same to
my Booke of Infantment, where it shall be particularly set
downe all the sorts of that disease, and others incident to
yong children, with their cures.

CHAP. II II.

¶ Of the Tumor, Furuncle, or Dothin,
which proceed of Phlegmon.

Definition.

Furuncle, is a tumor that is sharpe pointed with inflama-
tion and dolour, chiefly when it groweth to matter, and
is

Of Tumors which proceed of Fleg. *Lib. IIII.* 83

is ingendered of a thicke humoꝝ, in the soft parts, it groweth commonly to the bignesse of a Doves egge, and is lesse then *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28* Phima, it occupieth foꝝ the most part the skinne.

Galen saith that Furuncle is a tumor procreate of the like *Li. tumor con-* humoꝝ, as the burgens of the face, and comes in all parts of *tra naturam.* the body, and is of two soꝝts : the one is like little bubons, *Two sorts of* is hard, and cometh slowly to maturation : the other is fiery *Furuncle.* hote, and inflameth, prouoking feuer, yet differs little from Phima, except it is harder and moze sharper. The causes *The cause is* are externall oꝝ internall : the internall cause is aboundance *two-fold.* of grosse corrupt blood, euer boyling and burning, like that of Carbuncle, the which nature separating it selfe from the most pure, as vnprofitable and euill, sendeth it to the circumsference oꝝ externall parts of the body, and ingendereth Furuncle : the externall cause, is in the vice of the skinne, wearing of vnaccustomed clothes, sodainely taking colde after great heat, oꝝ vehement heat immediatly after cold : retention of the monethly courses. The signes, it is pointed red coloured like phlegmon, suppured after the same soꝝt, and in that it differeth from the simple Carbuncle, when it occupied the skinne onely, it may easily be helped, but being moze pro- *Hip. lib. de humi-* found it is moze painefull and malignant. The cure consisteth first in generall remedies, as purgations and bleeding, next laye on it a little *Diachilon*, with Hennes grease, oꝝ *Basilicon.*

Galen counsaileth to chewe wheate in the mouth fasting *Gal. lib. tumor* and lay on it, oꝝ figges sodden in Hydromell : oꝝ Allomelo- *contra. natur.* uen in tow, and mingled with hony and linget, also Hen-bane *Pa. li. 4. ca. 23* beaten with butter may be applyed. If it be deepe and much inflameth, oftentimes it degendereth into Anthrax and Carbuncle, and in that case it must be cured, as you shall heare in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. V.

¶ Of Anthrax or Carbuncle.

Definition.

There is small difference betwene Anthrax and Carbuncle, saving that Anthrax is the Greeke word, and Carbuncle the Latine, and is so called, because it burneth the place where it is, like unto coales. Carbuncle is defined to be a pustule, inflamed, blacke, burning the place, it is soze with many blisters about it, as if it were burnt with fire or water. The cause is diuers, according to the sundry kinds thereof: the cause of the simple Carbuncle is an ebullition of grosse blood, thicke and hote where it falleth in any place: it burneth and maketh blcers, with a scale, accompanied with great inflammation and dolour.

Cause.
Difference.
Tangacius lib.
1. inst. Chirurg.

Signes.

Cels li. 5. ca. 28
& lib. 6. ca. 18

The signes of the simple Carbuncle are these, there appeareth many little blacke pustules not eminent, sometime pale which groweth sodainly red, with great inflammation about the place where it is, and is harder then it ought to bee, the sicke loseth appetite and cometh sleepe, accompanied with cold sweat, and feuers.

The signes of the maligne are vomiting continually, weake of appetite, trembling, sounding, beating of the heart, the face waxeth white and liuide.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, if it happeneth nere the stomacke or thzoate, it telleth the respiration as saith *Celsus*: that which ri- peth and cometh to matter, is good: that which appeareth and euansheth away, is mortall: that which is first red, then yellow, is not euill as saith *Auicen*: that which is first pale and after blacke, is euill: all those which are in the e- muntoires of the noble parts, be most dangerous.

Cure.

The cure consisteth in vniuersall and particular remedies, the vniuersals are a good dyet of life, which shall be colde and humide, as you haue heard in Phlegmon, resisting alwayes the

the malignity of the humors: his drinke must be made with *Arnoldus li. 3.*
 sirope of Lymons, *Acetosis*, *Suplicis*, *Capilli veneris*, *Grabenii. ca. 22.*
natorum, *Buglossi*, with water of the said things, abstaine fro
 wine, & drinke only water as counsaileth *Celsus* Use alwaies *Cels. li. 5. ibid.*
 y tablets of *Diamargarita frigida* conserues of roses, & bu-
 glosse, bol armenie, terra sigillata, and Iuoze in fine powder,
 of those ingredients you shall make opiats with sirope of Ly-
 mons and Triacle, vsing this epitheme on the noble parts,
 chiefly the heart. *Rec. aqua scabiosa, rosarum, nenipharis,*
an. 2. unc. aqua buglossi 1. unc. troscorum, rasis, camphoris, an.
1. scrupul. corallorum rubrorum. 1. dragm, distria sandali & boli
armenici an. unc. 1. croci & aceti parum fiat epithema, vse
 glisters and bleed much, as counsaileth *Galen*, in the same *Gal. 14. meth.*
 side the paine is on vsq; *ad anima defectum.* The particular & 2. *ad glauc.*
 remedies are these, first we make deepe scarrifications, and
 washe it with water and salt called *aqua marina*, wee laye
 horseleaches on the scarrification, vsing a cataplasme on the
 part, of crummes of white bread, leaues of Plantine, Arno- *Paulus lib. 4.*
 glosse, flower of Lentills sodden in vinegar and hony. *cap. 25.*
Hippocrates counsaileth to apply actuall cauters, or other caustick
 medicament, as oyle of vitrioll, vnquenched Lime, arsenicke
 on the part *quoniam in extremis morbis extrema sunt adhiben-*
da remedia. We apply also ventosies, and other medicines,
 which haue the vertue to draine the venome from the noble
 parts. *Celsus.*

Arnoldus de villa noua counsaileth for the extinguishing of
 the Carbuncle, onely to take the powder of Coziander, well
 bruised and mingled with honey, and applyed it on the
 part. *Paulus* doth counsaile to separate with a rasour the *Arnoldus.*
 infected from the other parts, and raised from the roote. *Gal. lib. 13.*
meth. cap. 6.

Afterwardes vse this cataplasme to mittigate the paine
 and prouoke the fall of the scale, composed of Lin-seed, Mal-
 lowes, violets, yolkes of egges, butter, and barley meale; for
 the sharpnesse of the humors put about the part infected *Vn-*
guentum de bolo, and on the pustules the pastules of *Andro-*
mus, and *Musa*: When the scale is fallen, cleanse the vicer

with sirope of Roses, honie of Roses, and Turpentine, mundificative *de appio* and such like, which being done, siccatrize and fill it vp as other vlcers; some doe counsaile to take *Consolida maior* and braye it betwene two stones and apply to it. *Agria* is likewise a pustule malignant of the nature of a Carbuncle, the skinne becommeth first red, in the end it eates and corrods, but the cure is little different from a Carbuncle.

Agria, what
it is.

(HAP. VI.

¶ Of Gangrena and Histriomen.

Definition.

*Gal. 2. de locis
affect. & 2. ad
glau. cap. 10.*

Cause.

Gal. 2. ad glau.

When the inflammation nether resolueeth, returneth inwardly, suppureth, nor becommeth hard, it degenereth in Gangren, which is a mortification, not altogether of the part, but tending thereto by little and little, through the great violence of the inflammation: soz therby the vaines and artiers are stopped in such sort, that the naturall heate cannot passe, so the part easily doth corrupt and consume, and so waxeth Gangrenat for lacke of naturall and vitall spirits. The cause is, great quantity of blood in the member which letteth the spirits to passe, so bindeth and intercepteth the same in such sort, that the vaines and artiers cannot worke their transpiration and requisite exhalation: so for lacke of naturall heate, the member doth suffocate. As also great application of cold medicaments in Phlegmon and Heresipilis, or by some violent externall cause, chiefly in the foot or hands which happeneth oftentimes by cold, crisis of feuers, or malignant and venomous maladies. As also straight ligatours, confusions, strokes, falles, or biting of venomous beasts, chiefly in the wayes and passages where the spirits do passe, or by some pointed stroke vpon the membaines, tendons,

or nervous parts. The Signes are, if it come of inflammati-
 on, we perceiue the red colour, dolour, pulsation and feeling
 to decay, it waxed pale, soft, and blacke, and in pressing on
 it with the fingers, it falleth downe and riseth not again: but
 if it proceed of cold, we perceiue great beating, paine, coldnes
 without motion or feeling, accompanied with trembling and
 shaking: and if it proceed by straight ligatours, binding,
 hurts or biting of venomous beasts, we know by the prece-
 dent signes and others, according to the diuersitye of the
 cause. The Iudgements are, if it be not helped presently, the
 force of it is such that the part dieth presently, as also the
 parts adiacent, and so causeth death of the whole body: but
 if the muscles and nerues be not hurt, and the person young
 and of good constitution and well handled in the beginning, it
 is not so difficult. The Cure, after generall remedies, like as
 purgations, bleeding, and dyet, it consists in blsing of co-
 dials with deepe scarrifications on the part, then washing it
 with water and salt, then applying Cataplasmes made of
 floure of beanes, barley, Orob, and Lupines sodden in vi-
 negar, putting therevnto a little roses, myrre, mirtles, and
 Aristolochia, washing often the soze with oriuell, decoction of
 Abrotonum, Abscintium, viriusq, centonium gentiana, and
 such like: beware of cold, and vse warme clothes, and all o-
 ther such things as hath the vertue to entertaine the naturall
 heat: you may also vse Aquavita with triacle, Mulbricate & a
 little Calcantum, if it be rebellious. And if it be necessary to
 vse more strong remedies, you shall take Egiptiacke, and
 mingle therewith a little Arsenicke or Orpiment, and apply to
 the scarifications, which remedies must all be vled with good
 Iudgement: noting well when the Gangren ceaseth, and the
 fury of the malady be almost past, then cause the scarre to fall
 with honey, butter, yolkes of egges, and other fit remedies.
 If none of those preuaile, but y the Gangren doth become in
 Sphasell, we must vse the like cure as wee doe in Sphasell,
 to fortifie the rest of the body as you haue heard.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Cels. li. 5. ca. 27

Cure.

Gal. 2. ad glau.

cap. 9.

Paulus lib. 4.

cap. 12.

Cataplasme
for Gangrena

Cels. li. 5. ca. 26

CHAP. VII.

Of Sphasell.

Difference.
*Gal. 2. ad glau.
cap. 9.*

WE must here consider the difference betwixt Gangren and Sphasell, and know that Gangren is the Latine woord, and is a mortification of the parts where it happeneth, except the bones, and is curable: But Sphasell or sideration, is a mortification both of the soft and solide parts, which is no way remedied but by amputation: some doe call it Saint Anthome, or Saint Martials fire.

Cause.
*Albucrisis lib.
2. cap. 87.*

The Causes are like as you haue heard in Gangrena: besides, it is ioyned with the euill disposition of the humors venomous, which for the most part doth corrupt the bone before it maketh any externall shew: it doth sometime proceed of old vlcers, which haue bene long oppressed with a rotten filthie matter, which corrupteth the bone, and causeth mortification. Likewise cold, as chaunceth to people who are in prisons, ships, campos, or in cold countries, as oftentimes happeneth in Swedan and such cold countries. Likewise biting of vipers, mad dogges, and other venomous beasts.

Signes.

The Signes are these, the member waxeth blacke, like as it were burnt, afterwards it becommeth rotten, and in short time it ouerthroweth the whole body in such sort, that the skinneth doth come from the flesh.

Judgements.
Cels. li. 5. ca. 26

The Judgements are, it is for the most part incurable, and for common, the patient dyeth in cold sweat.

Cure.

The Cure consisteth in remedies generals, and particulars. The generalls shall consist in purgations, dyet, and bleeding, which may be obserued also in the time of the obstipation, by suffering the bloud to flowe, which both discharge the part, impasse the feuer, and other euill accidents which might happen. It were good in this time to vse cordiall remedies, both before and after the amputation for strengthening of the body, as also to impasse the euill vapours

Vse cordiall
remedies be-
fore and after
amputation.

pours and fumes which might ascend and make motion. For this purpose you may take a dramme of Teriacke, with the water of the flowers of Borrage and Buglosse, siroppe of roses, and Buglosse may be vsed and applied on the region of the heart; also epithems of roses and buglosse water, of each one three ounces, with vineger, wherein Schilla hath bene sodden six drames, Teriack and Mithridat of each 2. drams, Camphir 2. scrup. with the 3. cordiall flowers, of each one a little, Saffron 1. scrupl, mingle all together and apply to the heart, with a little piece of scarlet cloth, maketh it warme befoze it be applied : thereafter you shall goe to the amputation of the member, which shall be done in this manner. The friends being first aduertised of the daunger because that oftentimes death ensueth : for the which cause the learned Cellus calleth it a miserable remedie, so that I thinke the expert Chyrurgions should assaye all remedies, befoze they come to that extreme remedie, which is done with great danger, cheisly in doing of the operation, and that either for flure of blood, feare, faintnes, & sounding after it is done. Likewise there happeneth often feuers, raueries, extreame dolours, convulsions, cold sweats, and oftentimes suddaine death : for the which the parents and friends would be fozeesene of the danger which may happen, and that they should aduise whether (vpon hope of recouery) it be more expedient to assaye that extreame remedie, or otherwise to referre it into the hands of the Lord. Yet by our daily practise, the most part do vse it, because in so doing there is some hope of recouery : and in not so doing, there is nothing to be expected but suddaine death, and better it is to lose one member, then the whole body. As concerning the place of amputation there is diuersity of opinions.

Hippocrates and some others counsaileth to cut in the ioynt, alleadging it to be more easie to bee done, for in so doing the marrow is not discovered as in other parts, nor the flure of blood so great. Others thinke best to cut foure inches from the ioynt, either aboue or vnder, according to the

The maner of
amputation.
Cels. lib. 5. ca. 25

*Cels. lib. 5. ca.
de Sphalo.*

The place of
amputation.

the circumscription of the putrifaction which is both more easy and surer then in the ioynt.

4. Inches frō
the ioynt.

For those causes and diuers other circumstances which might be here alleadged, I aduise to make the incision foure inches from the ioynt in all amputations, except onely when the mortificatiō or riuing of the bone end in the ioynt, then it must be cut in the ioynt, chiefly the ioynt of the knee; alwaies it is hard to cicatrize and heale, by reason the end of the bone is spongiuous and humide, so the loather to conglutinate: but wheresoeuer you make your amputation, remember to marke it wel with inke or others, & to cut rather a little of the whole, than to leaue any portion of the infected. If any of the infected remaine, it corrupteth the rest, and so requireth new amputation, as I haue often seen.

Scituation of
the sicke.

The place of amputation being so remarked, wee scituate the sicke in a fit place, hauing respect both to the nature, quality of the part, and our owne commoditie. For this purpose some doe set the sicke on a bed side for feare of sincops. I my selfe vse onely a chayre, which I find most commodious both for the sicke and Chyrurgion, because it may bee commodiously placed: which done, you shall haue two men to hold and attend vpon the Patient, then the Chirurgion shall commaund the sicke to bend out, and extend that member to the end the skinne, vaines, artiers, and nerues may bee more lengthened, and after the amputation may bee more apparant to be knit or cauterized. That being done, the Chyrurgion shall plucke vp the skinne and muscles as much as he can, thereafter he shall take a strong ribben, and bind the member fast about the place of the member, two inches above where the amputation shall be.

Bind the member with a
ribben

The vsage of this ribben or band is diuers. First, it holdeth the member hard and fast, so that the instrument or incising knife may cut more surely. Secondly, that the feeling of the whole parts may be stupified, and rendered insensible. Thirdly, that the fluxe of bloud may be stayed. Fourthly, it holdeth vp the skinne and muscles which must couer the

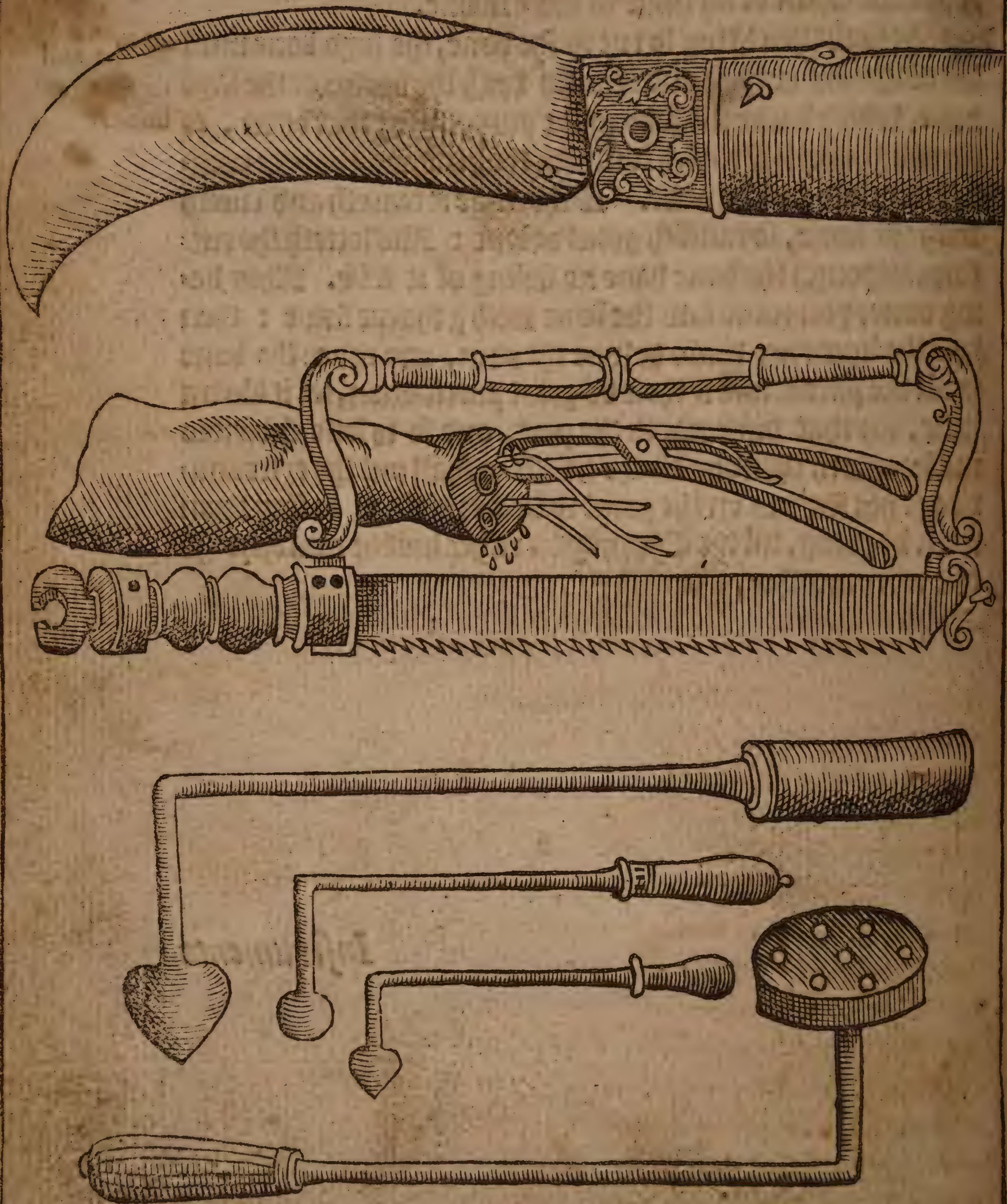
the bone after it bee cut, and so it maketh it moze easie to heale. The bandage then being thus made, we cut the flesh with a rasoz or incising knife, which must be somewhat crooked to the forme of an hooke or halfe mone.

The flesh then being so cut to the bone, the sayd bone must bee diligently rubbed and scraped with the backe of the sayd knife, which backe must be made purposely for that effect, to the end the periost which couereth the bone, may be lesse painful in cutting of the bone. Otherwise it teareth and riueth with the same, so causeth great dolour: Also letteth the cutting, although the bone haue no feeling of it selfe. This being done, you must saw the bone with a sharpe sawe: then loose the ligatour, draw downe the skin, and couer the bone in all the paces; and if there be great putrifaction, let it bleed a little, for that dischargeth the part, and so is lesse subiect to inflammation: then one of the Assistants shall put the extremities of his fingers on the great vaine and artiers, to stay them from bleeding, till the Chyrurgion either knit or cauterize the one after another,

Rabbe and
scrap the
bone.

Instruments.

Instruments, and Cauters actuals, for extirpation.



as he shall thinke expedient. But where there is putrefaction, we stay the fluxe of blood by Cauters actuals, and where there is no putrefaction, malignity, nor humors venomous, we vse the ligatour. The cauter or actual fire maketh scale, stayeth bleeding, consumeth, and draweth into it the virulency and malignity of the humors which is in that part, and in that point it is more sure and better then knitting. In knitting we lose much blood, and by drawing the vaines with the backe, decurbing, or other instrument, they do breake. Also being knit do often vnloose, so that I find the fire more expedient, being done and applyed meanlie. Then to doe it we must haue three or foure little instruments of Iron, crooked at the end, with a point in forme of a button: of which, some be round, some filate, and some broad, to rubbe on the end of the bone.

How to staye
the fluxe of
blood by ac-
tual Cauters.

It hath the vertue to drie and corroborate the same, being made red hote: then we take either of them and apply on the vaines one after another, continuing them a certaine space till the scale be made; taking heed alwayes not to burne ouermuch of the vaine.

In amputation without putrefaction, I find the ligatour reasonable sure, prouiding it be quickly done. To doe it, first thou shalt cause the assister as I haue said, to hold his fingers on the vaines, letting one loose, on the which thou shalt take hold with the backe Decurbin, taking a little of the flesh or muscles with it: then put through a needle with a strong thread, knit with a double knot, tying a little of the flesh with the vaine, which will make it hold the better: but if it slippe as oft it happeneth, you shall first put through the needle in the vtter skinne, an ynch aboue the wound, nere to the side of the vaine, cause it to come forth by the other side of the vaine, yet higher than the orifice of the vaine: Then pull out your needle an ynch from the part where it went in: Then put a peece of cloth in two doubles betwixt the two threads, then tye it hard, to the end the knot enter not in the skinne. This way and forme must be vsed in the rest of the vaines,

as

Powder to
stay the blood

as also in diuers other parts of the body : The blood being so stayed, we vse an astringent powder, as this. *Rec. boli armenici 3. ounces, farine volatilis 2. ounces, picis, resina, sanguinis diaconis an. 1. dragm.* of this powder you shall strawe on the wound, with drie flaxe or caddesse. Thereafter an astringent or defensiu made of the foresayd powders, whites of egges, and oyle of roses, applyed on flore in like manner, the which flockes or caddes must be wet in oricrate, and bee of such breadth as may couer the soze, thereafter take a double cloth, not onely sufficient to couer the soze parts, but likewise the parts adiacent, also wet in oricrate and annointed with the foresayd defensitiue : The bands must be also wet in the said oricrate, then bind it well in such sort that it bee neither too straight nor too slacke, then scituate the member in good sort, and remoue it not for thre dayes, chiefly in winter, but that must bee obserued according to the accidents which doe happen.

In changing of those remedies, beware to take away the scarre or knot of thread, and for auoiding thereof wee rubbe first the part with cerot Galen, to the end the defensiu cleaue not fast to it.

To staye an
artier or vain
if it open.

If it happen any vaine or artier to open, you shall dissolue a little vitreoll in vinegar, and laye on the vaine or artier with flore the breadth of a groate or sixe pence, this will presently stay it, as I haue often proued.

If it happen that twoo or thre of the said vaines do open, cause thy seruant to put his fingers on them, and tye them as you haue heard.

The second dressing must bee done in the same manner, with some astringent, chiefly on the vaines and artiers, and so continue till such time that there be no more feare of blood, which will continue eight or ten dayes : On the rest of the wound, you may vse a digestiue made after this forme.

Take Turpentine well washed in Plantine water 4 *unc.* honey of roses, 1. *unc.* Barly flower halfe an ounce, two yolkcs of egges, and a little Saffron, incorporate all well together,

gether, and apply to the soze till it be perfectly suppured, then use mundificatiue *de appio apostolorum*, or my olone mundificatiue, with this emplaster, composed of equall portions of *Diapalma* and red Desiccatiue, for a tunc, next use this Siccantizant to the entire curation.

Take *iuchia preparata*, *plumbi crudi*, *antimoriij crudi*, *cassieis mali gronati*, *balanstickum*, *nucis muschata*, *boli armenij*, *ferri guinis draconis*, an. drag. i. accipiantur omnia simul cum bus uncijs unguenti *diapomphologos* & fiat *magdalion bona* *sistentia*.

In the means time, if there be any excesse of flesh, it must bee corrected with powder of Allom, Saune, and Oker, or powder of Mercurie, taken in small quantities : these or either of these may be applyed alone, or mingled with some Unguent.

To corral
the ouer-gro-
wing flesh.

Legges

Legges of wood.

All the forme of this operation is most learnedly and skilfully practised by my good friend Maister Iames Haruey, Her maiesties chiefe Chyrurgion to the Quænes Maiestie, who hath writ^{ten} chiefe Chyrurgion. ten diuers learned bookes of Chyrurgery, and in practise hath excelled the most part in his time.

But for further declaration of the premisses, I will recite a Historie. History which happened during the siege at Paris : where, through great hunger, cold, and other miseries, happened many grievous sicknesses, as Gangrens and mortifications; amongst the which there was a Spanish souldier of that regiment whereof I was Chyrurgion maior, who had a blacknes or little spots in his foote and toes, as if they had bin burnt. I did cut off his toes and scarrified the rest, and after vsed such remedies that he shortly healed.

Some after, happened the like in the other foote, which I would haue cut and cured as the former : but he and his fellows esteemed it a deformitie, and would not suffer the same. So the griefe daily did augment with such violence and furie, that by the aduise of the best and learned Chyrurgions in Paris at that time, I was constrained to cut off the whole legge, and so did helpe him. At this same time there was a wife in the coyning house of Paris, at which time the Citty being scarce of money, and hardly besieged, they did coyne brasse and copper. So this woman by the continuall History. sorting & telling of this coyne, there did enter of the ewore of that brasse and copper vnder the nailes of her fingers, which infected the whole points thereof, shortly they became blacke and insensible : whereupon deepe scarrifications were made, with lauements, & all other fit remedies which might be deuised ; notwithstanding we were constrained to cut off three of the foremost ioynts of the fingers. Thus haue I alleadged to shewe the daunger of delaye, that if any such thing happen, it should not be differred ; but diligently proceed as you haue heard. And thus I end the Tumors which procede of the sanguine humors, and shall prosecute the rest God willing.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the extirpation of superfluous fingers
and toes, with such as are corrupt & bruised.

6 Fingers or
toes.

Ilav. li. 6. ca. 43

It happeneth oftentimes in the hands and fete, that there
is implanted against nature, six fingers or toes, or more;
to the great deformity of the part, and hinderance of the acti-
on: There may likewise happen in those parts Gangrens
and mortifications for several causes, as you have heard in
the last Chapter: Like as you shall heare in the chapter of
Panaris & Paranochia, which maketh oftentimes corruptio
in the bone before any out ward appearance, so that for either
of those causes the Chirurgion is oftentimes constrained to
cut off the whole finger, or at least one ioynt, or some portion
thereof, if fit remedies preuaile not: then to do that opera-
tion, you shall be metest, and with smallest paine to be done,
with *Tenals* incisives,

Tenals

Tenals incisives, to cut off fingers and toes.



How to take
them away.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 47.

which in one instant cut both flesh and bones. Some for this purpose doe vse a sharpe Chizell and a Mallet, laying the member on a blocke and so cuts it off : which forme neither doe I thinke so good, nor so methodicall, as the former. The extirpation being done of one ioynt, two, or halfe, as shall be requisite, you shall stay the fluxe of blood, thereafter follow out the rest of the cures, as you haue heard in the precedent chapter. Here followeth those Tumors which proceede of Choller.

CHAP. IX.

Of Tumors bilious, called by the Latines *Flaua Bilis*; and first of *Eresipelas*.

Haüy Abbas
lib. 2. cap. 8.

Cels. li. 5. ca. 29.

Difference.
Arnoldus de
villano a.

Gal. 2. ad glan.

Cause.

WE haue said that there were two sorts of hate tumors, to wit, Phlegmon whereof we haue spoken, and Eresipelas, whereof wee meane for to speake. Eresipelas, is a tumor which proceedeth of the cholericke humor, accompanied with great inflammation and dolour, for the most part not eminent without pulsation : It is pale or red coloured, and is called by the Grekes *Eresipelas quoniam adheret Pili* : for by the subtiltie of that humor, it cometh to the superfiice of the skinnie, and is called in Latine *Ignis sacer*, in the bulgar, *Wildes fire*, it differeth little from Phlegmon. Some esteeme them to differ, by reason the one proceedeth of blood, and the other of Choller : They differ also in colour, the one being red, the other oftentimes pale. Phlegmon entrencheth deepe in the muscles, the other remaineth in the skinnie. Of this disease there are two sorts, the true Eresipela which cometh of Choller onely, but when it is mingled with the grosse humors, there cometh three kinds of it, as you haue heard in Phlegmon. The cause of this tumor is abundance

dance of cholericke humoꝝ, great heat of the Sunne, strokes, falles, and vsing of hote medicaments which moueth fluxion, and draweth the humoꝝ to any part of the body.

The Signes are these, the tumor is very vehement, burning hote, dolorous, and mordicant, it doth seldome come to maturitie, it appeareth oftentimes in the necke and face, by reason of the tendernes of the skinne, the colour is not perfect red, but mingled, and is somewhat pale. When it is touched, it doth suddainly vanish, and shortly returneth againe. It is dolorous without great pulsation, yet with great feuer, not vnlike to the feuer Tertiane, it beginneth for the most part with paine in the thighs, and tumor in the liskes or inguen.

Signes.

Togacius lib. 1 cap. 8.

The Iudgements, the simple Erefipelas endeth rather by resolution, than suppuration. The other, which Celsus calleth wilde fire or *Ignis sacer*, participates with the excrementous parts of the cholericke humoꝝ, which being more thicke doth not passe, so exulcerateth, which is better than if it strike in; that which commeth forth, is good; that which appeareth in the face and in wounds, is euill; those which happeneth in the matrice is mortall, also causeth the death of the fruit; those which appeare in the head are very dangerous, and if good remedies be not vsed, the partie dyeth, as sayth Paulus

Iudgements.

Cels. cap. cirato.

Hippo. aph. 19 lib. 7.

Hippo. 29. aph. lib. 6.

Egineta.

As touching the Cure, there are two things to be obserued, euacuation generall, diuersion, corroboration of the part recipient, & refrigeration with consolidation of the part: the way of life must be cold and humide, contrary to the humoꝝ which is hote and drie, as you haue heard in the generall Chapter. Abstaine from wine and other strong drinke, all things that are sweet, sower, and bitter sauces, from anger and vehement exercise, great heat, and such like. The humoꝝ must be euacuated by purgations, glisters, bleeding, and sometime scarified, if it become liuide, being first fomented with hote water, vsing things on the soze which bee cold and humide, and that with great Iudgement. Apply on the soze the iuice

Cure.

Pa. li. 4. ca. 21

Cels. li. 5. ca. 26

To cure it in
the face.

or water of Solanum, Houfleeke, Lettice, Succorie, Umbilicus, Ueneris, Cucumber, wet a cloth therein and apply: When it is in the face, cold water and oricrate may be used, as counsaileth Galen and Auicen. For the same purpose I doe often use *serot Galen* oft washed in Rose and Planten water, as also *Rosatum mesues*: if there be vehement dolor as often chaunceth, the rotes and leaues of Henbane roasted vnder the ashes, and mingled with a little pupilion is very good; also *Vnguentum album cum camphora*. Likewise a cataplasme of barlie flower, linsede sodden in Hydromell or oricrate, putting to it a little powder of Camomell, and oyle of Roses, all those remedies must be liquide and often removed, and the soze well cleansed that nothing remaine on it, if it be come to a bile or vlcer, and is cured as Herpes.

Formica.
Error of the
Chirurgions.

As touching *Formica* and *Ignis persicus*, the signes and cure differeth little from Eresipelas, yet you must note that diuers Chirurgions doe and haue committed error in the cure of this disease, esteeming it to proceede of a malignant furious humo^r, for the which they euer applye cold medicaments not regarding purgations, bleeding, comforting of the part, neither the time when these colde medicaments or resolutiues should be applyed. For the which I haue sometime seene ensue Gangren and mortification, wherefore the skillfull Chirurgion should abstaine from those cold medicaments: when the inflammation, rednesse, and heate doth diminish, you may apply such thinges as you haue heard before. Thus I haue thought good to aduertise the young Chirurgion, because such accidents happen, as I haue sometime remarked.

Chap. X. Of Herpes.

Gal. 2. ad glan.
cap. 1.

HErpes, is a little vlcer accompanied with tumo^r, proceeding of a pure bilious humo^r, without mixture of any other humo^rs, it occupieth most commonly the extremities

ties and outward parts of the skinne, and is comprehended under Eresipelas, like as Formica and Impetigo, which are little cholericke pustules : the old Greekes doe make three kinds of it. The first, is made of the thinne choller which burneth the skinne, and is called simple Herpes. The second, is made of a more thicke choller, which ulcerateth a great part of the skinne, and is named by the vulgar Wilde fire, or Herpes depascens, because it eateth and consumeth the skinne to flesh. The third kind, is made of choller and pituit together, accompanied with some malignitie, as commonly it happeneth to those who are infected with the neapolitan or french disease. It is called by our ancients *Herpes miliaris*, because the pustules of it are like unto the graine called *miliun*. These pustules haue diuers denominations, some call them *papula* or *pituita eruptionis* : others doe call them *Ecthimata*, some doe call them *Exanthemata*. The Cause and Signes differ not from those which you haue heard in the precedent chapter. As for the cure it doth consist in three parts, first in staying the fluxion by euacuation vniuersall, prouocation of vrine, and good dyet, as in Eresipelas. Secondly, in euacuating that which is in the place, by such things as haue the vertue to discusse, diger, and dry lightly, and not burne : then in the beginning you shall vse Wine leaues, Plantaine, Goose-berry leaues, Arnoglosse, putting thereto a little barley flowre, with some honye, also the barke of the Pomgranet dissolued in wine, with a little fine flowre made in forme of cataplasme. The third intention is in drying vpper the blcers, for all blcers whatsoeuer require desiccation by gentle medicaments, excepting alwayes the maligne blcers, in the which you must vse more strong and mordicant remedies. First, you shall vse fomentations of Roses and Plantaine sodden in wine or water and an vnguent made of oyle of Walnuttess and Ware, thereafter washed well in Smiths water, also Vnguent roset is good: or this vnguent thus made. *Rec. Unguenti popilionis serati refrigerantis Galeni serussae an. drach. vn. dim. litargiri. unc.*

Gal. comment. in apho. 45. lib. 6.

Diuers denominations of Herpes.

Cure.

Gal. 2. ad glau. & 14. meth. cap. 7.

Paul. li. 5. ca. 20

3. olei rosei unc. i. malexentur omnia simul & fiat unguen-
tum. The other pustules, like as *Formica* and *Impetigo*
are cured commonly by generall euacuations. As for other
defections of the skinn, which proceed of the melancholicke
or chollericke humors, they are cured by vniuersall euacuati-
ons, sweating, bathing, else by applying some vnguent on the
part affected, like as *Vnguentum anulatum*, putting thereto a
little *Mercurie*. It is excellent for this purpose, as also to
kill the itch which happeneth to young children. For this, take
Enula Campagne roots, seeth them in the iuice of Plantane,
Rogerus tra. 2. Fumitorie, yolkes of Egges, hogges grease or fresh butter,
being all mingled together, put thereto a little brimstone well
purified with oyle of *Hypericon*, make an vnguent of good
consistence.

CHAP. XI.

Of Tumors which proceed of the pitui-
tous humor, and first of Oedema.

Definition.
Gal. 2. ad glan.
cap. 3.
Difference.

HAVING spoken of the two hot tumors, and of those
which commonly come of them: now in like manner
I shall shew you of the two cold tumors, the one ingende-
red of melancholie, as you shall heare at length in that chap.
the other of Phlegme or pituit. Oedema is a soft tumor with-
out dolour, white coloured. Of it there are two sorts, as of
Phlegmon; the one the true naturall oedema, ingendered of
the pure Phlegmaticke humor; the other is made of Phleg-
mon, mingled with the other three humors, and taketh di-
uers names according to the principall humors, as you haue
heard. And like as there is two sorts of it; so it may be na-
med two wayes, to wit, either Malady or Symptome of
Malady, as happeneth in the face, and legges. In such as
are

are oppressed with abundance of cold watry humors, called by the Physicians Cathedrickes. Also those which are become Edematikes through long sicknesse, which accidents are called maladies, and they require no particular curation, saue onely rubbing the part with oyle and salt, water and salt, or oricrate, wetting a cloth therein, and lay on it : Also strong Claret wine mixed with Smiths water, and apply it warme after the same forme, the wine doth corroborate & drie. The Cause is a phlegmaticke fluxion of humors, pituitous and flatuous in any part of the body : Also imbecillity of the part which receaueth, and can neither digest nor expell that which is hurtfull, also great idleness. The tokens of these, the tumor is soft, cold ; in pressing on it with thy fingers, there remaineth a hole, and riseth not againe. It is cleare, & not dolorous, and happeneth ofttest in the weakest parts, as in the ioynts and glandulous, and in the extremities, as in the face, legges, and fete, chiefly in cold weather, and old people ; or after long sicknesse, in people that be full of humors, and make no exercise.

Gal. 1. ph. 2. sec. 1. & lib. 1.

Cause.

Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 3.

The Judgements, this tumor hath foure degrees or times, as others hath, the beginning, augmentation, state, and declination. It happeneth oftener in Winter than in Sommer, because that season doth produce the cold phlegmaticke humor rather than any other. This tumor turneth seldome in matter, except in hote places, by reason the matter is cold, it endeth oftentimes by resolution : Sometime it turneth to Schirre, nodosities, or some other colde abcesse, which happeneth by the great vsage of digestiues, which maketh the matter ware hard.

Judgements.

It hath foure degrees.

In the Cure there are two points to be obserued : first to diuert the fluxion by remedies that hath the vertue to cleanse the pituitous humor called Phlegmagogis, as Diacatolicon, Diaphenicon, Diacartami Agricke, Pillulus, Chocia, Diaturbith and such like. For the administration of the which, you shall vse the counsaile of the expert Physician or Chyrurgion : as also in dyet tending to hote and drye : eate

Cure.

rosted

*Gal. li. de atte-
nu. vi. ca. 1* roasted meates rather than sodden, but a little quantity, ab-
*Car. 2. de sani-
taen.* staine from all things that breed flegmon, like as fruits, pot-
*Guido tract.
2. de apost.* tage, cheese, fish, hearbs, water fowles, sadnesse, and much
 sleepe, drinke wine with little water, vse well baked bread,
 with things to corroborate the noble parts. Abstaine from
 women, chiefly the sicke being weake: yet some doe com-
 mend the vsage of women in maladies pituitous, for it hea-
 leth and dryeth, vse moderate exercise, hold euer the bellie
 loose: abstaine from bathes, and all thinges that humects:
 also from bleeding, although it be commended by Guydo, for
 it is hard to find in a body that is plethoricke a true Edema.
 The second intention consisteth in taking away that which
 is in the place, which shall bee done according to the times
 and degrees of the tumor: first then you shall vse medica-
 ments repercussives, and discutients, which shall be weake
 and not strong.

*Gal. 4 meth.
ca. 4, & 2, ad
glanc.* Galen doth much commend oricrate, by reason the vine-
 gar repelleth by the cold vertue, and resolueth by the dry ver-
 tue: if it be not sufficient, mixe with it a fewe ashes of the
*Pa. li. 4. ca. 27
Avicen tract.
2, cap. 3.* Oake tree, sal niter, and some Claret wine: also the em-
 plaster de vigo, or a fomentation made of Camomell, Meli-
 lot, Rosemarie, Sage, Wormewode, Dzigari, Slope, and
 Red roses, of each one a handfull; salt and sulphure, of each
 one an ounce, seeth them all in Smiths water, with a little
 vinegar, and foment the part with a sponge or cloth: you
 may also make a *Lixivium* of the cinders or ashes of the fig
 or vine tree, as counsaileth Avicen. it drieth and cleanseth
 mightily. If need be, of stronger desiccation, vse this reme-
 dy set downe by Brunus; take Allom, Sulphure, Myrre,
 and Salt, of each a like quantity, mixe all with vinegar, of
 Roses make a ligament. For the same purpose you may
 make cataplasmes of flowers Beanes, Lentiles, and bran
 sodden in vinegar, putting thereto Aniseeds, Myrtill, or A-
 rtis, and plaster of melilote is also good.

Brunus lib. 2.

Rogerus also counsaileth to take iuice of maltwort, Sorrell,
 and Marrubium, take of every one of them a reasonable
 quantity,

quantity, and seeth them with *Unguentum de althea*, honic, *Comment. in*
 oyle, and butter, make a cataplasme thereof. If it wax hard, *aph. 41, lib. 1.*
 you shall vse this *Rec. Exunge. bubula unc. 3. gab. bedel-*
li ammo. in aceto dissolutorum sing. unc. 1. i. cis unc. semiss. che-
rebenthine 2. unc. myrrha drach. 3. corticis thuris drach. 2. If it tend to
olei veteris unc. 2. fiat unguentum. If it tend to suppuration *suppuration*
 as often happeneth in hote parts, vse this suppurative, take
 the rootes of Althea, 3. unc. Lillie rootes, 2. unc. Camomell
 and Melilot of each one a little handfull, flower of Orbs
 and Fenegrek, unc. 1. beat all these and mixe with Venues
 grease, Butter, oyle of Lillies, and Camomell, of each halfe
 an unc. make a cataplasme, cleanse the vlcer, and cure it as
 other Aposthumes. If it waxe hard and schirrus, cure it as
 you shall heare in the chap. of Schir.

CHAP. XII.

¶ Of the woundy Tumors that de-
 pend of Edema.

YEE haue heard in the generall chapter, diuers kinds of
 phlegmaticke tumors which pertain to Edema, wher
 of I will now speake, beginning with the woundy tumors,
 which are nothing else but certaine wounds and inflations,
 ingendered by a spirit thicke & vaporous and not of a subtil &
 aerious substance. Sometime those wounds are inclosed vn-
 der the skinne and within the membraines, which maketh
 distention, & sometime dolour according to the part where it
 is. They are sometimes in the venter, puddings, and
 capacity betwixt the puddings, and periton, as in Tympa-
 nies, which sound like a drumme. Those winds are some-
 time disperfed amongst the muscles, which is properly infla-
 tion, and differeth from Edema, for in pressing on it with the
 fingers

Gal. li. 13, met.
cap. 4.

Definition.

Auic. lib. 4.
cap. 2.

The place
 where they
 are.

Difference.

fingers, the print or seale doth not remaine. The other kind
Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 6. of it doth approach nere vnto Oedema, which is, the flatuosi-
 ties disperled in other parts musculous.

Cause.
Gal. lib. symp. caus. The Cause of tumor, is too much vsage of colde flatuous
 meats, phlegmaticke, which causeth these winds. The cause
 also may be in the ventricill and guts, in like manner in the
 obstruction and straightnes of the passages, and imbecility of
 the naturall heate, saith Galen.

Signes.
Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 6.
Pau. li. 4. ca. 28 The Signes are Tumor, softnesse more cleere than Oede-
 ma; and by pressing on it with the fingers, there remaineth
 no marke as in Oedema: by knocking on it, it soundeth like
 a bladder full of wind, and in that point it differeth also from
 Oedema.

Cure.
Car. ad finem lib. 4. de sani. tuen. The Cure doth consist in two points; first, in dyet which
 shall be hote and drie, eating little and of light digestion, good
 bread of wheate well baked, and salted, vsing things to cor-
 roborate the naturall heate, discusse the thicke cold vapours,
 and to attenuate. Also to corrobore the ventricill with aro-
 maticke things and electuaries, as Diacalamintho aromati-
 co, Gariaphilata, Diagalanga, Rose, and such like; Eate
 good flesh, as Mutton, Meale, and such like, rather roasted
 than sodden, the drinke must be good Claret or white wine.

The second intention consisteth in euacuation of the hu-
 mor which is in the part, by topicall remedies, which haue
 the vertue to clarifie and make the skinnie thinnie, to the end
 the vapours may passe out more easily: such are called dis-
Gal. 14. meth. cap. 34. cutients or carmenatiues, like as Aniseedes, Fennell, Asope,
 Parsly, Bacci laurei, Juniper, Maritarie, Camomell, and
 Helilot, oyle of Ryn, and Bayes: Of those we may make
 cataplasmes, fomentations, or lariues, as shall bee thought
 expedient: Also linements of Camomell, Rue, Lillies,
 and a little aquauite, or the emplaster called Bacci laurei,
 oxycroci, & de vigo mixed together make an emplaster and
 lay on the soze: also a new water sponge wet in lariue, or
 lana succida, wet in warme wine and oyle, and applyed. If
 those vapours or windes maketh dolour, as commonly hap-
 peneth

peneth in the cholericke passion : first, you shall appease the
 dolour, then euacuate the matter, which shall be done accor-
 ding to the habitude of the body where it is, and discretion of
 the learned Chyrurgion, vse likewise glisters carmenatiues.
 If those flatuositie be in the intestines, you may apply three
 or foure great ventosies on the belly.

If it make do-
 lour ; how to
 heale it.

Par. li. 4. ca. 8

CHAP. XIII.

¶ Of the watrie Tumors which depend on Oedema.

This tumor is a water or serositie, gathered together in
 any part of the body, but specially betwixt the skinn
 and flesh. The Signes are like to the true Oedema, but the
 tumor is looser and doth not so resist the touch, nether doth it
 sound like wind, as the other. It is likewise more cleare,
 chiefly betwixt you and the light, as ye shall heare in *Hernia*
Aquosa. The Iudgements, it happeneth oftener in the ex-
 tremities, as in the feete, ioynts, and Cods, than in other
 places, because the watry humor doth easily descend, and dul-
 leth the naturall heate in those parts. The Cure differeth
 little from the true oedema, and as it occupieth diuers parts
 of our bodies, it taketh likewise diuers names; as if it bee
 contained within the periton, it is called a spise of Hydroptic
 tearmed Ascites, and that serosity descending in the Scro-
 tum or Cods, is called Hydroscelon, If that watry humor
 come in the head, as sometime happeneth vnder the muscles,
 pericran, or skin, it is called Hydrocephalon. If this bitter
 watry humor ether for y rottennes, or ebullition, become mix-
 ed with the bloud in any part, it is called Phlistimas, which
 are little blisters or brownish blobs, which commonly happen
 in the hands: for the cure of those you shall heare at length in
 the proper chapter.

Pa. li. 9. ca. 27
 Signes.

Iudgements.

Cure.

Gal. li. 3. ca. 2

CHAP. XIIII.

¶ Of the tumors Phlegmatickes called *Atheorema*, *Steotema*, and *Melleriferis*.

Those tumors are commonly called excressences phlegmatickes, by reason they procede of the phlegmaticke humoꝝ; yet they differ from the other tumors, because they are inclosed in a membaine, little bagge, oꝝ chest: they are composed of diuers sorts of strange matter by the which they haue taken their names, as hath beene remarked by the most learned amongst the auncients. *Atheorema*, is so called, because in it is contained a matter like greuelloꝝ pottage, called by the Greeces *Athera*. *Steotema*, is so called, by reason in it is contained a humoꝝ like grease, called by the Greeces, *Stear*. *Melleriferis*, is so called, because in it is contained a matter both in colour and consistance like vnto hony, called by the Greeces *Meli*, and is the hardest of them thꝛee to heale. As foꝝ *Bruncoceli*, *Ganglion*, *Testudo*, and the residue, I shall speake hereafter in the particular tumors. Those tumors doe happen most commonlie in membrainous places, and where there is scarcitie of flesh, as in the ioynts, hands, head, and diuers parts of the face.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 36.
 The matter whereof they are composed
Atheorema.
Steotema.
Melleriferis.

Scituation.
Ap. 25.
 Cause.
 Primitiue.
 Cause antecedent.
 Coniunct.

Signes.
 The forme of *Atheorema.*

The Cause is primitiue, antecedent, and coniunct. The primitiue oꝝ first motiue is strokes, falles, violent forces, immoderate eating and drinking. The Cause antecedent is aboundance of humoꝝs, chiefly of the phlegmaticke naturall, ingendered chiefly by euill dyet. The coniunct cause is the diuers kinds of matter contained in the part.

The Signes, they appeere by little and little without either dolour oꝝ inflammation preceeding; neuerthelesse, by reason of the diuersitie of the substances contained in them, they haue diuers signes.

The *Atheorema* is long in figure, and in pressing on it with the finger, it goeth in slowly, and returneth not sodainly, it

it is soft without dolour. The Colour is (of the skinn) natural, in it is found sometime with the matter, haire, bones, and such like.

Colour.
Matter.

The signes of *Steotema* is hardnesse, and if it goe in, in pressing on it, it returneth not easilie: it is large at the roote, in the which is contained with the matter accustomed, bones, cotten, and such like. Of the which I did find great quantitie in the knee of an *Spanne*, whome I did cure at Paris. It differeth from *Atheorema* both in figure, and substance, the figure being more round, and the substance more thicke.

The forme of
Steotema.
Matter.

The Signes of *Melleris* is great softnesse, in touching subtil and cleare: in pressing on it, it goeth in easily, and likewise doth returne, it is round in figure, in it is contained besides the matter accustomed, a grauellie hard matter.

The forme of
Melleris.

Matter.

Those tumors for the most part are little at the beginning, but by proesse of time groweth very great, some very hard, and in some of them is contained a very strange matter, like as haire, bones, cotten, grauell, sometimes little animosse like Bees: the which be all inclosed in a bagge or chest, as hath bene sayd.

In the Cure of those, there is one simple intention to be done, to wit, euacuation of the matter contained in the place, which is done either by Lancing, Cauter potentiall, or causticke stone, not euacuating all the matter at one time: the ouerture must be proportionable to y^e tumor, which should be obserued in opening of all tumors: Those tumors are sometime inserted with vaines, artiers, nerues, and tendons, for the which great dexterity would be vsed in y^e operation, specially in taking away of the bagge wherein the matter is contained, that you offend not the former parts: For oftentimes there commeth great fluxe of blood as I haue sometime seen, cheifly in the temples.

Cure.

Great dexte-
ritie in the o-
peration of
them.

The tumor being opened, and the membaine discovered which will appere white, you must separate the same gently from the flesh, either with your spyle or other fit instrument proper to pull it out, with that which in it is contained,

Cels li. 9. ca. 28

The mem-
brane must
be consumed,
and how.

*Paul. lib. 4.
Ætius 15.*

ned, and if there remaine any portion thereof, you shall vse such medicaments for the cleansing of it, as you haue heard in other tumors: the matter being euacuated and the membrane remaining wherein it was inclosed, the same must be wholly consumed, and wholly cleansed awaye, otherwise it will grow againe as before: We vse to consume that membrane with powder of Mercurie, Egyptiacke, and such like, always with discretion for feare of inflammation, thereafter incarnate and close the wound, as in others you haue heard: some doe vse resolutiues in those tumors, which are both tedious and vncertaine. There are certaine other tumors phlegmatickes, like as *Talpa*, *Napra*, or *Natha*, *Telludo*, *Gangleon Nodus*, & *Lupea*, which tumors doe all depend on the former, yet little mention hath bene made of them by our ancients. Those tumors doe not much differ from the former, neither in the causes nor signes: they doe occupie for the most part the drie parts, as the other which are emptie of flesh, like as the head, face, ioynts, hands and feete, as sayth *Avicen*. The cure of such are little different from the former, except that some of them be oftener cured by resolution, as you shall heare in the booke of Tumors in particular, speaking of those tumors.

CHAP. XV.

¶ Of the Tumors engendered of the melancholicke humor, called by the Latines *Atrabilis*, or *Nigra cholera*, and first *Schirre*.

Seeing I haue sufficiently spoken of the tumors engendered of the sanguine, cholericke, and pituitous humors: Now it resteth to speake of those which proceed of melancholy.

lie, called tumors schirrous, for the Greeke word Schir doth
 signifie hardnesse. Schir is a hard tumor with little dolour
 or feeling : of the which there are two kinds, the one is called
 the true exquisite Schir, and the other the false. The true
 and exquisite is a hard tumor without feeling, procreate of a
 naturall melancholicke humor, which is in the dregges or
 grounds of the blood : Or it is a slimie sharpe superfluitie,
 blacke coloured, sowre tasted. The false or illegitimate Schir
 doth proceed of an unnaturall melancholicke humor, which is
 ingendered of the most grosse part of the chyle, as you haue
 heard; the false is altogether without feeling, or hardly may
 be perceiued. There is an other sort of Schir, ingendered of
 a phlegmaticke, thicke, tough matter, and is composed of an
 humor thicke and cold. The Cause is a cold drie humor ei-
 ther of matter melancholique, phlegmaticke, or both : for
 first, when the blood is made in the liuer, there is ingendered
 in it a melancholicke humor, which is like vnto the lye or
 dreggs of wine, the which afterwards is drawen to y^e milt for
 the nouriture thereof : it is engendered, especially by the v-
 sage of such meats as are apt for the making of the same, and
 the milt being weake to drawe it, it goeth vnto the vaines
 and there is mingled with the vaines, which by their vertue
 expultrix doth expell the same by the Hemorrhoides, month-
 ly courses, or varices, and sometime it doth disperse through
 the skinne, and oftentimes doth breed the Morphea or Le-
 prosie. Sometime it is cast in the most weake parts of the
 body, and according to y^e place and quality of the humor, breed-
 eth either Schir or Cancer. If it be cast in any drie part, as
 the ligaments, tendons, or ends of the muscles, on the milt,
 kidnies, liuer, or matrice, it causeth Schir. If it be cast on the
 soft and glandulous parts, as the paps, emunctoires of the
 noble parts, face, or priuie parts, it maketh Cancer. It may
 also proceed by the sadnes, suppression of the Hemorrhoides
 and monethly courses : also by too much applying of colde
 medicines or tumors, as on Eresipelas or Flegmon, by that
 meanes the most subtil doth resolve, and the rest doe become
 hard.

Definition.

Gal. 2. ad glan.

cap. 5.

Difference.

Gal. 2. ad glan.

cap. 9.

Cause.

Gal. 14. meth.

cap. 3.

Gal. 5. sim. ca. 8

Gal. li. 3. meth.

cap. 16.

Pau li. 4. ca. 3

Signes.

It closeth the
conduit of
the nerues.
Roland. lib. 1.

Cure.

Gal. 2. ad glau.

Gal. cap. citat.

Gal. li. tumor
contra natu.
cap. 6.

hard. The Signes are these, the tumor is hard and groweth slowly, and of colour liuide when it cometh of melancholy, but when of the phlegmaticke humor it is white; and being mixed of both humors together, it is of a liuide and white colour; insensible, because of the humor which is thicke and drie, closed the conduits of the nerues, so that the animall spirit is in such sort inclosed, that the part hath no feeling. Those which hath no feeling are altogether incurable, but such as haue any feeling, and being taken in the beginning, in some sort may be helped, those which come to suppuration degendereth easily into Schir.

The Cure consisteth in three things; first, in dyet tending to heate and humiditie, euer abstaining from anger, sadnesse, feare, and venereal exercise: The second point doth consist in euacuating the matter antecedent, by purgations, bleeding, prouocation of the moneths, and Hemorrhoides: the third point, is to euacuate that which is contained in the place, which must be done by thinges remollients and resolvents, like as Goose-grease, Hens, Cockes: Also Gumme armoniacke, Stirax, Galbanum, rootes of Althea, Lillies, Camomell, with oyle of Camomell, and Lillies; of those you may make lineaments and cataplasmes: also the emplaster of Diachilon magnum, album, de vigo, with double Mercurie. Galen doth much commend Goats dirt to discusse tumors schirrous. Sometime it happeneth in the tendons, and then we vse perfumes thus made. Take the stone called Pyritis, or any other stone being red hote, and quench it in strong vinegar or aquavite, thereafter receiue the smoke on the sore part, then apply remolliant remedies: Sometime after the perfume, the gumme armoniacke dissolved in vinegar, is good being vled with good discretion. Those tumors if they augment much with vehement dolour, as often happeneth, I vse to apply a cataplasme of Rye sodden in milke, with floure, Beanes, Barly, and a little Harts grease, by the vseage whereof I haue found great helpe. If this tumor tend to suppuration, you must vse no hote remedies to moue it much,

much, by reason it degendereth easily into Cancer, for remedie whereof haue recourse to the next chap. In some parts *Gal. lib. 2. ad* it may be cut, providing that all be cut and nothing left adhere *glanc.* rent to the whole parts, neither any portion of the roote. For the great fluxe of blood which sometime happeneth, you must either knit the vaines or stay it by actuall Cauters; if it doe not penetrate to the internall parts: but if it doth penetrate it is dangerous, as saith Hippocrates; for the which he for *Hip. 6. aph. cap. 38.* biddeth to seeke the exquisite cure of the hidden Cancer.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Cancer, which the Greekes called Carcinoma.

Although that Cancer bee comprehended vnder the Schirrous humors, yet there is great difference: for *Pa. li. 4. cap. 24* Cancer is a hard tumor, round, vnequall, with dolour, pun- *Denifinition.* tion and pulsation: it groweth sooner than Schir, and hath great vaines about it, tumified and swelled, full of melan- *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28* cholicke blood, and doth resist being prest vpon. It is some- time taken for the soze of a beast, and is called Cancer, be- cause it sticketh fast to the part as doth the Crabbe-fish to that which it taketh hold on; as also the vaines which are a- bout are like vnto Crabs feet. It is of colour liuide or blacke, *Aetius. li. 16. cap. 44.* hard, and rough, eating, gnawing, and going, like vnto the Crabbe-fish. There are two kinds of it, the vlcerate and *Difference.* vnlcerate. The vnlcerate, is called the hidden Cancer. The vlcerate, is immobill, hote by accident, through the acrimonie of terrestrious humor.

The Cause of it is a drie melancholicke humor, not onely in the part as Schir, but also in the vaines about it, the which in time becommeth sharpe and maligne, and so becommeth *Cause.* vlcerate.

Gal. 2. ad glan. ulcerate : also euill dyet, and vsing of thinges which breed
Paul. li. & loco citato. thicke corrupt blood, with such other causes, as you haue
 heard in the chap. precedent. Also the debility of the milke and
 parts which it doth possesse, being destitute for the most part
 of naturall heate, and cold of themselves, as in the paps and
 other glandulous parts, as vnder the armes, in the nose,
 eares, rose of the mouth, conduits of women, and fundam-
 ent, fete and hands.

Signes.

*Gal. tumor
 contra natu.*

The Signes are dolour, vntion, pulsation, chiefly in the
 night, betwixt nine and foure in the morning: in which time
 I haue seene the sicke so grieuouly tormented with such in-
 tollerable paine, that it was hard to be endured. The soze is
 loathsome to be looked on, pale, sandy or ashy coloured, euill
 sauoured, by reason of the humors which is most filthy, soze
 dide, and stinking. It seemeth soft to looke vnto, but in tou-
 ching of it, it is hard, vnequall, and cauernues, or hollowe:
 the lippes and borders are tumified and turned ouer, euer a-
 voiding a virulent matter, like vnto the thinne dregges of
 Claret wine.

Iudgements.

*Gal. lib. 3. met.
 cap. 16.*

It hath diuers
 denominations

The Iudgements, those in the stomake, paps, head, shoul-
 ders, necke, and vnder the armes, be all incurable; by rea-
 son, those parts may not be cut for the great flux of blood that
 may easily ensue of the great vaines and artiers. Of those,
 some are little ulcered, others much; some recent, and some
 inueterate; in diuers parts, some are more malignant than
 others, and for the most part are all incurable. It hath di-
 uers denominations according to the parts it doth occupy. If
 it happen in the face, it is called by Vallesius *Eresipelas in fa-
 cie* or *noli metangere*. If in the legges or thighs, it is called
Lupus: and if in any other part it is called Cancer.

Cure.

The Cure shall first be in purging of the humors, rectify-
 ing, and drawing of blood, prouoking of the Hemorrhoides
 and monethly courses, if age permit, as also by staying the
 melancholicke humor from falling or settling on the part, v-
 sing moderate exercise, specially before meat, sleepe onely sea-
 uen or eight houres, euer holding the belly loose, with vsing
 of

of good dyet, which must be cold and humide, like as broth *Aetius 16, &*
of cooling and loosing hearbes. Abstaine from long fasting, *45.*
and all thinges which ingender the melancholicke humoꝝ,
as is amply set downe by Galen: and all such thinges as doe *Gal. lib. 3. loco*
heate the blood, like as salt flesh, old Hares, Venison, Harts, *aff. &*
Goates, Vinegar, spices, cheese, mustard, fish, and sundry
others of like quality; from great trauaile, sadnesse, anger,
melancholie, vsing onely one kind of meat, vsing alwayes
from the table with appetite to eat more, vse euer such meats
as breedeth good nourishment and blood, like as Mutton,
Meale, Capons, and other sort of fowles, except water
fowles drinke Tysan, Whey, a little Ale or white Wine;
that is old, mixed with Teriacke and Mitridacke: also deco- *Adamus Loni-*
tion of Schine is good. As for topically remedies, and if it be *ce. de con. 2. ale.*
in fit places, some do counsaile to cut it in such sort that there
remaine no roote nor portion thereof: if so be, it must be taken *Gal. 2. ad glan.*
in time before the vaines bee filled with that humoꝝ, other- *cap. 11.*
wise it will bee residue, as I haue often remarked, for the
which I will giue you two examples. In Paris a gentle,
woman named Madame Butrow in the yeere of our Lord
God 1591. who had a Canker in her thombe, for the which
I made amputation in presence of Master Marescot. and
Martin doctors of Physicke, with Leifort, and Peter Doc- *Historie of*
tors of Chyrurgerie, I stayed the fluxe of blood and cured the *Carfinoma-*
wound sone thereafter, which being closed, within 8. weekes *tous tumors.*
after it brake out in the plye of her arme, and vnder her orter
with such malignity and intollerable paine, that notwithstanding
of all remedies aswell generals as particulars shee dyed
within ten weekes after. In like manner I had a Gentle- *Historie of*
man in Glascoe vnder my cure, in the yeere of God 1603.
called James Campbell, who had a Canker in the plye of his *Carfinoma-*
arme, which was caused partly by the application of cold ve- *tous tumors.*
nomous remedies, by the which it did grow in short space to
such bignes and corosion, through the acrimonie of that hu-
moꝝ, that it did both corode vaines and artiers, with great
fluxe of blood and other dangerous symptomes, for the which


Paul. li. 4. ca. 6

Milke of an
Ass applied
to the sore.
Vrine of a
maide.

Goats dunge
killed the can-
ker.

Water of Car-
dus Benedictus

I did cut off the arme within thre inches to the head of the Brachium, and did cure the wound perfectly. But in short time after, it brake out vnder his arme and in his pappe with such intollerable paine, that he liued scarce thre moneths after. These two examples I thought good to set downe, that the yong Chyrurgion be not ouer-rash in promising, before he try the nature of the disease, and the part where it is: as likewise, that all men should eschew the handes of abusers, which most commonly in all diseases doe applye colde venomous things, as was done to this Gentleman: in such cases I haue euer vsed medicaments, refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, & pacifiers of pain, with such other things, as haue y^e vertue to let the augmenting of the disease, such as the iuice of Borrall, Jusqueam, Plantane, Lettice, Endiue, Sorrell, Centory, Shepheards purse, wet a cloth in those iuices and lay on the sore. Asses milke may be likewise vsed, as also to be drunke by the sicke. I haue oftentimes vsed in this, only the vrin of a yōg maide-child of 5 or 6 yeers old, wet a cloth therein and apply warme to the sore as the former, by this remedy I preserued a Nun, who had a Canker in her pay the space of 10 yeers. Petrus Hispanus doth counsaile in Cankers of the paps, to apply goats dunge with hony, which he alleadged doth kill the Canker: also mang excrements burnt and put in pouder, and applyed, doth the like. Diuers other remedies may be vsed for this purpose made of oyle of Roses, Vergie, Seruse burnt Lead, Licharge, Pompholigos, Tuthia, Thuris, Mastick, Cam: hier emplaster Diapalma, or Diapōpholigos, certaine of those mixed together, beaten in a mortar of lead, and apply to the sore, doth preserue the same in one estate, also correcteth y^e acrimony of the humors, the sore were so much the better if it were sometime washed with water of *Cardus Benedictus*. If you find that those remedies let not the augmenting of it, you must haue recourse to the Chap. of Cankers and Ulcers, in the Booke of Ulcers; and so I end this Booke of Tumors in generall.



THE FIFT BOOKE,

Of Tumors in particular.

*Which containeth LXXV. Chapters, whose
Contents be these ; By PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.*

Chap.

- 1 Of the excellency of the head.
- 2 Of the falling of the haire of the head.
- 3 Of taking away of haire of any part.
- 4 Of Lice, Morpions, and Nyts.
- 5 Of *Psyracia*, and *Exenthemata*.
- 6 Of *Tinea* or *Achoris*.
- 7 Of *Hydrocephale*, and *Physocephale*.
- 8 Of *Nodus*, and *Gangleon*.
- 9 Of the excellency of the Eye.
- 10 Of the composition of the eye.
- 11 Of certaine maladies of the eye.
- 12 Of a regiment for the sight.
- 13 Of *Lippitudo*, and *Ophthalmia*.
- 14 Of the weeping eye.
- 15 Of the Fistule in the corner of the eye.
- 16 Of *Hordelion* or *Pisthia*.
- 17 Of the haire of the eye-brees.
- 18 Of *Midriacis*, or *Dilatatio pupille*.
- 19 Of *Suffusio*, or *Cataracta*.
- 20 Of the cure of *Cataracta*.
- 21 Of the dolour in the eares.

Chap.

- 22 Of tumors in the eares.
- 23 Of Vlcers in the eares.
- 24 Of the tumors behind the eares called parotides.
- 25 Of the tumors in the nose called *Sarcoma*, *Polypus*, &
- 26 Of the fluxe of blood at the nose. (*Osena*.)
- 27 Of the lips and their diseases.
- 28 Of the Hear-shaw or clouen lippe.
- 29 Of the mouth, tooth, and toothache.
- 30 Of the corrupt and hollow tooth.
- 31 To helpe the mouldy blacke euill sauoured tooth.
- 32 Of the superfluous flesh at the roote of the teeth.
- 33 Of the pustules and vlcers in the mouth.
- 34 Of the diseases in the tongue.
- 35 Of the tumor vnder the tong called *Ranunculos*.
- 36 Of the relaxation of the *Vuia*.
- 37 Of the tumor of the *Amigdales*.
- 38 Of the tumor in the throat called *Scmans*.
- 39 Of the tumor called *Scrophule* or *Struma*.
- 40 Of the tumor in the crage called *Bruncofele*.
- 41 Of the tumor called *Aneufisma*.
- 42 Of the tumor in the paps.
- 43 Of the tumor called *Plurisie*.
- 44 Of the tumor in the nauell called *Exumphalon*.
- 45 Of the tumor in the belly called *Hydropsie*.
- 46 Of the fistule in the fundament.
- 47 Of *Thymus* in the fundament.
- 48 Of *Condoloma* in the fundament.
- 49 Of the tumor called *Hemorrhoides*.
- 50 Of the falling of the intestin called *Exitus longanontis*.
- 51 Of the Periton, Piplon, and intestins.
- 52 Of the spermaticke vessels.
- 53 Of the tumor in the Cods.
- 54 Of *Hernies* in generall.
- 55 Of the tumor vnguinnall called *Bubonocete*.
- 56 Of the hernie intestinall.
- 57 Of the hernie or ruptour called *Epiplocete*.
- 58 Of the watry hernie called *Hernia aquosa*.

59 Of

Chap.

- 59 Of the windy hernie called *Physocèle*.
- 60 Of the hernie called *Hernia carnosæ*.
- 61 Of the hernie called *Hernia varicosæ*.
- 62 Of the hernia humerall.
- 63 Of the bladder and diseases which happen in it.
- 64 Of the wand or yard and certaine diseases incident
- 65 Of certaine other diseases of the yard. (to it.
- 66 Of the tumor in the liske called *Bubo*.
- 67 Of the tumor or paine in the hippe called *Siatica*.
- 68 Of the tumor or paine in the knees.
- 69 Of the tumor in the legges called *Varicus*.
- 70 Of the paine in the legs called *Dracunculus*.
- 71 Of the tumor called *Elephantiasis particularis*.
- 72 Of the tumor in the fingers called *Pannaris*.
- 73 Of warts in the hands.
- 74 Of the mulls in the heeles.
- 75 Of the cornes in the feet, or toes.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the excellency of the head.



Having briefly shewed in the former books of those tumors which generally did proceed of the four humors, with their definition, Cause, Signes, and Cure: so now I am mindfull to entreate more particularly of tumors, and certaine other affections pertaining to Chyrurgerie, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, beginning first at the head, and some severall parts thereof in particular, so descending to the fingers and toes. The head is esteemed by the consent of the most learned, to haue the first place in respect of the worthines thereof: for amongst all the members of man saith the Philosopher, the head hath the first and principall place, for the high and mighty things in it contained.

The head
hath the first
place, & why.

Isidorus

Herophilus.
Zenocrates.
Erasistratus.
Strato.
Herodotus.
Blemor.
Cyreneus

Aristotle.

Hermes.

In the head is
the first prin-
cipall of all ac-
tions.

In it is 200.
maladies.

Isidorus saith, it is called *Caput*, a *capere*, for all the mem-
bers do take and borrow from it, being the wel-spring or seat
of wit, memory, the five externall senses, to wit, Seeing,
Hearing, Tasting, Feeling, and Smelling. A tower in it is
contained the life or soule of man, which is thought by Hero-
philus the Philosopher, to be placed in the lower part of the
braines: and Zenocrates in the height of the head. Eras-
tratus in the two membraines, which the Arabians call Me-
res Strato, betwixt the eyes. Herodotus in the eares. Ble-
mor the Arabike, and Cyreneus the mediciner, in the eyes,
by reason that all the passions of the life, is there remarked,
as in a mirrour. Some of the Philosophers be of other opi-
nions, like as Aristotle that great interpretour of nature,
who thought the heart to be the seat of life, or soule, because
it is the seat and wel-spring of all the naturall heate, which
first liueth, and last dyeth, and is the onely storehouse of the
vitall spirits, beginner of the vaines and artiers, chiefe au-
thour of respiration, and diuers more proprieties alleaged by
the authour. Yet because that diuers Philosophers are of di-
uers opinions concerning this matter, I will not heare exa-
mine them all particularly, but onely shall be contented with
the opinion of the most learned, who affirme this *Animus* to
haue the seate onely in the head and braines, in which parts
doth shine the most noble effects: all the organs of mouing,
feeling, memory, imagination, discretion, reason, and diuers
more are found there: so that we may iustly thinke, like as
the heauens are the first principall, whereupon depend all
the generations, and alterations elementaries: euen so in the
head is the first principal of all the actions and motions of our
body. Yet notwithstanding, of the worthines therof and all
those benefits in it contained, it is subiect to many grievous
diseases, but for the present I am not minded to make an ex-
act description of them all, the enterprise were too great, for at
least it behoued me to write 200. seuerall chap. for in it is
contained so many seuerall maladies. I will onely for the
present, set downe briefly certaine of those which are most
common

common in their countries and that with their severall remedies, by severall chapters; beginning first at the haire of the head.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of the falling of the haire, called by the Latines *Alopétia*.

ALopétia, is a falling of the haire of the head, chinne, and browses, leaving the parts void, sometime with vlcera-
 tion: to this disease the For is much subiect called Alopex,
 for the which it taketh the name Alopétia. The Cause is di-
 uers, as in the defect of the aliment, humoꝝ, oꝝ vapour fuli-
 ginous, whereof the haire is gendered and entertained as
 happeneth to old people: also by some corruption which doth
 cut away the vapours, oꝝ aliment whereof the haire should
 be nourished and ingendered, like as happeneth in rotten fe-
 uers, French poxe, and leprosie. Also by corruption of the
 whole humoꝝs of the body, oꝝ by the vice of the pores, being
 either closed too much, oꝝ ouer loose. Also by y vestiges of old
 vlcers and siccatrices of woundes, as sayth Avicen: also by
 burning and applying of hote drying salues.

The Signes, are when we see the haire fall without cause
 manifest, and little vlcers at the roote thereof, without scales
 oꝝ other superfluity, it is called Alopétia, and is of diuers co-
 lours according to the humoꝝs infected: as if it proceed of the
 bloud, the colour will be red: if of choller, the colour will be
 yellow: if of phlegmon, white: if of melancholie, blacke oꝝ
 leady coloured.

The Judgements, such as are naturally bold, old people,
 Eunuchs, and such as lack beards, thicks, and parts where
 siccatrices of woundes and vlcers haue bene, and places be-
 ing

Definition.

Cause.

Cels li. 6. ca. 1.

Gal. 14 therap.

Signes.

The colour thereof according to the humor.

Gord. parti. 11.

Judgements.

ing rough, rugged, and groweth not redde, be all incurable. But if the falling of the haire come accidentally by the euill disposition of the part or otherwise, and not inveterated but recent, it may be helped : but if it hath bene of long continuance, either it is impossible or very difficile. The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as purgations according to the humors which offends, hauing a speciall regard of the head and blading if cause require, as at length is set downe by the learned Gordanius. The particular remedies shall be first to raise the head, chiefly the empty places, and rub much with rough clothes, vsing such things as hath the vertue to draw vertue to the part ; next make a lauiment of the leaues of the vine, and oake tree, doves dunge burnt, woodbine, *Capilli veneris*, Colwort, and Mercurie, seth all in water, and make a decoction to wash the head often with all : next ye shall vse lineaments, as counsaileth Galen of oyle of *Lauren*, *Petrull*, *Walnuts*, *Aspicke*, and *Abrotanum*, also Gerardus. so Boares grease, fores dunge, or vipers. Gerardus for this purpose counsaileth, to take Barlye bread and salt burnt together, and mixed with Boares grease or hony, and annoint the empty part, or this, approued by *Iohannes Baptista porta*, take Bees & burne with Gylfe dirt and mire with Rose oyle, and anoynt the part, which will cause the haire to grow : or this set downe by *Nostredamus*, take Bees and dry them in an ouen or otherwise, till you may reduce them to powder, then mire that powder with hony or Swans bloud and annoint the part. *Dioscorides* counsaileth for this purpose to take Euphorb and mire with oyle. *Iohanne Lebot* counsaileth to distill the excrements of a red haired man and anoynt the part, for this purpose the distilled water of hony is very good : the composition whereof ye will find in my booke of the Spanish or French sicknes : but forasmuch that oftentimes the haire being grown on empty parts doth become white. For the helpe whereof *Nostredamus* approueth greatly diuers times to anoint the void parts with the milke of a bitch which impasseth it to grow white.

CHAP. III.

To take away haire in any part, and impasse
the growing of the same againe.

Like as want of haire in places where it ought to grow,
as well for health as ornament of our bodies, it is also
vnseemly and euill fauoured that haire should grow in places
vnaccustomed, it maketh great deformity, and is sometimes
painfull, specially in the inner side of the eye-lids. To take
away this deformity, there is sundry remedies set downe by
Galen and diuers others, of the which some are dangerous,
like as Arsenicke, Dypymunth, vnslaked Lyme, Graueling,
Vitrell, Coprice, burnt brasse, and diuers others of such
nature, they not being applyed in little quantity, with other
dregs to corrupt their virulency, as for example, I haue vsed
this, take three whites of egges, vnquenched lyme 3. vnc.
Dypymunth halfe an vnc. common licieue a little, mire all to-
gether, and let it be of consistance of a soft vnguent, annoynt
the part, and let it remaine halfe an houre, or in the tender
parts a quarter of an houre, then wash it alwaye with hote
water: if the haire fall not away at the first, annoynt it a lit-
tle againe and wash it as before, then to refresh the part an-
noynt it with oyle of Roses or Walnuts: and other reme-
dies which I learned of a country man, which I haue often
vsed, take Cats dirt well dreyed and put in powder, mixed
with strong vinegar, and rub the part with it, and the haire
will shortly fall away. Dioscorides counsaileth, first to draw
the haire by the roote, then take the iuice of fumentary, and
mire with a little gumme of Arabicke and apply on the part:
it doth also impasse the growing of the haire, or this remedie,
take halfe a pound of vnquenched lyme, stipped in common
licieue, or mans vrine, adding thereto halfe an vnc. of Dypy-
munth, seeth all to a thynne consistance like vnguent: or this
set

Vnseemly
haire to grow
where it
should not.

Galen.

Rando. tract.
de facis.

Alexis Pedo-
mantanus.

Gord. part. 11. set downe by Gordonius, take vnslacked lyme and Dyp-
munth, seeth them in water till such time that by putting a
Goose quill in it, the feathers fall away: if in seething, it grow-
weth ouer thicke, adde to it a little vrine, and annoynt the
part, thereafter wash the place with warme water, then an-
noint it with oyle of Walnuts and Rose.

(HAP. IIII.)

¶ Of Lice, Morpions, and Nyts, which of-
ten doe vse the skin and roots of the haire.

Definition.

The first kind
Lice & why
so called.

The second
kind Morpi-
ons.

The third
kind Nyts, &
where they
remaine.

These three sorts of vermin vegetable called Ptheriasis,
or by the Latines *Pediculi*, are ingendered in any part of
the body, chiefly in the hote and humide, as the head, priuie
parts, and the armes, by reason of the great quantity of haire
and excrements in those parts. The first of those kinds is
called by the generall name *Pediculi* or Lice, because they
haue many feete, are greater than the others and groweth
chiefly in the head, from the which they disperse through the
whole body. The Morpions, called by the Latines *Pessola-
ta*, or *Pedicolata*, are found chiefly about the priuie parts, and
vnder the armes are not to be seene, but where there is haire:
they wagge not nor trauaile as the Lice, but doe sticke fast
to the skinne, and are taken away with difficulty: they cor-
rode the skin, and is called by Aristotle *Ferum animal*. The
Nyts, called by the Latines *Lendes*, are least of all, and are
either found in the head at the rootes of the haire, or vnder the
skinne, prouoking great itching in the parts. Those three
sorts of vermin doe greatly molest the body, but chiefly the
Lice. Of them ensue a grieuous disease, called by the La-
tines *Mortus pedicularis*, they issue out at all parts of the bo-
dy, & ought not to be neglected, by reason that both holy and
prophane

profane histories maketh mention, that diuers being infected therewith, end their daies miserablie : Like as Herod Heord.
King of Iudea, after he had raigned 37. yeeres, dyed miserablie of vermine. Likewise Sylla Dictatour of Rome, a Sylla Dictatour.
great Captaine (in Asia) for the Romaines : he was a man very insatiable, and dyed likewise of vermine. Pherifides Pherifides.
the famous Philosopher and writer of Tragedies, after hee had long liued ended his dayes of the lousie sicknes : there be sundry others which were long to repeat.

The Cause interne of those three sorts of vermin, is great Cause.
corruption of the grosse humors, which nature cannot altogether digest, but sends to the pores and meates of the true skinne, and there remaineth untill they take life. Of their generation and life taking, I leaue it to the learned Physitians. They may be ingendered of any of the foure humors, as Gord. part. 11.
saith Gordonius, and are nourished of the iuice of the liuing flesh : For the which Aristotle doth say, that this *Animall* Arist. 5. de hist. animal.
hath the residence in liuing creatures, and leaueth them so soone as they be dead and destitute of life. They are as I haue said for the most part ingendered of a corrupt humor, as we doe perceiue in the lousie sicknesse : for then they come forth at the pores of the skinne in such frequency and greatnes, that the pores are open; after the same forme we see the out-comming of drops of sweat. The Nyts are ingendered The Nyts are ingendered of the egges of Lyce.
of the egges of the Lice, as sayth Aristotle. The Norpions are ingendered of a more dry hard humor, halfe burnt ; so they are more flat and not so tumified as the lice.

There is yet a fourth kind called Chyrons, they likewise The fourth kind is called Chyrons.
take life and corrodes betwixt the flesh and the skinne, and are ingendered of a more drie matter than the other, and are chiefly found in the hands of idle people : the cause externall of those animous, is euill regiment of eating and drinking, of such as ingendereth rotten humors, surfeiting of fruits, figges, nastinesse, idlenes, and seldome change of cloathes, as I haue oftentimes remarked in armies and camps, men of good temperature and dyet vered with vermine, negligence
in

Arist. 5. histo.
animali. 3. 1.

in combing of the head is a great cause. Aristotle sayth, that lyce grow in great quantities, by the much blage of waters: for it ingendereth crudities, randers the braines and other parts more humide, young children are much subiect, by reason they haue the braines humide. Aristotle sayth, that women are more subiect than men, and children more than those of elder age, and those children who hath their haire full of lice, are lesse subiect to the dolour of the head or epileptic.

Signes.
Iudgements.

Gord. part. 11.

The Signes are euident to sight in those parts. The prognostickes, if they doe multiply in great numbers by an internal cause; it signifieth either Morpha or leprosie to ensue, by reason the naturall heat is diminished, and cannot digest that euill mater as it ought.

Cure.

The Cure is, first to euacuate the body of blood pituit, and other corrupt humors whereof the vermin is ingendered, which shall be done with pillowes of Agaricke, Hirapira, Galeni, Diachatholicon, Diaphenicon; vse decoctions inwardly of Garlike and Calamint as counsaileth Auicenna Secondly, in keeping of good regiment of life, abstaining from

Change often
cleane clothes

such things as ingendereth filthy corrupt humors: vse things of good digestion, and that ingendereth good iuice, and change often cleane clothes. Thirdly, vse the things that hath the vertue to dry and cleanse, as baths made of decoction of Calamint, Cyprus, Herba pedicularis, called Staphysagria alume

Pauli 4. cap. 3.

and salt, wash the whole body and head therewith, or the head onely: if it be alone infected, then vse this vnguent; take 3. vnc. of oyle, Mace 5 vnc. Hyarra giron well extinguished 1 vnc. oyle of bitter almonds halfe an vnc. mixe all in a mortar and annoynt the head and other parts, saue the suters of the head, or this Rec. Sem. Staffisagria vnc. 2. hellobori albi. vnc. 1. salis 2. dragm. argenti vini vnc. 2. oxungei porcini lib. 1. olei laureni vnc. 9. saponis veneti lib. semiss. fiat vnguentum, and annoynt the parts: also the herbe Staffisagria put in powder and strewe the head therewith, or wash it with the simple decoction thereof: I find it one of the best and easiest remedies for this purpose. Paulus doth counsaile onely

Arnold. lib. 1.
cap. 19.

Arnold. lib. 1. cap. 19. bori albi. vnc. 1. salis 2. dragm. argenti vini vnc. 2. oxungei porcini lib. 1. olei laureni vnc. 9. saponis veneti lib. semiss. fiat vnguentum, and annoynt the parts: also the herbe Staffisagria put in powder and strewe the head therewith, or wash it with the simple decoction thereof: I find it one of the best and easiest remedies for this purpose. Paulus doth counsaile onely

Gord. part. 11.

Paul. lib. 3.

onely to annoynt the part with oyle and stronger vinegar. I use with it a little Aloes, and find it good. *Gordonius saith, Gordonius.* that the powder of the hearbe *Staphisagria* destroyeth not onely vermine on men, but giuen to fowles stayeth the vermine in them. *Lebot counsaileth this, take two ounces of the seed of Staphisagria, Orpiment halfe an ounce, oyle of bitter Almonds 4. ounces, vinegar and ware as much as will make it a good consistant of vnguent :* or this, which may be used for young children, take Laurell oyle, and that of Rapherts 2 ounces of each, Pepper and Saffron in powder, of each one a scrupl. make an vnguent thereof. Here you must remember, that those medicaments which haue the vertue against Lyce; it is also good for Cartaines and Pyts, yet for the cartaines I haue often used this, take halfe an ounce of butter well washed in Rose or Calamint water, quicke-siluer well extinguished 2. drammes, Aloes 1. dramme, make an vnguent and annoynt the part.

Lebot lib. i. r. of ornament.

The Chyrons which come in the hands or other parts, are cured by washing of those parts with salt water, or water wherein salt fish hath bene sodden, or rubbe them with the iuice of Hedder or Henbane, or strong vinegar mixed with a little Aloes. If you would know more diuersity of remedies for the vermine, take aduise with *Viccarus, Petrus Hispanus, Vigo, Alexis, and Lebot.* There is of those Chyrons or little Lyce found in the membaine coniunctiue or white of the eye, which maketh great paine and itching, for the which you must very cunningly with a stable hand and a siluer needle, such as we abate the cataract with, picke them out one by one, then wash the eye with Rose and Cusfrage water.

Chyrons in the membrain of the eye.

CHAP. V.

¶ Of the disease of the head called *Psyracia* and *Exanthemata*.

Definition.

Adamus. Lonicarius de consuetud.

Those little pustules or Aposthumes which possesse the outward skinn of the head and rootes of the haire, are like vnto the biting of fleas, or as if one were burnt with hote water, and are of diuers colours; sometime white, otherwhiles red and flat, otherwhiles high swelled, pointed, and dolorous, auoiding a corrupt matter, especially being prest vpon, they are sometimes ulcerated.

Cause.

The Cause proceedeth of ouer great aboundance of grosse, corrupt, filthie, and vicious humors of the body, the which being conuerted in vapours, is sent to the head, the which nature expelleth to the externall parts thereof.

Signes.

The Signes are euident, and may easily be discerned from those which do proceed of a malign infectious humor, as those of the pox, which are euill & more in number, redder and atry, more broad, auoiding a matter virulent, of the which I shall speake in their owne places.

Cure.

Galien. de salut.

The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as purgations, pilloties to purge the head, made of Aloes, Colocynth, and such like, vse fumes to prouoke the head to sweat: The particular remedies are of diuers things, and diuersly composed, according to y^e nature of the humor & pustules, which is sometime hote, otherwhiles cold. The simples whereof we make our compounds for these pustules, be these, take the leaues of *Putz* and *Cypus*, *Rytharge*, *Cerule*, *Acatia*, *Galla*, *Sulphure*, *Myraboli*, *Putmegs*, *Pistum*, oyle of *Rose*, *Winegar*, *Water*, *Wine*, *Waxe*, inpre of *Hallowes*, *Barly flower*, *pimpernell* little rootes. *Paulus* counsaileth for these pustules to take *Ruthe*, *Hony*, and *Allom*, braye all well together and annoynt the part being

Pauli 3. ca. 3.

first raised. For the same purpose, take Lytharge of both
sorts, Ceruse, of each halfe an ounce, quicke brimstone two
drammes, beat all well and mixe with a little swines grease,
and make alineament. Viaticus approueth much bitter Al-
monds well washed with warme water, beate them while
they come to the consistance of an vnguent, and anoynt the
part; bitter Almonds also bruised with little rotes and in-
cense, and boyled in vinegar, water, or wine, and apply on
the sores. If the pustules or little vlcers agree not with those
remedies, but be rebellions and vneasie to be cured, in that
case we touch them with the water of Sublmy. If they be
not much inflamed, you may touch them softly with water
of separation vled by the Goldsmiths. If you thinke these
waters ouer strong, mix with them a little Plantine or Rose
water: or this, take 4. ounces of Rose water, 2. ounces of
Aquauite, 1 dramme of Sublime, let all seeth in a vessell of
glasse, till the sublimie be consumed; and so follow out the
rest of the cure, as you haue heard in Eresipelas.

Viaticus.

Touch them
with water of
separation.

Chap. VI. Of Tinea.

Tinea or Achoris is a malady of the skinne and muscles
of the head accompanied with scabs, scurffs, scalles, vlc-
cers, and falling of the haire, easie coloured, fetide, vnplea-
sant, horrible to the sight, of the which there are five kinds,
as sayth Guydo: yet Galen doth onely allow three kinds,
and I am mindfull here to speake of two which are most
common: the one is humide and vlcerateth, the other with a
drie scabbe full of scalles: of these two, the one is easie to
heale and familiar to young children, possessing for the most
part the head and face: the other is worse accompanied with
malignity, insident to people of elder age.

The Cause of that which happeneth to young children, is
the impuritie of maternall blood, they were nourished with

Definition.

Haly Abbas

serm. 8. part. 1.

doct. 2.

Guido.

Galen.

Pau. li. 3. ca. 3.

Cause.

in the mothers wombe, or by the father, mother, or nurse, who had y^e disease for y^e time. The cause of those in elder age, proceed of euill regiment of life, a corrupt salt pituit or mixture of a corrupt, grosse, bilious, melancholicke humo^r, or by haunting such as be infected, for it is contagious.

Signes.

The Signes you haue heard in the description, besides that sometime it is virulent, sanious, corroding the skinn full of little holes, like those which the mothes make in cloth, and is called by the Latines *Ulcer a capitis manantia*. Sometime it is drie, accompanied with grosse thicke scabbes, by reason of the vehemency of the corruption and adustion of the humo^r.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, in young ones it is easie to heale, and such strong remedies ought not to be vsed as to those of elder age: this, with all other scabbes of the head and face that happeneth to young children, with that purulent rotten humo^r which issueth at the eares, doth deliuer them from Epilepsie, and diuers other great maladies, so better oftentimes to haue patience and let nature worke, than to be ouer curious in the cure.

The Iudgements of the elder people, if it bee recent it is somewhat diffidle to cure, and is called *Tinea quasi tediousa & fortiter tenens*, and being inueterate it must haue a long time great trauaile, very difficill to helpe, and almost incurable: or if it cure, it leaueth the vestige and weakenneth the part with emptinesse of haire.

Cure.

Vnguent for
Tinea.

Good part. 11.

The Cure in yong children shall be, first in prescribing a dyet to the nurse, which may bee done by the aduise of the skilfull Physitian, next vse this vnguent, take the iuice of Fumentary, with a little Centorie, Scabious, Anula Campana, of each 3 ounces, Lytharge 2 ounces, mixe them with 4 ounces of Swynes grease, oyle of walnuts, and ware a sufficient quantity, and make an vnguent: or this which I haue oftentimes vsed, take Turpentine and wash in common water, thereafter in fumentarie water, fresh butter washed in rose water 2 ounces, salt halfe an ounce, two yolkes of

of egges, iuice of Lymons and oyle rose, of each 1. ounce, Camphier halfe a scrupl. of those you shall make an vnguent and annoynt the head. You shall find diuers other remedies for this purpose, set downe in my booke of the deliuerance of women, and diseases incident to yong children.

The cure of those in elder age and inueterate, first euacuate the humoꝝ which prouoketh the disease, next raise the head, The cure of elder people. euery weeke once wash it with a lixue made of sinders of the vine tree of Grauelin, in the which shall be sodden Cephalicke, hearbes, and some sope, and wash the head therewith, after the which vescicatories were good to be vsed.

The common people vse only for this purpose strong vrine, Strong vrin is not good. which is not good: For as Galen saith, it is of a saltish quality; such as are skilfull in this cure, do first raise the head, and plucke out the haire by the roote, with a bonnet made onely of pitch. Lebot counsaileth to take flower of cleane rie halfe a pound steeped in vinegar, next take halfe a pound of pitch put in pouder, melt all on a soaking fire, and worke all together, thereof make your bonet which not only pulls out the haire, but also the euill humoꝝ: that being done, you shall vse *vnquentum anulatum cum duplici mercurio*, and annoynt the head, auoyding alwayes the suters and openings of the head, for the mercurie is hurtfull for the braines. Or you may vse this, approued by Ambrose Parrie; take *vnquentū anulatum*, with double Mercurie, Egiptiacke, of each 3. vnc. Pareus. Vitrioll Roman in pouder, 1. drinne: incorporate all together, make an vnguent, and annoint the head.

Petrus Hispanus counselleth to raise the haire and wash Petrus Hispanus. the head with strong vinegar and vrine, then take the roote of *Enula campana*, tender branches and leaues of the figge tree, bitter Almonds, bruiſe all with oile and strong vinegar, adde vnto it the ashes of the rootes of greene cole, Colwort, Lytharge, Hydargiron, Seruse, Salt, seeth and bruiſe all together and apply vnto the head.

Gordonius doth approue for this purpose, if it be rebellious and inueterateth, as also for all other infections of the Gord. part. II.

Pouder for
Tinea.

skinne, as leprosie, *malum mortum*, *Morphæa*, and such like, this vnguent, take the two Clebozs, quicke bymestone, Vitrioll, Allom, Put-galles, finders of Grauelie, of each one halfe an ounce, make all in a pouder: thereafter take the iuice of Borage, Scabious, Fumitarie, and Paritary, of each 3 ounces, let all seeth with the grounds of strong vinegar and old wine, on a soaking fire, till the iuices be consumed, thereafter put vnto the pouder, with the decoction, with halfe an ounce of liquide pitch, make all one consistance of vnguent. Some vse for this purpose *unguetum marceatum*, *agrippa*, *aragon de alibea* adding to them the 12. part of Hydragiron and anoynt the head, saue onely the suters. The malady called *Fanous* or *Chyrion*. is little different from this either in Cause or Cure, except the holes are larger, and casteth a matter moze like vnto hony, for the which it taketh the name.

CHAP. VII.

Of Hydrocephale, and Physocephale.

Definition.
*Albus. l. b. 2.
cap. 1.*

Difference.

Cause.

*Adamus Lonr.
de confex. vale.*

HYdrocephale, is a watry serous filthy blood, or humoz, which doth occupie the whole head or some part therof, especially in yong children: and Physocephale is a windy humoz, which doth the like. These tumors are either contained betwixt the penitran and skinne, betwixt the muscles, betwixt the penitran and cran, or betwixt the cranium and members, which couer the bzains called *dura* and *pya* matter but the tumor in that case is not so great.

The Cause is either externall, or internall. The internall, cometh from the matrice and by the mothers milke, which is too serous and watry, and such like foode as breed watry humors. The externall cause cometh of cold presently, after the birth, also through the vnskilfulness of midwives, as

I haue sometimes remarked, who did draine and presse the childs head so much, at the time and after y^e deliuey, that the vaines and artiers did breake, not being as yet strong, so the bloud did shade and spread through the rest of the head, and so degendereth into water. Pa. li 6. cap. 3.
Ætius lib. 6.
cap. 1.

The Signes are great tumors with deformatie of the head, the eyes and face swelleth, as doth appeere in hydopicke. Signes.

The Judgements, are such as bee within the cran are incurable: those that are betwixt the cran and pericran, or between the pericran and muscles, may be cured but hardly. It groweth oftentimes to such greatnes that the child dyeth. Judgements.

As for the curation of such as are curable, they are partly healed by dyet, and vsing of drying thinges, abstaine from things humide, as you haue heard in Oedema. Also by externall remedies applyed to the part, that hath any drying vertue, with some striction: also to comfort the head, which shall bee done by fomentations, lineaments, vnguents, and such like, made of Calaminth, Origan, Betonie Camomill, Melilot, Anthoes, and red Roses: also you may make lextues of the ashes of the vine tree, thereafter shau the head, and applye this emplaister following. *Rec. olibani unc. i. sarcocolli dragm. i. gummi arabici seminis raphali & anethi an. i. unc. dimid. olei de spica parum, sere quantum sufficit fiat emplastrum:* Or this, take hony halfe a pound, Origan an handfull & halfe, comon salt halfe an ounce, mixe all in forme of cataplasme and apply hote to the head: Or this, which I haue sometimes vsed; take shell Snailles and bruse them shells and all, and apply them to the head in forme of a plaster, so let it remaine while it fall away of it selfe, for it doth mightily resolue: if by those meanes you profit not, the humo^r being in great aboundance, you must make incision in diuers formes, according to the part and humo^r therein contained, but in such sort that the humo^r and water flowe not all at once, but by little and little; of ouer great euacuatiō sodainly done, great accidents, and sometime death ensueth, cheifly in yong children: so it shall be best you make your Cure.

Emplaister for Hydrocephale

Make the euacuation by degrees.

Macrocephale, what.

evacuation by degrees, and cure the wound as you haue heard in Oedema. If the cran or membraines are offended, ye must vse incision and perforation of the cran, then euacuate the humoꝝ and heale the wound, as in others. In the meane while purge the Purse, vse good regiment, and such as hath the vertue to dry, purge the head and hold the belly loose. There is another kind of this called *Macrocephale*, which is a super-naturall greatnes of the pan, flesh, and muscles, and not properly Tumor; it receaueth no curation, it is seldom seene one of this sort. I did see in Paris in the yeare of God 1583. to the greatnesse of a pot, which would containe 12. english points.

(HAP. VIII.)

¶ Of the tumor called *Nodus* or *Gangleon*, which commeth in the head.

Definition.
Cels. li. 7. ca. 6.

Those tumors which happen commonly in the head, are sometimes hard, otherwhiles soft, commonly round, & doe happē for the most part in dry nervous parts of the body, but chiefly on the head and ioynts, hands and feet, ridge backe, wrists of the feet and handes, other ioyntes, and parts empty of flesh.

Cause.

Pa. 4. ca. citta.

The Cause, are strokes and wearinesse of the ioynts, baines, and tendons, either by extention, contortion, stroke, or hurt; also by the humoꝝ which floweth to the part, and can neither digest nor turne to good substance as it ought, but degendereth in a cold grosse thicke humoꝝ, amongst the substance of the febres and tendons, chiefly in the articles and such other parts, as you haue heard in *Atheorema*: as also the Signes.

The

The Cure consisteth first in good dyet, eschewing all meats which ingender grosse humors, using things of good digestion, and abstaine from drinking of water, purge, and bloud, haunt no humide places : as for the particular remedies, this humor is sometime inclosed in a membrane, and in that case proceed to the cure, as you haue heard in Atheorema. Sometime it is neither inclosed in a bag nor chest, and then we apply a thinne cake of lead, rubbed with quicke silver, which hath great vertue to resolute, or an emplaster resolutiue made of *Galburrum ammoniacke*, oyle of Lillies and Bayes, Brimstone and Vitreoll, Roman calcined. Also the emplaster of Vigo, *Diachelum magnum cum duplici mercurio* and apply it. Or this, *Rec. emplastri, occicroci, unc. 1. musilaginis, althea, lini & Phenugraci sing. dragm. 6. Euphorb, sacap, ammoni, sing. dragm. 3. dissoluantur gummi in aceto, fiat emplastrum.* At the first it is good to rubbe it with fasting spittle while it grow red : if it be mobile and small cragged, it may be knit with thread or silke somewhat fast, drawing it faster euery day, so it cutteth the sooner but the better : if it be dipped in *aqua sublimata* and dryeth before the applying, so it will fall of it selfe.

Cure.

It is inclosed in a bagge.

Auicen.

Orib.li.7. lino.

Rub it with fasting spittle.

The rest of the cure is easie, by those meanes you may take away warts in any part : if it neither resolute nor open of it selfe, we open it with a launce or Cauter, produceth the fall of the Eschar, and consumeth the chest or bagge with *Egyptiacke*, powder of Mercury & such like, cleanse the wound, and cicatrize it.

In these sorts of tumors, diuers matter is oftentimes found, like as in Atheorema and Steotema : there is some of those tumors, that you would thinke them Carcinomators. I remember once in Paris being called with the famous and learned mediciner D. Blackwood, to the reuerend father Iohn Beton Archbishop of Glasgow, who had one of those tumors on the ridge of his backe about the ferd or fift vertebrie, to the greatnes of a mans fist : it was extreame hard and dolorous, and so great at the roote that it could not be knit.

Doct. Blackwood, Archbishop of Glasgow.

Powder to
correct the su-
perfluous
flesh.

I applied all remedies to resolve and mature, but nothing availeth, so I was enforced to open it with a Cauler, where I found in it contained a matter like cut stones, Greene coales, but small quantity of liquide substance. I did euacuate the humors with suppuratives and deterfives, with grosse tents every day applied twice, with this remedie, Terebinthin well washed in Aquavite, with a little honey of Roses mixed together: so cleansed the vicer, consumed the bagge, correcteth superfluous flesh with powder of Allom and Mercurie, and ciccatrice the wound, and so the noble man recovereth his health, to his great contentment.

There are in the head tumors of the same nature, such as *testudo* and *calpa*, which sometime are without vicer and corruption of the bone, and in that case are cured as the former, sometime they are with corruption of the bone *cranium* and in that case the humors must be euacuated and the exfoliation of the bone procured, as yee shall heare in the chap. of vicers, with corruption of the bone: as for diuers other diseases of the head, haue your recourse to Hernius.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Eye, the proper instrument of the sight, and most noble of all the externall senses.

Amongst all the Senses, that of the sight hath been esteemed by the common consent of all the Philosophers, to be the most noble, perfect, and admirable: the excellencye whereof is shewed to vs many waies, like as by the diuersity of the objects which it represents, and by the operations which are spirituall: also by the particular object which is the

the sight, the which sight causeth vs to know moze diuersity and difference of things, then any other sense : So Aristotle doth call it Sense, because by it all braue Sciences were inuented. It is composed with such excellency and good parts, that Plautin and Synecius doe call Nature a Magician, for hauing put in such a little part so many good graces. Orphe calleth them the mirrour of nature. Alexander the Peripateticke, calleth them the windowes of the soule, for by them is remarked all our passions, as loue, enuie, sadnesse, feare, hardnesse, pittie, reuenge, despaire, hope, health, sicknesse, life, and death. Blemor and Cyren mediciners, were of opinion that the soule was placed in the eye, for in them thou seest as in a mirrour all that is placed and hidde within them, and is giuen to guide and draue vs to the knowledge of god in beholding his meruailous workes, as also to bee guiders to the whole body, and to contemplate high things, and are admonished of the place to which they ought to looke, according to that which Dauid saith, I lift mine eyes to thee that dwellest in the heauens. Vigo writeth, that the eyes of a dead virgin hath great vertue against enchantments and charmes. Hippocrates commaundeth vs, when we first visite the sicke, to cast our eye on the eye of the sicke, where shall be scene the strength or weaknesse of the animall faculties : if the eye be cleere and bright, there is good hope : if obscure and tenebrous, it doth prognosticate death. Likewise the excellency of it is known in the certitude of the actions, for no doubt it is the sense most assured, whereof commeth the olde prouerbe, that one witnesse which hath scene is better than ten which onely heard.

The Philosopher Thales saith, there is as much difference betwixt seeing and hearing, as betwixt truth and falshood. Anaxagoras esteemed so of that part, that he thought we were onely bozne to see. Galen Prince of phisicke, doth call it a diuine member, which nature hath placed in a hollow place, for which it is called by the Latines *Oculus* : it is so placed, that it should not be exposed to the hazard of a million of iniuries.

Arist. Metaph.

Plautin.

Synecius.

Orphe.

Alex. peripat.

Blemor.

Cyren.

They are guiders to the whole body.

Psal. 123.

Thales.

Anaxagoras.

Galen.

injuries. They are fortified about with foure hard bones, for their better protection and decoration, as also to appeere more beautifull aboue them is the forehead, vnderneath the chafte-blade, on euery side the angles or corners with the eye lidds, called by the Latines *cilia a celare* to couer and guard the eye, as saith Iodorus. In case they should bee altered with ouer great light : they haue likewise muscles to giue voluntary mouement with sundry other parts, as you shall heare at length.

Jso. li. 10. ca. 1

Now seeing the excellency of the eye, is of so great importance and profit vnto vs, the skilfull Chyrurgion ought to take great care and diligence for the conseruation of the same, especially to know the temperature and composition of it : the nature of each part thereof, with their functions and offices, to what vse they serue : to the end hee may vse fit remedies for each party diseased, seeing it is holden for a *maxime* in medicine, that one cannot know what cometh contrary to nature in any part, except he will know first the nature of each part and things belonging thereto.

CHAP. X.

¶ Of the description and Composition of the Eye.

THe eye which maketh man to see, is called of the Grecks *Ophthalmos* : it is placed in the highest part, to make vs contemplate high thinges and discerne a farre off, also to serue for a watchman and guide that nothing hurt vs. It is of forme round or pyramidall in the inside, which forme is most capable and most easie to moue. It is of soft substance and double vsage, the one common to all creatures to guide them ; the other serueth onely for man, and maketh him

Bartho. de proprietat. rerum.

him to know God by visible things : they bee two in number, to the effect if one be toucht or hurt, the other may serue, as also maketh the sight more perfect to see diuers objects at once. The temperature is cold and weake ; it is very sensi-
 ble, by reason of the great sympathy it hath with the braines : it is of sundry colours, which either proceedeth of the humors
Tunicke vnica, or of the spirits : it hath seauen muscles to make it moue and keepe firme. The most part of the Anatomists find onely six, which take their beginning at the circle *Orbita*, in the which the eye is placed ; the first, is scituated above the eye, to lift it straight vppward ; the second, is scituated beneath, and pulleth it down-ward ; the third, is scituated in the great corner of the eye, and turneth it towards the nose ; the fourth, is scituated in the little corner or canthus of the eye, and turneth it towards the eare or temple, and hauing accomplished their actions, pulleth it inward. The actions of the other two muscles which are obliques, is to turne the eye, not fully, but in halfe circle. The first, is scituated in the vpper part of the eye and the great corner, by a membaine, and draweth the eye towarde the nose ; the other is scituated vnderneath, and turneth the eye towards the eares. As concerning the tunicks or membranues of the eye, there is diuersity of opinions amongst the Anatomists. Hippocrates remarketh onely foure, Galen foue, whose opinion Gulmio and Petrus Franco hath followed, and learnedly haue written of the eye. Some late Anatomists do make nine. Andreas de Loran, who is the most excellent Anatomist that hath written, doth remarke six. The vse of them is to inuolue and containe the thin humors together in their owne place. The first of them is called *Adnata* or white of the eye, it is strong & couereth the rest, & hath his beginning in the pericran and endeth in the circle *Iris*, which is of sundry coloures. The second membaine is called *Cornea* because it is hard, cliere, & strong, like the horne of a lanthorne, and hath the beginning from the *dura mater*. It containeth the humor, and maketh the eye round, and serueth for a lanthorne.

The tempera-
 ture of the eye
 cold & weake

Gal. lib. 10. de
 visu part.

Hippocrates.
 Galen.
 Gulmio.
 Petrus Franco.

It is of sundry
colours.

Three hu-
mors of the
eye.

The first hu-
mor and vsage

The second
humor and
vsage.

thorne to the chryſtalline eye. The third is called *Unea*, and is like the ſkinne of a vine berrie or grape being preſſed: it hath the beginning from *Pia mater*, which is the ſecond ſkinne that couereth the braines: it couereth all the eye, except only within, where it is placed in a little round hole, called the pupill or windy of the eye. It is of ſundry colours; without, it is blacke; within, blew and greene: it is ſoft, & preſerueth the chryſtalline humor from the hardnes of *cornea*, and doth reioyce the chryſtalline with the diuerſity of his colours. It retaineth the ſpirits that they doe not diſſipate, nourisheth the *cornea* and humors of the eye, for the which nature hath implanted it full of vaines and artiers. The fourth is called *Arnoides*, it is very white and delicate, like vnto the thinne ſtriffen of an yron or Spiders webbe: it doth inuolue the chryſtalline humor immediatly, & defendeth it. The fiſt is called *Reticiformis*, it is enterlaced with innumerable little threads like a net, and cometh from the marrow of the nerue Opticke, as ſaith Loran. His office is to bring the animall ſpirit to the chryſtalline report, all the viſible things to the nerue Opticke, and carryeth the nourishment to the humor *Vitrei*. The ſixt and laſt is called *Vitrei*, becauſe it containeth and inuolueth the humor *Vitrei*. Within theſe tunicks is contained the three humors. The firſt is called *Aqueus*, for the ſimilitude it hath with water: or like the white of an egge both in colour and ſubſtance, it is incloſed betwixt the humor chryſtalline & membrian *Cornea*, partly to impaſſe the great dryneſſe that might happen vnto the chryſtalline humor, as alſo to defend y^e chryſtalline from y^e hardneſſe of the membrianes. The ſecond and chiefe principall inſtrument of the ſight is called chryſtalline, and in Latine *Glacialis*, it is white and clere like Chryſtall glaſſe midway, ſolide, of figure round, ſomewhat preſſed before and behind, ſo is more firme and ſure, for being altogether round, it moveth over eaſie, and is not ſo ſtable: it is ſituated in the middeſt of the eye vpon the humor *Vitrei* and before it is the humor *Aqueus*: it is inuolued in the olde proper membrian called

called *Arnoid*, not known by our ancients. The third and last humor is called *Vitreus*, because both in colour and substance it is like to melted glass: the use of it is to prepare the aliment to the cristalline humor, and make the blood white, for if it were nourished with pure blood, it would be somewhat red in colour, it defends the cristalline from the hardness of the membranes, and retaineth the spirits. The eye is likewise endued with two paire of nerves. The first of them is called *Opticæ* in the Greeke, and *Visio* in the Latine, which bringeth the spirit animal and interior sight to the cristalline: the nerves *Opticks* is thought by the old Arabians, to have their originall from the interior ventricill of the braines, and by the Greekes from the middelt of the lower part of the braines, the which the most part of all our Anatomists doe hold. Andreas de Loran approueth them to have their beginning from the posterioz part of the braines, where the little and mickle braines doe meete called *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum*, which opinion is most true, as I haue seene in the Schoole of the Chyrurgions in Paris by Master Soueran Pinio Doctor of Chyrurgerie, where hee did evidently demonstrate euery eye to haue one of those nerves pertaining to it: yet doth differ from other nerves, because they be more soft, full of holes and perosities, not Caue, as thought Galen and Herophilus.

Those nerves and perosities doe serue to carry the visuall spirit to the eye from the braines, but before they come to the eyes, they be gathered together like the yren of a Mill, making one onely body, whereby the spirits and sight is carryed coniunally to the middelt of the cristalline humor, which maketh one eye being closed, wee see as perfectly as with both. After this coniunction they doe diuide, and each of them passe through the holes of the head, and is seuerally implanted in either eye, and in the interior part of the nerve which is soft, and marowish, doth dilate it selfe, and maketh the tunicke reticular. The exterior part of the nerve endeth his course in the membrane *Cornea* and *Pnea*.

The third humor and vse.

Whence their originall is.

Master Soueran Pinio.

Why we see as well with one eye, as both.

The

Two paire of
Nerues.

Fatnesse of
the eye.

From the
glands pro-
ceed the teers.

The second paire of nerues are lesse, and goeth to the muscles of the eyes, to each eye one, and causeth them to moue, and sendeth little small threads to euery muscle. This paire hath his beginning and ending with the former. The eye hath likewise diuers little vaines and artiers, which bringeth nourishment and life to it, they proceed from the branches of the Jugulars and Carotides. The eye hath also a fatnesse which goeth about it and holdeth it huide, and defendeth it from the cold, retaineth the naturall heat, which is the cause that it becommeth not cold. The eye hath also three kinels or glands, one aboue, another vnderneath, and the third in the great corner of the eye : The first two holdeth it moist and weake, and are like vnto water sponges, receiving the humors which commeth from the braines, that it fall not in ouer great abundance on the eye, from those glands proceedeth the teares when we wept either for ioye, sorrowe, weaknesse, or rubbing of the eye, as doe women when they would appeere to weep for any cause. The third which is in the great corner of the eye, stayeth the excrements which commeth to fall on the Eye, so that those who haue those glands consumed, doe continually weep, as you shall heare in the chapter of *Ophthalmion*.

CHAP. XI.

A briefe rehearfall of such common maladies, as befall the whole Eye.

Having in the former Chapter, briefly shewed the description and composition of the eye, so I shall now set downe such common diseases as usually do happen in the whole eye, and euery severall part thereof, beginning first at such maladies as are common to the whole eye, which are
divided

diuided into Similars, and Organickes: The Simi-
 lars are in the temperature weake and dry, hote and cold, Similar parts.
 either with matter or without: the Organickes consist in the Organicke parts.
 euill confirmation, as greatnes, littlenes, or in scituation,
 as when the Eye is ouer great and is called the ore Eye,
 which being cast out from the circle, is not so quicke, nor the
 motio so prompt, by reason the spirits are dissipate it is called
ex Ophthalmia or *oculipromanentes* in latine: y greatnes doth
 happen by the vice of the first confirmation, or by accident,
 as by tumor of inflammation, or great defluxion: the littlenes
 of the Eye caled *atrophia* or *macies oculi* cometh by nature,
 and is called the pigs Eye, or pincking Eye: it cometh also by
 accident as by dissipation of the naturall heat, caused either
 by dolour, continuall feuer, great weyling, weeping, and
 defluxions, so that the Eye is weakened and cannot draw
 the nourishment, & so becometh atrofied and extenuate; or in
 scituation as when it is out of the owne place, which may In scituation.
 happen by cause externe as sayth Auicen, like as strokes,
 falls, violent coughing, vomiting, blowing, and such like, or
 by cause interne like as great fluxion which looseth all the
 muscles of the Eye, or by inflammation or solution of
 continuitie, as when the Eye is burst called in greeke *Raxis*
 and by the latins *Ruptio*: also by the confusion and mirtion
 of the whole humors together. These be the maladies which
 occupie the whole Eye: as for *Nictalopia*, *Niopiakis*, and *Am-*
blipia they are not maladies of y Eye as some thinke, but
 onely symptomes of the spirits and humors; as for the par-
 ticular diseases of the Eye, they differ according to the parts,
 as humors, tunicks, nerues, muscles: so first I shall begin
 at humors as the most noble part of the Eye, the which
 methode is followed by Galen. The humor Crystallin may Lib. de simpl.
 suffer all sorts of diseases, but the most common is the in- causis.
 temperature drie, or when it goeth out of the owne place; the
 drie temprature is caused by the withering and drying of the
 Crystallin called *Glaucoma*, and becometh all white. Hip- Glaucoma.
 pocrates saith this hapneth oftneft to old people, and is for Hip. 3. aphor.
 the

Simptomes
of the cristalline
Humor.

Simptomes
of the humor
Vitree.

Maladies of
the three
membranes
of the Eye.

the most part incurable. The Cristalline goeth diuers wayes out of the own place, as to ether side, high, low, ouer-far downe or ouer eminent : if it be ouer-farre in, the person seeth nererhand ; if ouer farre out, he seeth not farre of ; if it turneth to either side, all the objects do appeare sidewayes ; if it goe vp or downe, all the objects will appeare double, of those some are curable, and some are not : some proceed of cause interne, or by inheritance, and some be contagious as saith Auicenn. The humor *Aqueus* is sometimes ouer-much dried vp, as chanceth often in suffusions and depriuing the sight wholly : if it be much diminished in quantitie, the Cristalline humor becometh dry, the *Vnea* becometh withered, & the *Cornea* abashed, as for the humor *vitree* our auntients haue not remembred any particular diseases, yet it is thought by some late writers, that it may indure the like diseases as the humor *Aqueus*. As concerning the membranes of the Eye, there is but three of them, In which particular diseases are obserued, to wit, the coniunctiue or white of the Eye, *Cornea*, and *Vnea* ; the coniunctiue suffers three sorts of maladies, to wit *Ophthalmia* whereof I shall speake in the proper Chapter, *Ungula* and *Confusion*. *Ungula* is called *Pterigium* which is a nervous flesh, that beginneth in the great corner of the Eye, and extendeth to the prunall, it is like the nayle of a mans hand, and happeneth after *Ophthalmies* euill cured : it is accompanied with prurit teares & rednes, which impasseth the sight of this disease ; there are three kinds, Membranes, Panniculous, and Adipus, some haue it of inheritance, others by accident, when others whole ; it is contagious as saith Auicenn, and goeth from one Eye to another, for the helpe whereof *Etius* doth counsell to consume it by corrosiues : other olde Writers are of opinion to cure it with a needle and thred after the forme as you shal here in the chapter of *Fistula* intreating of *Carnis lachrymalium*. The third and last Maladie of the coniunctiue is confusion, which is called *Eosiphagma*, and is saide by Paulus and *Etius* to be

a rupture of the veins of the eye, which maketh the blood to *Pau. li. 3.* disperse through the coniunctive or white of the eye, representing all the obiectes red, and proceeds either of cause externe as falls, strokes; or of cause interne as when the vaines are repleat with a tenous blood. The *Cornea* hath diuers *The diseases of Cornea.* Maladies, as Pustules, Ulceres, Cankers, Cicatrices, and Ruptures; the Pustules are blacke little blobbes called by the Arabs, *Bothor* and doe proceed of one subtile watric or bilious humo^r, of the which some are superficial, others profound, some of whytish colour, others blacke: of those sorts of vlcers, there are Seauen kindes counted by the Grækes and Arabians, of the which three be Interne, and foure externe. The vlcers Cankerous are *Vlcers Cankerous.* ingendered of a humo^r atrabilar accompanied with dolor. The cicatrice is a maladie of the *Cornea*, which maketh it white, it taketh away the light and colour. Rupture, is a breaking of the *cornea* which euer proceeds of causes externe. *Vnea* wherein is the hole called *Pzunall* or *Vuido* of the eye, is subiect to a particular disease called the dissent, which cometh when *cornea* is broken. The *Pzunall* hath three *The diseases of prunall.* sorts of diseases, to wit, *Tabes*, *Suffusio*, and *Dilatatio*. *Tabes* is that which is called by the Grækes *Pthyfis*, which is an extenuation of the prunall, and is either naturall or accidentall: The naturall is proper for the sight: the accidentall is euer hurtfull, for the which you must giue good order to the cause, and in the meane time, foment the eyes with a sponge wet in pap milke or Euphrase water that is warme. If the eye be growen great through ouer great nutriture or abundance of the humo^rs of y^e head, or any particular affection; remove the cause by purging, bleeding, & good regiment: thereafter applye to the eye Saffron and oyle mixed together, foment the eye with *Aqua marina*, or with water and salt: as for *Suffusio*, and *Dilatatio*, you shall heare in their own place. The muscles of the eye are subiect to three principall maladies, to wit, *Distortio*, shaking, or great mouing and immobility. *Distortio* is called *Strabismos* or *Illofis* by Hippocrates, *The maladies of the muscles*

res, and proceeds by the resolution of some muscle, and causeth the eye to move in divers fashions, in such sort that nothing is seen but the whyle of the eye. The shaking or moving of the eye is called *Hypos*, which is a defect in the muscles, which are so weakened that they cannot containe the eye. The immobility, called by Hippocrates *Pixin*, happeneth when the muscles have wholly toucht their action of moving, or by the obstruction of the nerue Opticke, which bringeth the movement. The Maladies of the nerue Opticke is Obstruction, Compression, Paralysie, and Ruption.

Obstruction. The Obstruction proceedeth sodainly of a cold thicke humo^r,
 Compression. which doth stoppe the nerue opticke. The Compression cometh by strokes, or when the nerue is shrunk by drynesse.

Paralysie. The Paralysie proceeds of a thin serous humo^r, which softteth and looseth the nerue, representing all the objects double, as sometime happeneth to people that are drunken.

Ruption. Ruption, is when the nerue is broken or dilacerate, which cometh by strokes, and maketh that the visible spirit cannot passe. All the diseases of the nerue opticke make a common symptome, which is called by the Arabians *Gutta serena*, which is as saith *Aetius* a blindness without hurt, apparence, or marke in the eye. Those be the principall maladies which do occupie the eye, so^r y^e which you shall heare principal rules in y^e next chap. following so^r y^e conseruatiō of the same, with a brieve rehearsall of such thinges as are profitable and hurtfull, in generall: with the cure of such particulars as are most common in this country. But, as so^r every particular disease of the eye, eye-lids, and corners of the eye; because they be more than an hundred in number, so not meet in this place to make a description thereof, because that diuers approved autho^rs haue written of the most part of them, both Greckes, Arabians, Latins, and others, whose helpe I haue vsed in this worke: so I doubt not but that the skilfull Chyrurgion will take aduise with them in that matter.

More than a
 100. diseases
 in the eye.

[HAP. XII.]

Which containeth a regiment very exquisite
for the conseruation of the sight, with
*such things as are profitable, or hurtfull
for the same.*

Such people who haue their sight either diminished or
grown weake, shall find in this chapter a short regiment,
with such fit remedies as hath been written either by Greeks,
Hebrewes, Arabians, or Latines, for the conseruation of
the same: which regiment shall partly consist in good Dyet,
Pharmacy, and Chyrurgerie.

The forme of Dyet hath been thought by our ancients the
most noble part of all, in so much as it is a familiar friend to
nature, being rightly vsed, and neither doth alter nor trou-
ble the same in any sort. This dyet consisteth not onely in
eating and drinking, as thinketh the common sort: but also
in the administration of the six things, which the Mediciners
doe call vnnaturals; like as, the Ayre, Meate, Drinke,
Sleeping, Waking, Motion, Rest, Euacuation, Repletion,
with the Passions and Perturbations of the mind.

The Ayer which is the first, hath a mighty power in alte-
ring and changing our bodies; it passeth directly by the nose
to the braines, by the mouth to the heart, by the passages of
the heart and mouement of the artiers, through the whole
body. It doth furnish nourishment to the spirits in such sort,
that Hippocrates saith, of the constitution of the ayer depen-
deth the good and euill disposition of our humors and spirits.
The ayer must neither be ouer cold, hote, nor humide, but
cleare, declyning to moderate heate and drynesse, taking al-
wayes heed of the ardent heat of the Sun, and raynus of the
Moone, and for the Cyrring, which is the dew that falleth
after the euening: Also from cold, moisse, and rainie wea-
ther:

Dyet.

Wherin good
dyet consisteth.

Ayer.

ther : good dry dwelling is meetest, and if it may not be had, the chamber where the diseased shall remaine must be helped with good fiers and perfumes, as did the old Arabians, of leaues of Cuphrage, Fennell, Mergetine, of each one ounce, Aloes one dramme, Incence three drammes, mixe all together and make one perfume.

The South & North wind are enemies to the eyes. 3. sec. apho.

As concerning the winds, the South and North winds are enemies to the eye, as sayth Hippocrates, The ayer which commeth from ditch waters, mosses and rotten carriages are euill, fire, reeke, dust, and blowing of Alchimie ; for the which, such as haue their eyes weake, should not blow at Alchimie in seeking out the Philosophers stone, in case they lose both their eyes, & purse also : ouer great light is also noysome, as you shall heare in the chap. of Ophthalmia.

Colours.

As concerning the colours, some are hurtfull, others not; the white colour dissipateth the spirits in drawing to it, and the blacke rendereth the spirits more grosse ; as for blew, violet, & green, they reioyce the sight ; amongst the which the saphier and emerald are profitable.

Soft roasted eggs are good

Baked meat is not good.

The second point consisteth in eating and drinking, the sicke must abstaine from all grosse, viscus, vaporous, salty, windy, sweet and picking things that are full of excrements, taking heed to eat lesse at night, than at noone. As touching bread and flesh, they must be such (and so prepared) as you haue heard in the second chap. of the second booke. Egges new layd and soft, taken with pouder of Sugar, Cannall, and Cuphrage, clarifie the sight ; but being fryed are noysome : Alegis, Vinegar, & iuice of Limonds may be vsed, Saffron, Cannell, Ginger, Pepper, Nutmegs, Hony, and oyle of Oliue, are not hurtfull ; all baked meat, milke, and all that commeth of it, is euill. As touching heards, some are approued for the sight, as Sage, Mergetine, Betonie, Rosemarie, Mint, Wimpernell, buddes of Asperge, Eye-bright, Succorie, Parsly, Carret rootes, and Capers. The Arabians recommend Pavets, and Turnips greatly, if there be mixed with them Finkell, and Annats, because they are windy.

windy. The hearbes which are hurtfull and forbidden, are Lettice, Anethe, Basilicke, Purpie, Porrbie, Cabbage, Colwort, Garlicke, Onyons, Beets, Spinage, Sybols, Radish, Parsnips, Olives, with all rawe fruits, which are hurtfull to the sight, by reason of their great humiditie. boyled pynes may be used, or rosted Peares are verie good being taken with the powder of Eye-bright: it impasseth the fume to goe to the head, Finkell, or Anats, Comfits, Cotinacke, Figges, and Raysons may be used, and thus much concerning eating.

In drinke there are two things to be considered, the quality, and quantity. As for the quality, the great Mediciner Archigenes sayth, in all maladies of the eyes much drinke is hurtfull. And as touching the quantity, Aristotle in his Problemes sayth, that those that drinke water haue their sight very subtile: Yet Rasis and Avicen condemne the vse of water, which opinion is agreable to companions that rather would lose their eyes, than want wine: such as may not passe without wine, may vse a small cleane wine not sharpe nor vaporous, that is mixed with water of Eye-bright and Fennell: In the vse of it, take the flowers of Borage and Pimpernell, and put into a glasse, when you drinke the colours reioyce the sight, and the hearbes by their vertue rebates the fume of the wine: Sweet and new wine is fumous, and strong wine lyeth long on the stomacke, sendeth vapours to the braines. There may be an artificiall wine, made for such as are diseased of their eyes, made of Eye-bright, which is much commended by those who haue written of the Eye, especially Arnoldus de villa noua, who affirmeth to haue healed an old man who had bene a long time blind, onely by vsing that wine a whole yere, called *Vinum Euphragiatum*, which is made by putting a quantity of the hearbe in new wine, let it remaine vntil the wine grow cleere and ready to drinke, and vse it. As for other compositions of Eye-bright with the mighty effects of it, are set downe length by the sayd Arnold in his booke de *Vino*.

Two things
to be obser-
ued in the
drinke.

Archigenes.
Aristo. probl.

Rasis.
Auicen.

Eyebright.
Arnold. lib. de
vino.

Arnol. de vino.

Composition
of Hydromel.

This hearbe is of temperature hote and dry, and may bee put in the diseased his ordinary drinking wine, as I haue sayd of *Wimpernell* and *Bozage*: and such as desire not wine, may vse *Hydromell* composed of this, take 15. pound of *Fountaine water*, 1. pound of fine hony, mire all in one pot, adding therto a little *Fennell* and meases, of *Eye-bright* an handfull, tye all together with a threed and put in the pot, and let all seeth till the third part of the water be consumed: in seething be euer taking away the scumme of the hony. The *Eye-bright* may be vsed in *Beere* or *Ale*, being put in when it beginneth to worke, and let it remaine vntill it haue left working.

As for *Sleeping*, *Waking*, *Exercise*, *Repletion*, *Euacuation*, with the *Perturbations* of the mind; I haue spoken at length in the second Booke of this worke. As concerning the second part, it consisteth in ordaining of remedies; forasmuch as the weaknesse of the sight commeth either by euill temperature of the braines, or euill disposition of the eye; therefore the expert *Chyrurgion* should euer haue regard to those two parts. If the braines be ouer humide, they must be dryed; and the eye weake, comforted.

Plato.

Hip. lib. de usu.

Plato doth admonish vs in one of his Dialogues, that we neuer dry vp the braines, neither fortifie the eye by externall remedies, except the head be first purged: and because it is vneasie to purge the head, except the whole body that sends the excrements bee first purged, which must bee done with such remedies as haue the vertue to euacuate the whole body generally, hauing alwayes some propriety with the eye.

Pilles for the
head.

For this purpose the old Arabians recommend the pilles of *Agaricke*, *Lucis maioris* and *minoris*. Of this, take three drammes of *Alloes*, washed in *Fennell* or *Eye-bright water*, *Euphrase* 3. drams, *Agaricke* 1. dramine and an halfe, *Rubarbe* 1. dram, the bark of *Mirabotans*, *Citrins*, rubbed in oyle of sweet Almonds 4. scrupl. *Cymie* well beaten 1. dram, *Mastirke*, *Ginger*, and *Cannell*, of each 1. scrupl. the *Troscickes* of *Allaudan*, 5. gra. maltar all these with
wyce

iuyce of Fennell and sirupe of Stecas, of the which you shall make a masse, and take a dramme thereof euery fourth night once : such as may not vse the pilles, may vse this sirupe Magistral, take Fennell 1. ounce, leaues of Eye-bright, Betonie, Fumetarie, Mercury, Succory, Germander, and Meruen, of each one pugill, Raysons, and Prunes, of each one a dussen, Fennell seed, and Anisel-seeds 2. dram, Sage, Stecas, Cypbage, Rosemarie, of each one pugill, let all seeth in cleare water, in the expression adde vnto it 3. vnc. of Cynie, and let it infuse warme in that decoction a certaine space, with the expression of one ounce of Agaricks, of Cloues one dram, or in stead thereof as much Cannall, let all seeth with a quantity of Sugar, to the consistance of a sirupe, aromatised with halfe a dram of Nutmegs, and as much of powder of *Diarrhorum* : if you would adde halfe an ounce of Rubarbe, it shere so much the better. Of this sirupe you may take euery fourth night once, either with a little broth or decoction : capitall glisters are also much commended for diuers diseases of the head and eyes. Decoction sudoriphicke, which shall be made of *Salsa parila* skin, with Eye-bright and Fennell seed, It is very much commended for the consuming of the great humidity of the braines.

Sirupe magistral.

Glister.

The body being so purged by vniuersall remedies, the braines may be euacuated by the nose and mouth, which are conduits ordinary constituted by nature to that vse. The earings draweth the humors to the eye, which is the part diseased. If there be great defluxion on the eyes, you may put in your nose a spice of that bone which is found in the heart of an Ore, it hath the vertue to staye the fluxion : or you may apply on the forehead a cataplasme made of Beane flower, sodden in water and Vinegar.

Earrings.

To staye the fluxion of the eyes.

Hippocrates ordaineth defluxions of the eyes, to be diuer-
ted by the mouth. For this purpose take Raysons, and wet
them with a drop of the spirit of Fennell, and chewe in the
mouth, or rubbe the roose of the mouth with the essence of
Fennell; It will drawe downe the humors that way: Sage,

6. epid. sect. 2.

Masticatories

or Peritar to chew in the morning, were very good. The Masticatories are more to be approued than the Carings for sundry respects. These things being done, you shall vse conserues that haue the vertue to fortifie the sight : take the conserue made of the flowers of Cuphage, Betonie, and Rose-marie, of each one ounce, Teracke 3. drams, conserue of Roses, halfe an ounce, powder of Diazodum 1. dram and a halfe, Masses 2. scrupl. Make an Opiat with sirupe of

Conserues for the sight.

the conserue of Cytrons, take a little of it each morning at your ryling. After your meat you shall vse a powder digestive made of Coziander, Fennell, red Roses, Corall, Perill, Cuphage, and Sugar rosat, put all in fine powder, and vse of it a little after meat. There be also certaine external remedies which are vled for the clarifying of the sight, of diuers sorts and diuersly composed ; but here I shall content me with some few which I haue oftentimes vled. You shall wash your eyes euerie morning with this distilled wa-

Distilled water for the eyes.

ter, take the crops of Fennell, Ruth, Cuphage, Meruen, Tormentill, Betonie, Roses, Pimpernell, Agramonie, Carbell, Ilope, and Selydon, of each one a handfull, sheare all small and infuse them in white wine for the first time ; next in the water of a yong boy that is in good health ; the third time in womans milke : last of all in fine honie distilled, as in a Lymbeck, & keap it in a close glasse, and put it euery morning (and at certaine other times) in your eyes : you may also wash your eyes with white wine, wherein hath been sodden Fennell, Eye-bright, Selydon, and a little Hyzabolans : or this, take a pound and a halfe of white wine, as much Rose water, Tuthea as much, Meases halfe an vnc. put all in a well stopped glasse, and set it in the sun the space of twenty daies, remoue it euery day once and vse it for your eyes. Unguents are much commended, amongst the which this is most soueraine, take two ounces of Swines grease that is very recent, steape it in Rose water six houres, then wash it twelue times in white wine, thereafter adde to it an ounce of Tuthea that is well prepared and put in powder, one

Vnguent for the eyes.

scruple

scruple of the stone Hematites well washed, Aloes washed and put in powder twelve gra. Pearles three gra. incorporate all with a little water of Fennell, and make an unguent thereof, of the which you shall put a little in the corners of your eye. There be diuers colours and powders which may be vsed, in the which I haue not found such successe, as in *Aristotle in-structing Alexander.* As for Chyrurgerie which is the third point, it consisteth chieflie in applying and vsing the former remedies with blæding, cunning ventosing, applying of censurs or blood-suckers, cauters, frictions, baths, and such like, as you shall heare at length in the eight Booke following. These be the meanes by the which the sight may generallie bee conserued.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the tumor in the Eye called *Ophthalmia* by the Grecians, and *Lippitudo* by the Latines.

Having in the foure precedent Chapters spoken of the Eye and the diseases which are generally incident therunto, with a bræfe regiment for the conseruation of the sight: So now I shall intreate of some few diseases in particular, which I haue found the people in this country most subiect vnto, beginning at *Ophthalmia* which is an inflammation of the whole Eye, but chæfly of the membrane called conjunctiue, with great rednesse and dolour: The cause is either internall, or externall; the externall, are stroakes, heate, dust, wind, great cold, rubbing mothes in the Eye: The internall cause, is defluxion of humors, as also the vaines externall and internall of the head being replete, whereof proceedeth great fluxion, also the sanguine, cholericke,

Definition.
Pa. li. 3. ca. 22.
Cause.

lericke, phlegmaticke humour which ascendeth to the
 heade, The signes are manifest, like as great inflammation,
 readnes, heate of the Eyes, and temples, dolour, repletion
 of the vaines, hardnes. This sickenes hath foure degrees
 like as other tumors, and happeneth often to young chil-
 dren and others who haue weake Eyes, which is the
 cause that they are subiect to fluxion of humors. The
 iudgements are; the matter is sometime hote, otherwhiles
 colde, and those which happen in winter are worse then
 in summer, if they be neglected, and euill handled, there
 insueth often euill accidents, as spots, rupture of the
 cornea, and diuers others; if the dolour be vehement, it is
 dangerous in feare of corruption, & corrosion of the cornea.
 As for the cure, there are three things to be obserued, the
 first is good dyet, eating little, and chiefly at night, abstaine
 from all vaporous things and of euill digestion, such as
 fishe, fruites, spices, salt, and humide things. Abide nei-
 ther in great darkenes, nor in too much light; greate
 light dissipateth the spirits, and sometime causeth blindness,
 as I read of the souldiers of Zenophon who by going long
 in the snow, became almost blind. Also Dionisius the ti-
 rant of Sicill made his prisoners blind after this sort; first he
 imprisoned them in a very darke place, then brought them
 suddenly vnto great light, so made them all blind. Take
 not much, and abstaine from the great passions and per-
 turbations of the mind, from smoke, from dust, and blow-
 ing of Alchamie, for it hurteth the Eye, and consumeth
 the substance, and maketh men miserable both in body
 and goods; hold vp thy head, abstaine from wine, women
 and such like, as you may perceiue by these verses of the
 learned Gordonius.

Signes.

The degrees
thereof.

Iudgements.

Gord. li. citato.

Cure.

Great light
causeth blind-
nesse.Ælius serm 7.
cap. 3.

Gordonius.

Hæc oculis multum, sol, puluis, fumus, & æstus
 Veniunt, cum fletu, vina, Venusq; nocent.
 Aeria ne mandas, nec quæ sunt plena vaporum.
 Nec ceras, lentis, allia, porra, fabas.

W H A T E V E R you must abstaine from all Par-
 cotickes except in violent dolours. The second inten-
 tion consisteth in euacuating and euerting the humours
 by pilles, glisters, blaxing of the vaine Cephalicke, ven-
 tosing on the shoulders, frictions on the thighs, legges, *Hip. usu.*
 and extremities, opening the vaines and artiers of the tem-
 ples. The third intention is in topicall remedies, as co- *Topical*
 lours of diuers sorts according to the diuersitie of the degree *remidies.*
 and time of the aposthume; as in the beginning of the infla-
 mation, take Plantane water, and Rose water, of each
 halfe an ounce, two whites of Egges, a litle Fennell
 water and womans milke, the muskilages of Ipsilion
 with a litle troscistles of Rasis *sine opio*, a litle Camphire,
 put of those in the Eye: Also water of Ruth, veruin, *Cataplasme.*
 Roses, and Celidon, and apply it often to the Eye; at *for the Eyes.*
 night make a cataplasme of a roasted apple brought with
 womans milke, and a litle rose water, put it betwixt two
 peces of linnen cloth, and aply it to the Eye. or this reme-
 die which I haue often proued, not only in Ophthalmia,
 but also in diuers other maladies of the Eyes, take 2 ounces
 of white wine, as much rose water, Cuprage halfe a crowne
 waight, of Tuthia prepare asmuch, Aloes a litle, three
 or foure leaues of massie, put all in a viall and stoppe it
 close, set it three weekes in the sunne, and instill thereof in
 the Eyes, in the meane time vse implasters in the temples
 of masticke *de bolo et contra rupturam* and such like, to stay
 the fluxion: for the great dolour, the blood of a pigeon, *Iesus lib. 3.*
 turtle, or hen, vnder the winges, and instill it in the Eye, also *de oculis.*
 milke with the yolke of an egge and a litle rose oyle may *Pau. lib 7.*
 be likewise applied. Likewise for the dolour of the Eye. *cap. 3.*
 Chelmeus counselleth to take a roasted apple, yolke of an *Chelmeus.*
 egge, rosewater & womans milke implaite in forme of Cata-
 plasme, also a peece of white bread the thicknes of halfe an
 ynch and breadth of twelue pence steeped in rose water,
 and pappe milke, and apply betwixt two peces of cloth to the
 Eye.

CHAP. XIIII.

¶ Of the weeping Eye, called by the Latines
Fluxus oculi, or Delachrimatio.

- Definition.** **O**phthalmion is a continuall flowing and falling downe
of a thin watric humoꝝ on the Eyes which sometimes
Cause is hote, othertimes colde, it causeth aboundance of watric
humoꝝ in the head, chiefly such as haue very great heads.
Also by feuer applying of sharp medicaments in the Eye,
also great weakenes of the vertue retentrix and concoctrix
Signes. or by some stroke in the kernell of the Eye; the signes
are euident to the sight, like as rednes about the kernell
of the Eye, with great heat: which sheweth that the de-
fluxion cometh from the baynes of the Pericran. The iudg-
Iudgments. ments, it hapneth to some by nature from their childhood,
which hardly may be stayed, it is almost euer painfull
with inflammation and bleare-eyednes, and is for the most
part incurable, especially those who haue great heades or
haue gotten streakes with losse of substance of the kernell
of the Eye. The cure consisteth first, in good regiment
and vsing of things of good digestion, that hath a dried
Cure. vertue, abstaining from such thinges as ingender humi-
ditie and vapors; euacuate the body with purgations, and
Mesur. de pills. If there be plenitude, let blood the arme of the soze
egritud. side, also the baynes and artiers of the temples, as shall
oculoru. be thought expedient: Next vse frictions of the head
and shoulders downward, application of cauters and ce-
Albucasis. tons to diuert the humoꝝ, with an emplaster on the temples,
lib. 2. that hath the vertue to compell the humoꝝ to fall downe,
cap. 4. et. 5. made thus, *Rec. sanguis draconis, boli armenici, masticeis,*
an, unc. 1. misceantur cum albumine oui et aceto, fiat linamen-
tum, which you shall apply on the temples. Also the astrin-
Petrus Fran. gent plaster set downe in the generall Chapter of wounds,
co. de Hernis. intreating of the suture incarnatiue, with this oyle written
by Petrus France, *Rec. ceruci abluti, sarcocola nuxia, a-*
cacia

caecia, lici. olibani, an. drag. 2. margaritarium dragm. semis. succi malipumici accosti dimidias quantum sufficit fiat colirium, which you shall vse Morning and Euening. Rasis doth counsell in the continuall flux of the kinnell of the Eye the Powder for patient to bath euery morning fasting, and to apply this the Eye. powder in the Eye, thus made, Rec. rathia dragm. 10. coral Rasis Morb. li. ruber mirobalom, citrini fricati, aloes an. dragm. 2. piperis perli. Lib. 19. dragm semi fiat ex his puluis which you shall put often in the Eye: by the vsing of this powder, and the bath, Rasis doth testifie to haue cured many.

CAP. XII.

Of the fistula in the corner of the Eye, called
Aegilops in Greeke, and *Fistula Lachrymalis*
in Latine.

A *Egylops* is a little tubercle or aposthume called by the *A. Definition.*
Arabians *Gareb*, it doth occupy the great corner of the *Cels. li. 7. ca. 7.*
eye towards the nose; which being opened, there issueth out
a thinne virulent humo^r or matter: it being ouer long in ope-
ning or negligently handled, becommeth fistulous in the flesh
with corruption in the bone. The Cause is euill humo^rs from
the whole body, chiefly from the head, which not being hasti-
ly matured, acquireth a putrifaction, and bitternesse, which
doth corrode both flesh and bone, and maketh a cauetie wher-
in is contained a matter sometime like vnto milke, slimie,
glutinous, or water, sometime of mid-way consistance,
which issueth either at the corner of the eye without, or at the
nose within. The Signes are eident to the sight, being
and payning the eye continually with inflammation, rednes,
and alteration of the bone, which may bee knownen by the
sound by y^e which you may perceiue an aspiration or hardnes.
It is sometime of a canckrous angry nature, & dangerous to
be dealt with in feare of hastie death. The prognosticks, all
those fistules are diuicile to cure, both for the nerues to the
eye,

Cause.

Signes.

Ies. lib. de o-
culis.

Cure.

Tral. li. 2. ca. 8.

Enchylops.

Rol. li. 1. ca. 38.

Rasis morb.
parti. li. 19.

eye, as also the flesh being consumed maketh a continuall weeping in such sort, that hardly can the vlcex consolidate, but causeth the bone to corrupt and putrifie, for the which the most part of all fistules in the eye are incurable, except onely by vsing of the Cauter actuall, as I haue often seen. The cure is first to purge the body if it be repleat, either of humors or blood: the humors must be cured by fit medicines, and the blood euacuated by the cephalicke vaine of that side the fistule is on. As for topicall remedies, I am not of opinion with some of our ancients, who did approue the vsage of repercussiuues, I counsaile rather resolutiuues and maturatiues, making the ouerture so speedilie as may be; next cleanse the wound with some mundificatiue that is gentle, and wash it euery day with decoction of Celydon, Rutch, & Cleruin, with a little hony: also for this purpose you may vse Claret or white wine with hony, wash the wound and dry it gently. The which methode may be also vsed in Enchylops, which is an aposthume in the great corner of the eye, as for the cause, signes, and cure of it, they differ little from the other: if the fistule be with corruption of the bone, you shall first dilate gently the wound or vlcex to the ground, till such time as you perceiue the bone discovered, which shall be done with tents of Caddish, Gensian, or sponges prepared and wet in hony, thereafter vse this choller which is astringent and drying, set downe by Rasis, thus. *Rec. Aloes, Thuris, an. drag. 1. sarcocolla, sanguis draconis, balanstia, antimonie crude, albuminis an. drag. 1. sem. aruginis quartani partem vnius drag. misceantur cum aqua euphragie fiat collerium.* The which you shall instill euerie morning three or foure droppes in the soze: thereafter let the patient lie two or three houres on the whole side, presse out the matter euery morning before you wash the vlcex, and dry it well before you apply the choller, and so continue this forme till such time as by pressing it, there issue no more matter; by this meanes the said Rasis affirmeth to haue cured many. Gordonius sets downe a potion which hath a mighty vertue for such pustules; if by these means you profite

profit not as you would, ye must dilate y wound as you haue heard, and apply an actual Cauter purposely made, according to the proportion of the wound and corrupt bone.

*Albuc. lib. 2.
cap. 19.*

Cauters actuals for the fistula in the eye.



Albuc. lib. 2.
cap. 17.

Cause.

Adams Loni-
cerius.

Cure.

Cels. li. 7. ca. 7.
Albuc. lib. 2.
cap. 16.

Hip. li. de visu

Be ware in using the cauter you touch no other part. After the cauter be used, apply oyle of Roses, Rose water, Plantaine, or Solanum, beaten with the white of an egge, let the patient lye with his head well high, then procure the fall of the scarre and corrupt bone, with fresh butter or common digestive made of Therebintin well washed, oyle of Egges, and a little Saffron, which you may use while all bee well mundified, and the corrupt bone exfoliat, thereafter fill up the wound & consolidate the same, as other wounds. There is another kind of excrescence of flesh, which happeneth in the great corner of the eye, called in Greeke *Encanthus*, and by Auen *additio carnis lachrymalium*, which is an addition of flesh to that which groweth naturally. It proceedeth either of a melancholique humoꝝ, much blood, or when the flesh groweth after the euill handling of some vlcers, which hath proceeded, or by the remanent of a cataract which hath been left on beaten downe: There are two kinds of it, the one is tender, red coloured, which may be helped by drying medicines, as is at length set down by Aetius: The other kind is more malicious, it groweth greater, and is taken away after this forme: first, there must bee a needle with a strong thread pass through the middest of it, then lift it up and cut it with a sharpe sheare or bisterie, taking alwayes good heed you cut none of the naturall flesh; soz if so be, it will procure a continuall weeping, then after it is so cut, apply dry encolices and powders to impash the growing of the flesh againe: then follow out the rest of the cure, as you haue heard in *Fistula lachrymal.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of the little tumor which occupyeth the eyelid, called *Pisthia* in Greeke, & *Hordelium* in Latin.

Definition.

Hordelium is a little hard tubercle in the uttermost part or border of the eye-lid where the haire doth grow, it is
of

of forme like a Barlie cozne, whereof it taketh the name. In vulgar language, the Staying : it cometh to maturation slowlie : it is oftentimes contained in a little membaine or bagge like Atheorema. If it be of long continuance, it groweth to such hardnesse, that scarcely it doth receaue any cure. As for the Cure, Galen, Musa, and others counsaile resolutions to be vsed. I haue found nothing better than to open it with a bistorie or launcet as counsaileth Paulus, Celius, & Aetius, euacuate the humors, cleanse the soze with yolkes of egges and hony : thereafter a little of the colyze set downe by Rasis in the chapt. precedent, till it be whole. Sometime this tumor happeneth within the eye-lid, and is more round and mobile than the other. It is called *Grando* by the Latins, in the vulgar language, the Hailestone. In curing wherof, turne ouer the eye-lidde, make incision, and cure it as the former.

Staying.

Cure.
Galen.
Musa.
Celsus.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the haire which groweth in the inward side of the Eye-brees.

Those superfluous hairens that molest and pricke the inward side and borders of the eye-liddes, which are noysome to the eye, making it continually to water, it is called by the Grekes *Trichiasis*, and *oculorum a Pelis infusio* in Latine. The cause proceedeth of a quantitie of superfluous humiditie from the head. The cure as counsaileth Rasis, is to plucke out those hairens by the roote, either with some instrument, emplaster of Masticke, or otherwise, wherof you will find infinite receites of the old writers. The haire being plucked out, you shall annoint the part with the head of a Frog, or scrapings of yron sodden in Vinegar, as counsaileth

Definition.

Cause.

Iesus li. de ocul.

Cure.

Rasis morb.
part. li. 9. ca. 26

Gord. tract. 3. Ieth Gordon. I haue often vsed foꝛ this purpose Crocus Martis, sodden in strong Vinegar and annoynted the part :
 Alexis li. de
 secretis. oꝛ this set down by Alexis of Pimonth, foꝛ a rare secret, and
 learned by him of a noble Lady in Syria, which is excellent
 foꝛ the taking away of haire in any part ; take a piece of
 Mez. de oculo-
 rum agrius. pure gold that is small and round like a Ring, somewhat cro-
 ked at the point, heat it hote in the fire, then rub the inward
 side of the eye-lidde gently where the haire do grow, ther-
 after annoynt the part with oyle of Roses, and Violets ; if
 need be, the next day doe the like : and if they yet continue,
 Rasilococita. Doe the like, the gold maketh that no cicatrice remaine. Ra-
 sis doth counsaile the vsage of an hote yron oꝛ needle, and ap-
 ply as the former. If after this they yet grow, you shall vse
 Cels. li. 7. ca. 7. this linement set downe by Auicen ; which is made of Ius-
 queam, Opium, and Psilium, seeth them in strong vinegar,
 with Seruce of kinses, and lead, of each a like quantity : in-
 corporate all with a little Allom, and water of Iusqueam,
 and annoynt the part. Gordon counsaileth onely the Ius-
 queam, Mandragour, and Opium. Foꝛ this purpose some
 doe commend Opium, Mussilagis of Psilium, Seruce, lead,
 Litharge, powder of Margaritis, with a fewe of those little
 wormes that do shine in the night, and annoynt the part ther-
 with. Oꝛ this linement which I haue sometime vsed, take
 the iuice of Iusqueam, Sanguis draconis, Gumme, Arabicke,
 and Incense, of each six Drams, Rozall water a little, incor-
 porate all and make a linement, and annoynt the part there-
 with.

Linement for
 haire.

CHAP. XVIII.

¶ Of the enlarging of the pupill of the eye,
 called *Mydriasis*, and *Dilatatio Pupille* in Latine.

Definition.
 Paul lib. 3.
 cap. 20.

MYdriasis is a dilating oꝛ enlarging of the pupill oꝛ ap-
 ple of the eye, which happeneth when the membrane
 Vaca

Vuea is enlarged at the hole or window of the eye, and doth represent the objects more great, confused, and imperfect, than they ought. The Signes, the sicke looketh faire by with the eye in the owne colour: sometime the p^runall appeareth to be changed out of the owne place, called by Arnoldus, Pupillæ è loco remotio. The dilatation happeneth sometime by the vice of the first confirmation, and seeth reasonable well; but being much dilated, it is incurable. The Cause of this disease, is either internal or externall: the internes are the humors which by little and little floweth from the head, and cause the Vuea to dilate, whereupon ensueth the dilatation of the pupill: it happeneth often after long diseases of the head, & in so much as may be, is helped by dyet & purgations. This happeneth often to yong childre after long sicknesses, who are onely cured by simple remedies, close keeping from cold and great light. The cause externe cometh of strokes or falls. The Cure consisteth much in good dyet, abstaining from all things that doe prouoke and carrie vapours to the head and hurt the eye. Also purgations and bleeding in the armes and corners of the eye, frictions and ventosing of y^e shoulders with scarrificatio, next instill in the eye the blood of a Chicken or Pigeon taken out of the vaine under the wing. Rasis doth counsaile to take the gall of a Kidde or Crane, and instill in the eye: which opinion Avicenna holdeth, adding to those galls Saffron, iuice of Hymons, Armoniacke, hony, and Fennell water; thereafter vse this plaster to comfort made of Beane meale, Althea, Camomill sodden in Claret wine, and water: or a fomentation made of red Roses, Myrtles, Camomill, & Melilot, of each one handfull, seeth them in a little wine and Rose water, foment the eye with sponges.

Signes.

Arnoldus.

Cause.

Iudgements.

Iesus frilius baly lib. 2. de oculis.

Cure.

Blood of a Pigeon or Hen. Rasis lib. 9. morb. parti.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the web in the Eye, called *Suffusio Cataracta* and *Hypochyma*.

Definition.

Haly Abbas.
Azaraias.
Auicen.
Mezues.
Albucasis.

Cause.

Paul lib. 6.
cap. 21.

Gal loc.
affect. 3. cap. 1.

Rasis lib. 9.

Aetius ferm.
7. cap. 31.

Auicen tertius
tertij cap. 19.

Iudgments.

S*uffusio* is a maladie called by the greekes *Hypochyma*; and by the Arabians *aqua* and *gutta*; in english, the Cataract or *Wey*, which is an obstruction of the prunell, by a gathering together of a thicke hardened or congealed humor betwixt the memb^rain *Cornea* and humor *Christallin*, directly vpon the prunall empashing the sight. There is diuersitie of opinions amongst the auncients, concerning this maladie. Haly Abbas, and Azaraias saye, that this humor is gathered betwixt the *Vnea* and *Christalline*. Auicen Mezues, and Albucasis, doe esteeme it to bee and remaine betwixt the *cornea* and *vnea*. I am of opinion, that it may remaine in all space that betwixt the *cornea* and *Christalline*, and doth mix it selfe with the humor *aqueus*. The cause is, partly as you haue heard, in the definition; partly strokes, and falles. Paulus Aegineta sayth, that the cause antecedent, proceedeth of coldnes & imbecilitie of the visuall spirits, specially in old people, and such as haue long sickness and vehement hote fevers, sometime by great vomiting, or traueling & iourneying: It may also proceed of vapours which assend from the stomacke, either by y^e indigestion, repletion of euill humors, or vapors which assend from the stomake. This humor is sent from the braines by the waynes and nerues to the part, or ingendereth in the part it selfe by the weaknes of the facultie *Concoctrix* and *Expultrix*. The signes when it beginneth, the sicke doth imagine to see before his Eyes little things like flies or moates, like the dust of the sunne, threads of woole, haire, spiders webs, or as it were a circle about a candle when it is lighted, thinking one candle to be two. The iudgments, some are curable, others not, those which be curable are of the colour of rustey Iron, or white, tending

to

to the colour of pearles, or of an ashye or green colour like a tuckisse, or seawater. All these be good and fit to be couch-
 ed being ripe, which you shall know thus; first steake the
 whole Eye of the sicke, then rub the lid of the sore Eye gent-
 ly with your finger, or thumb, turning it gentlie sometime
 to one side, sometime to another, but beware in ouer much
 rubbing, for y^e troubleth the Eye. Then opning it suddenly, if
 you perceiue the Cataract spread large & suddenly goe round
 together as befoze, it is a token that it may be abated: those
 which are incurable and not to be touched, are of the colour
 of lead or chalke; Cytrons blacke or yeallow, they be all euil
 and receiue no curation. The Cataract doth oftentimes take
 the colour of that humo^r it is made of, that, which after it be
 rubbed, doth spread and goes not together againe, but with
 great difficulty, hardly doth receiue any cure: that which com-
 meth by strokes, falls, great sicknes & head-ach, are all incur-
 able, and in those cases if it be taken down, the sicke seeth little
 or nothing, by reason the humo^rs and spirits are resolved:
 Heere you must marke, that some Teyes bee sooner con-
 firmed, then others: For some are formed in ten moneths,
 others in fiue or six yeares, according to the temperature of
 the person, and nature of the humo^r whereof it is made: of
 this diuers examples could be giuen, but for the present I
 will onely recite two; The one of a seruant of my Lord of
 Laudum, who had a Cataract fiue yeares on both his Eyes,
 which when I did see, I caused him to stay one yeare there
 longer till it became more ripe, then I did couch them both
 and restozed him to his sight. Likewise a Seruitour of the
 Lord of Craggie Wallale, who had a Tay on his Eyes
 the space of nine moneths or thereabouts, which was suf-
 ficientlie ripe, so I did couch it, and restozed him in like
 manner to his sight. Sometimes the Cataract is accompanied
 with obstruction of the perue Opticke called *Gutta serena*:
 this you shall know in demaunding of the patient, if he doe
 see any shadow against the sunne or syer: if hee doth see no-
 thing, there is obstruction; and in that case the couching of

Cataracts
incurable

Examples
of confirmed
cataracts.

the Cataract doth profit nothing : So it is the best not to
 deale with such Wayes. The cure is either by Medicine, or
 Manuall operation : That which is confirmed medicine
 doth profit nothing. I haue oftentimes seen in Paris, & other
 parts, being in practise with learned Physicians, at sundry
 Patients, that all remedies that could be deuised for them,
 were long vsed, profiting nothing, but onely holding backe
 the ripening of the Day, which I did euer marke, and it was
 euer more hurtfull, then profitable to the sicke. Those
 which are taken in the begining may be helped by good forme
 of regiment, Purgations, Blisters, *erichnea* or *nasalea*, mas-
 ticatores, sternitores, colyzes, ventosies, setons, Cauters,
 censurs on the temples, vescicatores, bleeding of the arti-
 ers behind the eare, with diuers other medicaments which
 haue the vertue to discusse and resolute, which are at length
 set downe by Avicen, Aetius, Rasis, Arculeus, Gordonius,
 Savorala, Marc. Catin, Galen, Paulus, Mezues, with
 sundry others, whose opinion I doubt not but the learned
 Physician and Chyrurgion will follow, such as are already
 formed, or yet in forming, and are incurable, either by Physi-
 cke or manuall operation. Of the which I haue repeated
 diuers sorts which may be prolonged, and kept from grow-
 ing for a long time by the vsage of such medicines which are
 amplie prescribed by those learned Authoꝝ whome I haue
 rehearsed.

Helpes for the
 Cataract by
 Physicke.

Gualter. bra.
 praxis medici-
 nae.

CHAP. XX.

Of the cure of the Cataract by manuall operation.

Avicen tertius
 tertius. cap. 20.

The Cataract being ripe, which you shall know by such
 signes as you haue heard ; the body must bee purged
 and

and prepared by medicines, sirups, and bleeding if neede require, then the sicke shall rest a day or two : in case the medicine doth prouoke vapours to ascend to the head, alter the body, and maketh dolour, then the time most proper must be chosen for the cure, which would bee in the Spring time or Sommer, or in other times for necessitie, the weather being temperate and drie, neither raynie, windy, ouer hote, nor cold, neither ouer light, nor obscure, the wayning of the Moone is most meete for diuers respects before the operation : The sicke must vse a straight dyet, eating little and drinke very weake two dayes before the cure : As also the whole time of the cure, then craue Gods blessing for his assistance as we should doe in all operations, which being done, we come to the manuall operation, which shall be metest in the morning about eight or nine of the clocke : the patient being weake, giue him a toste of bread with small wine, or clean Ale, thereafter set him on a fourme or stoele in some light place, in such sort that his face be directly before the Chyrurgion, then one must stand behind him to hold his head fast and stable, and another must hold vp his eye-lidde with his thombe and finger, that the Chyrurgion may see the better, that being done, the Chyrurgiõ shall sit on the same fourme, or some other seat somewhat higher, directly against the sicke, and so nere, that the hands of the sicke may rest vpon the Chyrurgions thighes, then the Chyrurgion shall stabbe the Needle

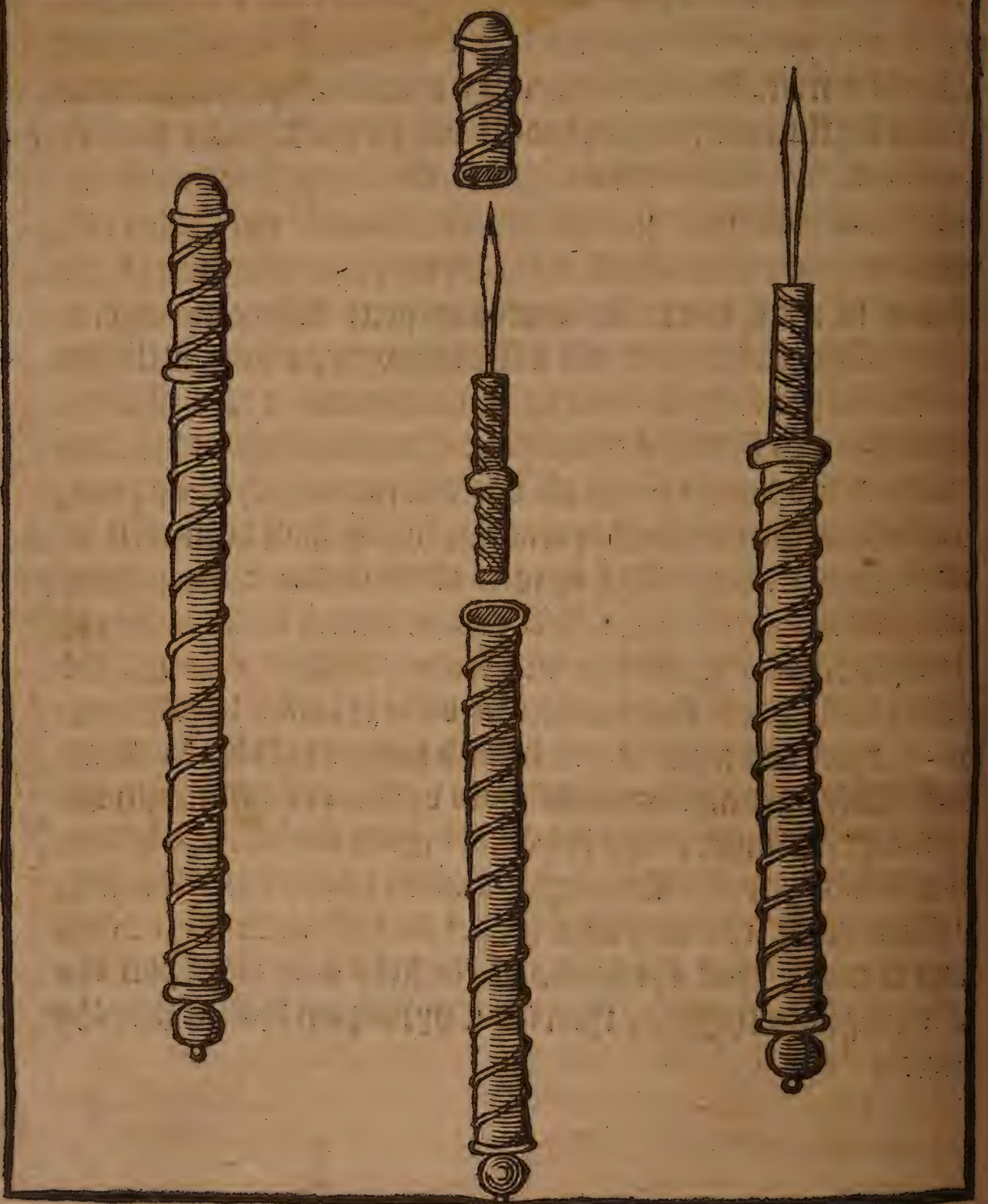
Temperate
time for abating the Cataract.

Goe to the operation in the morning.

The manner of abating the Cataract.

Needles

Needles to abate the Cataract.



The needle
must bee
smooth and
hote.

often in some cloth to make it sound and hote, it must neither
be rough nor cold to the membranes of the eye; then the ope-
rator, or some young child who hath a sweet breath, shall
chew Syonamon, Ginger, Cloves, or Fennell, and spit it
out and breath three or foure times in the eye of the sicke, it
being open; & that prepareth the eye, & maketh the Cataract
more

more thin then he shall cause the sicke to close the whole eye, & hold it close, for if it moue, the soze moueth also, & hindreth greatly the operation. Next, the Chyrurgion shall cause the patient to open the soze eye, and turne it towards the nose: if it be the right eye, the Chyrurgion shall with his finger and thombe of the wrong hand vpon the eye, hold it stable and firme, which being done, the Chyrurgion shall thrust in the Needle, which must be sharpe pointed, a little lower then the middest of the eye, ouerthwart the membraines named Coniunctiua and Cornea, taking alwaies heed not to offend the vaines of the coniunctiue, let it goe towarde the side of the little corner which is nere the temples, directly to the foreside of the cataract, not aduancing ouer farre: some doe counsaile that needle be so conuayed, that it be the thicknes of two six pences from the blacke of the eye, so is it y easier to be chouched lowe, but it is difficiler to pierse: others passe the needle through the middest of the blacke of the eye, conuaying it befoze the Cataract till it come to the top of it, & taking good heede in picking of it, then by little and little turne the needle gently, buttill such time as you couch it to the lowest part of the eye, and being there hold it downe a pretty space, then retire the Needle the way that it went in, if it doth rise againe as often chanceth, the dolour being ceased, passe the needle as befoze, but not at the same passage: apply suddenly your apparell, that the eye be neither too light, nor exposed to the eare, which shall be made of whites of egges beaten with Rose water and oyle, and putting cotton or soft caddis, and apply to the eye with a soft cloth wet in the same, and applye on both the eyes, with a restreintie on the forehead and other nere parts made of whites of egges, bol armeni, and sanguis draconis, let all lye for two or thre dayes, if other accidents happen not: this forme must be continued for twelue or fiftene dayes, handle it euery day once keeping his bed, and mouing his head so little as may be, & his head must lie higher than the rest of his body: in all this time vse onely broths and other supping meates, abstaining from hard

The needle
must bee
sharpe pointed

Diuers formes
of vsing the
needle.

It must be
handled euery
day once.

Not for to
moue the
teeth till the
accidents be
past.

The sick must
be put to light
by degrees.

*Cataracta Lac-
tea.*

The cure of
the *Cataracta
lactea.*

hard meat, or any thing that moues the teeth; the mouing of the teeth draweth the humors to the eye, and causeth the Way to ascend againe, euer when you dresse the sick, keepe the windowes shut and the candle behind him, ouer great light troubleth the eye and dissipateth the spirits: this order you must obserue till the accidents bee past, then remoue the apparell and wash the eyes with Rose, Fennell, or Cuphage water, wipe them with a soft cleane cloth, then put a lighted candle before the sicke in a great chamber: cause him first to open one eye, but take heed that neither of the eyes be opened untill six or eight daies be passed. When the cure is perfected and the accidents going, he must yet for a space be kept quiet, holding a greene cloth before his face, and vse conseruatures of greene glasse: let him to light by little and little, for being ouer sone exposed to great light, it will be hurtfull. Here you must marke, that sometime in passing the needle some vaines or artiers are opened, so blood issueth which ioyneth with the humor aqueus, in such sort that you would thinke the eye to be lost, yet in three or foure dressings it becometh well. This I thought good to shew that the young Chyrurgion be not discouraged: there be some sort of Teyes which are so soft that they may not abide the needle, such are called *Cataracta Lactea* being like vnto milke both in colour and substance: in those sorts of Teyes the Chyrurgion must with his needle presse it on euery side, so the most grosse part will fall away and become lowe, the thinner part will consume in such sort, that oftentimes the sicke recouereth his health, as I haue sometimes seene; as for a number of other symptoms which happen in the cure of the Cataract, you shall take aduise with Ralis, Iesus, Rondoletius, Petrus Franco, Iac. Guilmeau, and diuers others.

Chap. XXI. Of the dolour in the Eares.

*Barthol. de pro-
priet. rerum.*

The Ear, which is the instrument of hearing, hath the name *Auris*, as *Haurio* to take, because it taketh the voice

voice and sound of things which are brought vnto it, and serueth man for many vses, yet is subiect to diuers diseases, as dolour, aposthume, inflammation, wormes, vlcers, sounding or noise, deafnes, and sundrie others: The dolour of the eare happeneth many waies, as by cold, heat, or by both, by wormes, &c. Thicke and vaporous humors which stop the passages, aposthumes, vlcers, crisis of feuers, and such like. Like as there is diuers causes of dolours, so there are diuers kinds. Galen maketh mention of fīue kinds. The signes are known by the temperature and wordes of the sicke, as heat, inflammation, distention, heauinesse, and so forth: the distention doth declare vapours or wind, the heauinesse declareth a grosse slime humor. The Judgements, if it happen either with vehement feuer, or in the crise of feuer, it is dangerous: if the dolour be in the cartilage or outwardly in any part of the eare, there is small danger; if within the conduit or hearing of the nerue auditour, it is perillous, and death often ensueth. The Cure consisteth, first in taking away the cause by purging the humor that offends, by bleeding of the cephalicke vaine and ventosing, if there be inflammation next, in prescribing of dyet according to the nature of the pain, abstaining alwaies from vaporous things. As for locall remedies, if the paine do proceed of cold, apply hote remedies without; as also instill within made of oyle of Rue, Lillies, & Cuphorbe: if it proceed of heat, apply outwardly, & instill within whites of egges, oyle of Roses, Wormewood, and pap milke: if dolour happeneth by inflammation, draw blood as counselleth Paulus, and foment with Rose oyle, or diachelium dissolved with oyle of Roses, and Anethum, as counsaileth Mezues. If the dolour cometh through wormes in the eares, you shall instill the iuice of Abscynth, Capers, Calaminth, Sentoze, or figs: if it proceede of thicke grosse humors or vapours, you shall make a decoction of Cammomill and Anethum; receaue the fume of it by a pipe of white Iron or Brasse, otherwise instill iuice of Rue or water of milke distilled with a little Saffron.

Cause.

Diuers kinds
of dolours in
the eares.Signes.
Paul. li 3. ca. 23

Judgements.

*Hip. 3. progn.
text 15.
Gal. 10. meth.
cap. 7.*
Cure.Arculeus.
Auicen.Dolour by
wormes in
the eares.

Chap.

Chap. XXII. Of the tumors in the Eares.

Cause. Their cometh many grievous tumors in the eares, which sometimes possesse the whole eare, otherwhiles some part thereof. The Cause is an hote corrodng humor, descending from the nerves of the first coniugation, which are dispersed in the conduits of the eares by the dura matter: it doth proceed likewise of a vaporous spirit and cold thicke humor, which maketh difficulty of hearing, and sometime deafnes. The Signes are manifest. The Judgements, young people are more grievously tormented then old, and do often die before it cometh to suppuration, and that within seaven daies, by reason of the great accidents, like as fever, lightnes, and sounding. In old folkes it cometh often to suppuration, yet the dolour is very vehement by reason of the nerve: also by the membrians for the propinquitie with the braines, nature hath given it an exquisite feeling. The Cure consisteth in remedies vniuersall and particular: vniuersall, like as good dyet, abstaining from wine and all sumie drinke, bleeding in the cephalicke vaine, if age permit; also vsing of glisters, or some gentle medicines according to the humor, as you haue heard in Ophthalmia. As for particular remedies, they differ not much from others, except that wee vse no repercussives, neither any cold remedies, by reason of the nerve which is cold, deepe, and hollow: if the dolour be vehement with heate, vse oyle of Roses, Mirrills, and Sidoniorum, and a little vinegar mixed all together, wherof you shall drop a little in the eare. Quersitanus doth much allow Cats water distilled, if it tend to suppuration, handle it as other aposthumes.

Signes.
Judgements.
Yong childre
dye of it.
Cure.
Gord. part. 3.
Quers. opera
medua.

Chap. XXIII. Of Vlcers in the Eares.

Definition. The vlcers which happen in the eares, are nothing but a solution of continuity, with matter purulent either externally or internally, accompanied with dolour, fever, and diuers

diuers other symptoms. The Cause of these humors doe proceed of a corrodng sharpe humor, strokes, falles, defluxion of humors, aposthumes, or any other thing that hath the vertue to putrefie & corrode. The signes are manifest. Auicen, Rasis, and Arculeus do say, if either humor sanguinolent, fetid, or purulent matter issue out at the eare, it betokeneth some vlcer, grosse humor, or fistule to be there. The Cure doth first consist in good dyet, next in purging the vlcers: if there be vlcers, you shall distill in the eare, oyle of egges, or distilled water of Allom: or this which I do vse, take Leeks & boyle them in oyle till the third part be consumed, the straine them through a cloth, and instill it twice a day in the eare, let the patient lie on the soze side, so the matter will auoide the better. If with these vlcers there be purulency and rottenness, you shall instill iuice of Abscynth, with a little honie or iuice of Onions, Woodbine, Busa pastoris, oyle of Turpentine, or bitter Almonds: some vse for this purpose, to instill the vrine of a young child warme, it hath the vertue to drie vp the humors in the eares; of those vlcers Galen hath amply spoken. If there be wormes or sheepe-lice, as often happeneth in the eare, you shall instill iuice of Abscynth, Capers, or a little Scammonie with Vinegar; also iuice of Abscynth, Calaminth, Centory, or Figs; likewise a little wine wherein hath been boyled Harrubium. Some doe vse the gaule of an Ore distilled in strong vinegar, and are layd hote in the eare, Sternatories are also profitable. Rasis counsaileth for this purpose to instill in the eare succus mentastri, or folia persicorum, aut nuclea eorum, or a little Aloe dissolued with water or vrine: this remedie doth not only kill these wormes and sheepes-lice, but also other little beasts which enter in the eare, or ingendereth in vlcers else-where. As touching that grosse humor or passage that doth stop the passage of the eare, you shall make a decoction of Camomill and Anathum, and receiue the fume at the eare, by a pipe or instrument proper to that effect, or else instill iuice of Rue or milke with a little Saffron: it happeneth oftentimes that those little wormes,

Cause.

Signes.

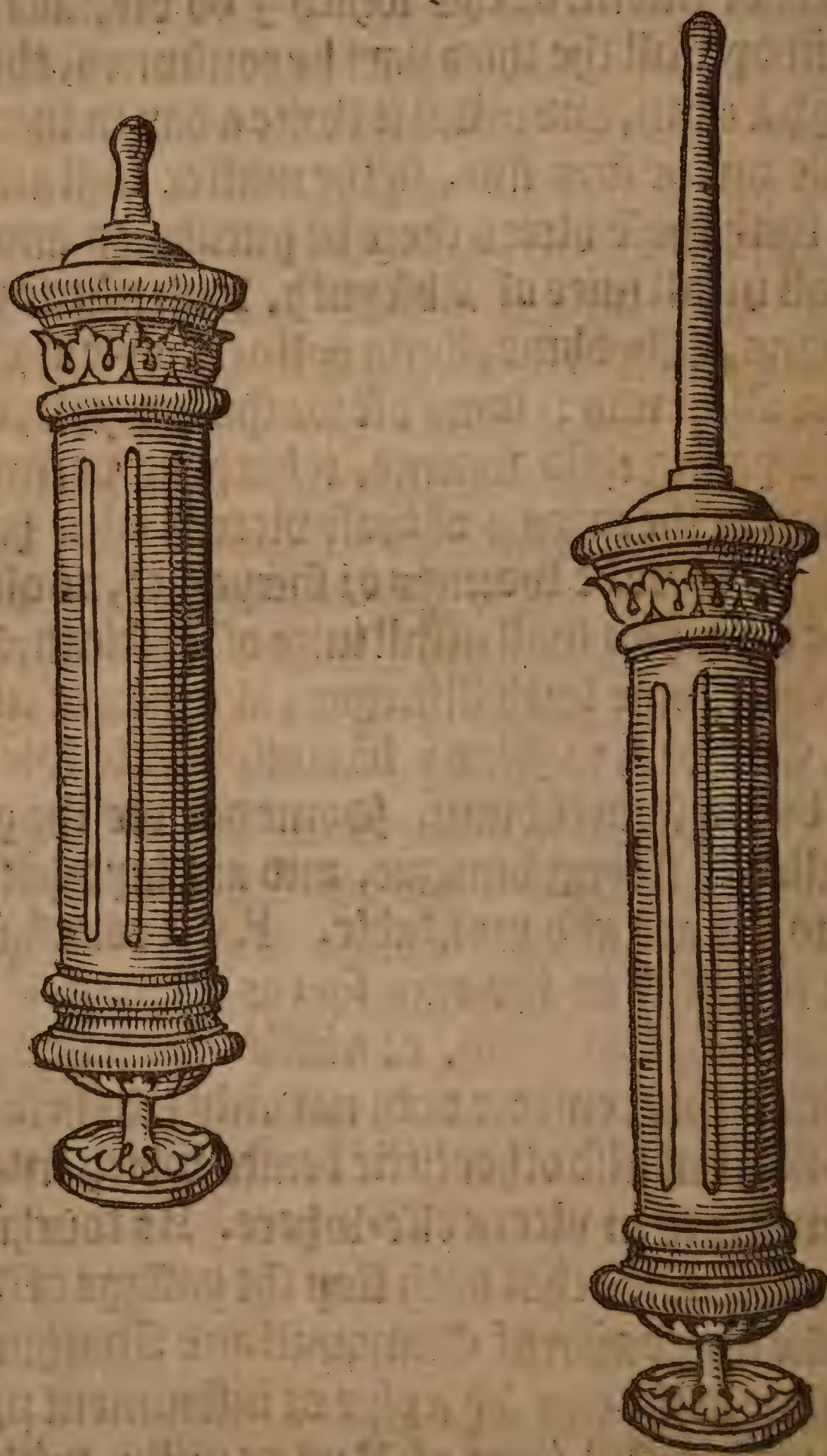
Cure.

*Mez. de agri-
tud. o. u. lo. um.**Baccant. li. i. i.**Petrus Hispanus.**Cels. lib. 6.
cap. 7. & 11.*Decoction for
the passage of
the eare.

sheepe-

thæpe-lice, or grosse humors remaineth in the eare, through the debility of nature, or otherwise; for the which I doe vse a Squirt or Siring of brasse or white yron called Pynclum,

*Sirrig, or Squirt for the eare,
or hollow woundes.*



Gal. 2. ad glan. which hath a mighty vertue in drawing out of any thing that
is

is inclosed in the eare, being properly made for that effect, as you see in this portraiture.

CHAP. XXIIII.

¶ Of the tumor which commeth behind the eare called *Parotides*.

Like as in the munctories of other noble parts of our body, nature hath likewise placed in the craige & rootes of the eares, which are the munctories of the braines, certaine little kernels or glands to receaue that matter or vapour venomous deposed by the braines called *Parotides*. which is an inflammation or aposthume of the glands behind the eare. *Definition.*
 The cause doth proceed of the abundance of pure hote blood, and then it ingendereth flegme with vehement dolour; some time it doth proceed of abundance of cholericke blood, and it doth ingender *Eresipelas*: sometime it proceedeth of the melancholicke blood, then the tumor is somewhat hard, not red dish without great paine: if it proceede of the pituitous humor, the tumor is somewhat pointed, white, not dolorous: sometime it doth proceede of an humor fallen from the head, because nature hath ordained those glands for that effect: as also because they are soft and cold, and the passages large, whereby the humor commeth: sometime the humor commeth from the whole body, like as in crisis of feuers: it may also proceed of any one of the foure humors, or of all being mixed together. *Cause.*
 The signes are tumor, dolour, vehement feuer, pulsation, with such other signes, as you haue heard in Tumors. *Tra. li. 3. ca. 10.*
 The Iudgements, those which come by crisis without signe of maturation are euill, and going to the internal parts for the most part is mortal, as saith *Auicen*: sometime it doth euanish away, and passe with the excrements, as I once obserued of a gentleman in Paris called *M. Buchir*, who had a *Parotide* readye to bee opened, the which in one night euanished away with the excrements, as was easilie perceined, and the purulent matter scene with the matter fecall, *Pau. lib. citato.*
Langfrancus tract. 3.
Auicen quart. tertij ca. 24.
Signes.
Iudgements.

Cure.

Rondo. meth.
curand. morb.Cataplasmes
maturative.Ætius serm. 6.
cap. 89.Ventosies to
be applyed in
tumors.Dodoneus.
Chelmetaeus ca.

call, and so becommeth whole. The Cure is first to vse gli-
sters, and bleeding in the vaine cephalicke, remembzing if it
proceed of Crise of feuer, you must not let blood in respect of
weaknesse and imbecility of the sicke, by the sicknesse prece-
dent : good dyet must be obserued, vsing things of good dige-
stion and not vaporous, abstaining from all strong drinke.
The particular remedies differ not from the cure of other a-
posthumes, except that we vse no repercussiuues no; refrige-
rants, but only maturatiues ; as this, take an handfull of
Snruckes, Lillie roots halfe an handfull, roste them within
a peece of wet paper vnder the hote embers, then adde vnto
them two yolkes of egges, some Hogs grease, and de alhea,
beat all together in a morter, and apply it warme to the soze
vpon a cloth : or this, take fine white flower two ounces,
pouder of Lin-seede, and Fennigreeke, of each one ounce,
Hogs grease 2 vnc. figs halfe an vnc. mixe all with a little
decoction of Malloues, Althea, and flowers of Camomill,
of all those make a cataplasme and apply as the former. I
often doe vse in those tumors this which is maturative and
anodine, and is made of the crowmes of white bread, infused
with milke, Lin-seed, and Fennigreeke, oyle of Lillies, Rose
flowers, Camomill, and Helilot, of each so much as shall be
expedient to make a plaister of good consistance, adding to it
a little Saffron. If the tumor be slow in coming forth, you
shall vse ventosies and medicaments, attractiues and ano-
dines, with some degerents in the beginning, like as oyle of
Lillies, Iris, Camomill, bitter Almonds, and apply on the
part, with sheeps wolle : it is not best to abide the perfect sup-
puration of this tumor, but so soone as may be, to open it and
giue it aire, by which meanes the humor or venomous ba-
pouer doth dissipate, so the dolour dissipateth and nature much
dischargeeth. It may be opened either with Cauter or Lauce-
ret, taking good heede of the nerue, vaine, & artier, whereof
oftentimes commeth great accidents : after it be opened, you
must vse suppuratiues, mundificatiues, incarnatiues, and
desiccatiues, as you haue heard in other tumors.

(HAP. XXV.

¶ Of the tumor in the Nose called Sarcoma,
Ofena, and Polypus.

The Nose is a part of the body, by the which the braines doe discharge the excrements: in it happeneth diuers diseases, but chiefly three sorts, which do not much differ one from another. The first is called Sarcoma, which is a tumor or excrecence of flesh against nature. The second is called Ofena, which is a profound vicer, euill sauoured, and dangerous. The third is called Polypus which differeth not from Sarcoma, saue onely that it is not so bigge. Polypus is a tumor or excrecence of flesh, which proceedeth of the bone Methmoides, or y^e of the nose, and doth sticke fast to it: it groweth by little and little, yet in time it becommeth so great, that it filleth the whole conduit of the nose, sometime it hangeth downe to the lip, hindering the sicke to speake or breathe: sometime it groweth behinde in the hole where the aire commeth to the nose, in such bignes that it filleth and stoppeth the passage of the trache artier, putting the sicke in daunger of suffocation. The Cause is a corrupt thicke viscus humors, which commeth from the head to the nose: also wounds, aposthumes, or vicers, which are accompanied with a sharpe bitter humor, and doe corrode the part where it is, and taketh roote. The Signes are manifest, as by the narration of the sicke, accompanied with rottennes, euill sauoured, liue coloured, sometime hard, others soft. The Iudgements, that which is hard, blacke, dolorous, fetide, malignant, and cankerous, should not be touched, saue only in applying medicaments, refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, and mitigaters of dolour, hauing the vertue to impash the growing of the disease, as in the chap. of Cancer you haue heard. That which is reddish and brownish with dolour, is difficile, and if it possesse both the sides of the nose, either the sicke doth suffocate

Constant Africanus.

Definition.

Pan. li. 6. ca. 26.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 24.

Rasis li. 9. ca. 30.

Cause.

Haly Abbas

lib. 9.

Gal. de comp.

medic. ca. 3.

Brunus l. b. 2.

cap 11.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Cure.

*Fuxius lib. de
meden morb.*

Politricon.

Langfrancus.

Guydo.

Rogerus.

Brunus.

Medicaments
to consume
the Polypus.

focate or flapeth with open mouth. If the excrescence be soft and without dolour, and taken in the beginning, it may be cured. The Cure is very difficile, as often I haue experimented: and in the most part of those tumors, it were better to vse such remedies as you haue heard, then to aduventure any cure: alwaies in such as you find tractables, you shall first vse a good regiment tending to sobriety; next, vniuersall remedies are to be followed, as purgations, bleeding, and rubbing of the head, with such thinges as haue the vertue to corroborate the braines, and drie the euill humors therein contained. The particular remedies shall be according to the tumor, which sometimes is hard, otherwhiles soft, such as is soft, white, and not dolorous, is taken away by instruments, as did some of our ancients most expert Chyrurgions, who did cut the Polypus all about at the roote, sauing alwaies the cartilage thereafter, with a proper instrument called by the Greeks Polyricon Patheon, did plucke it forth at the roote, and cureth it as other vlcers: others doe counsaile to make incision in the cartilage of the nose, thereafter plucke it out by the roote, which being done, if there remaine any of the roote, as often happeneth, it doth augment in such sort, that better it had been not to be medled with, then to consume that which doth remaine, causticke pouders may be vsed, like as flos æris and æs vltum mingled with a little hony, and applyed: likewise melted Cauters, Arsenicke, powder of Ant monie, Calcantum, Mercurie, squama æris, oyle or powder of Vitreoll, Atramentum sutorium, strong water, and such like, in the which you may wet tents of cotton, and apply with hony or vnguent, Anodine, to such time that the excrescence be consumed, vse alwaies defensives for the inflammation, vnguent Pumpholigos. With a little Balsam is good: some doe vse to consume the excrescence with actuall Cauters, conuaying it in with a Canule or hallowe instrument, to saue the other parts from the iniurie of the hote Iron: some of those practickes, I haue seene and assaied (but with small successe) except such as haue bene taken

ken in the beginning, and not malignant : hereof my advise is, that you tent not such cures, but rather use such remedies as haue the vertue to hold it back, with this water to wash it.

Rec. balustiorum corticis malorum granato an. lib. 1. galanga, Water for the cauda equina, lingua passerina, herniaria an. manipulos duos, radicis bistortae unc. 4 contundantur & simul distillantur, & fiat aqua ; with the which you shall often wash the vlcer of the nose, if you should adde to it a little Allom, it were the better: if either of those tumors degender in Cancer, as often times happeneth, haue your recourse to the chap. of Cancer.

Po'ypus and other vlcers in the nose.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the fluxion of blood at the Nose.

FOrasmuch as the blood is the treasure of life, so it is necessary if it flow excessiue, that it be stayed by fit remedies, otherwise death ensueth. The Cause of this flux happeneth by opening of the mouth, of some vaines in the nose which happeneth either by cause externe or interne. The externall cause is stroke s, falls, vehement exercise, great heat, and such like. The cause interne proceedeth of too much blood, retention of the moneths, or by the acrimonie of the humor that floweth to those vaines, which doth corode them: also crisis of feuers, frensies, plurisies, aposthumes of the liuer or splene, sometime the flux happeneth without the crise, as from the liuer, splene, or matrice, debility of the vertue re- tentrix. The Signes are euident to the sight, besides if it happen through abundance of blood, there will be great pain in the head, rednesse in the eyes, much blood in the face; if it proceed from the liuer or splene, you will know by the colour of those parts, or from the matrice, you will know by retention of the moneths. The Iudgements, if the flux proceed from the matrice, it will be difficile to cure & if it flow much, it is euill and dangerous, that Hydropsie will ensue: if it proceed by the debility of the brains, hardly doth it euer heale: if the colour of the blood be pale, liuide, Greene, or brownish,

Cause.

Flux of blood at the nose come of two causes.

Gord. part. 3.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Gualte. Brant.

Cure.
Ope the vain
cephalicke.

Paul. li. 2. ca. 24

Paul. loco citato.

Liquor to bee
applyed for
bleeding of
the nose.

Tra. li. 3. ca. 11

it is for the most part mortall : if it happeneth with sincope
or cold of the extremities, it is also mortall ; all flux which
commeth suddenly and by violence, is euill. The Cure is
first in good dyet, vsing such thinges as are of good iuice and
digestion, and haue the vertue to coole and make thicke blood:
next, if there be plenitude, and age permit, you shall open the
vaine cephalicke of the arme opposite ; next, vse frictions
downeward to the inferiour parts, straight ligatures of the
armes, thighs, testicles, and legges, to diuertise the blood,
also ventosies, with scarrification on the shoulders : if it
flowe from the right nostrill, applye ventosies on the li-
uer, if from the left put the ventosie on the milt, if from both
the passages of the nose, apply ventosies on both those parts :
if it floweth in great aboundance, notwithstanding you shall
let blood the cephalicke vaine on the same side, if strength per-
mit : if it come from the matrice, you must prouoke the
monethly courses. The topicall remedies shalbe in applica-
tion of cold thinges to the head, temples, necke vaine, iugular,
and other parts, from whence the cause doth proceed, which
shall be made either of iuice or distilled waters of Surucks,
Lettice, Plantane, Bursa pastoris, knot-grasse, Vinca per vi-
ca, and such others of that quality, wet a linnen cloth in those
waters or iuices, & apply to the foresayd parts and testicles:
the like may be done with vinegar, also you may put in the
nose this remedie which I do commonly vse, that is made of
Egge-shelles, Breath halfe an vnc. Gaules 2. drams, San-
guis draconis, and Truboll, of each halfe an vnc. haire of
belly of an old Ware small cut a little, mixe all those together
with vinegar, and whites of Eggs put on tents and put vp in
the nose, also apply onely vpon the nose, forehead, and tes-
ticles, with a double cloth that hath been wet in vinegar : al-
so mans blood dried in powder and put vppon into the nose,
is very good : or this, take Truboll three drams, Dragon
blood, frankinsence, Aloes, Masticke, of each 1. dramme,
haire of the bellie of an old Ware small cut halfe a dram, put
all those in small powder and blow vp into the nose, & make a
tent

tent of cotton to hold it in. The common people doe onely
 vse for all fluxes of blood at the nose, Hoggs dirt put in cotton
 or a small linnen cloth applyed to the nose : also the smoke
 of it receaued by the nose, is good. Iohn Lebot approueth *John Lebot ll.*
 the hearbe bis malua or Agrimonia to hold in the hand on *i. of the coun-*
 that side the blood floweth at. As also he counsaileth to write *try farine.*
 on the forehead of him that blædeth (with his owne blood)
 consummatum est. Hieronimus Cardanus who hath more
 curiously than diuinely written, doth counsaile in great fluxe *Cardanus*
 of blood, to pronounce these words following, thrice ouer. *reth by we*
Sanguis mane in te sicut Christus fecit in se, Sanguis mane in
tua vena sicut Christus in sua Pena. Sanguis mane fixus sicut
Christus quando fuit crucifixus. This forme of cure by
 words I do not alleage here so much, for any effect I look shal
 ensue thereupon, as for to content a number of ignorant, ar-
 rogant people, who neither will suffer paine, giue leisure, or
 reward more expences for their health, but do ignorantly up-
 on presumptiō, imagine that all diseases should bee helped at
 their pleasure : To such people and to none other, haue I set
 downe their remedies by words, which I hope in some mea-
 sure shall satisfie them.

Chap. XXVII. Of the lips and their diseases.

The Lips which the Grækes do call Cheile, and the La-
 tines Labra or Labia, are so called as sayth Isidorus, a *Isidorus.*
 lambendo to licke. Constantinus sayth, that the lippes doe *Constantinus.*
 beautifie the mouth, teeth, and gummes, and doe helpe the *Gal. i. i de*
 forming of the voice, with diuers other commodities, alwayes *usu partiū.*
 they are subiect to diuers diseases ; yet for the present I am *The lips beau-*
 only mindfull to speake of thre which are most common and *tify the mouth*
 may be helped, to Init, Palenesse or liuidity, Fissures, reeds
 or hacks, with the cut or rawing lip, called the hares lippe.
 The palenesse or liuidity, hapneth oftentimes by feare or so-
 daine commotion, which sodaine passion retyzes the blood to
 the centure from whence it came; which being past, and the
 blood

Cause of pale-
nes in the lips.

Pain.

For the
of the

Cause & cure
of hacked lips.

Gordon. part. 3
cap. 17.

blood settled, the lips returne to their owne naturall. It hap-
peneth also of the disease which is incident to women, called
the pale-colours, and must bee cured by purgations, baths,
decotions, sirupes, aperetickes, and such others as shall bee
devised by the skilfull Physition : sometime it doth proceed
from the mouth of the stomacke, by the great communicatiō
which is betwixt the stomacke and lippes by a membaine,
as may bee perceived by the trembling of the lips in the
time of vometting : that sort of palenes is helped by rub-
bing of it gently with a piece of sheepe-skinne that hath bene
dyed red : or this, take red sandals confused and steeped
thre dayes in Aquavite or strong vinegar, boyle them all on
a soking fire an houre with a little Allom and Gumme of A-
rabicke, then pass it and rubbe the lips therewith : some
for this purpose do vse the rid of Spaine ; there be diuers o-
ther remedies set downe for this purpose by Lebot. The
hacks or rids of the lips, is a solution of continuittie in the ten-
der flesh of the lip, which doth happen by causes externe and
interne. The externes are hurts, cold, great heat, wind,
dust, and such like. The internall cause is a sharpe salt hu-
mor that commeth from the braines, and corrodeth the part:
sometimes it happeneth by crise of feuers ascending from the
stomacke, liuer, or all the body. The Cure, if it proceed of
heat, you shall rubbe the vlcer with oyle of Roses, Violets,
Capons grease, Mussilages of Dragagant, extracted in Rose
water, and anoynt the part, or take Gumme of Dragagan,
Gumme Arabicke, Masticke, tempered with hony of Ro-
ses & anoynt the part : if the cause be interne, purge the bo-
dy, and let blood the vaine of the lip, thereafter annoynt the
part with whites of Egges and powder of Masticke : also
oyle of Ware, or of Egges : or this pomade thus made,
take halfe a pound of Harts or Goates grease, 1. ounce of
Hogges grease, wash them well in white wine, thereafter ex-
prime the grease from the wombe, then put to it one graine
of Sardin, foure drammes of Cloues in fine powder, Put-
mens halfe a dramme, two fine apples halfe confused, infuse
all

Of the Hare-shaw Lippe. *Lib. V.*

all in Rose water a whole day, then boyle all in an earthen pot, and stirre it about with a speele of wood, vntill such time that the Rose water bee exhaled, then straine it thzough a strong cloth, and adde vnto it one ounce of oyle of sweet Almonds, with an ounce of white Ware, then melt all on the fire, then retire it and let it harden, thereafter wash it with Rose or Damaske water : if you would adde vnto it some red Corall or Cinabir well beaten on a Marble stone, it will be moze drying, and also giue it a reddish colour. I haue often vsed in those hackes, as also those of the handes or other parts, vnguent Roses, Mezues, with a little Ceruse, Camphier, Allom, or a little of the seed of Iusqueam in powder, or any one of those, or a little of each one mixed with the vnguent will suffice, being rubbed on thzee or foure times a day.

Pomace
hacked
lippes.

Vnguent for
hacked lips.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Hare-shaw or clouen Lippe, called the Hares Lippe.

The Hare-shaw, is a defectuositie of nature, which happeneth either by nature, or accident in the Lip, Care, or Nose : they or either of them are sometimes found clouen, or they come in the world : it is sometime little, otherwhiles so bigge, that you would imagine a peece taken out of it : such as are little clouen may be cured : if they be much rent, hardly do they receiue any cure; such as are in old people & of euill habitude, are very hardly cured. The Cure, it being either by nature or accident, nothing can be added to it, but may be ioyned together by a suter incarnatiue, as you shall heare in the generall chapter of wounds. The forme of the cure is this, first purge the body if the person be of age, then dyet the patient the night before; next, place him in a light part, then with your left hand lift vp the one side of the lip : then with a sharpe

Definition.

Iudgements.

Cure.

Cels. l. 7. ca. 9.

Of the Hare-shaw Lippe. Lib. V.

cure
hare shaw

needle to
be used for the
hare shaw.

Sharpe bistory or launced curbe, cut the outward skinne till you come to the middelt of the sent, which being done, you shall lift vp the other side of the lip and doe the like, so both sides shall be altogether like vnto a great wound, let them bleed a little to discharge the part and auoyd inflammation, which being done, ioyne the sides together so iustly as you can, then thrust a needle through both the parts of the lip, taking a reasonable gripe, letting there the needle remaine: then turne y thread about it after the forme you see aged women or Taylors doe, when they keepe the needle on their breast.

Protraiture

Portraiture for a clouen lip.



If the needle be too long, cut the end of it with Tenals incis-
sues : if the clift be long, you may thrust two needles one
aboue another : if by those meanes the sent doth not ioyne
together, but be too straight, in that case you shall in each side
a little from the sent, make a little incision circular in the out-
ward skin, in forme of an halfe moone, so the side shall ioyne
more

Astringēt for
the Harshaw.

more easily : beware in vsing any violence, for the which you must consider befoze the operatiō, if the fenth be so large that it cannot ioyne easily, it must not be stretched to ioyne, least you make a greater deformatie, besides it will bee an hinderance to the speech : y needle passed as is sayd, you shall put vpon y wound an astringēt, with compres in Dretrate, y emplaster of Betonica or such like : it doth cōmonly conglutinate in 8 or 10 days, after y which time cut out the thread & plucke out the needle, correct y superfluous flesh if any be, & induce the siccatrice. As touching the incisions which are made in forme of an halfe moone, handle them as simple woundes in the flesh. And as touching Clifts or fenths in the eares or nose, they be handled after the same forme.

Chap. XXIX. *Of the mouth, tooth, & toothach.*

Gal. i. 2 & 11
de usu partium.

Isidorus.

Gregorie.

Gal. i. de ossib
& 11. de usu
partium.

THE Mouth, which is called in Greeke Stoma, and in Latine Os, is scituated neere the braines, like as all the instruments sensitiues : it is the instrument of crying in beasts, and speaking in men, and is called by Isidorus the messenger of the soule, for wee speake by the mouth that which befoze we conceiue in soule and thought. Gregorie sayth, that the mouth hath many keepers, to the end the soule and wit may deeme and aduise first what to speake, befoze any thing be spoken : it serueth for many uses, and in it is contained many notable parts, but here I will onely touch such as I am mindfull to entreat of, like as the teeth, gummies, tongue, Vuula clap, or pap, Amygdals, beginning at the teeth, called by the Greekes Odontes, and in Latine Dentes. which are of the number of bones, and be in number thirty and two, to wit, eight called Incisores, because they cut the meat we eate, then followeth the foure called Canini, for the similitude they haue with hounds teeth: they be sharpe and round pointed, and breake the hard meat which the incisores cannot cut : the third sort is called Molares, and are in number twenty, & in some fewer, they do grinde the meat after

after it bee broken by the other teeth, and serue for decoring the mouth, chew the meat, helpe the speech and pronounciation: also by them we may prognosticate long or short life, as witnesseth Hippocrates in his presages: and they be subject to diuers passions and diseases, as dolour, corruption, perforation, caue or holed, and diuers others, as you shall heare at length in the chapter following. As touching the tooth-ach or dolour of the teeth, I am not of opinion with some of our ancients, who thought the teeth to endure any dolour being a bone, and no bone hath any feeling. Aristotle sayth, *Arist. 1 & 3. de anima.* that neither bones nor nailes haue any feeling, they being a terrestrious matter: that dolour which grieues vs, is at the roote of the tooth, either in the nerue or ligament which cometh to it, and is most cruell of all paines. Galen saith, amongst all maladies and passions which are not mortall, that of the teeth is most painfull vnto man, for the proximity and communication that the nerue hath with the braines and membraines: thereof some haue beene of opinion, that there are wormes which do engender in the teeth, and cause great paine, perswading the common people to the same: by which opinion the common Barbers Chyrurgions doe commit great error in plucking out of innumerable teeth which might well serue. There are no wormes that procure this dolour, but onely corrosion of the nerue by the acrimonie of the humor, as may be perceiued after the tooth is plucked out, and broken, y^e end of the nerue which is inserted in it, is corroded and growing red, which nerue is subtile and delicate, that you would thinke it to moue: we see diuers who haue their teeth almost all consumed without any paine; others hauing only a little hole in the side of the teeth, haue intollerable paine, which cometh by the humor that corrodeeth the nerue. The Cause of the tooth-ach is externall and internall: externall is falles, hurts, great heat, cold, breaking of hard things, and too much curiositie in rubbing the gummes, and taking away the flesh at the roote of the teeth: as also in being too negligent in cleansing the teeth after meat, so the filth remaineth and

*Hippo. in his
Presages.*

*Arist. 1 & 3.
de anima.*

Cels. 2. 6. ca. 9.

*Wormes are
not ingendered
in the
teeth.*

*Rondo. meth.
cur and. morb.*

Cause.

*Gal. de compo.
med. per locos
cap. 4.*

Signes.

*Gal. de compo.
medi. &c.*

Judgements.

Hip. 4. aph 53.

*Hippo. in his
Presages.
Cure.*

and doth putrifie and corrode. The cause interne proceeds of humors, which hauing acrimonie and quality maligne, that cometh from the head as happeneth in Megrimas, which humor doth flow to the gummes and roots of the teeth: also rotten sharpe vapours ascending from the stomacke, and maketh corrosion of the teeth and nerue, by the which ensueth extreame paine; it may also proceed of any of the foure humors: aged people which are much subiect to defluxions of the lights or braines, are much subiect thereto. The signes are euident and may be knowen by the patient and assistants, as also by the cause: for if the humor doth proceede from the head or gummes to the nerue, there will be great dolour and heauines in the head, continuall rhume falling on the part, with great euacuation of flegme: if it bee of vapours which ascend from the stomake, there will bee great heauines and dolour in the part: if the cause proceed of the foure humors or either of them, as sometimes happeneth, there will be rednesse, heat, corrosion, punction, hardnes, palenes, with great spitting. The Judgements, if the dolour of the teeth proceed from the gums, the dolour is not remoued by plucking forth of the tooth: if the paine proceed from the nerue or ligament, by remouing of y^e tooth, the paine ceaseth, by reason the matter which did corrode the nerue, was retained by the tooth, and could not easily passe away: if the tooth be pale and blacke in feuers, it is an euill signe: if aride and drie like a peece of wood in hote feuers, it is mortall. The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies: the generall shall first be in the forme of dyet, eschewing all thinges which may proueoke great heat or great cold, for they are both hurtfull: abstaine from all sharpe, soure, sweet, viscus, and vaporous thinges, and also milke: you shall vse thinges of easie digestion, abstaining from all exercise that may impash the same: next, if there be plenitude of humors, purge the bodie, especially the head: if the euill proceed of heat and plenitude of blood, take blood of the cephalicke vaine, and apply ventosities on the Shoulders with scarrification, open the Manules vnder

der the tongue, that of the lips, and rip the roote of the teeth, for that doth discharge the part. The particular remedies shall be according to the cause, as if it proceed of an hote humor, you shall retaine it in your mouth and wash it in Vinegar, wherein hath been boyled lulqueam, Mandragar, heads of Poppie, Letice, and Endiue, annoynt externally with oyle of Roses, Poppy, Mandragour, apply to the soze tooth 1. Dram of Oppiam dissolved with oyle of Roses, or Phylonium perficum: if it proceede of a cold humor, you shall wash your mouth and teeth with warme wine, wherein hath been boyled Sage, Betonie, Hynt, Pariter, Calaminth, Fennell, Marrubium, and Tormentill, annoynt outwardly with oyle of Cammomill, Laurell, Lillies, Cinnaper, and Rue, apply a little plaster of Gassicke or Gumme, alemny on the artier of the temples, to intercept the humor, you shall also chelwe in your mouth a little of the roote of Angelica, or a clove of Girusell, and put a little of either of those to the tooth. I doe vse in those dolours, to apply externally the crummes of white bread boyled with milke, yolkes of egges, and fresh butter, adding thereto some Saffron, oyle of Camomill, and Lillies, apply it warme betwixt two linnen clothes vpon the swelling or soze; diuers other anodine cataplasmes and plasters may be vsed for this purpose.

Iohannis Serapionis.

Pau. li. 3. ca. 26

Annoint the tooth outwardly.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the corrupted and hollow tooth, and the way to cure it.

The tooth as I haue sayd, is subiect to diuers passions and griefes, wherein the hand of the skillfull Chyrurgion is required: like as corruption, perforation, holed, canernous, gnashing or grinding, trembling, Stupiditie, leucidity or blacknes, and vnsstable, for the cure whereof you shall heare familiar remedies in few words. The Cause of corruption which happeneth in the teeth you haue heard in the last

Tra. li. 3. ca. 33.

Cause.

Cure.

Oyles and li-
quors for the
corrupt tooth.Albuc. li. 2. a.
21. & 22.Error by the
Polycan.

last Chapter. The Cure of corruption or perforation is, first in the forme of dyet, abstaining from milke, green fruit, all hard things, vomiting, and things of euill digestion: wash the mouth and corrupt tooth with Claret wine, wherein hath been boyled a little Tormentill, & Marrubium next, touch the part corrupt with a little Aquavite that is well rectified, strong water or oyle of Vitreoll, Sage, Cloues, Sape, a little Ceston in either of those, and apply to the corrupt or hollowed tooth; beware the causticke oyle touch no other part: if by applying of either of these thinges you profit not, you must vse the actuall Caulter or hote yron, made according to the proportion of the corrupt part; so great personages we make those Cauters of gold or siluer, and applye burning hote, as the other, to the corrupt & hollow part: sometimes the corruption is in the side of the tooth, which by time might be corrupt in that case: you shall file away that which is spoiled, so y^e remanēt shall serue for your vse, the file is v^sed in such teeth as are more eminent than others, also in broken teeth which do hurt the tongue and lips: by vsing of those remedies, the corruption and paine ceaseth, except alwaies the tooth bee so corrupt, that the nerue bee corroded; and if so be, the best way is to plucke out the tooth, like as many now doe but vnskilfully and ignorantly for euery small dolour or grieefe, euer perswading and affirming that to bee the most sure and soueraigne remedie, and oftentimes which is worst, they plucke out one or twoo of the hole teeth and leaue the corrupt, as I haue sometime seen by the vnskillfull handling of that Instrument, which is made with three branches called the Polican:

marke fur fur fur fur Eyes

marke fur fur fur fur Eyes

2 marke fur fur fur fur Eyes

Al ib gibit ear ear ear

Al ib gibit ear ear ear

Al ib gibit ear ear ear

Instruments

burne both

burne both

Instruments to pull out, cutt, and file
superfluous teeth.



Wherby often ensueth such flure of blood, that some haue
dyed, or at least very difficile to be stayed: such ignorants
differ much from the opinion of our auncients, who did so
esteeme of their teeth, that they neuer drew them untill they
were very loose, and almost fallen of themselves. In witnesse
whereof, I haue read that in the Temple of Aollo their
was

Heck Gulola Cernola Cernola
Cernola Cernola

*Mesues de e-
gritud. dent.*

Pa.li. 6 ca. 8.

Cels. l. 7. ca. 12

Alb. l. 2. ca. 33

*The artificiall
tooth.*

was a Turkishe or Dauier to plucke out teath, made of lead, shewing vs that the teath should not bee plucked out till they be very loose and almost wasted: but if the teath be outwardly corrupted, & the nerue corrodeth with extreame paine, & hardly it may be suffered by any; in that case (all other remedies set a part) it must bee remoued after this manner: first scituate the diseased in a conuenient place, in such sort that he may be lower than the Chyrurgion, then separate the flesh from the roote of the tooth so deepe as you may, then Chyrurgion shall with the Turkishe or Dauier gripe the tooth so nere the roote as may be, taking heede neither to gripe ouer hard, nor incline the Dauier too much, least he either breake the tooth, oraine where it is fixed: plucke not with great violence nor at one plucke, least you make dislocation of the mandible, or trouble the eares and temples: if the tooth be hollow or brittle, you shall put a peece of linnen cloth or thin lead betwixt the Dauier and tooth, in so doing you shall preserve the tooth from breaking: such teath as may not be handled with the Turkishe, you must vse a Pusar to thrust it in towards y^e mouth or the polican: the tooth being drawen, you must close the wound with your finger and thombe, then wash it with Dreccate and a little salt: if there be flux of blood, you shall apply a little astringent pouder vpon Cotton and put in the hole, or Cotton that hath bene wet in iuice of Lymonds. It happeneth oftentimes that diuers of the teath are loosed and fallen out, either by strokes, falles, or defluxion of humors from the head, with great deformity, impeding the pronounciation of the speech: for remedie whereof we make artificiall teath of Iuory, Whales bone or hounds teath, which shall be fastened by a wyre or threed of gold, passing the wyre or threed betwixt y^e whole tooth on either side next adiacent, then put the artificiall tooth in the part, then knit the threed fast throughe about the ends of the threed, and cut it so nere as you can; if any portion rest vncut, passe it betwixt the whole tooth, that the tongue or lippes be not hurt by it. I am not mindfull to insist in this practicke as I might, because it is seldome

seldome practised. It happeneth sometimes that two teeth doe spring from one roote, which is a great deformity, and often offends the tongue within, or the lips, sometime one tooth is longer than the rest: for the cure of both, you shall cut them with Tenals incisives made purposely for that use: sometime the teeth doe gnash and grinde by repletion of humors from the head, debility of the nerves which moueth the chafics, by wormes in the stomake, or intestines, or rotten humor in the stomacke, for the which purge the stomacke and head, rubbe the necke behind with the oyle of Aspicke, and Canicmill: the teeth sometime doe tremble, chiefly the incisores which hath but one roote. The Cause proceedeth of ouer great fluxe of humiditie which falleth on the gums, as happeneth sometime to such as doe sweate of the french sickness, in the which the teeth not only trembling, but often fall out: for the remedie whereof, medicaments, astringents, and drying must be used, such as Allom, Putts of Cyprus, rootes of Bistort, red Roses, and such like, of the which you may make a decoction: also water wherein hote Steele hath bene quenched, called Aqua ferrata, rubbe the gums and rootes of the teeth therewith: you may also for this purpose use a little Allom water, or a little salt that hath bene melted in the mouth: these things doe drie vp the humiditie, but you must beware in vsing ouer drie and astringent things, and such as doe breake the teeth, as Putgals, Pomgranats, and other of like quality. Sometime there happeneth a Cupidity in the teeth, which doe proceed of some astringent or sharpe humor, either at the rootes of the teeth ascending from the stomacke: it happeneth also by imagination or apprehension, as when the sicke seeth another eat sower fruit, or any thing that is sower or sharpe tasted: for remedie whereof, keepe warme wine in the mouth with decoction of it, or with milke; eate Almonds, and rub the teeth with kernels of common Putts.

Pa.li.3.ca.26.

*A'phon.fer-
reus Neopoli-
tanus.*

Pa. loco citat.

CHAP. XXXI.

¶ Shewing the way to helpe the mouldy, blacke, hollow, or euill sauoured tooth.

The tooth groweth blacke, mouldy, holloine, and euill sauoured, either by rotten humors fallen from the braines, vapours ascending from the stomacke by receiuing the fume or vapour of quicke-siluer, sleeping with open mouth, or by not cleansing the mouth, tongue, teeth, halfe, and breast; in the morning, by spitting out of that which was collected in the night: For remedy wherof, you shall with a proper instrument of yron, rase and rubbe away such scurfes, mouldiness, and filth which is about the teeth, thereafter wash the mouth and teeth within with wine, wherein hath bene boyled red roses, and Marubium, then dype them well with a cloth; then to make them white, you must vse sharpe drying things which haue a vertue deterstue, for the which I doe vse y^e oile of Vitreol, Sulphure, strong water which the goldsmiths doe vse, wet a little sticke like a Goose quill in either of those liquors, and rubbe the teeth therewith twice or thrice, and they will become white, beware in touching the flesh about the rootes of the teeth, for these liquors doe corode the flesh; this being done, rubbe them with Rose water, the rootes of Aristoloea rotunda, or Alhea: If you like rather other remedies than chemicall oyles, vse either of these following: Take the roote of Aristoloea rotunda, and burne it with a little of Harts-horne, Masticke, Salt, and some hony, wrappe them within Sage leaues, and burne them to ashes, put all in fine powder and rubbe the teeth therewith, otherwise take white Corall, Marble, and burnt Salt, of each 2. drams, Cloues 1. dram, make of these a fine powder to rub the teeth: Or this, take the bone of fish, Harts-horne and Barly flower, of each . drams, Iope, Aueronzie, Aristoloea, of each 2. drams, shelles of Wyfters and egges burnt, of each 1. dram, put these in fine powder, and vse

Cure.

Liquors to
make white
teeth.

*Meſures de e-
gritud. dent.*

Pa. li. 3. ca. 26.

use as the former, or this which I doe ever use; Take white bread, Corall, Harts-horne, of each one dimid. unc. allom, 1. dram. Sage and Roses of each one halfe handfull, Dyfter and Egge-shelles, of each one two handfull: put all in fine powder, and use it for the teeth: or this, Take 2. ounces of the powder made of cannall, cloues, and mace, of each one dim. drag. Calaminth, Aromaticke, corse of Cytron, and yrons of flozens, of each two scruple: incorporate all with fine hony and vineger, and make a past in forme of an opiate to rubbe the teeth morning and evening, then wash the teeth with claret wine, and rubb them with a pece of fine Scarlet that hath bene died in graine, and wet in Vinegar Squiliticke, or this, *Rec. Corallorum rubrorum, Bole Armenici, Thyrrus, Margaritarum, Sanguis Draconis, Corticis Cancrorum, ana pugil. 1. Misce & fiat pulvis.* Or this, *Rec. Corallorum rubrorum, Ossium Dactylorum Pumicis, Ossium cepiasalis vsti; ana, quantum sufficit:* or this which was used by Messilina Augustus, *Messilina Augusti, Messilina Augusti, Rec. Cornuum Cervi gusti, vstorum in ollam novam ad cinerem reductorum, unc. 1. Mastice, unc. 1. Salis Armoniaci, 6. Drach. Fiat Pulvis:* Also this Lauement which comforteth the Braines, fortifieth the teeth, and maketh the mouth smell well; first you shall wash the mouth with vineger, or wine, wherein hath bene boyled Annyseeds and Cloues, then rub the teeth with the leaves of Sage, shell the skins of Citron, and make a subtle powder of cloues, Nutmegs, and iuyce of flozens and rub the teeth: or this, which is most good for comforting the head, making the breath sweet, purgeth the gums, and rootes of the teeth; take Vinegar, Squiliticke, wel water, or fountaine water, dim. English pint, Rose-water, Masticke, Bolaimeni, Dragon blood, and burnt Allom of each dim. ounce, Cynamon, 4. dram. mixe and boile all at one soking fire, a quarter of an houre, adding thereunto 4. ounces of purified hony, make a decoction to rubb and wash the gummies befoze and after meat: the Vinegar

Fumanellus.

Bairus.

Messilina Augusti.

gusta.

Squilliticke is good for the teeth and gums, it hath a mighty vertue to comfort the teeth, and tie the gummes: sometime there happeneth holes in the teeth without paine, and yet vnseemely, being commonly blacke, and filled with filth, which maketh euill smell; for remedy whereof, you shall take burnt Allom, Myrre, and Masticke, of each dimid. drag, incorporate all with white Virgine ware, & fill vp the hole, or corroded part, the which you may take out, or put in at your pleasure. Those be the most common remedies which I haue ordinarily vsed and seene practised, so it may suffice in this place, by reason I am to entreate further in my Booke of the Infantment; besides there bee infinit good remedies set downe for this purpose by Vicerus Rundoletius, Alexis Bairus, Fumanellus, and diuers others, whose helpes the skilfull Chirurgeon may vse.

CHAP. XXXII.

¶ Of the superfluous flesh, which happeneth at the roote of the teeth, called Epaulis, and Paraulis.

Definition.

Pau'us Lib. 6.

cap. 27.

Bacca Lib. 2.

de Consen.

Med.

Cause.

Epaulis is thought by our Ancients to be a tumor, or Excrecence of flesh, that commeth at the rootes of the teeth, chiefly betwene the molares, it doth augment by little and little, and augmenteth sometimes to the bignesse of a hennes egge, accompanied with feuer and colour: the cause proceedeth of a sanguine, cholericke, or a sharpe biting humor, which commeth from the head, also euill rotten vapours ascending from the stomacke, and corrodes the Gums as happeneth after rotten feuers, or euill vlcers in the mouth, chiefly, of such, who haue not bene well cured of the French sicknesse.

Signes.

The Signes are manifest to the sight, accompanied with

with feuer and dolour, as saith Avicenna.

The Judgements, it groweth to such greatnesse, that oftentimes it putteth the teeth out of their owne place, sometimes it possesseth both the iawes in such sort, that the sicke can neyther open nor close his mouth, sometimes it is dolourous, blacke, hard, and skirrous, and in that case you must beware to irritate, or vse causticke remedies, but onely medicaments refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, and mitigatiues of paine, as you haue heard in the Chapter of Schirre.

Judgements.

Paulus Lib. 6.
cap. 27.

The Cure consisteth first in the euacuation of the euil, sharpe and rotten humors, then vse desiccatiues, and discutients, in the which if you profite not, you must apply causticke powders too, to consume the superfluous flesh: If it neither dissolue, nor can be consumed with powders, you shall vse incision: if the excressens be soft and tractable, cut away the most part of it, and consume the rest of it with powders, and produce the cicatrice with such gargaris as you shall heare in the Chapter of Ulcers in the mouth: if it bee very bigge, and may not be taken away at the roote, yee shall knit the excressens with a strong threed, then tye it faster and faster ebery day, untill such time it be cut, and fall away of it selfe. I haue found this Ligature more sure then cutting, neyther so much to be feared, for flux of bloud, or inflammation: that which doth remaine after the fall of the threed, you shall consume with powder of Mercurie, Allom, Vitreol, and such like: If it be residue, as oft happeneth, you shall knit it at the roote as before, and cauterize it with a quall cauter, oyle of vitreoll, water of separation used by the Gold-smithes, and such others of that nature. As touching Paraulis, it is an inflammation in some part of the gummes: for the which you must vse discutients, and if it dissolue not, but cometh to suppuration, it must be opened with diligence, for feare the gumme be corrupt, which if it so happen, touch the corrupt part gently with oyle of Vitreol, or strong wa-

Cure.

Albu. Lib. 2.
cap. 28.

Paraulis.

Aetius serm.
8. cap. 24.

Gal. de compo.
medi. cap. 1.

Avicenna. lib. 8.
ca. 1.

ter. The foame of the opening must be with a Bistozie curb, making the ouerture reasonable bigge, thereafter wash the mouth with Claret wine wherein hath bene sodden Mar- rubium, then stay the flux of blood by such meanes as you haue heard in the Chapter of corrupt Leth, cleansed with honie of Roses, strong wine, and Sartatolla, vse Gargari- fes, Detersiues, and desiccatiues, as you shall heare in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIII.

C Of Pustules and Vlcers in the mouth.

Definition.
Gal 6. Meth.
cap. 4.

Those Pustules and Vlcers which oftentimes possesse the vpper parts of the mouth and gums, are named by the Greekes *Apthe*, and by Avicen *Altolla*, in vulgar the water Canker, and are of a white fierie qualitie, for the most part incident to young Childzen, sometime to those of elder age.

Cause.
Calen loco ci-
tato.
Avicen sexta
tertiū. cap. 23.

They doe proceede either of corruption or acrimonie of the milke which the childe cannot digest; Also by corrupti- on of humors in the Purse. It happeneth to those of elder age, through abundance of vicious corrupt humors which flowe to the mouth; also by the acrimonie and bitternesse of the nourishment which we eat and drinke.

Signes.
Aetius. scrm.
8. cap. 39.
Iudgementes.
Pan. lib. 1.
cap. 10.

The Signes are euident to the sight, and are knowen by the colour. Those which doe proceede of bloud, the colour is red, hote, the part tumified; if it proceede of flegme, the colour is white, with little dolour; if of choller, it is iaw- nish coloured, with some tumor, punction, and heat; if of Melancholie, the colour appeareth blackish which is worst of all: those which bee blacke and scurfie like the crust of bread, it sheweth great corruption and adustion of humors, very dangerous, and for the most part deadly: those which bee red or white, are not malignant: such as are superficiall, are easilie cured, those which penetrate moze profunditye

are

are difficile.

The Cure consisteth in euacuating the euill humors which is the cause, then prescribe a dyet to the Nurse that is colde and humide, to correct the acrimonie of the milke, causing her to vse such things as the child cannot take, which shall be done by the aduice of the skilfull Physitian, rub the childes mouth with iuice of Letice : If those Vlcers bee very humide, take Myrthe, Put-gals, the barke of Incense, bzuise all well together with a little redde Roses, and annoynt those Vlcers ; or else wash them with Wine, and a little powder of Galls, barke of Granads, and a little Allom : If the Vlcers bee white, take Myrthe and Saffron, of each 1. drag. white Succorie 2. drag. beate all and apply on the Vlcers : If the Vlcers be blacke, touch them with a little Rose water, wherein hath been dissolved a little Eye Copris, called *Calcanthum* : for these vlcers I doe commonlie vse a labement which is made of Sage, Asop, woodbine, Pimpernell, *Bursapastoris*, and Wyer leaues of each halfe a handfull, boyle all in running water, adding thereto honie of Roses, and boyle it till halfe be consumed, putting thereto a little Diameron, wash and rub the childes mouth twice or thrice a day therewith. I do also vse sometime for this purpose Plantine water, sirupe of Roses, with a little Romaine Vitreoll, and annoynt the vlcers gently therewith, with a small Linnen cloth, or a piece of Scarlet, twice or thrice a day, with such other remedies as you shall heare in my Booke of Young Children.

As for the cure of those in elder age, after purgation be used according to the humor which demanes, you must let blood in the cephalicke vaine, those of the tongue and vnder the lippes, Mentosies on the shoulders, and Gargarises, such as this, take an handfull of Barbarie, Plantine, *Bursapastoris*, Roses, Violet, Chesbow, of each a certain quantitie, boyle all in water till the halfe be consumed, ad to it honie of roses, or sirupe of roses, with a little allom. If there be putrefaction, ad a little *Calcanthum*, or *Egiptiacke* ; otherwise, vse

Cure.

Leonel. Faven.
de medendis
morbis.Mesues de
aegritudinibus
Oris.

Cure.

Use this, take decoction of Barly, Pimpernell, Plantane, Agrimonie, or Roses, of each foure ounces, make a decoction, in the which you shall dissolue honie of Roses, and Diameron, of each halfe an vnc. wash the Mouth and Ulcers therewith : the Ulcers then being so cleansed, wash them with stilled water, Plantane, or some Rose water, and Alom mingled together, with those wash the Mouth twice or thrice a day, by which meanes they will ciccatrice and heale.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the diseases and passions which befall
the Tongue.

Definition.

Constantine.

Gal. li. ii. de
usu partium.

Glē. 4. de sum.

The Tongue, which is celled by the Grækes *Glotta*, in Latine *Lingua*, is the instrument of speaking and tasting, as saith Constantine. It is composed of an hollow and spongiuous flesh, to the end the saour and smell may passe and come the easier to the nerues which make the taste. It hath diuers nerues for feeling and mouing with diuers vains & artiers full of bloud, for which it is red coloured, and serueth for diuers uses ; as also subiect to diuers passions, as Tumors, inflammation, vlcers, Aposthumes, Purities, difficultie of speech, called *Difficultas loquendi* by the Latines, and by the Grækes *Mogilalos*, lispig in speech called by the Latines *Blesitas*, and by the Grækes *Tranlotis*, which is when one cannot pronounce certaine letters in speaking, as K. and T. Panting, called by the Latines *Balbuties*, and by the Grækes *Psellos* ; which is, when one cannot pronounce the wordes except they omitte some syllables. *Hesitantia lingua* called *Issenophania* in Græke, is when one cannot conioyne and assemble the wordes together : as for *Ranula*, you shall heare in the next Chapter; Ulcers you haue heard ; as for the Cure of the rest you shall heare in the Treatise entituled The poore mans guide Here I am onely mindfull to speake of those two which are most common

common and difficile to be suffered, to wit the retraction or shortning of the tongue called the *Phylis*, and the tumor or excrescence vnder the roote of the tongue called *Ranunculus*. The retraction or tying of the tongue called by the Latines *Ligatio* or *Abbreniatio linguae*, and by the Graekes *Anygloglosson*, is when the ligament membranous of the tongue is shorter then it should be, either impeding the speech or pronunciation; the which happeneth by nature or by accident. By nature as we see in young children; by accident as happeneth in woundes, blcers, or hard Cicatrices, in those parts: that which happeneth by nature diuers learned men haue diuerslye practised for the helpe thereof; amongst the which Avicen is of opinion to passe the needle and a strong thread vnder the sinowe or ligatour membranous or hard cicatrice, then tye it harder euery day till it fall off it selfe, as you haue heard in the Chapter of *Paraulis*. Langfrancus counselleth to cauterize it with an actuall cauter, which opinion hath been followed by some. Although I doe not approve it, but haue euer followed the opinion of Albucasis, which is first to situate the child commodiously, then cause one to holde open his mouth, lifting vp his Tongue with the finger of your left hand, then cause one to holde his finger by the other side or roote of the Tongue, so you shall see perfectlie the ligament, then with your Bistozie, or sharpe Sissors make you incision ouerthwart the ligament membranous, in such sort that the tongue bee made free to moue voluntarilie, then rub it gentlie with a little Rose water euery day twice or thrice as shall bee expedient, passe your finger softlye vpon the wound with a little hony or sirupe of drie Roses, that it growe not together againe: if your retraction procede of cicatrice, make your incision more large and consume the hardnesse of the cicatrice, then hold a roll of fine small cloath fast in y wound for certain days, y which may be wet in hony or sirupe of Rose, y it do not consolidate ouer soone; if there happen flux of blood as I haue often seene, you shall vse such remedies as is set downe in the Chap. of corrupt Teeth.

Paul. lib. 6.

cap. 29.

Cels. li. 7. ca. 12

Avicen.

Langfrancus.

Alb. li. 2. c. 24.

Alb. li. 2. c. 24.

Chap.

CHAP. XXXV-

¶ Of the tumor vnder the tongue, called
Batrachus in Greeke, and *Ranunculus*
 in Latine.

Definition.
Paulus Lib. 3.
cap. 26.
Albu. lib. 2.
cap. 35.
Aetius serm.
8. cap. 37.
Avicen.
 Cause.

Paulus Lib. 3.
Ibid.
Avicen. tertia.
terti. cap. 17.
 Signes.
Avicen loco
citato.

Judgements.

Albi loco
citato.
Brutus lib. 2.
cap. 2.
Rasis de morb.
parti. lib. 2.
cap. 27.
Tract. 6. de
decora.
Avicen sexta
terti. cap. 18.
Aetius loco
citato.

Ranunculus is a tumor on the vaines vnder the tong,
 or an excrescens of flesh which impedeth the natu-
 rall operation of the speech: it groweth sometime to such
 bignesse, that you would thinke it an other tongue, it hap-
 neth to young Childzen, as also to those of elder age, in
 such sort, that the voyce sometime intercepteth. The
 Cause of those tumors is a slimie pituitous, and viscos
 humor, descending from the head: sometime it is no humor,
 but excrescens of flesh, caused as other excrescences in o-
 ther parts, the humor is for the most inuolued in a bagge,
 or Chest like *Atheorema*, the which is both in colour and
 consistence like the white of an egge.

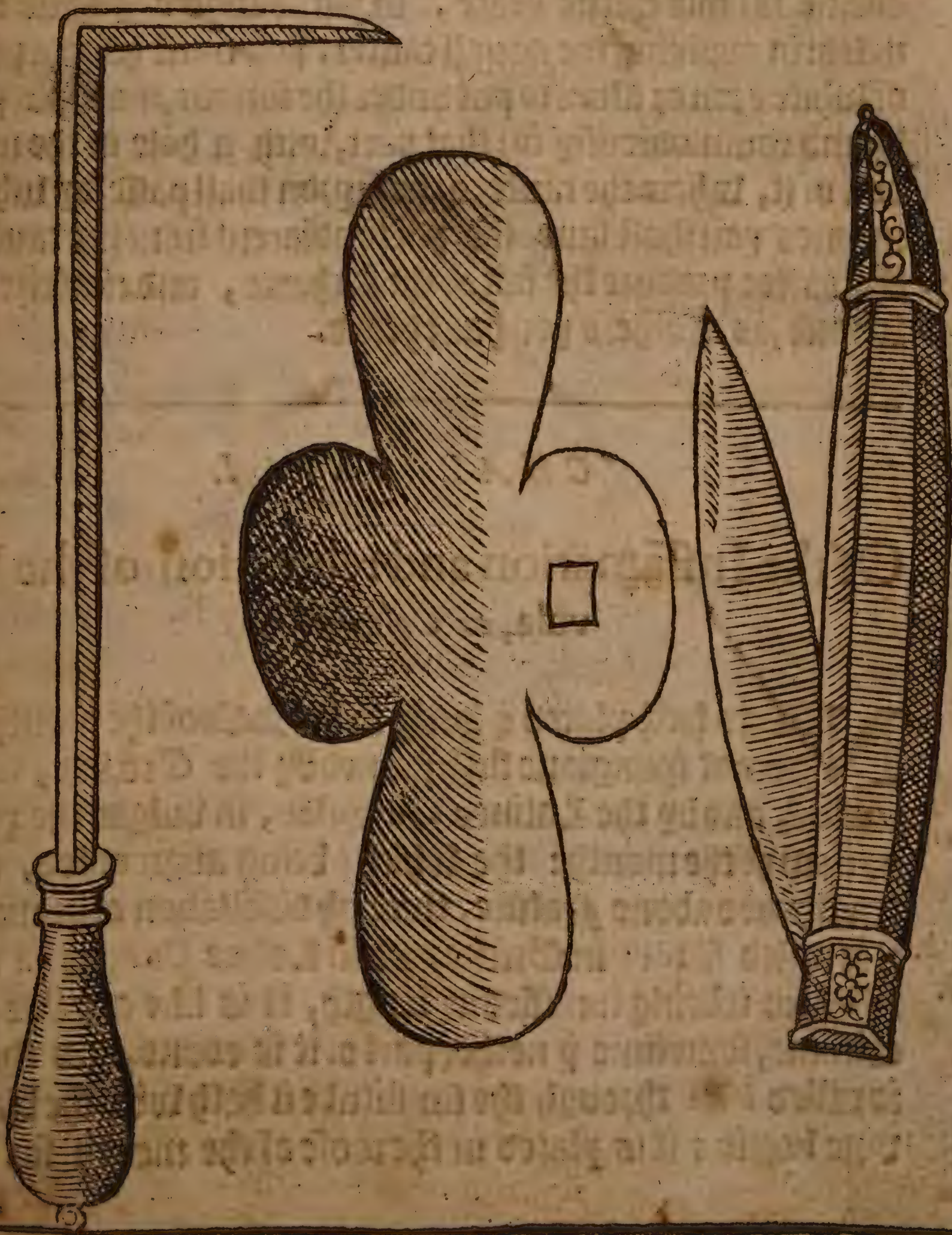
The Signes are euident, and for the most part it is both
 in colour and figure like vnto a frogge, called *Rana*, whercof
 it taketh the name: it is accompanied with great tumor,
 chiefly of the Veynes vnder the tongue.

The Judgements, it is sometimes so big, that the mouth
 cannot containe it with the tongue, in such sort, that if hasty
 remedy be not had, the sicke doth suffocate, and sometime in
 opening of it, the sicke becommeth mad: if it be blacke, brow-
 nish, hard, and insensible, touch it not, for it is cancerous.

The Cure, first consisteth in purging the head, and if it hap-
 pen in yong Childzen, you must first assay Garganhs resola-
 tiues, incisives, and stiptickes, like as of *Origanum* bathe
 of the *Granad dragagant*, as vltim, and such like, also rub
 it long with *Sal Armoniac* and *Galls*, or *Sal Armoniac*,
Florus aris, with *Dragagant*: if by these meanes you
 profite not, you must come to the manuell operation,
 which

which is thus done, first place the sicke commodiously, then cause one to stand behind him, and one of his handes vpon his fore-head the other on his chin to hold it downe, & open the mouth, then the Chirurgion shall open the veines vnder the tongue with a launce, next open the tumor, eyther by bistorie, or cauteractuall. And

*Instruments to cauterize and open
the ranula vnder the tongue.*



*Ætius c. m. 38
cap. 37.*

*Alphon. fer-
reus Neopoli-
tanus li. delig-
no sancto.*

And euacuate the humoꝝ by degrees: next rubbe gently the soꝛe with vinegar and hony, oꝛ wine and hony, cleanse it with gargarises made of decoction of Barlie, Roses, Plantaine, and hony, oꝛ sirroppe of roses, as affeires: if any thing remaine eyther of humoꝝ oꝛ bagge, you shall consume it with Sal Amoniacke, Flos æris, and other Coꝛasives: sometimes the tumoꝝ is so malignant, that oftentimes we are constrained to apply actual cauters, oꝛ tents, and plumations, what in oyle of viticol, oꝛ coꝛrecting the malignity, and unpasing it to be residue, as sometime happeneth, yet not often, because the disease is not common. I haue seene of this disease foꝛ this thirtie yeare, in parts where I haue traueled: in applying the actual cauter, you must haue a peece of white yꝛon oꝛ siluer to put vnder the tongue, made purposely and commodiously foꝛ that part, with a hole in the midst of it, where the cauter oꝛ hote yꝛon shall passe, by which meanes you shall saue the parts adiacent from the cauter, thereafter produce the fall of the Scharre, and cicatrize the wound, as in others you haue heard.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Inflammation and relaxation of the *Vvula*, or *Columella*.

*Ga. 6. de comp.
med. per locos
cap 3.*

*Rundo. meth.
curan. morbo.*

Nature hath placed a hung in the rooſe of the mouth, a peece of ſpongiouſ ſleſh named by the Greekes, Gargarion, and by the Latines Gurguleo, in vulgar the pape oꝛ chap of the mouth: the which being augmented, and lengthened aboue nature, through diſtillation of humoꝝs, it is called Schion in Greeke, and in Latine *Columella* and *Vua*, foꝛ it being tumified in length, it is like a pillar, oꝛ collume, ſometime y nether part of it is round, and then it is called *Vua* through the ſimilitude it hath with the blacke vine berrie: it is placed in the rooſe of the mouth foꝛ di-
vers

uers reasons: First, it helpeth to pronounce the sound, and to speake cleare by diuiding of the aire which commeth from the lights, for the which it is called *Plectrum vocis*: Also that the Aire which commeth by the Mouth and Nose, entrencheth not in the lights by the *Trahe-artier* till the coldness of it be corrected, so that the lights be not offended by colde. Such as want the pappe or pellet, hath ordinarie deformitie in speech with refrigeration of the loines: it doth impash that nether dust nor rhume enter in the trache arteir with the ayre.

Brunus lib.7.

The Cause is either externall or internall: The Internall are hote humors which come from the head and cause inflammation, also vapours ascending from the stomacke, as happeneth in rotten feauers, also aboundance of blood. The Cause Externe, drinking of strong wine, eating and drinking of bitter and sharpe meats colde, hallic exercise eating and drinking at vnaccustomed times.

Cause.

Aetius serm.8. cap.40.

The Signes are euident to the sight, by pressing downe of the tongue, accompanied with dolour, feauer, difficultie to swallowe the meate. The sicke thinketh euer to haue something in his mouth readie to goe ouer with great hast by the continuall distilling of the humor, impassing to sleepe but with open mouth; Sometime it hangeth so long that it falleth on the tongue, and so grieueth the sicke, that sometime he is constrained to put his finger in his mouth to helpe the ouer-going of the meate, as saith *Avicen*.

Signes.

Aetius serm.8. cap.45. Ga.6.de comp. med. cap.3.

The Judgements, sometime it groweth to such bignesse that it filleth the throat, and causeth the sicke to suffocate, if it be not quicklie cut: If it be altogether cut or fall away, the sicke altogether waxeth sicke, or else speaketh so that he may not be vnderstood, and that drinke which he taketh, doth for the most part auoide at the Nose, as I haue often scene. It happened to me at Paris to haue a Chanon of Saint Anton who had a certaine disease in his mouth, by the which he lost the pellet of his mouth, whereby he became dum, and y^e drinke which he euer dranke, he did auoide the

Judgements.

Hippo. in his Prelages.

T. a. lib. 12.

the most part of it at his Nose. Such as haue the pappe or pellet great, long, and tumified, haue their voice so broken, that hardlie can they be understood or at the least doe speake through their Nose. That which is blacke, brownish, insensible, and dolorous, may not be touched, for either they become carlanomatous, or great flux of blood ensueth, so in that case it shall be best to applie remedies that haue the vertues to refresh and comfort the part, and pacifie the paine.

Cure.

Ro. li. 1. 1. 27.

The Cure consisteth in purgations and Glisters, bleeding of the cephalike vaines, armes and vaines vnder the tong, ventosing in the necke & shoulders, with scarrification, frictions, gargarises, deterfines, refrigeratiues, astringents with good diet, tending to colde and drie, vsing meates of good digestion, abstaining from all strong drinke, washing of often the mouth with this gargarse made of Plantane, Barlie, Burs. Pastoris the barke of Pomgranet, sixth all in water and adde thereto a little sirupe of Roses, of Violets, with some Gumme of Dragagant, and Sarcacoll; otherwise you may onelie vse to wash the mouth with Plantane, rose, Rose water, and a little Vinegar, hold a little of it in your mouth a prettie space; Allom water is also good for this purpose: Or this powder made of Allom Balust, Terra Sigillua, red Roses, and Sugar, make all in fine powder, and put in a little Instrument formed like a Spone, put it in your mouth in such sort that the pap dip in it and receaue the powder. After the same forme you may take braied Pepper and Salt mixt together. Also Salt dried, and put in a little pocket hote to the hole of the necke, some vse hote bread to put in the hole of the necke.

Rundollet. de
morb. c. ran.

Cel. l. 6 ca. 14

Lo icorius de
expl. morb.

Celsus counselleth to take a powder made of Allom, Squammæ eris, Gall, Myrthe, mixed with a little sad Claret wine and applie to it: sometime being tumified, it tendeth to suppuration; if so, it must be opened with a Lancet, and cure it with Gargarises, as other Ulcers in the mouth: If by neither of these remedies the griefe both diminish and goe away, you must hazard either cutting, knitting,

ting or coarctates to consume it, otherwise the sicke doth oftentimes putrefie and die. The best remedie that I haue found in this, is, first to place the sicke in some light part, open his mouth and hold downe his tongue with a *Speculum oris*, thereafter cut a little of it with sharpe sheares, then wash the mouth with *Decoctate* or some astringent water mixed with sad Claret wine, and some astringent powder: if there be flux of blood, stay it by some causticke powder. Some for this purpose doe vse the ligatour as you haue heard in the chapter of Epaulis, the which is sometime dangerous for great flux of blood: others do approve actuall cauters which sometimes I haue seene used in the great Hospitall of Paris, called Our Ladies Hospital, but with very euill successe; so by my aduise assay it not, in case thereby you incurre rather paine, than profit. I haue sometimes cauterized the *Vvula* with a little oyle of *Vitreoll*, strong water, or *Cauter* potentiall, put either of these in a little instrument, and let the end of pellet or *Vvula* trampe in it: so that which is superfluous shall consume and fall away, then wash your mouth with warme wine or *deccrate*, and vse *Gargarises*, as is before mencioned.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 37
Langfrancus.
Ce. f. li. 7. ca. 12

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the tumor or Aposthume of the Amig-
dals, called by the Greeks *PARISCHYMIA*,
and by the Latines *TONSILLAE*.

Nature hath placed in the two sides of the *Vvula*, some-
what behinde, two little glands which are spungious,
one on euery side to the greatnesse of an Almond, for the
which they are called Amigdals: their office is, to receaue
the humidite which distilled from the braines to the effect,
the parts of the mouth may be humected and refreshed: as
also the frahe artier and tongue, in such sort that the tongue
in speaking be not ouer drie, and empash the pronounciation.

Gal. 3. simpt.
causis cap. 4. &
2. de usu part.
& apho. 26.
lib. 3.

Cause.

Ro. li. 2. ca. 15
Ga 6. de comp.
med. per locos
cap. 3.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Auic. nona
tertij cap. 15.
Alb. li. 2. ca. 36

Cure.

Ælius serm. 8
ca. 45.

Ron. meth.
cu. and. morb.
Ce's. li. 6. ca. 10

Pa. li. 6. ca. 30
Hip. pro. 3. ca.
6. text. 13.

Mesues de a-
gritud. guttur.

Ron. de curan.
morb.

The Cause, is great aboundance of viscus sharpe humiditie which cometh from the head, also drinke of strong and fume drinke, walking abroad morning and evening when the deaw falleth, great aboundance of blood: it happeneth sometimes to Children through the bitterness of milke.

The Signes, are evident to the sight, in pressing downe of the tongue. The Iudgements, are dolour, feauer, accompanied with such inflammation, that sometimes it stoppeth the passages of the meate and drinke, as also the respiration: so that the sicke can neither let ouer the meate, nor respire, but doth suffocate if hastie remedie bee not had, as saith Albucasis.

The Cure, consisteth in good dyet, eating little, and of good digestion, abstaine from all strong drinke, vse Glisters, bleeding the arme and vaines, vnder the tongue, ventosies, frictions, on the neck and shoulders, gargarises, refrigeratiues, and desiccatiues: If it aposthumiates as often happeneth, it must be opened with a Lancet, if the tumor doth so augment that the sicke bee in danger to suffocate, you shall make incision in the frahe artier, after this forme; laye the sicke on his backe, thereafter lift vp the skinned of the frahe artier with thy hand, and cut it in length till the membrane be discovered, then make you incision with a bistorie in the sayd place, thereafter put in an hollow tent of siluer, gold, or lead, with a broad head well tight, that it goe not to the lyghts: after the danger of suffocation be past, vse sirupes of honie and Roses to cleanse the wound, take out the tent and conglutinate the wound, and in all this time vse externall medicaments about the necke made of Barly flower, Lin-seede, and Fenegreke, with such other thinges meete, according to the degree of the maladie: In this case I do often vse this remedie, which hath the vertue to close the lost parts, & dry vp the humor pituitous which is fallen on the part, and hath the vertue to soften the glands internes, and is thus made, Rec. Niaci hirundinis unc. 3. pulueris nu-

guma

cum cupressi unc. 1. Rosarum unc. 1. semi. accipiantur cum oximellate fiat cataplasma. This incision is very dangerous not being rightlie done, by reason of the fluxe of bloud, which often happeneth: Likewise for the nerves which passeth that way. I cured an Apothecarie in Paris after this manner: Some doe vse to knit these glandes, as you have heard in the chapter of *Epaulis*: others do consume them by actual cauters, others pull them away by Crosetts and other instruments, either all whole or by peices, which from *Albucasis* alleadged to haue done to an old man, who had almost suffocated, but of the event of the cure hee maketh no mention: Sometime the tumor is malignant, which shall be known by the hardnesse, liuiditie, dolour, inequality, greatnesse at the roote, of the nature of *Cancer*, which must not be touched, but vse remedies palliatiues, as you have heard in the chapter of *Cancer*.

Tralli. fol. 177

Pa. li. 6. ca. 37.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 36

Signes.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the tumor in the throat called by the Greekes *SYNANCHIE*, and by the Latines *ANGINA*, or *STRANGVLATIO*.

There chaunceth in the throat many grievous sicknesses, but here onely I mind to speake of that which is most dangerous, called *Angina*, which is an aposthume or inflammation of the interior muscles of the throat, where of there are foure kinds. The first, is great inflammation in the throat. The second, is an humor contained behinde y^e Amigdals, which sometime do hinder the swallowing of y^e meat, and oftentimes both suffocate the sicke. The third, is great tumor and inflammation towards the chinne, both externally and internally. The fourth kind is, when the vertebries of the necke goeth out of their owne place, whereupon the tongue remoues from the proper scituation with great difficulty to breathing. The Cause of it, is either

Definition.

Hip. prog. &

comp. 34.

Pau. li. 3. ca. 27

Rol. li. 3. ca. 15

Difference,

Gordon. part.

4. cap. 1.

Ætius ferm. 8

cap. 47.

Trall. an. li. 4.

cap. 1.

Gal. aph. 4 cō.

34. & li. 2. cap.

sect. 1.

Cause.

P

Galen. li. 3. ca. 27 cold ayre, vsage of colde drinke, with aboundance of colde
3 al. aph. 4. co. weake humors and vapours, not onely of all the whole bo-
45. Mesues de dy, but of the head and parts nære to it. The Signes, are
grit. gutt. difficulty of breathing, feuer, heate, inflammation, and do-
Signes lour in the throat. The Judgements are these, if it come
Judgements. suddainly through a feuer, without any outward appea-
Hyppo. presag. rance in the necke, it is mortall. This happeneth sildome
Pau. li. 6. ca. 4. to young children, except when the vertebres of the necke
4. de morb. a- goe out of their place, and then they receaue no cure. The
cutis text. 30. Cure consisteth in Generall and Particular remedies. The
Auen. nona Generall, shall be in good forme of life in the six vnnaturall
tertij cap. 9, things, eate and sleepe little, and drinke onely Tysan, vse
Gal. 3. predict. oft Blisters, and purgations, pilles, blæd in the vaine Ce-
com. 16. phalicke in both the armes, as also those vnder the tongue.
Cure. The Particular remedies are frictions, ventosies, with
Mesues de a- scarrification on the Shoulders, with application of hote
grit. gutt. bread on the necke to diuert the humor, with this linement
Ro. li. 2. ca. 15 (to rub on the necke) made of vnguent refrigerant *Galen.*
Ro. li. 1. ca. 15 oyle of Cammomill, Violets, and Lillies, with a little hens
Trallianus ib. grease, thereafter applie shepes wolle as it comes from the
Hip. 4. de vic- shepe. Gargarize the mouth with Plantaine water, Wine-
tu in mor. au. gar, and Whey; or with this which followeth made of
Pau. loc. citat. Barlie, Pimpernell, Caruell, of each a little, seeth all toge-
Gaal. bruet. ther, and after the ebullition put to Diamoron, and honie of
praxis medi, Roses. *Alexis* alleaged to haue cured it onely in three
 houres, by applying one pound of *Aqua scabiosa*, with an
 vnc. of *Aqua vna* mixed together. *Paulus* and *Mesues*
 haue ordained diuers remedies for this purpose: also this
 gargarisme is good. *Rec. Aqua solani, Plantaginis, capri*
Pau. ibid. *folis, an. lib. semi. Diameron vnc. 3. fiat gargarise.* If the
Ron. de meth. tumor turne to suppuration, vse this gargarisme, take the
grand. morb. roottes of Mallores, Altea, Sorrell, and Lint-seede, of
 each one a little, boyled all in Colwes milke, putting thereto
 a little of the mullages of Psilion, which you shall hold a
 certaine space in your mouth warme. The matter then
 being come to maturitie, open it with a Launcet, then vse
 this

Pau. ibid.
Ron. de meth.
grand. morb.

Auen. noua
tertij cap. 10.

This cleansing gargilline made of decoction of Barley, honey, and sirupe of Roses, for a certaine space, holding it al-
 wayes warme in your mouth: it beinge cleansed, you shall
 adde to the foresayd decoction a little Allom, Balust, and
 Myrthe: thereafter siccatize the wound, remembryng all
 this time to keepe good dyet, abstaine from women, and
 take good heede the matter take not course to the loynes,
 which is most dangerous. If it happen at any time that
 either a little bone, or any otherlike thing fall in the throat,
 you shall hold your mouth close together, and plucke by
 cold water at the nose, till such tyme it aboide at the mouth.
 By this remedie I haue seen sundry helped, who haue been
 troubled chiefly with fish bones: and further he may take
 aduice with *Albucas. lib. 2. cap. 38* & *Paul. li. 6. cap. 32.*

*Antoni. musa
cap. de finant.*

Cels. li. 1. ca. 4.

*Jubertus de
pilorum aff.*

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the tumor in the Necke, called by the La-
 tines STRUMA or SCROPHVLAE.

Struma is an inflammation of blood and pituite in the
 soft and glandulous parts, as vnder the iawes, armes,
 at the rootes of the thighes, and in the paps. It is engende-
 red of a rotten thicke matter, and congealed blood. The
 Cause, is falles, strokes, or humors pituitous, mixed with
 melancholie: also drinking of euill waters, whereof I saw
 many infected at the siege of Paris: also by retention of ex-
 crements of the braines, which should auoide by the mouth,
 nose, eares, and eyes. This disease often happeneth to
 young children, through their great gulositie and raritie of
 the skinne, for the which some call them Scrophule, by the
 similitude of a greedy beast, called Scrofa. The Signes are
 apparant to the sight: they are sometime few in number,
 otherwhiles many, and are covered with a membrane like
 Atheorema and Streotema. The Iudgements, those which
 are superficiall, mobile, and few in number, may resolu-
 e.

Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 35.

Or li. 4. ca. 33.

Rol. li. 2. ca. 12.

Gal. 14. meth.

Cels. li. 5. ca. 28.

Cause.

Vigora. de tu-

mor. pituito.

Theodori. li. 2.

Gordon. part.

1. cap. 85.

Arnald lib. 2.

breviarij ca. 3.

Signes.

Apho. deligno

sancto lib. 2.

Iudgements.

Barta Pallia. such are stable, hard, and maligne, doe not resolue, or hardly receaue any cure : such as are great and nere the trache artier, are difficult in opening, by reason of the nerues occurrents, which being cut, the sicke either waxeth dumbe or becommeth hoarse like one that hath the cold : they are also difficile, being accompanied within vaines, for feare of flux of blood.

Cure.

*Scribonius
Largus de
compo. medi.
Adams Lonic
cerius de expl.
morb.*

wort

Avicen.

Colwort

Brunus.

Theodoric.

Rundo. de cu

rand. morb.

Scribon. Lar

gus de compo.

medica.

Ab. li. 2. ca. 42

The Cure consisteth in remedies vniuersals, and particulars, as in good regiment eate little and of light digestion, abstaine from such thinges as engender grosse humors, purge often, bleede in both thy armes, and haunt drye places, the drinke shall be composed after this forme. Take *Scrophularia* 3. parts, *Scolopendula* 2. parts, *Pilosella* and *Brassica*, of each a little : the rootes of *Keddith* and *Aristolochia* a little, seeth them all in white wine, with a little honey, till it be halfe consumed, of this you shall vse 2. ounces in the morning, euery two dayes once. I haue vsed to diuers a decoction laxatiue the space of 15. or 20. dayes : otherwise my confection set downe in the Poore mans Guide, whercof I found great helpe. The particular remedies are to annoynt the part with a little salt butter, froyed in a pan with a little Vinegar till it grow blacke : some vse the plaster of *Ugo* with *Mercurie*. *Brunus* and *Theodoricus* approue much a plaster made of *Ammoniacke*, and *Bdelium* resolued in vineger. *Lebot* commendeth *Diatsealum*, *Magistrale*, and *Divinum*, mixed with quadruple mercurie. I commonly vse that cataplasme set downe in the Chapter of *Parischimia*. If it tend to suppuration you shall vse this, take the leaues and rootes of *Mallowses*, *Lillies*, *Keddith*, *Turmericke*, *Agrosus*, of each 2. ounces, leaues of *Camo* mill one handfull, and make a decoction, whereunto you shall adde the flower of *Beanes*, *Lynt-seede*, and *Jeni* greke an ounce, *Swines* grease that is fresh a pound, make a cataplasme, adde vnto it a little oyle of *Trin*, and *Lillies*. This remedie hath the vertue both to digest and ripen: when it is opened, cure it as you haue heard in others. Some

Some old and new Practitioners in the cure of this, doe cut away all the glandes, taking heed of the nerves recurrents, which serve to the voice. Sometime children having scabs in their heads, the braines humide by wrong lying and taking cold in the night, have the glandes tumified. For remedye whereof, apply oyle of Camomill, Ani-seeds, and sweet Almonds, with a little Bees grease and butter. If the tumor be hote, adde to it oyle of Roses, and Violets: also rubbe it with fasting spittle till it grow hote. This disease is called the Kings Evil, which is alleadged by Frenchmen to be cured by their King after this forme; the diseased first is viewed by the Chyrurgions, who findes it to bee the kernels or Kings Evil, then the diseased is set on his knees, and presented to the King, who maketh a crosse on his forehead with his hand, saying, *Le roy te touche, Dieu te garrie*, which is to say, the King doth touch thee, God make thee whole.

Ro. li. 2. ca. 12

Kings Evil.

CHAP. XL.

Of the tumor in the necke or cragge, called
BRVNCOCELLI, or HERNIA GUTTURIS.

This tumor, which the Greeks call *Bruncon* and the Latines *Hernia gutturis*, and the Arabians *Botium*, is round and great, ingendered of the humor phlegmaticque, betwixt the trachea arter and the skinn: Sometime it occupieth the most part of the crag, of the which there are divers kinds according to the matter contained therein, sometime like *Atheorema*, otherwiles like *Aneufisma*.

Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 33.

Ro. li. 2. ca. 14

Lonicarius de

morb. exph.

Ro. li. 2. ca. 14.

The Cause is not different from these that it is like unto, yet some are externall, and some internall, proceeding of a cold & humide ayre, drinking of euill water, as those who dwell in *Pimount* and about the *Alpes* are much subiect, because the most part of their drinke is melted snow: it happeneth also by the retention of monethlie courses in women, and Hemorrhoides in men, with great repletion of the melancholique

Cause.

Chelmeus

ench. Chr.

Arnold lib. 2.

b. en. ar. j. ca. 4.

Signes, lantholique humoz in both seres. The Signes are most evident to the sight.

Judgements. The Judgements, those that come by nature are incurable, and those which are like unto *Aneufrisma* must not be touched, such as are very great accompanied with great paines, are very dangerous, and in no wise to be touched, those which be tractable must be opened by cauter or lancet, eschewing alwaies the paines.

Cure. The Cure is, first to corroborate the head with powder cephaliques, thereafter apply unto the soze a cake of leade rubbed with quicke silver, or the emplaster *de vigo* with Mercurie, rubbe it with thy hand till it grow red, before the application of the plaster, and vse such things as do prouoke spitting, for the which it shall be expedient to vse fiue or sixe graines of my Arabiske powder, holde thy bellie loose and keepe good dyet, bleed in both the armes, if the maladie in temperature of the person require. That kind of it which is like unto *Atheorema*, may be cured as you haue heard in that Chapter. As for the other kindes of it, if that auaille not, you shall haue recourse to my Booke of the disease of Women, by reason oftentimes it happeneth to them in time of their trauailing, by stopping of them to crye in the time of their extreame paine, the which Booke God willing shortly shall come to light.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the tumor called *Aneufrisma*.

Definition.

Gal. lib. 1. m. praternatur.

Cause

Pa. li. 5. ca. 37

Aneufrisma is a tumor soft to touch, the which is engendered of blood and spirit vnder the skin and muscles, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, chiefly in the sides of the crag. The Cause is either dilatation, incision, or ruption of the artier, which often chaunceth to Women in the time of their birth, to Trumpeters, Cryers, Watermen, and others, who vse violent labour, and great crying,

or other violence, by the which ſome of the artier doth dilate. The Signes, are tumoꝝ, impꝛeſſing on with the finger, Signes. great pulſation. The tumoꝝ is of the ſame colour as the Adam. Loni. reſt of the ſkinne, ſoft to touch, yielding to the finger, by de expl. morb. reaſon the bloud and ſpirit retyꝛeth vnto the artiers and parts adiacent, and hauing remoued the finger, it preſently returneth with a noiſe or hꝛuite, by reaſon of the bloud and ſpirit that returneth.

This happeneth when the *Aneufriſme* is done by an aſto- Gal. lib. tumor mies, that is, the artier be opened and cut : When the ar- preter natur. tier is riuen, as happeneth to women, and thoſe of great ex- cap. xi. erciſe, there iſſueth foꝛth moꝛe abundance of bloud then ſpi- rite, and is moꝛe hard then the other, and maketh leſſe noiſe in the retyꝛing.

Thoſe which are ſuperficiall in the exterior parts, as the Iudgements. head, legs, and armes, may be knit, and are curable : thoſe which are profound and interior, in the bꝛeaſt, as often hap- peneth to thoſe who ſweat exceſſiuely of the venetian ſick- neſſe, and otherwiſe: alſo thoſe in the necke vnder the armes and rootes of the thighes, and when there is great dilataion of the artiers, are not curable, but death enſueth within few dayes, or at the leaſt are very perillous, as ſaith *Paulus*: and Paul. li. 6. 4. 37 if the tumoꝝ be opened, the patient dyeth preſently.

This happeneth oftentimes by the unſkilfulneſſe of igno- rant Barboꝛs and other abuſers, who meddle with this art, who ruine a number of people through their igno- rance, as I haue often ſcene: ſuch ignorant doe eſtimate all tumoꝝ that are ſoft, ſhould bee opened as common *Sphe- rthames*.

I remember in Paris in Anno 1590. there happened ſuch a diſeaſe to a valiaunt Captaine (my great friend Captaine Iayle, who was one of the chiefeſt Captaines amongst the Spaniards at Paris) on the right ſide of his cragge, foꝛ the which, I a Chyrurgion Maioꝛ to the regi- ment, was ſent foꝛ, and found it to bee an *Aneufriſme*, ſo not to bee touched; of the which opinion was my good friend

Adrew Scot, friend Andrew Scot, who was a great Practitioner at Paris for y^e time, and wel exercised in the art of Chyrurgery, we did ordeine remedies to let the encrease of it, which receipt being sent to the Apothecary, who before had seene the sayd Captaine, did thinke it no meete medicine for an Aposthume (as he feared it:) so presently he sent for an ignorant Barber like unto himselfe, who did sweare unto the Captaine that they had salves and charmes for all sores, so without further tryall did open it with a Launcet to auide the matter (as they thought) which being done, the spirit and blood came forth with such violence, that the Captaine dyed in fewe houers after. I doubt not but in these Countries diuers such errors are committed by ignorants.

Remedies for the Aneufrisma: that is, first to draw blood in both the armes, then apply on the tumor cerat Galen or de bullo, or this, *Rec. Pulveris subtilissimi, boli armenici, sanguis draconis, myrtillorum, lapidis calaminaris in aceto extincti, absinthii, an. vnc. i cum cerato refrigerantis Galeni quantum sufficit, fiat unguentum.*

For the same purpose I vse a cake of Leade rubbed with quicke siluer. These things doe let the growing for a time, although it be neare the noble parts. If it happen in the extremities of the legs or armes, they may liue a long time by the vse of the foresayd remedies. I knew a woman in Paris, who had a very great one in her thigh, and did liue few yeares. If it be little and superficiall, I find nothing better then cataplasmes made of Claret wine, with croppes and leaues of Cyprus. When the artier had bene opened in the place of the baine, as sometime happeneth, I doe knit it after this forme; first makes incision in the skin long-ways, then discovers the artier, then passeth a Curbit needle with a double thread vnder the sayd artier, two yntches about the incision or ruption thereof, then knits it with a double knot, beydes away the blood contained, so cures the wound.

Error committed by ignorants.

Remedies for the Aneufrisma

Cataplasmes for the superficiall Aneufrisma.

CAP. XLII.

Of the Tumors or Aposthumes in the Pappes.

The Pappes which are glandulous partes, partly ordained for the decozation, and partly to be an increable to the chambers of the matrix, and are ordained for the generation of milke, they are subiect to diuers diseases, as other parts of like substance.

Definition.
*Gal lib. de vſu
partium.*

The Cause, is such as you haue heard in other Aposthumes, also retention of the monethly courses, or abundance of thicke corrupt milke. The Signes, are such as you heard in others such like, as dolour, pricking, tension, rednesse, feuer, and diuers others.

Cause.

Signes.

The Cure consisteth in vniuersall and particular remedies, as purgations and bleeding, chiefly in the sauane baine, beating and frictions on the thigh, with sirupes and other conuenient remedies, for the prouocation of the moneths, as you shall heare at large in the Booke of Diseases of Women: vse good dyet tending to humidity.

Cure.

The particular remedies differ not from other aposthumes, sauing that thou vse familiar and weake repercussives, because it is nere to the noble parts, in the beginning it shall be good to foment the pappe with hote water, Vinegar, and oyle of Roses: or this, take the flowers of Cammomill, Lint-seede, and Fenegreke, of each halfe a pound, the iuice of Malloines, Roses, and Plantane, of each 3. ounces, Vinegar 2. ounces, wet a cloth therein and lay to the soze: if it tend to maturation, take the crummes of white breade and beane meale, of each one halfe an ounce, flowers of Fenegreke as much, malloines, Althea and Lillie rootes, of each a little, seeth them in milke, putting thereto the yolke of an egge, fresh butter, and a little Saffron, make a cataplasme and apply: when it commeth to suppuration, open it

Pa. li. 3. ca. 35.

Ga. lib. de fas-
c. 15.
V. do video in-
terprete Flo-
rentino.

it with a Cauter or Lancet, euacuate the humors, and cure it as other Apothumes: vse a Bandage of three sheaves, as is set downe by Galen, to hold it vp, for great hanging downe maketh attraction of humors: Labour not with that arme of the soze side, for that maketh attraction of milke which letteth y healing of the soze: sometime womens paps doe growe very great not being soze, which is very unsam- ly; for remedie whereof, Fallopius biddeth take the hearbe *Melissa*, bruiſe it and apply in forme of a plaister, which letteth the growing.

CHAP. XLIII.

¶ Of the tumor in the Thorax, called
the Plurisie.

Definition.

Arnald. lib. 4.

breniar. ca. 5.

Difference.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 3.

Gordo. part. 4.

Auicenn 13. ca.

de pluri.

Mesues de e-

gritud. pector.

Cause.

Aetius serm. 8.

cap. 68.

Auicenn decima

terij ca. 15.

Gal. 4. lacorum

affect. cap. 3.

Signes.

Gal. 5. lo. or.

affect cap. 3.

Hippo. prax. 1.

2. text. 60.

Rasis lib. 6. de

mor. par. ca. 58.

Plurisie, is an inflammation and tumor, or a masse of blood, which turneth into a bilious matter, in diuers parts, but chiefly of the membranous and muscles, which knit and cover the ribbes, whereof there are two sorts, the false and true: the false, is outward in the muscles of the short ribbes; and the true, is that which happeneth in the membranous, which knitteth the ribbes.

The Cause, is externe, and interne: externe, is great heate or cold: the vse of strong wine or very cold water, violent exercise, and cold ayre after great heat: the interne cause, is great repletion of all the soluer humors, but chiefly the blood and choller, which maketh the most subtil part of the blood ascend from the vaine caue, vnto the vaine *Affigos*, thereafter in the vaines and membranous intercostalles.

The Signes, are great dolour, from the shoulders vnto the neathermost ribbe, punction in the side, continuall feuer, difficulty of respyring, coughing, hard pulse, great alteration, with want of appetite, euill saoured breath, heaviness, and ponderosity of the sides, great feuer chiefly in the night,

little

little sleepe, some sweates which happen through the great paine.

The Judgements, these which commeth on the right side, *Judgements.*
 are not so dangerous as on the left. If the spittle be blacke, *Æt. us. ferm. 8.*
 liuide, and viscus, with continuall cough, vehement pain, *ca. 65. & aph.*
 long continuing, the urine be thicke, blew, or blacke, it is *10. 13. 22. 39.*
 deadly: if the cough be very drye and cease not, it is an *Avicen. lib. 4.*
 ill signe, but if the spittle be white, light and equall, with *Gal. li. 5. meth.*
 little cough, the patient sleeping well, hauing good appetite, *cap. 7. & 8.*
 and the urine red coloured, it is a good signe.

The Cure consisteth in vniuersall and particular reme- *Cure.*
 dies: vniuersalls, as glisters, bleeding in both the armes,
 chiefly in the side opposite to the soze, keeping good dyet, ab- *Pa. li. 3. ca. 37.*
 staining from strong drinke, Women, & perturbations of
 the mind.

The particular remedies shall be cataplasmes, linements
 made of Soluers, with Cammionill, Helilot, Aniseedes, *Gal 5. meth.*
 Lint-seede, and Fenigreeke, if the dolour be great and con- *cap. 8.*
 tinue. *Fuchius* counsaileth frequent application of venter
 lies, with scarrification of the part infected. If by any of
 these remedies y^e pain doth not cease, neither you perceiue a-
 ny euacuation of the humors, by the mouth, urine, or funda-
 ment: It is to be suspected that it turn into *Empyem*, which
 is a collection of matter, betwixt the ribbes and the region
 of the lights or lungs, sometime with corruption of the part,
 for the which we make incision, for feare the lunges bee cor-
 rupt and become vlcered, then the incision shall either bee
 made by Cauter or Launcet, but rather with the Cauter,
 for neither doth it close so soone, nor is so dolorous: the ope-
 ning shall be best betwixt the third & fourth of the true ribs,
 beginning at the nethermost and count vpwads, hold you
 six inches from the ridge of the backe. In making of your
 ouerture, which shall be either with Cauter potentiall, or
 Turbit bistory, till you come to the capacitie within the ribs:
 make your ouerture at great length, beginning aboue, and
 guiding the bistorie in buywaies, from the third ribbe to the
 fourth,

Columbus.

Arnaldus.

fourth, eschewing the vaines, artiers, and nerues which are vnder the inferiour part of the ribbe : the ouerture being so duely made, euacuate the matter by degrees, and not all at one time, for feare you dissipate too much the spirits : put a tent into it with an emplaster of *Diacalcithios*, or *Be-tonica*, mixed in Claret wine. Sometimes there is a certain congealed water, gathered vnder the Sternum or brisket bone. For the Cure whereof, *Columbus* counselleth to trepan the Sternum ; but I rather in that case approue the Cauter potentiall, as counselleth *Arnaldus* : make a good escharre, hold it long open.

This Cure is rare and sieldome practised, yet after this methode I did cure one Iohn Buchan Maister of the song Schoole in Glasgowe, who was heavily grieved with a warric or congealed humoz collected vnder the sterne, of the which he was cured perfectly.

If you see tumor eminent in any place of the thorax, open it in the most conuenient place. Hippocrates doth counsell to discover the third ribbe, and bore it with a Trepan perforatiue to let out the humoz, then put an hollow tent either of Silver or Lead, and let not all the matter auoide at one time, but by little and little, and cure it as other Apothumes.

CAAP. XLIIII.

Of the tumor in the Navill, called in Greeke *Axymphalon*, and in Latine *Eminentia Umbilici*, or *Hernia Umbilicalis*.

Constantine.

Lonicrius ex-
pl. mor. b.

The Navill is the middlemost part of the body, whereby the Childe is nourished in the Mothers wombe : it is composed of sinowes, vaines, and artiers, the which, when the Periton is dilated or rent, it doth swell and tumise in such sort, that sometime it doth rive.

The

The Causes are diuers, like as by the dilation of Periton, whereby the intestine commeth forth, or by the bloud which may flowe from the vaines and artiers : also by wind or water in that part, and by knitting of the nauill too short or too long after the birth : nere knitting, either slip peth, breaketh, or maketh conuulsion, and other grieuous diseases : by the too long knitting, it giueth place to the intestine or Omentum, whereby some Bloud, Flesh, Water, Wind, or Vapours, doe occupie the eminent part.

The Signes are knowne by diuersity of matter therein: as if the Omentum, the tumor is soft and the colour not different from the rest of flesh : if y intestine, the tumor is soft, vnequal, & returneth into the capacity with a noise or bzuiter: if humiditie or vapours, the signes are as you haue heard in watricie or windie tumors : if through bloud, which happeneth by the ruption of some vaine or artier, the signes like vnto Aneurysma : if excrescence of flesh, the tumor is hard, and obeyeth not easily.

The Iudgements are these, when the dilatation is great, it healeth not easily, and often riuech by some violence or great coughing.

The Cure is, first, in good regiment tending to sobriety, abstaining from all flatuous meates, and all such as engender crudities, from mouing, exercise, and such like. The particular remedies consists in emplasters astringent, or this emplaster set downe by Petrus Argilla : also fomentations, astringents, and bandages, chiefly in the beginning : if that helpe not, reduce the pudding and quasse, and cause the sicke to hold in his breath till you knit the production with a ligatour, then let it fall off it selfe, and produce the siccatrize. If it be rent by great violence or cough, and the intestine commeth forth, as happened to an honest Matron in Paris, whome I cured after this manner : first, I enlarged the dilatation with a Launcet curbe, then reduced the intestine, and used the suto Pellitoz, as is set down in the generall chap. of wounds, & cured it as other wounds.

Cause.

Alb. li. 2. de cur

ra eminentia

vmb. cap. 52.

Gordo. part. 8.

cap. 2.

Fauentinus de

med. morb. cap.

de amp. vmb.

Signes.

Theodo. l. b. 5.

A. b. l. 2. a. 52.

Anton. bene de

abditis morb.

causi.

Iudgements.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 51.

Cure.

Cel. li. 6. ca. 17.

Gr. li. 7. ca. 14.

Petrus de ar-

gilla de emin.

vmb.

Chelmet. ca. 48.

Raf. li. 9. ca. 71.

If there be wind or water in the place, you shall cure it after such forme, as you shall heare in the Chapter of wounds or watric hernes or ruptures.

CHAP. XLV.

¶ Of the tumor in the bellie called Hydropsie.

Definition.

Gal. li. 2. facul.

na. u. & ca. 6.

li. 5. de lo. affe.

Avicen 10. 4.

cap. 5.

Arnald. lib. 2.

bren. ar. ca. 40.

Difference,

Trall. an. li. 9.

cap. 123. Ga.

com. 2. in aph.

& 4. de morb.

acutis text. 3.

Cel. li. 3. ca. 21

Pa. li. 6. ca. 50

Roger. Cap. 45.

Cause.

Theod. part 6.

Ætius ser. 10.

cap. 20.

Arculeus fa-

monoro. a.

Gal. 5. loco. af-

fect. cap. 7.

Gordon. part.

6. cap. 5.

Avicen tract.

4. cap. 4.

Gal. 5. loco. af-

fect. ca. ult. &

lib. 3. cap. 29.

Hydropsie, is a Tumor against nature, ingendered of great quantity of water, Wind, or Flegme, which sometimes is dispersed through y^e whole bodie, & is called vniuersall, otherwhiles in some part therof, and is called particular. It is most commonly in the capacity of the Periton, of the which there are three sorts, to wit, Ascites, Tympanites, and Anasarca. Ascites, is a maladie that causeth the bellie and legges to swell through a watry humor, the rest of the body is small and leane. Tympanites, is a maladie in the which is more flatuosity and lesse humor, and in touching soundeth like a Drumme. Anasarca, or Leucoacutis, is a disease wherewith the whole body, but chiefly the priuie parts, are swollen with a pituitous humor, white and cleare, accompanied with feuer.

The Cause, is either externe, or interne: externe, as strokes, falls, heate, fluxe of blood, or great and long running of the Hemorrhoides or moneths: also through dissentery and great vsage of humide meats, as soules, waterberries, euill water, and such like, whereof we had good p^{ro}ofe at the siege of Paris, also euill regiment. Plato sayth, that in the time of Appollo and Esculapius, neither Catarrhe, Hydropsie, nor many other diseases which now raigne, were knowne, the which wee may greatly attribute to their great sobriety. The cause interne, cometh chiefly by the vertue alteratrix & concoctrix of the liuer, and by Apoplexies of the liuer, passions of the stomacke, through the vice

Vice of the vaines meseraicks, intestines, matrice, bladder, lights, melt, and kidneys.

The Judgements, all Hydropsies after hote fevers, or Judgements. happening in fevers are euill, and if through Aposthume of Tralli. lib. 4. the liuer, it receiueth no curation: if by vsing remedies the Hip. prog. 2. sicke groweth better, and within few daies euill againe, hee text. 2. healed not: if the diseased become laxatiue and haue no Gordo. part. 6. ease of his paine, or if the spittle, the breath, and excrements cap. 5. doth stinke and flower euill, they be all signes of death: if Al. li. 2. ca. 54. Hip. prefa. Hip. apho 35. & 43. & aph. 5. & 7. Trallian. lib. 9. fluxe of the belly with difficulty of respiring, he dyeth within three dayes: of all the three sorts ascites is the worst. Those that are young, robust, and the noble parts not viciated, especially the liuer, and may vse exercise, the humors not being putrified, may be cured.

Then for the Cure of such, there are three Intentions: Cure. The first, is in good dyet tending to heate and drye, of good Pau. li. 3. ca. 2. nourishment and light of digestion, little drinke or none at & li. 4. ca. 48. all if possible may be, and if the diseased may not passe without drinke, he may drinke a little cleane old wine. I knew a man that was cured by abstaining only from drinke halfe a yeare. Antonius Beneuenius reporteth that he knew men cured by abstaining from drinke one yeare, without vsing any other remedie. Let their bread be Barley wherein shall be mingled the powder of Wormewood, Aniseedes, Betonie, Calaminth, Calamus aromaticus, Succorie, and Fennell, which things may also be put in their pottage, Asses or Goates milke were good to be vsed. The second intention is done with fomentations, and vnguents resolutiues, as in Oedema you haue heard. The third intention, is to corroborate the intemperie of the liuer, as is amply set downe by Albucasis. I did cure sundry at the siege of Paris, by a remedy which I brought from a Turke, who was bond-slave to Dondego de varro Viador, Generall of the Spanish regiment there, and is thus made, take a handfull of Fennell rootes, of Appium Rusticum, & Eupatorium as much, Psendo masculum two handfuls, Petroselinum macedonicum

De abditis
morbor. causis.
Tra. li. 9. ca. 2.

Avic. 10. 4. ca.
3. tract. 2.
Gal. 14. meth.

Gal. 7. aph. comment. 57. & 3.
de temp cap. 3.
Alb. lib. citato.
Haly Abbas.
Guydo.



one handfull, *Hepatica*, or *Herba Trinitatis* as much : of all those, take the branches and not the rootes, gathered dry in the Sunne, infuse all in eight English pynthes of white wine, and let it seeth till thre pynthes thereof be consumed in an earthen pot close couered, let not the ayre passe out of it: it being thoroughly boyled, straine it through a cleane cloth and giue it to the sicke to drinke alwaies, in so doing he will after thre dayes take a flux of vyne, which will continue fiftene or twenty dayes, in which time such as I haue handled were ordinarily whole. In all this time keepe them very warme, vse onely roasted meate of good iuice and light of digestion. Some in the sayd disease doe counsell to make incision, the which I haue often scene, but with euill success, and not to be vsed, as being reiected by Trallianus, *Cel. li. 7. ca. 15.* Gordonius, and others. The manner of the incision is this: the sicke must be commodiously placed, then the ouerture must be made eyther with Bistory, Launcet, or Cauter, *Bru. li. 2. ca. 8.* thre ynches vnder the nauill, towards the flanke on either side, eschewing the *Linea alba*, and extremities of the muscles of the epigaster, and the nerues and tendons of *Musculus erecti*, for in hurting of those, grievous accidents may follow, as feuer, dolour, difficulty to consolidate the wound, sometimes death, as I haue ofte remarked in the great Hospital of Paris, and other parts: the incision must be very little, taking good heed you picke nether vaine, artier, nor intestine, put a hollow tent in it, with a broad head made of Silver or Gold,

Instruments

Instruments to incise the Hydropick
with hollow tents of silver or Lead,

227



evacuate the humor by little and little, stoppe the tent with
a cloth or waterspunge after it be handled, and apply upon
it a plaster of *Diacalcithios* mixed in wine. Paulus coun- *Pa. li. 3. ca. 48*
selleth, if the Hydropsie commeth from the intestines, to
make the incision in the Scapill. There are many other *Cel. li. 3. ca. 21*
things which may be spoken of this matter, which I leave

to the learned Physitian being more phisicall than Chirurgi call: yet by reason that sometimes it falleth vnder the Chyrurgions handes, I thought good thus much to intreat of it.

CHAP. XLVI.

¶ Of the Fistule in the Fundament, and the cure thereof.

*Gal. de vfu
partium.*

Definition.

Cause.

Signe.

*Cel. li. 5. ca. 28
lib. 7. cap. 4.
et 30.*

*Theod. lib. 3.
cap. 43.*

Cure.
*Gordo. part. 1.
cap. 7.*

*Br. li. 2. ca. 16
Alb. li. 2. ca. 80
Guido tract. 4.
de vlc. erib.*

The Fundament, which is called in Latine *Anus*, in Greeke *Hydia*: it is that part whereby the excrements of the body are discharged, and is subiect to indure thirteene grieuous passions or diseases, to witte, *Fistula*, *Thymus*, *Candyloma*, *Atrices*, *Claues*, *Ragades*, *Hemorrhoides*, *Dritus*, *Paralysis*, *Ficus*, *Prurites*, *Siccatrix*, *Apothumes*, with diuers others, whereof *Vigo*, *Brunus*, and *Theodoricus*, haue spoken at length. *Fistula*, is a hard sinuositie, from the which doth procede a humo^r or matter virulent. The Cause is wounds and vlcers, euill cured, hemorrhoides interne, or some *Apothumes* which haue proceeded. The Signs are euident, & may be known by the sound, or scene by the *Speculum*, accompanied with dolour in those parts: flowing of a virulent humo^r, auoiding of Pus or matter purulent, with the excrements: Of those there are two kindes, the one is obscure, hidde within, without any appearance of orifice externally, but onely within the intestine called *Intestinum rectum*, or in the muscle *Sphincter*: the other kind which is manifest, is knowen to the sight being externe. In the cure, there is diuersity of opinions amongst the old writers, *Avicen*, *Gordon*, and some others, counsell onely to apply liniments, and other medicaments, with tents of *Caddisse*, and cleane clothes to hold it cleane: others are of opinion to vse manuell operation, which is done three wayes, to wit, by *Cauter* actuall, incision, and ligature. *Albucasis*, *Brunus*, *Theodoricus*, and *Guido*, doe counsell to cut and consume the *Fistule* and callosity with actuall *Cauters*,

Cauters made and accommodated to the greatnes of the
 Fistule. The Cauler consumeth the humiditie, stayeth the
 flure of blood, but the forme is cruell, painefull, and vncer- *Alb. li. i. ca. 36*
 taine: there be others, who are of opinion to cut, make in- *Pa. i. ca. 78.*
 cision, consume and take away the Fistula with a Bistory,
 or other Instrument purposely made to that effect, and cut
 all the inter-space betwixt the orifice and fundament, as
 Paulus saith. This forme doe I not approue by reason of
 the great flure of blood, which often happeneth, as I haue
 sometime obserued: as also by cutting of the callosity of
 ten the fibres of the muscle *Sphincter* are consumed and cut
 away, which causeth that the matter fecall is not so well re-
 tained thereafter: so that at all times when the excrement
 approached the port, the patient is euer forced to goe to stoule.
 I haue found no forme so sure nor lesse painfull then the Li-
 gatour, the which hath byn much approued by our ancients, *Hip. li. de fistu.*
 as Hippocrates, Celsus, Vigo, and others, and is now prac- *V. gol. b. 4. de*
 tised by the most skilfull. *vl. orib.*

Q 3

Instruments

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

*Instruments to cut and knitt the fistula
in the fundament,*



the forme whereof is this, the sicke must first be purged, and
use a good dyet for a certaine space, especially in the night be-
fore the operation, which shall be about 8. or 9. of the clocke
in the morning, then the patient shall stand vpon his feete,
bowing himselfe forward ouer, either vpon a bed or Chaire,
holding his legs and knees asunder, and so continue till the
operation

operation be done, then the Chyrurgion shall put his middle finger in the fundament of the patient, till he come to the upper part of the Fistula, the finger being first annoynted with oyle or butter, then with his other hand he shall passe a sound made in forme of a Needle or Setone, which must be made of Gold, Silver, or Lead: the Gold and Silver must be so tempered that it ply like Lead, yet hard and sharpe at the point, thread it with a thread of soure ply that is well rubbed with ware: some doe annoynt it gently with causticke oyle to make it cut the sooner: then passe the sayd Needle or sound in the orifice of Fistula, thrusting it forward untill the time you find it on the point of your middle finger, which is within the fundament. If there be any little membzaine betwixt as often happeneth, thrust the Needle through the same, which being done, you must ply it with the point of the sayd finger: in thrusting it the one way, and conuaying it out by the fundament, then knit the thread with a running knot somewhat slacke, then tye it euery day faster and faster till the inter-space be consumed. For this purpose doe I vse a little Instrument of Silver, that is boile or hollow within of two ynches broad, or thereabouts, with a little round ring on the end thereof, and the Ring must haue a rest that it goe not about, the thread must be tyed to the Ring and wound about euery day after it be past through the Instrument: by this meanes you shall doe the operation more cleanly and easier, than by onely tying of it: if the inter-space which you must cut be great and long, in such sort that sometimes the thread doth rotte, therefore you must tye a new thread to one of the ends of the former, and draw it through, and passe it through the Instrument, and tye it to the ring as before. If the Fistula be obscure and haue the orifice interne within the fundament which is more difficile than the former, you must with a *Speculum ani* gently dilate the fundament, till you perceiue the orifice, then passe your Needle or sound in the orifice as of before, thrusting it in the orifice almost through to the further side, so conuaying it downewardes

*Parre. lib. 12.
cap. 23.*

A needle of
Gold or Sil-
ver for the
Fistula.

till it come to the ground or bottome of the Fistula. This Sound which we use commonly in this kind of Fistula, is of Lead, so is not of force to pearce through the whole hyde, for the which we are constrained to make incision in the better side against the point of it, so passeth it through with the thread, and layes it to the ring through the Instrument as of before. This cure I did use at Paris to a Scottish gentleman called Crowne David Boyd, who had the orifice of the fistule interne so high up, and the interspace was so great, that I was the space of eight weekes in consuming of it, and the Gentleman was made perfectly whole. Heare you must marke, that fistules which are very high, are neither to be cut nor knit, because the sicke shall ever be constrained to voyde his excrementes so soone as they approach to the part, for the which it were better to use remedies palliatives, then hazard any other cure.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Thymus in the Fundament.

Definition.

THymus is the worst kind of those five sorts of waters or little tubercles which happeneth in the fundament, it is called Thymus, because it is Tuberculus, and groweth like the flower of time.

Cause.

The Cause, is euill humors which doe come from the whole body, but chiefly a ramus pinctus, with the humor of tentimes there is a malignity.

Signes.

The Signes, are Ulcers, Tubercles, Fetide, annoyding a matter virulent, and are for the most part small at the roote.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, in old people forecomming, we doe attempt no cure but onely palliatives, for oftentimes being not cunningly handled, or in people of euill temperature it becommeth carcinomatous, so the sicke dyeth miserably.

Cure.

The Cure, is to purge the body of the vitious sharpe humors,

mo: every weeke or fortnight once, draw blood, keepe good dyet and rest, it were good to vse decoction of *Shina* and *al. a perilla* in the morning to prouoke sweat, as also at meales. If that humo: be retained and not purged away, it may ascend to the noble parts and suffocate the sicke; for the helpe whercof Hippocrates counselleth the cauter actuall to be v: sed and alleaged to haue often proued the same with good successe. I haue oftentimes seene the cauter actuall v: sed in the great Hospitall of Paris, but with small successe. When these excrescence or warts be but little and few in number. I haue sometimes consumed them with pouders, but such as are great and many in number, are to be knit with ligatures, as you haue heard in the chap. of *Paraulis*: if any thing rest after the ligatour, you shall consume it with causticke pouders, waters, and other medicaments. After which methode I did cure a singing Boy in Our Ladies Church at Paris, who was grieuously handled with a Thynie about the whole fundament the space of thre yeres, of the which I did heale him perfectly by the expectation of many.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the tumors in the fundament called Condiloma, Atrices, and Clausio.

Condiloma is a certaine excrescence of fleshy hard, tuberculous and membranous in the brims or borders of the fundament, sometimes accompanied with great humo:, tumor, and swelling, sometime not swelled and are called *Atrices*. The Cause is the weakenesse, softnesse, and low situation of the part, also defluxion of humo: which become rotten, for the which it is hard of curation. The Signes are manifest to the sight, accompanied with great tumor and dolour. The Cure consisteth in good regiment of life, and rest, purging oft the body chiefly with Blisters, bleeding

Definition.

Cels. li. 6. ca. 8.

Agineta. ca. 8.

lib. 6.

Fernel. li. 5. de

simpt. cap. 11.

Gordo. part. 2.

rub. 3.

Cause.

Cels. loco citat.

Signes.

Cure.

Pa. li. 3. a. 59.

bleeding in the arme to diuert the humoz & stop inflammation, vse vomitories & things to prouoke vyne. The topical remedies are to vse linemets refrigeratiues in y^e beginning of oyle of Roses, *Cydoniorū*, whites of eggs, therafter vse remolliants and discutients, if it tend to suppuration, vse such remedies as you haue heard in others, putting thereto a little *Tapsus Barbatus*. It must be opened in forme circular, to the end the matter be not long retained, which easily causeth *Fistula*. If the excrescence be great and hard, it must be consumed with causticke instruments, as counselleth *Celsus*.
Lib. 6. cap. 18. Sometime the fundament is closed, as once I saw in the country of *Picardy* of *France*, in the towne of *S. Quintin*,
Paul. li. 6. ca. 81 where I did bring a woman to bed with two children, y^e one had an excrescence of flesh from the fundament, and did dye sone after it was borne, the other had a membzaine which
Al. li. 2. ca. 79 did close the passage of the excrements, which I cut with a bistory and it healed very easily. This happeneth often to maydes in their natural conduits, for the which do the like,
Lib. 7. cap. 28. otherwise haue your recourse to *Celsus*, or to my Booke of the Infantment, where I haue amply entreated of that matter.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the tumors in the fundament called Hemorrhoids, and Ragades.

Definition.

*Br. li. 7. ca. 15**Ra. li. 9. ca. 80.**Al. li. 2. ca. 81.**Ro. li. 3. ca. 45.*

The Hemorrhoides are an inflammation of some one or moze of the foure vaines which goe about the fundament, of which there are diuers kinds, as sayth *Fernelius*: some are interne which are not to be seen, others externe, some are swelled and doth auoyd no humoz, but in tract of time retorne inwardly, sometime open and doe auoyd a boundance of melancholique blood which maketh great paine.

Cause.

The Cause is great aboundance of melancholique, pituitous,

tous or bilious blood, great blage of mordicant medicines.

The Signes ; if the humors be cold, the sicke feeleth great heauinesse, dolour, and trembling of the belly : if the humors be hote, there is great pulsation, euill colour of the face, and heauinesse of the eyes.

Gordo. part. 5.
cap. 21.
Signes.

The Judgements ; the disease is dangerous and difficile, in respect of the great euacuation which oftentimes ensueth and causeth Hydropsie, euill colour, and weaknesse of the body, which do often end in *Fistula* : If they be suddenly stayed, they often doe ingender dangerous maladies, and sometimes death, by reason of the humors which taketh the course as to the liuer, or lights, as saith Barta Pallia. If they auoyde moderately it is good, and doth preserve the sicke from Melancolique, Leprosie, Strangurie, paine in the sides, and inflammation of the Lungs. The naturall course of them is, to auoide euery moneth once, or at least foure or five times a yeare.

Judgements.
Hip. li. de Hemor.
Ra. li. 9. ca. 80

Barta Pallia.

The Cure is somewhat difficile, the part being sensible and cold, hauing no force of it selfe, as also being in the part easie to receaue fluxion of humors, and not easie to become vnto at all times : yet the cure (in so much as may be) consisteth in good dyet, abstaining from all things of euill digestion, and which bred melancholie, next purge gently the body, bleed in the arme, if either they flow ouer moderately, or be painfull, also bleed the vaine Saphen : if they be tumified, apply an horse-leach called by the Latines *Sanguisuga*, and that of such quality, as you may perceiue in the

Hip. 6. epid.
Cure.

Cel. li. 6. ca. 18

Fuch. lib. 3. de meden. morb.
Baptista Morianus.

Roger. tract.
primo. ca. 92.

Ro. li. 3. ca. 45.

8. Treatise of this Booke, and vse some medicaments to make them fall away, and to ease the paine, as cataplasms, fomentations, halfe baths, or cassettes of Henbane, *Tapsus Barbanus*, Camomill, Violets, red Roses, Hallowes, Lintseed, all sodden in milke and applyed on the part : also you may apply the yolke of an egge, Oyle of Roses, Rosewater, and creamie after the foresaid maner. Sometime I haue vsed with good successe Barly flower mixed with women or Goats milke, adding thereto a yolke of an egge, and a little

a little Saffron, & apply it warme in forme of a cataplasme, with a band of three sheffs. Some for this purpose vse hogges dung hote on the part for the appeasing of the paine; or this, take Sorrell, Tiolets, Herbane, of euery one a little, well roasted vnder the ashes, thereafter beaten with a little hoggs grease and lay on the soze. If they annoyd immoderately, apply ventosies on the shoulders, with astrigent and corroboratiue plaisters, on the os sacrum and fundament made of *Sanguis draconis*, Masticke, Gallowes, with the haire of an Hare cut very small, with a little powder of Roset, mixe all together with the white of an egge, and apply to the soze.

Montanus. If the paine be vehement and interne, take a tent met in the aforesayd remedies and put into it, or this vnguent composed of Rosat, Mesues, Ceras galen, and vnguent com-
meissa, mixed together in a mortar of Lead. Paulus doth counsell, when there are diuers of those vaines, to leaue one open for a space, in case the humors take the course to some noble part. Hippocrates sayth, in old hemorrhoides which haue long runne, if one be not left open, there will be danger of hydropisie and ptisicke. There are diuers other familiar remedies for this purpose, set downe by diuers old Writers. Ragadia doth differ from Hemorrhoids, in so farre as they are certaine excoriations, vlcers, or fissures, in the vaines or fundament, and are dolorous without tumor.

Lib. de Hemor. The Cause are strokes, falles, or some sharpe humor which corrodeth these parts: for the cure whereof foment the part with warme wine which doth comfort, next apply drying salues and vnguents made thus, Rec. Lichargin aurei & argentei, cernissa lota, aloes lota, thyrus masticeis, sarcocol-
la, ballaustia, & boli armenician. vnc. sem. puluerescentur & aguentur cum vnguento comisse vel oleo rosa: make an vnguent, and annoynt the part therewith.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 59. Rola. d. lib. 3.

CHAP. L.

Of the tumor in the Intestine when it falleth
out, called by the Latines *Exitus Longanonis*, or
Ani Procidencia.

E*xitus Longanonis* is the out-comming or turning ouer of Definition.
the great intestine, which happeneth through the laxati-
on of the muscle Sphincter, which maketh it to fall out and
tumefie; it is common to yong children. The Cause is ex- Cause.
ternall, and internall: externall, are falls and strokes, Gord. part. 5.
chiefly on the *Os sacrum*, sitting on cold stones, great pressing
of the fundament, and Aposthumes which happen in those
parts. The internall Cause, is great humidity which re-
laxeth the muscle, fluxe of the belly, and often pressing to go
to stoule, chiefly in those who haue the dysentery. The Signes.
Signes are apparant to the sight. The Cure shall be in ge- Cure.
nerall and particular remedies. The Generall is good regi-
ment of life, abstaining from much drinke, pottages, hearbs,
fruites, and all meats that engender great humidity and
rawnesse, vse gentle purgations that haue the vertue to
purge the weake rawe humoz. Sometimes it is long out, Fauentinus de
exposed to the ayre and tumified, so loath to be reduced: for pueror. morb.
the which you must foment it a little space with warme
milke. The particular remedies are to foment the part with
Smiths water, and red wine, wherein shall be sodden red
Roses, Myrtells, Centone, and Shepheards pursle, Ba-
lust, *xxx Cupressi*, Koch Allom, seeth all together and foment Arnauld. lib. 2.
the place: then annoynt it with oyle of Bayes, and Myr- breui. ca. 24.
tells, and apply on it the pouder of Masticke, Myrthe, and
Spits of Cyprus, thereafter cause the sicke to draue in his
bzeath, so it shall be easily reduced; being put in, wet a cloth
in the former fomentation and lay on it, then bynde it for a
certaine space. In going to stoll beware in pressing too soze,
neither go to any wet pziue, or any other part to expose you
to

to the cold, but keepe you alwayes warme : if, for all this it heale not, haue your recourse to my booke of Infantment in the Chapter of the diseases of yong Children. As for Paralyse in the fundament, it hath the like cause and cure as the former.

CHAP. LI.

Of the Periton, Epiplon, and Intestines.

FOrasmuch as in the tenne Chapters next following I mind to entreat of such diseases as most commonly fall in the Cods, for the which it shall be requisite to shew some, what briefly of the composition, scituation, and Office of such parts as most commonly do cause certaine of these diseases, as also that the yong Chyrurgion may be the better instructed : For as sayth Galen, hard it is to cure any disease except first we know the nature and scituation of that part whereupon we worke, as also the cause of the disease ; otherwise neither salue is able to prognosticate of the euent, nor cure the same. Therefore I intend to begin at that tunicke or membrane, which is the chiefe part whereof the three proper ruptures doe procede, and is called *Peritoneon* in Greeke, and *Siphac* by the Arabians. It is subtil and strong, and furnisheth a membrane to all the parts contained in the inferiour wombe, for the which it is called *Perritoneos tunica seu membrana*, it is composed of two tunicks or membranes, and serueth for sundry uses. First, it serueth to couer all the parts of the inferiour belly, to wit, vnder *Diaphragma* or *septum transversum* : it doth separate all those parts from the muscles of the Epigaster, it doth tye these parts together, and giueth a tunicke or skinne to each one, it helpeth the descending of the excrements : some Anatomists be of opinion, that it is pierced through in that part which is neare the Inguina, by the which passage the spermaticke vessels do descend to the testicles, also the intestines

*Gal.li.5.an.&
3.de vsu part.*

*Gal.li.4.de v.
su partium.
Diaphragma.*

*Gal.li.1.de se-
mine & 6.de
adm. anat.*

or *Omentum* to the cods. Next followeth that part which is called *Omentum* by the Latins, and *Epiplon* by the Greeks in Arabicke *Zirbus*. It is composed of two tunicks, which proceed from the *Periton* of diuers veines, arteries, & greace, it is extended vpon all the intestines, & helpeth their concoction being weake and debill, it preserueth the naturall heate in time of famine and hunger: it is tyed to the bottome of the stomake, and endeth at the *Ospubis*, sometimes it falleth in the *scrotum* as you shall heare in the proper Chapter. The Intestines or gouts, are called in Latine *Intestina*, and in Greeke *Entera*: they are composed of two proper tunicks, besides that which is taken of the *Periton*. The proper tunicke maketh the faculty expultrix more strong, as also preserueth the intestines from outward iniury; the tunicke exterior is membzainous, and the interior more flesh. The Intestines are six in number, to wit, three small to distribute the chile by the vaines Meseraickes to the vaine port and liuer, they haue some vertue concoctrix, as also expultrix to expell the excrements: the three grosse intestines are subiect to receaue the excrements, like as the bladder receaueth the vaine. The first of the three small intestines, is conuayed to the ventericke by the *Pilorus*, it is called *Ecphysis*, which is as if you would say beginner of the intestines: it is called *Duodenum* because it is two fingers in length, it goeth along the rigge backe, and giueth place to the vaine port, arteries, and nerues, and pores, which containeth the choller. The second Intestine, is called in Greeke *Mestis*, and in Latine *Iecunum*, because it is euer emptie, it receaueth the chile from the stomake next *Ecphysis*, and distributeth it sodainly to the liuer, because of the multitude of the meseraicke vaines. The third small Intestine is called *Ilion*, because it is situated next these parts called *Ilia*, as also by reason of the *Iliacke* passion, which happeneth in it: some do call it *Miserere mei*, or *volvulus*, when the sicke auoydeth the excrements at the mouth. It is reported by *Lonicerius*, that *Hippocrates* did dye of this disease. It maketh many

*Gal. 4. de vfu
part. 6. de
anato.*

*Gal. 4. & 5. de
vfu part. 6.
de ana. admin.*

*Gal. li. 6. loco
affect.*

*Miserere mei.
Hippo rates
died of. Mi-
rere mei.
Lon. expl. mon.*

circum

Vassens lib. de
anatom.

Gal. 3. 9. 26. de
usu partium.

Gal. 4. de usu
partium.

circumbolutions, to the end it may retaine the chile the longer, and maketh the better attraction of it to the mesaraicke vaines. The fourth and first of the great Intestines, is called *Cecum*, because it hath entry and no issue that can be perceived: it is apt to receive the excrements, and also the fecall matter in it is first formed: it is situate on the right flank called *Iliu*, under it is the right nere: it doth fall oftentimes in the *Scrotum*, and is called by the vulgar Chyrurgions *Sacculus* or *Monoculus*. The fifth and second of the great intestines is called *Colon*, because it is greater and fleshier than any of the rest within, it is full of grease, it passeth from the right *Ilium* to the left and bottome of the stomake, that oftentimes it touched the liuer, and melt. Those who are vexed with the winde Chollique do often vomit, because it being tumified or swelled, doth presse or compresse the bottome of the ventricke. The sixth and last of the great Intestines, is called *Rectum*, it lyeth right aboue the *Os sacrum*, and is an ample receptacle of the excrements, it doth extend to the fundament or *Anus*, & is called by the Barbers *Longaum*, it hath certaine volutions: In this Intestine is dispersed a vaine, artier, and nerue of the first coniugation of the braines to giue feeling: in the end of this gut there is a muscle called *Sphincter* or *Closer* to close and hold the excrements, till nature be willing to discharge them: if it be either debilitate or hurt, Man is euer compelled to go to stole as you haue heard in *Fistula ani*.

CHAP. LII.

Of the spermaticke Vessels and Stones.

The Vessels spermatickes are called in Latine *Vasa Seminaria* or *Seminalia*, they are long, large, and varitius, and are in number foure, to wit, two vaines, and two artiers: the right vaine cometh from the vaine caue, the left oftenest from the vaine emulgent: the artiers proceed from the great artier called *Arteria aorta*,

their

Portraiture of the *Spermatique*
Vessels and Stones.

241



their office is to carry the bloud and spirits to the testicles *Gal. li. de sem.*
where they end, some doe call them *vasa preparantia*. The *Ex 14. v. su. pa.*
Vayne goeth aboue the artier, but not right lyne as other
parts doe, but in anfractuositie, like vnto a Woodbine or
Vine branch; in which anfractuositie or reuolutions, the
bloud and spirit is carryed to the stones, and is somewhat
prepared,

prepared, befoze it enter in the sayd stones, where it taketh a moze perfect concoction and becommeth white, thereafter it doth enter in the vessels eiaculariozes which are named spermaticke vessels or expellents : these doe take their beginning from the middelt of the testicles, they rest and are holden vp by the gland *Epididime* to goe aboue the Os pubis, they doe passe vp the same way the vessels preparants descend, they doe end in the beginning of the necke of the bladder in 2. glands one in each side called prostates, & by *Herophilus*, *admodos prostates*, in the which glands the seede is moze perfectly whitnes and fined than it was in the Stones, from whence it is sent to the canell of the wand when occasion doth offer (but the seldomer the better :) these two glands do serue to excitare and giue a dilatatiō to the act venarian, as also to soften and humect the canall of the wand, and to make it moze lubricke that the sperme may passe the moze easily. The Stones are called *Testiculi* in Latine, and in Greeke *Orschies*, and *Didymi* id est *Gemelli*, according to *Herophilus*, they are of a glandulous substance, soft, whyte coloured, round and cauernous. Their office is to boyle the seede, and make it apt for generation: they are hung without in the *Scrotum*, and each one hath one muscle called *Suspensor*, which commeth from the flankes, and giueth voluntary mouement to the said testicles: the right stone is moze varicous, and hath moze infrauosities than the left, it is hotter for the proximity it hath with the liuer, and so hath the right part of the corner of the matrice, as you shall heare in the Booke of Infantment: each testicle hath two tunickes which couer them, the interne is moze subtile, and is called by the Greekes *Eranthroides*: the externe is stronger and doth adheare to the interior which is called *Dartos*.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the tumor in the Cods.

In the Cods are situate the stones, which are ordayned by nature for the generation of man, and are subiect to diuers

diuers sorts of tumors and inflammations. Sometime the stones doe swell and tumefie to the bignesse of a Goose egge, accompanied with great dolour, heat, and hardnesse. The Causes are either Internall, or Externall: the externall, are stroakes, falls, and application of such remedies which doe offend these parts: the internall cause, is defluxion of humors, which happeneth in the lower parts of our body, retention of a *Gonorrhea* which is malignant: also when the seed is any way out of the owne domicile, and yet retained in the caput, as happeneth sometime to yong men in the night, so waking at the discharge of that humor doth retayne it by force, which afterward doth rot and make defluxion on the stones as I haue often seen. The Signes are inflammation, dolour, hardnesse, heauinesse, which may easily be perceiued, great dolour of the muscle Suspensor, which giueth voluntary remouement to the stones. The Judgements, if such tumors be not swiftly cured, the tumor doth sometime become hard and skirrous, which cannot be cured but by amputation, the which I haue remarked within these 30. yeares. The Cure is Generall, and speciall; the generall, in good regiment of life, abstayning from strong drinke, eating little and of good digestion, with moderate exercise, and bleeding the vaine saphin, vsing of Glisters, and prouoke vrine. The topicall remedies differ not from other tumors, sauing that we neither apply remolliants nor suppuratiues, without great consideration, but repercussiuues in the beginning, like as oyle of Roses, Winegar, whites of egges, and such like: or this, take whyte bread, milke, whites of egges, oyle of Rose, a little Opium, and Saffron, of this make a cataplasme or playster, and apply it to soze: if it serue not, vse this remedie that hath the vertue to repell and discusse the humor. *Rec. Radicum altheae, & lini an. vnc. 2. foliorum violarum, malua, paritaria, plantaginis hiesciam, an. man. 1. Cammomilli, Meliloti, Rosarum siccarum an. P. 1. coquantur in oximellate cum farinis fabarum & hordei an. vnc. sem.* If it turne to suppuration,

Gal. lib. de usu par. & artis med. cap. 9. Cause.

Langf. tract. 3.

Signes.

Judgements.

Cure.

Barra Pallia. Gordo. part. 7. Opium cap. 6.

doe as you haue heard in other Apolthumes, if by long de-
lay the stone become altered, the best remedy is amputation:
if vehement dolour as often happeneth, applye on the soze
Cassia fistula, or new chæse with a little vinegar, which are
things most anodine in such griefes: or this, take *Ceratum*
refrigerans galeni vnc. i. Pupillon 2. vnc. natriti vnc. dimid.
mixe altogether and apply on the soze.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of Hernies in generall, which happen in the
Inguina or Cods.

*Gal. tumor. co-
tra cap. 18.
Ætius ser. 11.
ca. 22. 23. 24.*

LIke as in diuers parts of the body happeneth diuers dis-
eases, so in those parts there happeneth eight sorts of
maladies commonly called Ruptures or Hernies, and are
divided in properes and commons: the first of the properes
is called *Bubonocoele* or *Hernia incompleta*, that is, when the
intestine or *Omentum* remayneth in the Inguina. The se-
cond kind is called *Hernia* or *Ramex intestinalis*, which is,
when the intestine falleth in the Cods. The third is called
Epiplocele or *Hernia Zirbalis*, which is, when the call or *O-*
mentum falleth in the cods. The first of the commons is
called *Hydrocele* or *Hernia aquosa*, which is a watry humor
in the cods. The second is called *Physocoele* or *Hernia ven-*
rosa, which is a vapour or wind in the cods. The third is
called *Cirrocœle* or *Hernia carnosa*, which is a schirrous or
fleshy substance in the cods. The fourth is called *Cirrocœle*
or *Hernia varicosa*, which is when the vaines that nourish
the stone, are dilated and full of melancholique blood.
The fifth is called *Hernia humeralis*, which is when any de-
fluxion of humors falleth on the cods. Of all those sorts of
Hernies you shall heare in the severall Chapters ensuing.

Of the tumor Inguinall called Bubonoccele.

Bubonoccele is a tumor in the flank, either of the call or Definition.
 intestine, which happeneth through dilatation or rupti- Cel. li. 7. ca. 24.
 on of the Periton, and is called by the Latines *Hernia In-*
guinalis, or *Incompleta*. The Causes are externall or inter- Cause.
 nall: the externall, are strokes, leaping, wrestling, crying, Avi. 22. ca. 3.
 vomiting, coughing, riding on hard trotting horses, bearing Etius ferm. 4.
 of great burdens, violent using of women, or violent exer- cap. 22. 23. &
 cise, dilatation of the membrane in women through great 24.
 travell in childe birth. The internall cause, is usage of vis- Gordo. part. 7.
 cous and flatuous, great repletion of the belly, with aboun- cap. 7.
 dance of superfluous humors. The Signes, if it come Signes.
 through relaxation, the *Omentum* reduceth easily, if the inte- Avi. 22. ca. 3.
 stine be fallē, you shall heare a noyse or bruite in y reduction, Judgements.
 and it is dolorous. The Judgements, many doe dye of Pa. li. 6. ca. 66.
 this disease, the gut being forth of the production, and filleth
 full either of wind, or excrements, or both, which is so diffi-
 cile and paynesfull to be reduced, that the sicke dyeth. The Cure.
 Cure, you must vse first fomentations remollients and dis- Arcu. 9. almar.
 cutients, made thus. Rec. *Radicum altheae*, *brioniae*, *cu-*
cumeris agrestis an. M. I. *florum*, & *foliorū cammomilli*, *mele-*
loti, & *rosarum* an. P. I. *seminis altheae*, & *fennigreci* an. vnc.
sem. coquantur omnia in aqua aut lacte, and foment the part
 with sponges. If by these remedies it reduce not, by reason
 of y abundance of wind, you shall vse 5 or 6 punctions in y
 part with a needle, as I haue often proued: it dispatcheth the
 wind, so the intestine doth the more easily reduce: if the ex-
 crements impasse the reduction being hard, you must incise
 the Periton, as is set downe by Rasis: Thereafter vse an Ra. li. 9. ca. 82.
 emplaster astringent with a bandage for a certaine space, in
 so doing such as come by relaxation, do sometime heale. O-
 thers which come by ruction, hardly do heale: so the best re-
 medy is to haue a trusse purposely made of cloth or yron,



Cell. lib. 7. cap. 20. & 24.
Ro. li. 3. ca. 35. with an emplaster astringent, and no other cure to be tempted. There are some ignorant covetous people, who take upon them to heale thus with two complaytes by drinckes, charmes, praying to Saynts, going on pilgrimage, which are all fallacious and founded upon no reason. Others do counsaile to cure those Hernies by actuall cauters as Theodoricus.

doricus: Langfrancus by pontentiall cauter. Bernardus and Langfrancus.
 Rogerius, by the wearing of the golden thread called *Pur. Etus* Bernardus.
aureus, which are all dangerous and uncertaine wayes. Rodgerius.

CHAP. LVI.

¶ Of the Hernie intestinall, called by the
 Greekes *Interoccele*.

This kind of rupture is when the guts fall downe in the Definition.
 cods, either through ruption or enlarging of y Periton Bac. li. 3. de cu-
 where the spermaticke vessels do passe, and where the mus- rand. morb.
 cles *Cremastres* doe end, and the membranous *Darios* and Pa. ca. derami.
Erethroides begin, wherein the gut Call or both doth fall. Fauentinus de
 The Causes are like vnto *Bubonocela*. The Signes is great med. morb.
 nesse, tumoz inequall, sometime hard by reason of the fecall Pareus lib. 7.
 matter contained therein. The Judgements are those: there Cause.
 is great inflammation, and the more you presse to reduction Arcu. alman.
 the inflammation oftener is the greater: so that sometimes Etius serm.
 it changeth the colour red or blew, which are euill and deadly 14. cap. 22.
 signes; sounding and auoyding the matter, are euill signes: Signes.
 and if the intestine be not reduced, the patient dyeth, which Judgements.
 happeneth through the narrownesse of the dilation. As for Avic. 2 ca. 2.
 the Cure, first purge the body with purgations, iuleps, pills, Etius serm.
 glisters, and suchlike as shall be thought expedient by the 14. cap. 4.
 skilfull Physition, which being done, you shall come to the Ro. li. 3. ca. 39.
 vsage of topicall remedies, as first you shall rubbe the cods Cure.
 and parts adiacent with oyle of Cammomill, and Lylies,
 also fomentations and cataplasmes, remolliants, which
 shall be vsed for a space: thereafter lay the sicke on his backe
 in such sort, that his arse be higher than his head, reducing
 the intestine by little and little with your hand, pressing most
 on the part where it descendeth. If the fecall matter let the
 reduction of it, you must vse such remedie as is set downe in
 the last chapter, with glisters to discharge the intestine. If
 by those remedies the intestine do not reduce, but the matter

Theod. lib. 3.
 cap. 33.

Avic. serm. 22.
tract. 3.

Alfor. ser. li.
de ligno sancti.
Pa. li. 61. ca. 65

Cels. lib. 7.

Cusuerius. de
morb. pueror.

fecall doe waxe hard with great dolour, you shall make inci-
sion in the vpper side of the codde, eschewing the Intestine.
Thereafter put a little peice of wood vp by the production of
the Periton, nere vnto the hole. Of dissent the piece of wood
must be round on the oneside and flat on the other, where-
on you shall make the rest of your incision, then rubbe the
incised part and hole of dissent with a little oyle of Cammo-
mill, or Lylies, which will make it lubricke, and cause it
to reduce more easily. If then it reduce not, the Periton
must be incised, and vse the cauter Gastroaphicke, and
handle it as other wounds: this operation must not be vs-
ed but in great necessity, and the sicke strong prognostica-
ting of the danger, *Ne fessellisse aut ignorasse videaris*: being
reduced, it must with bandages and astringent fomentati-
ons be contained, with this emplayster vpon Leather. *Rec.
Emplastri contra rupturam vnc. 2. Masticeis vnc. 1. vnguen-
ti comitissi desiccatiini rubei, an. vnc. sem. rapidis calaminaris in
aceto extincti parum.* Or this, take Beane flower, and the
bark of the Oke tree, *Sanguis Draconi*, powder of Sage,
Rose, and Myrtles, of euery one a little, seeth all in smiths
water, putting thereto a little Hogs grease, and lay it on the
place in forme of a plaister: instead whereof, you may vse
Emplastrum stricte cum peracelse. and keepe the bed for the
space of fortie dayes: also this emplaster witten by George
Cusuerus, which is *Rec. Virisq. consolidæ, lancele, planta-
ginis, Cariolæ, arestæ, bouis vel candæ equina, sanguinaria pen-
caphilonis an. lib. sem. pullis gallarum arabicarum, boli arme-
nici, sanguis draconis, ruberbarum, Glandium corticum me-
dicinorum, Castaneæ, Virga pastoris, Lenticula, Masticeis,
Myrthi, Mummiæ, an. drag. sem. Senia hirsini, Olei Ro-
sacæ, an. lib. 1. Misceant, fiat vnguentum, & cum depositum
fuerit ab igne, semper agitur cum spatula, donec fiat bene incor-
poratum, vsing in the meane time good dyet and of light di-
gestion. Abstaine from strong drinke, weake, and windy
meats, from hoystring, crying, or other violent motion, so
farre as the patient may. In the meane time, keepe open
wombe.*

wombe, and lay in such sort, that the head and shoulders be lower then the hanches and fundament: by these meanes sundry do heale, when the dilatation or ruction is not great. In great dilations and people of elder age, I find no remedy, save onely the bandage made of cloth with Cotton, Iron, or Steele, as shall be most mate: such people as doe ryde great horses and are armed, are much subiect to this disease, as I haue often seen amongst the French, Almaine, or Kytters horsemen: who for the most part haue their bandages of Iron, either for one side or for both.

Gord. Pau.

Favent. Vigo.

Ro. li. 3. ca. 35.

Aristotle.

Rollan. lib. 3.

cap. 35. & 36.

Bartholom.

Gal. lib. 2. de

dispo memb.

Hesiodorus.

Constantinus.

Ambrose.

In this disease there is great abuses committed by a number of vn-skillfull ignorant people, boyde of all good conscience and feare of God, who for euery simple kind of rupture, makes incision and cuts away the production of the Periton and Stone: if the dissent be on both sides, they cut off both the stones, which renders a man sterile, and causeth the haire of the beard to fall: and if yong ones be cut on both sides, they haue no beard at all, besides they be euer fable and small voyced like unto women, as sayth Aristotle. Besides that, oftentimes in cutting the sicke dyeth, chiefly when the dilatation is great. Sometimes the Intestine sticketh to the Periton, which they knit altogether, and cuts away the production; after the which the sicke aboydeth y excrements at the mouth, & dyeth most miserably. The stones are ordayned by God for generation of mankind, and are called by Aristotle and Galen principall members. Hesiodorus and Constantinus say, who soeuer doe vse these members lewdly and wilfully in fleshly lyking, more than is graunted for lawfull generation, hee doth wrong to the Father of Lyght, and shall haue no company with the blessed, but on the contrary the paines of hell, as sayth Saint Ambrose. Then seeing the thinnesse of those parts, and the opinion which both the Diuines and others of the learned, is thought of them; What shall we y are Christians thinke of those ignorant, who altogether cut away all those parts without hope of recovery, and

and that for a little piece of money. Such should be severely
 ly punished, and not to haue company with Christians. Yet
 perhaps some of these deceauers will say that I speake, for
 malice, because I cannot doe that operation : for answere
 to such, I haue often times scene that operation done, and
 haue diuers times done it my selfe, the which I doe now
 repent in committing such a haynous sinne. For satisfac-
 tion of malicious people, who perhaps may thinke as those
 deceauers doe, I will in few termes set downe the forme of
 that operation. First, the body must be purged, and bled
 if need require; the night before the worke, the patient must
 eate little : the next morning about 8. or 9. houres the sicke
 shall be layd vppon a board, in such sort, that his head and
 shoulders be lower then his body, so the Intestine shall
 reduce more easily, thereafter the sicke his legges and
 thighs must be tyed fast to the sayd fourme or table, as also
 his handes, then reduce the Intestine, Omentum or both,
 within the belly, which being done, some one shall hold fast
 his two fingers vpon the hole of discent, that it fall not, then
 the incisor shall stand at the side of the sicke, and gripe the
 stone of the soze side, betwene the thre foremost fingers of
 the left hand, put it vp almost to the hole of the dissent, and
 make it appeare vpon the poynt of the middelt finger, hol-
 ding it fast betwenn the other two fingers, then make your
 incision with a bistory or rasour vpon the stone that is two
 ynches large or thereabouts. Some doe vse to make this
 incision lower downe in the codde, next pull out the testicle
 and separate the *Didim* from the *Scrotum*, till such time as
 you come to the hole of dissent, taking heed in ouer soze pul-
 ling, in case the nerues and muscles, Cremastres, receaue
 inflammation, or conuulsion, and death: being so conuay-
 ed neare the hole of dissent, you must with a strong thread
 in foure folde well waxed, knit the production so fast as may
 be, to the end it let the filling from the testicle within an inch
 of that knot, cut off the production with the testicle, then
 make a little incision in the nether part of the *Scrotum*, that
 the

Haly Abbas.
 Rodgerius.
 Theodoricus
Al. li. 2. ca 65
 Brunus.
 Rollandus.

the matter may euacuate more easily, the apply defensiues, and astringents, stay the flux of blood by cauters actuals, as *Rollan. lib. 3.* counsaileth Rolandus, then vse embrocations and *Compresses* in Dreccate, with digestiues and mundificatiues till the threed fall. Thereafter vse incarnatiues and conglutinatiues, as in other wounds. If the Intestine or *Omentum* do fall in the inner side, doe the like. Some vse in place of this ligatour to see the production with a needle and threed, thereafter doth cauterize the seaming, which oftentimes for halt or other violence, doth either slip or breake, whereof come euill symptoms and often death.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the rupture called Epiplocele.

Epiplocele is a dissent of the Caule or *Omentum* in the Cod or *Inguina*. The Cause is not different from the precedent, accompanied with much humidity in those parts. The Signes are like the former, sauing that it is softer not dolorous, yet more vneasie to reduce. The Cure is first in good dyet, purge the body and situate the sicke, as you haue heard in *Interocela*. Reduce the *Epiploon*, then keepe his bed for a time : in the which he shall vse fomentations astringent, with emplasters vpon Leather, made thus, take the playster called red desiccative, vnguent *cometissa*, and *contrarupturam*, of each two vnc. pouder of *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra sigillata*, Masticke, Myrtills, Thuris, Ruts of Cyprus, and Pitch, of each a little whytes of Eggs, so many as will make all in forme of playster, of good consistance, remove it euery six dayes once, and continue the fomentation euer a little befoze the applying of the playster, this order would be obserued a moneth or six weekes, in which time I haue often found good successe, specially in yong ones : if by those remedies you profit not, the bandage must euer be vased, otherwise that miserable remedy commonly practised *Charlitanes* and quicke siluers, as you haue heard in the last Chapter.

Definition.

Cause.

Cel. l. 7. ca. 25.

Signes.

Cure.

George Putorius.

Gord. part. 7.

cap. 7.

Vigo.

Roll. li. 3. ca. 35.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the watry Hernie, called *Hydrocele*, or
Hernia aquosa.

Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 62.

Fu. li. 5. chir.

Al. li. 2. ca. 62.

Gal. lib. 3. de

simp. cau. ca. 2.

Cause.

Ætius serm.

4. cap. 22.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Bas. li. 3. de ra.

George Pic-

torius.

Bac. lib. citato.

Fuch. li. 3. de

med. morb.

Faven. cap. de

hernia aquosa.

Pau. lib. citato.

Alb. lib. citato.

The watry Hernie is a tumor in the Cod, which groweth by little and little sometime to a great bignesse in the Cod, or between the two membranous which cover the stones, called *Dartos* and *Erethroides*: sometime it is accompanied with the Gout, and is called *Hydrointerocoele*. The Cause is like as you have heard in *Hydropsie*, and is an *Hydropsie* particular: sometime by strokes the vessels being rent, the blood doth change into a watry humor. The Signes are, the tumor is cleere, groweth long still in one estate, not painefull, heavy, sometime hard, and is known beholding the Cod between your eye and the candle: it is sometime inclosed in a membrane, and appeareth to be a third testicle. The Iudgements, some resolve, oftentimes the intestines falleth with it, chiefly in the left side, by reason the melt, which is full of colde melancholique humor, that oftentimes corrupt the testicle. As for the cure of such, the sicke must be purged with fit medicines according to the nature of the humor, use meane exercise, and meats that be hote and dry in small quantity, drinke little, and hold the belly loose, sleepe not much, use diureticke things to prouoke urine, and abstain from such things as prouoke wind. The particular remedies are in using of fomentations, as in *Hydropsie*, next an astringent plaister made of red desiccative, Unguent *Commetisse*, with the powder of *Lapis calaminaris*, extinguished in Vinegar, Ocre, Balust, and Bolarmenie, Allom, Mustard seed of *Euphorbe*, mire all together with a little oyle of *Canmomill*, and lay on the soze. If those remedies suffice not, by reason of the great quantity of water, you must put a Seton through the lowest part of the Codde, and draw it a little twice a day, till the humor be euacuated.

If

If the humors be in y^e membraines that couer y^e stones, make incision in the side of y^e Cod, eschewing the testicle, put in a tent and dresse it twice a day, keepe it open till the humors be euacuated, vse rentedies anodines to appease the dolour, and cicatrize it as other wounds. The. li. 13. c. 36

CHAP. LIX.

¶ Of the windie Hernie, called *Physoccele*, or *Pneumatocele*.

This Hernie is a collection of wind in the *Scrotum*, it causeth by an imbecility of naturall heat in those parts, and ouer much phlegmaticke matter, with such other causes as you haue heard in windy aposthumes. The Signes, the tumor is somewhat hard, light, round, suddenly ingendered, possessing for the most part the whole *Scrotum* and wand, resisting to touch, clere like vnto a bladder full of wind: the yard greater in one place then in an other. The Iudgements, if this vapour doth not dissipate, it causeth many euils: sometimes it doth possesse the whole body, and proceedeth often of matter venomous. The Cure shall be first in good dyet, as in *Oedema*, next applye on the place things resolutiues, as this fomentation in the beginning, thus made, *Rec. Origani, Calamintsi, Savina, Salvia, Betonica, Ruta, Camomilla, an. M. sem. Contundantur, & buliant in Posca, hoc est, in vini & aqua aequales partibus, ad consumptionem tertiae partis, fiat fomentatio cum spongijs.* After the which annoynt the part with oyle of *Euphorbe* and *Sambocini*. Some allow the playster of *Vigo* with *Mercurie* or *Diapalma* mixed with wine: also the dregs of *Claret* wine boyled with branne, and lay it warme to the place: if the woundy tumor be with dolour and inflammation, you shall vse anodines and resolutiues, with such emplaster as hath the vertue to soften and resolute, and not vse infusion as some doe allowe. Definition.
Cause:
Gal. li. 6. mor.
& simp.
Signes.
Iudgements.
Pa. li. 5. ca. 64.
Cure.
Favien. de med.
morb. cap. de
hernia aquosa.
Vig. li. 3. ca. 4.
Al. li. 2. ca. 66.

CHAP. LX.

Of the Herne Carnosa, called Sarcocoele.

Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 63.

Faventin. de
med. morb.

Cause.

Al. li. 2. ca. 63.

Vig. li. 2. ca. 6.

Signes.

Guido part. 7.

Judgements.

Guydo.

Gal. 14. meth.

cap. 7.

Cure.

Vig. l. 2. ca. 38.

Cel. li. 7. ca. 23.

Theo. li. 3. c. 36.

Gal. loc. citat.

Arno. de villa

nova. de mala

complexione.

Petrus Fran-

co. de Hernijs.

Sarcocoele is a tumor in the Codde, and sometime in the Membraine Dartos and Erethroides, chiefly about the Stones, like a schirrous tumor, accompanied with vaines varicous. The Cause, is abundance of grosse humors in those parts, which often corrupteth the testicle, and last degendereth into an hard flesh disposition. The Signes, are vnequall tumor, hard, alwaies in one estate, dolorous, and being touched (all which is in the testicle) doth moue. The Judgements, when it happeneth in yong ones, and handled in the beginning, sometime doth heale, but for common it is most difficile, and of all the eight kinds is worst. If by feeling of it at the vppermost part of the Dydim it seemeth vnaturall great, the tumor is incureable, and better not to touch it then to attempt any cure: if you find the Dydim small, there is some hope of cure, for the which wee must situate the sicke as you haue heard, next make the incision in the vpper part of the Cod, knit the Dydim and cauterize it, as in Interocoele you haue heard, you must cut a little aboue the excrescence, for often it is residue, if any portion remaine: if it adheare to the Cod, separate it, and cut off the testicle with the excrescence: if after the incision there commeth inflammation and dolour, let the patient bleed, and rest 5 or 6 dayes, so leaue the cure to giue order to the accidents.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the Herne Varicous, called Cirsocele.

Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 64.

Bar. de consen-
su medic.

Cause.

Cirsocele, is a tumor and dilatation of the vaines that nourisheth the testicles, which with their membranies are full of melancholique blood. The Cause, is some grosse humor or melancholique blood gathered in the part, by reason of

of the debility, lownesse of the part, and heauinesse of the humoꝝ. The Signes, is repletion of the vaines, which sometimes be few in number, otherwhiles many, and are wrapt together like vnto a vine branch, soft to touch, and returneth into the belly by pressing on the *Dydim*. The Judgements are, it is without dolour, most dangerous and difficile to be cured, as you shall heare in the varicies of the legges. The Cure, shall be first in purging the body of melancholy, and bleed if neede be, next vse emplaysters and se-rats, as are at length set downe by *Vigolib. 2.* If by that you profit not, you must make incision in the *Scrotum* the breadth of 2 fingers, in the place of y^e varice, thereafter passe two needles with double thred vnder the varice, one in the vpper part of the wound, another in the lower, leaving an ynch or thereby betwixt, then open the varice, and euacuate the humoꝝ contained. If there be diuers doe the like, which being done, knit fast the thred, and handle the wound as others, till the threds fall. If the testicle be incised with many vaines, accompanied with dolour that it may not be handled, this way the *Dydim* must be cut, and proceede in the cure as in the chapter precedent you haue heard.

Gal. li. tumor.
Signes.

Judgements.
Gord. par. ca. 7.
Baccha. lib. 3.

CHAP. LXII.

¶ Of the Hernies humerall.

H*Ernia humeralis*, is an Aposthume and defluxion of humoꝝ in the rod or membranes that couer the testicles, or in their proper substance. The Cause is not different from other aposthumes, neither the Signes. The Judgements, such are long in healing, the part being cold and membranous, the tumor sometime suppureth, otherwhiles resolueth: If it continue long, it corrupteth the testicle. The Cure, the sicke shall be purged by Glusters or otherwise, bleede, rest, and weare a trusse to hold up the testicles, and dress it according to the nature of the humoꝝ and accidents, after

Definition.

Cause.
Signes.
Judgements.

Cure.
Ro. li. 3. ca. 38.

after the methode set downe in the generall Chapter of apo-
Ro. li. 3. ca. 37. *Hernes.* If it tend to suppuration, make your incision in the
 side of the Cod, as was shewed in *Hydrocela*, then cleanse
 the ulcer and consolidate the wound. If there remaine barn-
 nes, you shall (as counsaileth *Avicenna*) take byanne or grate
 wheate and boyle in *Orniell*, in the which hath been boyled
 a little *Amontacke* and apply it warme, and remoue it twice
 euery day, and thus much touching the eight kinds of
Hernes.

CHAP. LXIII.

C Of the Bladder, and the diseases which
 happen in it.

Arist. 2. phis.

Hesiodorus.

Constantine.

Arist. li. 3. phis.

Gal. de facul.

natu. & s. de

usu part.

F Drasmuch as euery Articen ought to consider the mat-
 ter & forme of that he is to worke vpon: euen so ought we
 to know that wherof we are to speake of, which is the blad-
 der called *Cistis* in Greeke, and *Vesica* in Latine. *Hesiodo-*
rus and *Constantine* doe saye, that it hath that name for the
 taking and receauing of the water. *Aristotle* sayth, that
 euery beast that hath loynes, doth much thirst, and needeth
 rather moist meat than dry, to such the bladder is needfull:
 also those beasts which haue feathers and skaels, haue no
 bladder, for in such the weake superfluity doth nourish the
 skales. The bladder is composed of two tunickes, the one
 is proper to it selfe, the other it hath from the *Periton*: al-
 so three kinds of fibres, which are *Rights*, *Obliques*, and
Transuersels, with six great vessels set in the necke thereof,
 to wit, three in each side, a vaine, from the vaine caue, to giue
 nourishment, an artier, from the great artier, to giue life,
 with a nerue to giue feeling. The bladder is scituate in man
 between the *Os pubis* and intestine, and in women betweene
Os pubis and matrix. It hath one muscle called *Sphinder*,
 composed of *Fibris transuersis*, which serue for three vtilities:
 the first is, that there remaine nothing in the conduit:
 the

the second, it helpeth to close the mouth of the bladder : the third halteneth the expulsion of the excrecence. The bladder is a part very worthy for many respects, yet subject to sundry griefes, like as vlcers, paralitie, the stone, carnosity, Aposthumes, cankers, fistules, and diuers others. In it all kind of vlcers do engender, as in other parts: of which, some happen within the capacity or body, others in the neck where the vrine doth passe. The Causes proceade of heate or inflammation in those parts by the acrimony of the humors, stone, sand, slyme, or sharpe humor which hath the vertue to excoziate & corrode : also by some virulent humor or gonorrhe, as you shall heare in my Booke of the Spanish or French sicknesse. The Signes of those which is in the bottom of the bladder, is continuall dolour at the *Pœnill* or *Os pubis*, aboundance of rotten matter which floweth: also many little pelliculs like threads of wooll, which euer comes with the water : if the vlcer be in the necke of the bladder, as often happeneth, the dolour is not great, except in the time of watermaking, and a little after, and the more sharpe and hote the water is, the greater is the payne, tension, or erection of the wand, auoyding a sanious matter, either with or after the water. The Iudgements, all vlcers in the bottom of the bladder, are either incureable, or at the least hardly do receaue any cure, being a part membranous, and some water euer remaining, which both doth augment the vlcer and impasse the conglutination. Of the which if the sicke become leane & atrofied, specially in the thighes, death doth hastily approach. Some vlcers do happen in y^e necke of the bladder : of which, some are cureable, others very difficile, by reason of the continuall passage of the water. The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as in good forme of dyet, abstaining from things of euill digestion, and ingendereth wind, from all soure, sharpe, bitter, salt, and hote things, from wine and all such thinges as hath the vertue to make y^e blood subtil, eat bread of good white wheate well baked, tender flesh, as Gutton, Meale, Kidde, fete of Calues,

Cause.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Hip. li. 6. ca. 18

Cure.

Ran. de curan. morbis.

Bolus.

Injection in
the necke of
the bladder.

Cōfilia Fernel.

Injection cal-
led *Aqua ca-*
lestis.

Calues, or Gutton, yong foules, and such like brothes of
solwles or Gutton, with Plundamas, Letice, Purpie, and
others of like quality, hold y belly ever loose, either w purga-
tions, or Glitters, the glitter may be thus made, take a
sheepes head, and seeth it till the flesh come from the bones,
then seeth in that broth flowers of Cammonill, Helilot, and
Hallowes, of each one handfull, take a pound of that decoc-
tion, with two yolkes of Egges, and some common oyle,
and make a glitter, which may be vsed either in the mo-
ning or a little after supper. In like manner this *Bolus* may
be vsed, euery eight dayes once, made thus, take *Cassia fistu-*
la recently drawen out of the Reed, 8. Drams, Kubarbe sub-
tilly puluerished, 2. Drams, the electuary of Dragagant, of
the which you may make a *Bolus*, thereafter rest a day or
two, then take Terebinthin of Venice 3. Drams, that is
well washed in water of Ciccozy, Rose, Pariter, or Scabi-
ous, which may be taken in Boll with powder of Liccozyse,
or dissolued with a yolke of an new layed egge, and white
wine, or Cowes milke: then vse this injection thre or foure
times a day, with a Serine thus composed, take red Roses,
Plantine, Barlye, and Abscynth, of each a handfull, Sen-
tozie halfe a handfull, make a decoction to the quantity of
a pound, in the which you shall dissolue 2. ounces of hony of
Roses. After you haue vsed this a certaine time, you may
vse this, dissolue in the former decoction Aloes 2. Drams,
Myrrhe 1. Dram, *Aristolocia rotunda* in powder, 1. Dram
and a halfe, of the which you shall make injection and vse
thre or foure times a day: Then vse thinges to dry, con-
glutinate, and pacifie paine, amongst the which I haue
found great effects in this which I call *Aqua calestis*, and
doe commonly vse it in such cases: the forme whereof is
this, take a quantity of whites of egges, and beat them long
in a Bason, then let the stand a little till the water remaine
at the ground, then mixe as much Plantine and Rose water,
with a little Camphyer, and Trosciques of Rasi, or in place
of these Trosciques, a little Lytharge of Gold, Ceruse, and
a little

a little Bolarmenie, with a very small quantitie of greene
Coppasle subtilly puluerised, passe it through a cloth and
make your iniection, the which may be continued till the
ulcer be whole. If at any time the paine be fore, you shall
make iniection with a little warme milke. As for Paralysis,
or weakenesse in the necke of the bladder, you shall vse fo-
mentations, neruals, emplaysters, and lineaments, which
haue the vertue to corroborate and comfort. Also you may
vse the balme of Iohn de Vygo, and Guydo *ad Paralyse*, Balme of Iohn
with such other remedies as you shall heare in the generall *de Vygo*.
chapter of Wounds, intreating of that matter. As touching
the extraction of the stone, it requireth a long discourse, for
the which I meane to deferre it to the Poore mans guyde.
In the meane time the skilfull Chyrurgion may take ad-
uice with Marianus Sanctus, Pareus, Petrus Franco, and di-
uers others, who haue learnedly written of that matter.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Wand or Yard, & certaine diseases
incident to it.

It is sayd by the learned Philosopher, that Man doth ma-
ke wayes passe Women, but chiefly in one particular
member, which is called by the Greekes *Caulos*, and by the *Gal. li. 5. & 16*
Latines *Mentula*, or *Virga*, it is a part neruous, ligamen- *de usu pa. 26.*
tous, concaue, or fistulous, composed of a spongiouse flesh: *loc. affect. ca. 6.*
It is situate on the necke of the bladder, and hath the origi-
nall from the *Os pubis*, in it is the conduit of the seede and ur-
ine, vpon the which there is a concaue nerue, which being
full of spirits or wind, doth make the erection of the wand,
it hath vaines and artiers, with thre muscles one on each
side, and the third in the middell, which do go to the middell
of the prepuice, and doth hold the wand straight after the *Gal. 14. de vfu*
rection in time of copulation: the toppe of it is euer of one *ex partium*.
bignesse, and is called by the Greekes *Balanus*, and by the

Gal. lib. 6. ca. 6. *loco. affect.* *li. de jem.* *14. de usu par.* *Gal. li. de locis affectis.* *Cause.* *Signes.* *Judgements.* *Alfon. Ferrus.*

Latines Glans : in the which gland the nerue cauernous doth not enter, it hath a little skinne that couereth it called *Preputium* : yet Aristotle is of opinion, that that skinne hath no name. The wand is one of the chiefe instruments that serueth for generation, and is subiect to diuers diseases, like as tumors, inflammation, Aposthumes, winds, blcers, Cankers, and such like, for the which haue your recourse to the proper chapter intreating of those things. It is likewise subiect to carnosities, with certaine vlcers and other affections, as you shall heare in the next chapter. The carnositie or caruncle is an excrescence of superfluous flesh that groweth in diuers parts of the canell of the wand, and necke of the bladder, impassing the free passage of the seed in Man, and vyne in both sex. The Cause proceedeth by hote inflammation or vlcere in those parts ; also by heat and acrimonie of the water, by sands, stone, rotten syne, or filthy humors, but oftentimes by a sharpe bitter humor which distilleth from the glands prostates, which doth excoziate and corrode these parts. Sometime it doth proceed of a malignant rotten virulent humor, as you shall heare in the Booke of the French sicknesse. The Signes are known by the sound or Catheler ; also by the difficulty and stopping of the water, which sometimes cometh forth like a small threed, otherwhiles forked, with two branches, at times it doth issue, droppe, and droppe with such vehement dolour and presse, that oftentimes the excrements doe auoyde. The Judgements, they neuer do heale of themselves, and are very difficile to be cured with medicaments, chiefly such as are old, callous, and hard. The Cure consisteth, first in purgations and blæding, specially of the caruncle it selfe, the blæding doth discharge it: also in y^e vsage of things that haue the vertue to correct the acrimony or heat of the vyne; next, if it be hard and callous, you must vse fomentations, lineaments, cataplasmes, and plaisters to soften it, as you shall heare at length in my Booke of the French sicknesse. The fomentation or cataplasms may be made of Althea, Lettice, Bryone,

Wyone, Violets, and Paritare, Lyntseed, Fenegreke,
 flowers of Cammomill, and Helilot, boyle all in water
 or milke, and foment with sponges morning and evening:
 that being done, dry the part and annoynt it with this linc-
 ment, made of *Axungia humana*, *unguenti de alibea Agrip-
 pa*, mixed with oyle of Cammomill and Lyllics, using some-
 time the plaster of *Vigo*, *sine Mercurio*. The caruncle be-
 ing so softned and prepared, it must be corrected and taken
 away with medicaments proper for that effect, as thus, take
 the vnguent of *Rosatun*, *Mesues*, halfe an ounce, powder
 of *Allumen vstum*, *Mercurie*, *Sauine*, and *Dear*, of each a
 little, mixe all together and make an vnguent: also the
 scumme of hony, being burnt and put in powder, and mixed
 with a little Serote or oyle of *Mar*, both in short time con-
 sume the caruncle, being applyed thereto: Also *Pompholi-
 gos* well washed and mixed with a little *Sabine* and *Ocre*
 well puluerished, burnt shelles of Egges, *Antimony crudi*,
 and *Album Rasit*, well puluerished and mixed together: for
 this purpose I commonly vse *Rosat Mesues*, with a little
Sublimie, and doe apply it vppon a little *Clare* candle, to
 the bignesse of a little rush, which sometime must be in rolled
 with a fine small linnen cloth, thereafter annoynt it with
 the sayd vnguent: the cloth causeth the vnguent to adheare
 better than the simple candle, till it come to y^e place of excres-
 cence or carnosity. I doe oftentimes vse in the place of this
 candle a little tent made like vnto a point horne of fine lyn-
 nen cloth, sewed with a needle and small threed, of the which
 there must a portion remaine at the sayd tent, to pull it out
 if need be. After it be thrust vnto the part affected, with a
 long small sound of Silver: this tent doe I annoynt with
 one of the foresayd vnguents, & do dresse it twice or thrice a
 day. If the caruncle be painefull, I make the vnguent more
 weake, in adding fewer of the powders, and sometimes vs-
 ing iniections that haue the vertue to pacifie y^e paine, which
 sometime may be done with warme milke onely. This
 methode doe I follow untill the caruncle be consumed, ther-
 after with drying vnguents and iniections I drye and sic-
 catize

Divers reme-
 dies to con-
 sume the Ca-
 runcle.

catrize these vlcers. For the which purpose I do commonly vse the water set downe in the last chapter called *Aqua celestis*; by these meanes I haue cured sundry: Diuers other remedies you may find in my Booke of the French sicknesse in the Chapter of Caruncle.

CHAP. LXV.

Of certaine other diseases of the Wand.

Phymosis.
Ada. Loniceri.
expl. morb.

Signes.
Al. li. 2. ca. 55.

Haly Abbas.

Cure.

Cels. li. 7. ca. 25

Pa. li. 6. ca. 54.

BESIDES such diseases as you haue heard in the precedent Chapter, their happeneth likewise certaine other diseases, like as closing of the prepuce called *Phymosis*, retraction, or shortning of the ligament called *Carinum vinculum*, Ulcers, Tumors, Glandules, involuntary erection called *Priapismus*; Of y^e which (all) I shal briefly speake, beginning at y^e closing of the prepuce, which hapneth either by nature from the first confirmation, or by accident, like as siccatrizes of vlcers, of the prepuce that couereth the Wand head, when it is altogether closed, or at the least hath so little passage, that neither seede nor vrine can freely passe, nor the gland called *Balanus* be discovered. The Cure shall be to open and dilate the prepuce with the poynt of a sharpe chizell or bistorie, then hold a tent of lead or tree in it for certaine dayes, that it conglutinate againe, annoynt alwayes the tent with oyle of sweet Almonds: sometime it happeneth that Children are borne, and the fundament close, which likewise must be cut or rent with the fingers, such children are of short dayes. I haue seen the hole of the prepuce lower then the point of the gland, which made that the seed could not goe right to the matrice, neither the vrine abyde directly away, except the Wand had been turned upward toward the belly part. For the Cure whereof I haue dilated or insisted that part, to the place where naturally it should be, and hold it dilated for a while, & cure it as other simple wounds: it happeneth also that sometimes the lyget called the byrdle

of the wand is so shortned, that it maketh the wand to turne
 backe and not straight, in such sort, as it were a convulsion:
 the which impasseth the seed to goe rightly to the mother: for
 the cure of this, the ligament must be cut as that of the tong *Tra. li. 9. cap. 9.*
 in yong children, and cure it as other simple wounds: some-
 time betwixt the prepuce & *Balanus*, there are excrescences or
 sundry warts which do proceed in having company with wo-
 men in time of their moneths; for taking away wherof, you
 must vse powder of Hauine, and Decre, well dzyed and sub-
 tilly puluerished. Sometime there happeneth little tumors
 glandulous outwardly by the side of the prepuce, to the
 bignesse of a Racket or Tennis ball, impassing in any sort
 the company with women, such must be knit with a liga-
 four, as you haue heard in the Chapter of *Paraulis*. The
 involuntary erection of the wand, called by the Latine *Pri-* *Pa. li. 6. ca. 59.*
apismus, which is a disease contrary to *Satiriasis*: for *Sati-* *Pa. li. 3. ca. 56.*
rias is a continuall erection of the wand with delight of con- *Tra. li. 9. ca. 10.*
 cupiscence: and *Priapismus* is an erection without appetite *Gal. li. 6. de*
 or carnall lust. It doth proceed of wind or vaporous spirit in *male affect. loc.*
 the nerue cauernous of the yarde, or by the dilatation of the *cap. 6.*
 artiers therof. Also by lying on soft beds chiefly on the back,
 eating and drinking of vaporous things. Also by thicknes
 and closenesse of the pores; it is most dangerous if speedy
 remedy be not had. For the Cure, purge, draw bloud, ab- *Cure.*
 staine from strong drinke, and all such things as engender
 winds or vapours, annoynt the yarde and raynes with iuy-
 ces of cold hearbs, cold lineaments made of *Cerat galen*, *sang-*
uis draconis, *sempervivum*, vinegar, and such like: apply
 to the loynes a cake of lead annoynted with quicke-siluer,
 foment the yarde with decoction of *Agnus castus*, *Roses*, *Ca-* *Gord. part. 7.*
momill, *Peniroyall*, and *Melilot*, with such other remedies
 as is set downe in the Chapter of windy tumors. Diuers
 other remedies for this purpose, are set downe by *Galen* 14.
method. cap. 8. & 9. de compos. medicam. cap. 9. Aetius
serm. 8. cap. 32. Avicen fol. 20. cap. 39. and diuers other
 old writers.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the tumor in the Inguine or Liske,
called *Bubo*.

Definition.

*Gal. li. 5. ca. tu.**& 2. ad glau.**& 3. meth.*

Cause.

Judgements.

Gal. 13. meth.

Cure.

THIS word *Bubo*, is taken in this place for that tumor which is betwixt the thigh and the body, called in Latine *Inguen*; in the which place there is sundry little kirkels or glands, which sometime do swell and tumifie. The Cause is a defluxion of humors in those parts, violent exercise, strokes, crysis of maladies, dolours, or vlcers in the thigh, legge, or feet. The Judgements, such as happen by cryse of ticknes, are difficile, but if neither feuer, nor vapour venomous hath proceeded, it is more easie to be helped. As for the Cure, sometime it doth resolve, otherwhiles it suppureth, for the which follow that Cure which you have heard in the Chapter of *Scrophula*, and other aposthumes which happen in parts glandulous. There be other certaine glands a little lower downe in the thigh, where ordinarily doth engender the Plague, wherof (God willing) you shall heare the Cure in the Booke of the Plague.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the tumor or paine in the Hanch or Hur-
cle bone, called *Ciatia*.

THIS disease (which commonly doth possesse the ioynts, by the falling of some humor aboue nature betwixt the ioynt-bones) is called by the Latines *Morbus articularis*, and in vulgar the Gout, of the which there be diuers kinds and names according to the ioynt which is diseased, as for example: that which occupieth the Jawes, is called *Schiagonogra*: if in the Pecke, it is called *Trachelagra*: in the Backe, it is called *Rachiragra*: that in the Shoulders is called *Omogra*: that in the Clavicules, is called *Clerfagra*: that

that in y^e elbow is called *Pethyagra*, that in the hands is called *Cheiragra*, that in the foote is called *Podagra*, and that in the Hanch is called *Ischias*, that in the knees is called *Gona-* Aphor. 6. &
gra: here I shall content me onely to speake of the last two, com. 49.
 because they bee most common, the others I leaue to the
 learned Physition, as matters more Physicall than Chyr-
 urgicall. The disease which is called *Ciatica*, proceedeth Definition.
 partly by the vsage of such meats as ingendereth Phlegma- Pa. 1. 3. ca. 77.
 tique humors, also a defluxion of a grosse coniealed humor, Cause.
 which possesseth the ioynt of y^e hanch bone, which partly doth
 proceed for want of exercise, as also sometime by immode-
 rate vsing of women, stopping of the hemorrhoides or mo-
 nethly couries.

The Cure, is first in good dyet, vsing things of good and
 easie digestion, purging the grosse phlegmatique humors by
 laxatives and vometers, letting blood of the Saphin vaine
 of the soze side, application of fomentations, apparitiues and
 resolutiues on the part, ventosies, with scarifications, ves-
 icatories good to breake the skinne, with such plaisters and
 linements that haue the vertue to heate and resolute: in
 the meane time keepe euer the belly loose, with moderate
 exercise. To some persons I haue vsed decoctions sudorificke
 made of *Gaiac* and *Salsaparilla*, morning and euening for a
 certaine time, which doth prouoke sweat: after the which
 the body being well dyled, I haue euer vsed this linement,
 to wit, *Rec. Axungia humana, anseris, Galina, medula cru-*
ris vituli, cerui & bovis, an. vnc. 2. olei vulpini, vn. 3 2 liquifant
simul cum aqua salvia, chimici iue arhetice an. drag. 1. sem.
olei de cera drag. 1. misce simul adde sub finem aqua vita vnc.
sem. fiat linementum, wherewith you shall annoynt the hanch,
 thigh, and leg, apply aboue it blacke sheepes wool, as it co-
 meth from the shepe: by the continuing of this certaine
 daies, I haue cured diuers: also oyle wherein Frogs haue
 bene boyled till the flesh be separate from the bones, with
 the which oyle rubbe and annoynt the soze place, which is an
 excellent remedie, as sayth Mizaldus.

Cure.

Mizaldus.

To

Ro. li. 4. ca. 12.

To others in whome those remedies haue not profited, I haue applyed cauters either in the inside or outside of the leg vnder the knee, containing a bullet or pie therein for a time, till the humors did euacuate and the sicke become well: some doe vse to apply two or three cauters on the soze part, by the which meanes diuers times I haue found good successe. Sundry other remedies are set downe by the learned, but by these only haue I euer found best helpe.

CHAP. LXVIII.

¶ Of the tumor or paine in the knees.

Gal. com. in apho. 74. li. 4. & 6. epid.

Cause.

Signes.

Iudgements.

*Hippo. prog.**Cel. li. 4. ca. 23.*

Cure.

*Avicen.**Henricus.*

The tumor or paine in the knee doth proceed either of congestion, defluxion of humors, or by strokes, falls, crysis of sicknesse, long trauell, ryding, heat, cold, or by long diseases. The Signes, are manifest. The Iudgements, such as happen after long sicknesse, are difficile and dangerous, or at the least long in healing: the legge and the thigh oftentimes become atrofied, extenuate, painefull, and dolorous, the humor being either hote or cold, sometime there is virulencie and malignity in the humor, which is vnder the little bone of the knee called *Rotula*, which sometime causeth the ioynt to disioyne, and the *Rotula* turn quite ouer, as once I did see at Paris. The Cure whereof did consist in vniuersall and particular remedies: the vniuersall shall be according to the quality of the humor, as is set downe in the generall chapter of Tumors. The topickall or particular remedies shall be in the vse of repercussives, discutients, and drying things, according to the nature of the part, which shall bee distinguished according to the degrees of the Apoplexie, as you haue heard in Phlegmon. If it tend to suppuration, beware to open it, it is forbidden by our auncients to make deepe incisions vnder the *Rotule* of the knee, because those parts are both sensible and painefull, and oftentimes euill accidents ensue; so you shall vse remedies corroboratiues,

roboratiues, and anodines, euacuating the matter, and siccatizing the wound, as you haue heard in others. Sometime the tumor is engendered of wind: if so be, you shall cure it as you haue heard in watry and windy Tumors.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of the tumor in the vaines of the Legges,
which is called *Varica*, and by the Greekes
Cirfos.

Varix is a dilatation of the vaine, greater than naturall it should be, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, as on the temples, bellie, vnder the nauill, on y^e testicles and matrix, but chiefly in the legges, and happeneth sometime in one vaine onely, otherwhiles in diuers together, tumified and full of a thicke burnt melancholicke bloud, letting the action of the place. The Cause, is abundance of melancholous humor, retention of moneths in women, and hemoꝝrhoides in both sexes, which dilateth the vaines, and sometime doth breake them, as happeneth sometime to women in their trauell, the which I haue entreated at length in my Booke of the diseases of women. It proceedeth also of vehement exercise, as leaping, wrestling, carrying of great burdens, strokes, falles, torments, and too much standing, great travelling on foote, and such like. The Signes are perceiued by the greatnes of the vaine, which commonly are more tumified, and blacker then the naturall. The Iudgements, such as are interne are incurable, so not to be touched, because it letteth the fluxion, so remaineth and goeth to the noble parts, causeth great accidents, they entertaine old blcers, and letteth the cure of them. The Cure, is first in good dyet, abstaining from things that ingender melancholy: some do vse when the varices are little onely, to comfort the part that the humor descend not, neither be so easily receaued by the part: also to apply playsters aboue the

Definition.

Pa.li.6.ca.82.

Lebot li 3. of

Ornament.

Loni.expl.ver.

Cause.

Avinzor.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Gor.pa.7.c.20

Cure.

Rasis lib. 9.

Rolandus.

the

gij 878
sngm

Pa. loco citato the knee, to intercept the humors made of Bolarmine, *Terra sigillata*, Ruts of Cyprus, Gaules, *Hypocistis*, Incense, Dragagant, Barly, or Beane flower : also the plaister called *Contra rapturam* is very good, with the usages of strait bandages from the foot to the knee, sopped in sad Claret wine or some decoction astringent : let the sicke use little travell, hold up the legs : if by those remedies the disease cure not,

Cell. li. 7. ca. 31. Some counsaile to incise them in diuers places, according to the circumbolutions, and let them bleed to the force of the sicke, then close them up and bind the wound with a compresse and band wet in Claret wine and water, and handle the wound as other bleedings : but before you bleed, you must foment the legges with hote water, to make the grosse thicke melancholicke blood become more thinne, as also to make the vaines more furnished, resting that day, and if they doe swell againe, doe the like within two or three dayes after, the place alwayes being first marked with a little ynke on the skin above the vaine, thereafter take up the skin with thy hand to discover the vaine : make the incision in the middlest thereof, then let the grip goe that the vaine may be scene ; then passe two needles as you haue heard in the herne varicous, let it bleed a quantity, tye it fast, let the threed fall off it selfe without drawing of it by force, & cure the wound as others. Some for this purpose doe vse the actuall cauter, whereof I haue found euill inconueniences to ensue, for the which I vse onely to apply a potentiall cauter above the skin in the varice, which doth not onely burne the skinne, but also the varice, which done I let the escharre to fall off it selfe, without any applying of medicament or instrument, saue onely a little fresh butter, vntill the escharre fall, and the vaine conglutinate of it selfe, as I haue often proued.

*Fuch. li. 7. de
med. morb.
cap. 8.
Che. li. 1. ca. 58*

CHAP. LXX.

¶ Of the little tumor in the Legs, called
Dracunculus.

D*racunculus* is a tumor or extraordinary dolour that is bredde in the legs or armes, and is called *Dragnens*. Definition. Pa.li.4.ca.83. Aur.li.4.ca.21
 Yet diuers Authoꝝ haue giuen it diuers names, as Avicen calleth it *Meden*, by the name of a Towne where it is most frequent. Albucasis calleth it *Vena emilis*. Haly Abbas *Vena famosa*. There is great difference touching the Cause and Cure of it. It chaunceth most commonly in the high parts of India and Egypt, and is not often seen among vs; yet somewhat I will say of it for the better instruction of the yong Chyrurgion. Judgements. Pa.cap.citato. Ada.Louuer. Soranus. Al.li.2.ca.92.
 Paulus and Avicen are of opinion, that in the place affected, the humor is like vnto little wormes: sometimes great, otherwhiles small, chiefly in the parts musculous, as in the thighs, and legs; sometimes in childzens sides vnder the skinne, with manifest motion. Cause. Fanē. de puer. morbis ca.12. Monard.li.7.
 The Cause is a sharpe mordicant humor, betwene the flesh and the skinne, which in time wareth hard like a nerue or tendon, and not a vegetable thing as some doe imagine: these kinds of tumors are thought to haue some venenosity with them, and is ingendered of an hote melancholy blood, and burnt phlegme, sent through the vaines to the exterior parts by the vertue expultrix. Signes.
 The Signes, are vehement dolour, punction, tention, varicous, anfractuosities, feuer, hardnesse, round like nerues, and seeming to moue in touching as if it had life. The tumor is long, and stretched from one ioynt to another, as from the knee to the foote, from the shoulder to the elbowe, from that, to the part of the hand called the carpe, with such intollerable paine that hardly can be suffered. Cure. Rasis tract. 7. cap. 24.
 The Cure, whether it be humor or animall vegetable, is to soment the place with milke wherein Cammismill hath bene sodden, or a little Aloes dissolved, with some medicaments to appease the dolour, then to giue ayze
 either

either by cauter or by visicatio: If it be not dolorous, and tend to suppuration, cure it as you haue heard in *Eresipilas* and *Phlegmon*, changing your remedies, according to the times of the tumor and humor predominant, as you haue heard in their proper Chapters.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the tumor in the Legges or armes, called by the Greekes *Elephantiasis particularis*.

Definition.
Gord part. 1.
Ar. 2. 2. breui.
cap. 46.

Cause.
Palmaris.
Constanti. Af-
fric. de Eleph.

Paul. 4. ca. 1.

This disease which is called *Elephantiasis*, if it be vniuersally through all the body, it is called *Leprosie*, and by the Arabians *Malum sancta manus*: but if it be particular, it occupieth onely one member, which spoyleth the forme, figure, and disposition thereof, and maketh it rough, scurffie, red, and vnequall, like the skinne of the Elephant, for the which it is called *Elephantiasis*: if it possesse the skinne and not the flesh, it is called *Morphea*. The Cause, commeth either from the Mothers wombe, and is called *Maladie hereditary*, or after we are borne. If in the Mothers wombe, the Child hath been conceaued in the time of monethly purgations, or else the Mother or Father hath bene elephanticke. It happeneth also after we are borne, and commeth either of the corruption of the ayre, by dwelling places nere vnto the Sea, which makes the humors more grosse and thicke: also by dwelling in hote countries, as in Spaine, Affricke, and in others, where many are infected; also in cold parts which thicken the humors. Likewise by great plenitude of the melancholique humor, or burnt choller, retention of the hemorrhoides or monethly courses, defection in the melt, vsage of melancholique meats that are hard of digestion, such as Swine, Goates, Hares, and diuer others: also by hauing companie with such as be Elephanticke, drinking after them, receauing their breath or sweat, the continuall vsage of milke, strong wines, drunkenness, gluttony,

gluttony, sadnesse, feare, melancholie, with all such things that thicken, heateth, or burneth the blood, or participates with a maligne quality. The Signes, is great tumor possessing the whole member or some part thereof, and doth augment by little and little, insensible, not dolorous, sometime inflamed, the eyes troubled, the breath euill sauoured, the skinne rough, knotty, and vnequall, hard and scurfy: at last the body becommeth atrofied and leane, the bones tumified, the hands and fingers become swelled, and the fete deformed. The Judgements, either being vniuersall or particular, it is incurable, yet some remedies palliatiues may be vsed to let and stay the maladie for a time, chiefly by purging of the melancholique humor, blæding, bathing, ventosing, prouoking of the hemorhoides and the moneths, vsing good regiment in things that ingender good blood, abstayning from things of contrary quality, the which must be done by the aduise of the learned Physician, or by such as haue witten of that subiect, like as Palmarius, Paulus, Fer- nelius in his Counsels cap. 68. & 69. Chelmeteus, Celsus, Pareus, Constantinus, Affricanus, with diuers others. If there be inflammation or heat, vse such remedies as are set downe in the chapter of Phlegmon. I haue knowne some infected with this malady, who did liue more than twenty yeares by vsing of good regiment.

Signes.

Pa. loco citato.

Judgements.

Cure.

Cel. li. 3. ca. 28.

Fer. consil. cap.

68. & 69.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of the tumor which commeth in the extremities of the fingers, called *Paneris*, or *Paranochian*.

This hote tumor or Aposthume which doth possesse the extremities of the fingers, and roots of the nayles of the toes, is called by the Greekes *Paranochian*, and by the Latines *Reduvia*. The Cause, is melancholique humors, malignant, venomous, of a most hote nature which proceedeth from the bones, nerues, tendons, and membraines that

Definition.

Gor. pa. 1. c. 28

Theodo. lib. 3.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 81.

Cause.

Al. li. 2. ca. 89.

Vigo lib. 2.

Signes.

Cel li. 6. ca. 18.

Guydo.

Iohn de Vigo

Cure.

Vigo lib. 2.

Gulielmus

Placentinus.

Gulielm. enchir.

li. 1. cap. 39.

Vigo li. 2. cap.

Petrus Bairus

in sua practica

that couer them. The Signes, are vehement dolour, the which maketh the sicke almost beside himselfe, accompanied with feuer, inflammation, and dolour, and other euill symptomes, as in Carbuncle. Guydo and Vigo doe call it a cruell, abhominable, and mortall disease, they report to haue seene some grievously tormented, and dye thereof. The Judgements, it is sometime vlcered, auoyding a virulent matter, and is very dangerous, and diuers times before there be any outward appearace on the flesh, it rotteth both the bones, ligaments, and membzaines, so that there is no remedy but amputation, in case it infect the rest. The Cure; first, the sicke shall be purged, and bled in the arme opposite, in the meane time vsing good regiment, abstaining from strong drinke, as in Phlegmon. The topicall remedies are diuersly set downe by the old writers: some counsaile repercussives, anodines, and suppuratiues: others, for the greatnesse of the disease, counselleth not to abyde the maturation, but presently to make incision on the side of the ioynt affected: the length of the sayd ioynt penetrating to the bone, to giue issue to that venome, which is commonly betwene the periost and the bone, let it bleed till it stanch of it selfe. Vigo counsaileth, to apply the actuall cauter, for it hath a mighty vertue in correcting of the malignity and venenosity which offend the nerue and bone, also doth pacifie the vehement paine, which being done, the vlcer must be cleansed with Egyptiacke and *Aqua vite* mixed together, or a little *Apostulerum*: In this case I neuer open it before it come to maturitie, let it bleed, then wash it with *Aqua vite*, well rectified, and mixed with a little Theriacke and Hythridacke, thereafter I apply about the part a cataplasme of the leaues of Henbane, and *Mandragora* roasted vnder the ashes, & mixed with a little butter or Hogs grease, or in place of it *Dupilion*, *Rosat Mesnes*, oyle of Roses to appease the dolour, with such other remedies as are set downe in the Chapter of Carbuncle: Thereafter procure matter, mundifie the vlcer, and siccatrize it as you haue heard in others.

Pterigmie

Pterigminis is an excrescence of fibres vnder the nayles of the fingers or toes, chiefly in the thumbe or great toe, it loseth the ioynt of the nayle, and maketh it to fall, sometime corrupteth and rotteth the bene; for the Cure you must vse such remedies, as in vlcers, with corruption of the bone, yee haue heard.

CHAP. LXXIII.

¶ Of the little excrescence which commeth commonly in the hands or other parts, called by the Latines *Veruca*, and by the Arabians *Botorale*, in vulgar Warts.

There happeneth oftentimes in the hands little excres- Definition.
cences or Warts of diuers formes, and are for the most
part incommodious, painefull, vnseemly, impeding some- Cel. li. 5. ca. 28.
what the action. They are of diuers kinds, which all or ei- Cause.
ther of them doe infect the part where they are; they are in- Pau. li. 4. ca. 15.
gendered of a melancholique pituitous blood. The Cure is Cure.
diuers, according to the nature of the excrescence, some of
them be knit, others be cut, some consumed with corrosiues; Ar. ad. lib. 2.
such as be small at the roote, may be knit with Horse haire, breui. cap. 45.
threed, or silke well waxed, and wet in strong water, or oyle Bru. li. 2. ca. 14
of Sulphure, tyed euery day faster then other: the hard ty-
ing letteth the nourishment, and causeth it to fall moze easi-
ly: such as be large at the roote may be cut with a Razor
or sharpe sheeres, letting them bleed well, then apply a little
pouder of Bolarmenie, or *Terra sigillata*, with a little Allom
water: such as be very hard without great feeling, may be
consumed with oyle of Mytreoll, strong water, or pouder of
Arsenicke, then apply defensiuēs of Boll, with Rose and
Plantaine water, or Decrate, others which be moze tender Gord. part. 1.
and not dolozous may be consumed with the pouder of Sa- cap. 20.
uine and Dere, well dzyed and subtilly puluerished, or with
a little blacke Sope and Salt mixed together, others doe
consume

Rol. li. 3. ca. 33. consume them with powder of *Asphodelorum* and *Hermo-*
Baptista porta. *dat.* Baptista Porta doth much approve the head of an

Rossellus. Cele, cut and rubbed with the bloud thereof. *Rossellus* com-
 mendeth the red Dryon well bruised with salt, and rub the
 Warts therewith; also the powder made of hony, set down
 in the Chapter of the Caruncle of y^e Wand, otherwise you
 may take Agrimony, a little Salt, Vinegar, and bruise all
 together and annoynt the Warts; the Dregs or lees of wine
 burnt, or the rotes of Dysters doe the like.

CHAP. LXXIIII.

¶ Of the tumor or vlcer in the Heeles, called
Mula, Kybes, or Chilblanes.

Paul. li. 3. ca. 79
Cel. li. 5. ca. 28.
Cause.
Cure.
Avicen.
Cels. loco citat.
 This tumor, little vlcer or excrescence, which oftentimes
 happeneth in the hands and feete, chiefly in the heeles
 of young Childezen in the Winter season, are called by the
 Grekes *Chimethla*, and by the Latines *Perniones*, are very
 noysome, and doe commonly proceed of cold, using of straye
 shoes, and filth on the feet and heeles. For the Cure wheres
 of, Avicen counselleth to make embrocation with hote wa-
 ter, or *Aqua marina*, which is water and Salt mixed toge-
 ther, also a lavement made of powder of *Diagagant*, with
 oyle of *Masticke*, or you may make a linement of Goates
 grease, with a little powder of *Putgaues*: otherwise, take
 two ounces of the marrow of Peats fat, with halfe an ounce
 of *Galbanum* mixed, and apply to the soze: in like manner
 you may foment the soze with the decoction of the rotes of
Siclamen or *Nautis*; as also *Siclamen*, or *Raph rds*, rosted
 under the ashes, and mixed with a little ware, and apply it
 in forme of a playster or cataplasme: if the vlcer be large,
 apply some gentle mundificatione or *Apostuorum*, thereafter
Unquentum album, powder of *Masticke*, Incense, & Myrre,
 with a double cloth wet in warme Claret wyne, so hold it
 warme.

CHAP. LXXV.

C Of the little hard tumor in the feet, commonly called *Cornes*.

Those hard callous tumors which commonly possesse the toes and soales of the feet, but chiefly the ioynts and vnder the nayles, are called *Cornes*, and in Latine *Clavus*, of the which there are three kindes, to wit, *Corpus*, *Callus*, and *Clavus*. The Cause, is chiefly in wearing of strayte Shoes, superfluous excrements which cannot auoyde, so remayneth in the neruous part, and requireth a certaine hardnesse, according to the nature of the part where they are. The Signes are euident to the sight. The Iudgements, is great dolour, with enipassing to walke or trauell, they happen sometime after contusion. The Cure is, that those that are little and not daepe, may with a sharpe By-stry be cut at the roote; but befoze they be cut, I vse to applye to the Corne a little piece of fresh Meale of the big- nesse of six pence, and tye it to the Corne a whole night, it doth mollifie it and maketh it more easie to be cut, which be- ing done, I fill vp the hole with a little of that sand, which ordinarily doth rest in the bottome of the Chamber pot, it letteth the growing of it againe, being finely taken out at the roote. Lebot commendeth much the applying of a *Lebot of Or-* *Cornes* gaule, which maketh it to fall out at the roote: some nament. after the Corne be softened, either by somentation or p.ece of Meale, doe apply powders made of the roote of *Arista- bovis* otherwise little rotes roasted vnder the ashes, and beaten with *Axunge* and apply it to the Corne, which ma- keth it to fall in thre or foure dayes, then fill vp the hole with a little Ware or greene Coprys, or a little of that sand which remayneth in the ground of the byrne. In cutting of it, goe not too deepe amongst the ligaments and tendons, so; the great accidents that sometime doe follow, as inflam- mations.

Definition.

Cel.li.5.ca.28.

Difference.

Pa.li.3.ca.80.

Cause.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Cure.

The.li.3.ca.39

Lebot of Or-
nament.

Pa.li.6.ca.87.

Petrus Bairus. mations, conbulsions, and gangrene, by the which some haue loosed their toes and foete, by cutting a part of it, the roote groweth moze large ; so it is best to foment the part with water of Mallowes, and Althea, or water wherein Trypes haue bene sodden : thereafter vse Gumme, Ammoniacke, dissolved in *Aqua vite*, and lay on it : or this which I doe vse made of like quantity, of Turpentine, Waxe, and Merdigrease, called *Erugo aris*, and apply on the part : also red Wax, *semper vivum* and a little *Erugo aris*, mingled together, and apply : and so we end this Booke, and shall follow out to entreate of Wounds.

THE



THE SIXT BOOKE. *Of Wounds.*

*Which containeth XIII. Chapters ; whose Con-
tents be these ; by PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Wounds in generall.
2. Of the simple Wound in the flesh.
3. Of the cōposed Wound, with losse of substance.
4. Of the confused Wound.
5. Of Wounds doone with Gunne-shot.
6. Of burning with Gunne-powder.
7. Of Wounds in the vaines and artiers.
8. Of Wounds in the nerves.
9. Of Wounds by byting of venomous beasts.
10. Of Wounds in the bones.
11. Of Wounds in the head.
12. Of Wound in the Thorax.
13. Of Wounds in the Belly.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Causes, Signes prognosticke, and
Cure of Wounds, in Generall.

Interlocutors. *Peter, and Iohn.*



Ike as we have proceeded in the former Booke
of Tumors, we shall follow out the same me-
thode in Wounds, first demanding of you
what is a wound?

*Ie. It is a solution of continuity, recent, Definition
bloody,*

Gal. meth. 3. cap. 10. bloody, without putrefaction, either in the soft, hard, or organicke parts.

Cel. l. 5. ca. 26. *Pet.* What is the cause of wounds?

Gal. li. 2. de fracturis. *Io.* The Causes are diuers, and do happen diuers waies, by the which the wound taketh diuers denominations, as if a wound be made by a thing sharpe pointed, as a Rapier, Launce, or Dart, it is called thrust or stobbe: if by a sword or any such thing that doe cut, it is called incision or cut: if of a heauy and blunt, as a stone, Bat, Clubbe, and such like, which are done by force and violence, breaking and contunding the flesh, it is called contusion.

Celsus ibidem. *Signes.* *Pet.* Which are the Signes of wounds?

Gal. de causis morbis ca. ult. *Io.* They be manifest, according to the Judgements and accidents that follow.

Celsus ibidem. *Difference.* *Pet.* Which are the difference?

Io. Some are simple, others composed.

Pet. What is a simple wound?

Hippo. sect. 6. apho. 18. *Io.* It is that wherein is no lacke of substance, and healeth by one way onely, as sayth Hippocrates.

Pet. What is a composed wound?

Io. It is that in the which there is losse of substance, and hath diuers intentions for the cure thereof.

Pet. Differ they no others waies?

Io. They differ also in this, that some doe heale easily, others are difficile, some be mortall, some without intempery, some be little, others great, superficial, profound in the simple or similar parts; others in the instrumentall or organicke parts; some do happen in soft, others in hard parts.

Pet. Which are those that heale easily?

Hip. 2. predict. *Io.* Those which are in the flesh, without incision of vaines, artiers, nerues, and in bodies well disposed.

Pet. Which are dangerous?

Cel. li. 5. ca. 26. *Io.* All those which are interne in the membaines of the braynes, in the loynes, in the bordes of Diaphragma, great intestines, and those that are in the ioynts; also wounds in the nerues which cause conuulsion, by reason of their

Hip. 6. sec. aph.
Paracel. chir. magna.

their communication of the braynes; those in the Oesophag. *Hip. li. de vul-
nerib. capitis.*
vaine Jugulares, flanke, thighs, betwixt the fingers, and
such as are without tumour, all wounds in the head both
great and small, with such wounds as are deepe made ouer-
thwart the muscles. *Hippe. lib. 3.
apho. 66.*

Pet. Which are mortall?

Ioh. All those in the substance of the braynes, heart, li-
uer, middest of the lights, chest of the gall, middest of the
Diaphragma, stomacke, melt, kidneies, small intestines, *Hip. aph. sect. 5.
Gal. lib. 4. ca. 6.
Cel. li. 5. ca. 26.
Bru. li. 1. chir.
cap. 6.*
bladder, matric, trache artier, and spynall medull; those
which are in the rootes of the emunctories of the noble parts,
also in the vaine descending or ascending, vaine port, great
artier, or in the backe.

Pet. Which are the peculiar signes, whereby you know
those parts to be mortall? *Fillop. exposit.
in lib. Hip. de
vulnerib. capi.
cap. 95. & 98.*

Ioh. Every one haue their owne particular signe, as if
the braynes or membzaines thereof be hurt, the blood com-
meth forth by the nose and eares, with vomiting of choller,
auoyding of the excrements vnawares, the face groweth
ugly to the sight: the feeling and vnderstanding dull, with
convulsion and rauing within three or foure dayes. I know
the Heart to be hurt, when there commeth forth quantity
of blood, thicke and blacke, chiefly the right side being hurt;
if the left, the blood is more red and subtile, the pulse becom-
meth weake and variable, pale colour, with vniuersall
trembling, auoyding a cold euill saoured sweat: the ex-
tremities wax cold, often sounding, and briefly death. I
know the Lloynes to be hurt, when the sicke doth breathe
with difficulty, boyding a spumous blood at the mouth and
wound, also when the sicke lyeth on the wound, speaketh
more freely then on the other side, with rauing, red colour,
and hote in the visage, sometimes auoyding quantity of
matter by the wound. The membranous part of the Dia-
phragma being hurt, the flanke doth retyze with great
waight on the part, dolour in the ridge backe, difficulty to
breathe, coughing with issue of a spumous blood at y wound.

Of Wounds in generall. *Lib. V I.*

Col. li. 3. ca. 26. If the Liver be hurt, there cometh out abundance of blood at the wound, the flankes retyze towards the backe, the colour like death, the eyes sincke in the head, want of rest, the vyne is bloudy, the excrements purulent, the sicke cometh to lye on the belly, the dolour is ptycking, extending to the breastbone and ribbes, in respyring he draweth in his shoulders, and vomiteth choller. *Paulus Aegineta* reporteth, that one lobe of the liver may be hurt, and yet death not follow of necessity. If the Spleen be hurt, the blood cometh forth blacke and thicke at the wound or left flank, which wth the stomacke waxeth hard, there is great drought, dolour in the left side, also in the region of y^e liver: if the kidneys be hurt, y^e dolor descendeth to y^e root of the thigh & testicles, wth difficulty of vyne, pissing of blood, sometime the blood stayeth wth in, and the sicke becommeth all swollen, and so dyeth. If the orifice of the stomacke be hurt, there ensueth vomiting of choller, also of the meat and the drinke, the pulse groweth weake, extremities cold, often sweating. The intestine *Jejunum* and stomacke being hurt, have the same signes, *Pa. li. 6. ca. 48.* with the meat and drinke coming forth at the wound, the flank dolorous and hard, voyding choller at the mouth, *Col. li. 5. ca. 26.* the spittle blew, and extremities ware cold. The Spynall medull being hurt, there happeneth convulsion and Paralysisme, the feeling groweth remisse, the inferiour conduits are relaxed, so that the vyne and excrements voydeth away unawares. *Hippo. sect. 6. aph. 28.* The Bladder being hurt, there is great dolour on the theere bone and Gyna, pissing of blood, voyding of the vyne at the wound, vomiting of choller, coldnesse of extremities. If the Matric be hurt, the dolour doth communicate to the likcs, haunches, and thighs, the blood cometh forth partly by the wound, and partly by nature: some lose sence, reason, and speech, and have the same accident as *Col. li. 7. ca. 16.* those who are hurt in the heart. The Intestines being hurt there is great dolour, wth continuall voyding of the excrements at the wounds.

Pe. What is to be considered in the Iudgements of wounds?

Ioh. First,

Of Wounds in generall. *Lib. VI.*

281

Ioh. First, to know what part is hurt and the nature ^{Judgements} thereof, whether there be any hope of health, knowing the ^{of Wounds.} parts that are easie to heale, difficile, and mortall; also the blage, action, substance, situation, the figure of the wound, actions that happen. The temperature, age, sex, region, season, and constitution of the time, wounds in the nerves, tendons, ioynts, and bones, without appearance of tumor or euill signes, and sheweth the humor to haue taken the course to the noble parts. Hippocrates sayth, if in the wound ^{Lib. de articulis.} of the articles fluxe of the belly doth happen, it is euill, and for the most part mortall. Wounds with fracture behinde, are in danger of spaline, and such as are before are in danger of raving and frenzie. If conuulsion happen in a wound, ^{Hippo. sect. 5. apho. 65.} chiefly after great inflammation, it is for the most part mortall, and sheweth that the parts nervous are hurt. Wounds in the head, if after ten dayes symptoms doe happen, it signifieth abcesse in the liuer, and great drought signifieth the same. Wounds with great losse of bloud, if conuulsion ensue, are dangerous; as also all thrusts in the nerves and tendons, and in voluntary vomiting of choller, or if the inflammation lasteth long, are all euill signes.

Pet. Vntill what time should wee stay our iudgement of wounds in the head?

Ioh. To fortie dayes, some late Writers till fiftene or ^{Hip. li. de vulnerib. capitis.} twenty dayes, after which time, often feuers and other euill accidents, which chaunceth often in time of full Moone, in which time I did see sundry dye.

Pet. What time of the yeare is most expedient for the ^{Cure.} curation of wounds?

Ioh. The Spring time, the weather being neither hote nor cold: the Autume is worse, for the moistnesse of the ayre; also the Winter is enemy to all blcers and wounds, in the ^{Hip. li. de ulcerib. & apho. sect. 5.} membraynes and bones.

Pet. How many poyntes are there to be obserued in the ^{Fillop. expos. in lib. Hip. de vulnerib. cap. 25.} curation of wounds?

Ioh. Fiue, in ordering of vniuersall remedies, with good regiment

Cels. l. 6. ca. 26. & 27.

Savona. cap. 4. li. de balneo. Gal. li. 4. meth. cap. 6.

Fillip l. curat. cap. 26. & 27.

Joh. de Vigo. & Guydo.

Ro. li. 1. ca. 22. Pa. li. 6. ca. 33.

Oribasi. l. 6. 7. cap. 17.

Cels. lib. 7. ca. 5.

regiment of life, and good ayre, which must be hote and temperate: the sicke must be nourished with little meat and of light digestion, somewhat refrigerative. If there be feare of feuer and inflammation, which is most to be feared before the seauenth day, for the which abstaine from wine and all strong drinke, except through losse of much blood the heart be faint, suppelightly, and abstaine from women, and all violent passions of the mind. If great dolour, inflammation, or conuulsion happen, as in parts neruous and bare of flesh, let blood, and vse light purgations, if the body be Carochimicke. In great wounds of the head, and such other times as is not meet to giue potions at the mouth, as you shall perceive by the estate of the diseased, vse Glysters. The Second poynt, in taking away that which is noysome, as Iron, Balls, any Stones, Wood, and such like, Cloth, pices of bones, or congealed blood.

Pet. By what meanes take you such things away?

Ioh. They shalbe taken away either by the part where they enter, or parts whither they tend, which is done by diuers sorts of Instruments fit for that purpose:

Instruments

Instruments to drawe bullets, arrowes, and
other strange things, from wounds.



Plin. li. 24. ca. 19

Iacob. Dinus.

To take out
strange things
of Wounds.

Avicen lib. 3.

de dolore capi-
tis ex contusio.

Phillip l. b. 10.

cirato cap. 29.

also by the helpe of those medicaments, *Radix pectinis vene-
ris cum malva iusa, aristolocia, ammoniacum, cum melle ra-
dix arundinis confusa melle mista alter si fructus, lacerti caput
iritum & appositum*, excepting allwayes if they be in some
noble part, in which case they are not to be touched, because
it hasteneth death and helpe not. When we must consider
if the thing be superficiall not past, yet the great vaines, ar-
tiers, and nerves, in that case they shall be drawen out by
the wound: but if it passeth those great vessels, it shall be
drawen by the part where it tendeth to, by incision of the
part, least in drawing of it by the wound, you hurt and dila-
cerate those vessels, which thing is most to be feared in broad
Arrowes. By this forme the wound healeth more easily,
and the medicaments may be applyed on both sides, as also
the matter may auoyde more easilie: in making of the in-
cision there is great care to be had, not to cut vaine, nerue,
nor artier. If at the first those thinges may not be drawen
out, they are to be let alone a certaine space: in the which
time, the flesh that is about it doth consume and putrifie, so
giueth a more easie passage. The late Practitioners are of
opinion to pull out all those strange things at the first, be-
cause then the patient feeleth not the sore so much as after-
ward: besides, shortly after the part doth swell through
fluxion of humors, which maketh the wound narrow, ac-
companied with great dolour, more then at the first. For
the extraction we scituate the sicke in such forme as when he
was hurt, and seeke the strange thing, either with a sound
or finger which is most sure, and drawe it forth with the
least paine that may be. If the wound be not great inough
that it may not be drawen with dilaceration of the flesh,
which maketh great inflammation and dolour, in that case
we must dilate the wound with a Byssorie or Razor: for
the which it is most necessary to know the forme, substance,
situation and collection of euery part, with the symptomes
which doe commonly follow: if that thing which you would
draw, be in the bone, it must be drawen by a Tyzelond,
and

and shaken a certaine time afoze, as counselleth *Rollandus lib. 1.* If the bone be much broken, we vse dilatation of the wound, both to draw those little bones moze easily and consume the great: it without great paine the Bullet, Arroin, *Al. li. 2. ca. 95.* or other thing cannot be found, and the sicke feele no great harne thereof, it is best to let it alone, till such time it sheweth it selfe by the working and moving of nature. *Pa. li. 6. ca. 88.* The third intention, we close the lips of the wound by bandages and sutures.

Pet. What is Suture?

Ioh. It is a ioyning of the parts separated against the course of nature, which in great wounds is done by needle and threed, to the end the siccatrize be moze sure: like as in great wounds of the thighes, legges, and armes, where there is great distance betwixt the bozdes or bzinnes of the wound. If the part be altogether cut, and haue almost no hold whereby to receaue health, the suture auailleth not: also if the bozdes of the wound be inflamed and tumified, no suture must be vsed till the inflammation be past, and the wound somewhat suppured: in doing whereof, it must neither be too slacke nor too straight. *Ga. li. 3. meth. ca. ult. & com. in apho. 9.*

Pet. How many sorts of Sutures are there?

Ioh. Diuers, according to the diuersity of the wound, hurt part, or nature of the body, and are commonly referred to three, to wit, Incarnative, Retentive, and Conseruative.

Pet. After how many wayes doest thou vse the Incarnative?

Ioh. Fiue waies, first with a needle of reasonable length, *Hippo. lib. 6. apho. 18.* sometimes curbed, triangular at the poynt, with a soft strong round threed, to the proportion of the wound and needle: also the needle case must be holden on the other side of the wound to hold it steady, that the first stich be in the outside of the wound, and hold the case on the hurt side, make your next stich on y hurt side of the border, & the case on the whole side, beginning alwayes your stiches in the middle of

Gal. 3. meth.

cap. 4.

Celsus. lib. 5.

cap. 26. 27.

of the wound, taking reasonable great Stitches in deepe wounds, and superficial in small wounds, ioyning the lips of the wound evenly and closely together, so knit the thread and cut it neare the knot, then if need be put another Stitch interspace betwixt, obseruing alwayes that the Stitches be no nearer then an ynch one to another.

Pet. How is the second done?

Ccl. li. 7 ca. 15.

Eli. 5. ca. 26.

Ioh. Either with a needle or diuers together, as if the wound be great and deepe, and the thread not sufficient, we passe an other needle in the wound, as the president, yet not drawing it thzough, as doe women, when they sticke a needle in their sleeves, and turne the thread about it; and after this order, vse so many as shall be needfull, according to the greatnesse of the wound: and this kind of Suture we vse in clouen lippes, which shall be done in this manner. If it be not great, and much dilated, and the person neither too yong, nor too old, nor of euill habitude, we take the lippe and cut all the skin of the inner side of the cleft with an instrument, then we passe one needle as abouesayd, or two if need be, with an emplayster of Betonica, or such like, which doth conglutinate the lippe commonly in ten dayes, after which time cut the thread, and take out the needle, and induce the cicatrice, as in others: Doe the like in the eares, or nose, being so clouen.

Pet. How doest thou the third Suture Incarnatiue?

Gal. 3. meth.

cap. vlt.

Ioh. With long needles and strong thread, double, with an hard knot on the end, which we passe in diuers parts of the wound, leauing alwayes an ynch betwixt, then passe a little round piece of wood the greatnes of a small Goose quill, in each side of the wound vnder the thread, and presse the lippes of it gently together, and knit the thread with double knottes one after another, vntill all be knit, which is vled in great deepe woundes, that the Stitches doe not breake or slippe.

Pet. How is the fourth Suture Incarnatiue done?

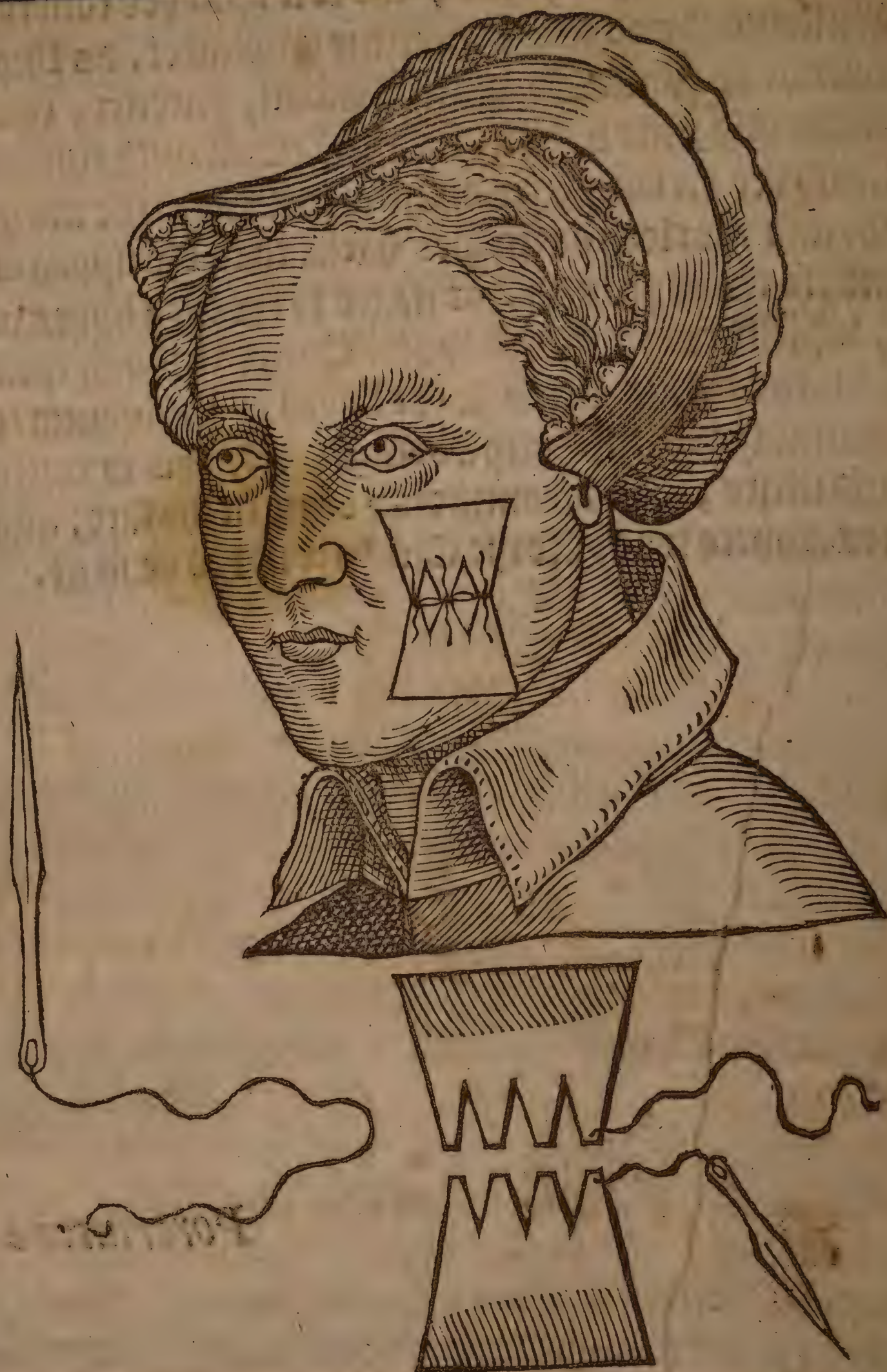
Ioh. By little paces of Cloth, as the breadth of the wound,

wound and place requireth, that is strong, with the selvedge cut in points like Arrowe heads, the rest shall bee covered with some astringent and conglutivative emplaster, as this, take powder of Sanguie Dragon, Treuboll, Incence, Bals^{Avicen tract.} sticke, Socrocolla, fine flower, incorporate all with whites ^{1. cap. 8.} of Eggs, and lay on both sides of the wound with the aforesayd cloth, and the cloth be further backe than the lippes of the wound, so the poynts shall be neare to the sayd lippes or borders, which being fast, wee put a thread through these poyntes till such time as we see the lippes of the wound to close, and knit the thread with a double knot, this is called the Dye Suture, and is commonly done in the face, and such places, where we desire the Cicatrice not to be seene.



Portraiture

Portraiture of a drie Suture.



Pet. How doest thou the fist Suture Incarnative?

Ioh. With claspes of Iron sharpe poynted, and long, which take lippes of the wound being put together, and hold them so : this was vſed by ſome old practitioners, but at this preſent it is not in vſe, as be dolorous, and exciteth inflammation and fluxion.

Pet. How

Pet. How is the second kind of Suture generall done? 2. Suture ge-

Ioh. It is done after the manner that the Glouers sowe nerall called
their gloues, but is neither sure nor profitable, for one point restreintive.
slipping, the rest slippe also. In like manner, the blood, which
is retained, swelleth the part; and falleth amongst the mus-
cles, which often doth rotte, and gangren the part: so it is
better to knit the vaines and artiers, or canterize them,
which I haue done with good successe, and was vsed by our
Ancients where there was great effusion of blood in the
vaines and artiers, and now commonly vsed in the inte-
stines, stomacke, and bladder, and such other membra-
nous parts.

Pet. How is the third Suture generall doone?

Ioh. As the rest, but not so hard, and is vsed to conserue 3. Suture ge-
the lippes of the wound being separated, and where there is nerall called
great losse and dilaceration of flesh. conservatiue.

Pet. What time appoint you to take away the poynts
of your Sutures?

Ioh. According to the opinion of Vigo, in 6. or 8. dayes, Vigo lib. 3.
yet in our ordinary practise we limit no time, for some con-
glutinate sooner than others, so when the part divided begin-
neth to conglutinate, assuredly we take out the stiches.

Pet. Is there no other sort of Sutures commonly vsed?

Ioh. There is a kind which we vse in the belly, called
Gastroraphie, of the which diuers haue written in diuers
manners, here I will set downe that which is sure and most
easie in the wounds of the belly. First, if the guttes come Gal. 6. meth.
forth, they must be put in their place, also the caule, first knit cap. 4.
ting and cutting away that which is altered, leauing the Albuc. lib. 2.
end of the ligatour out at the wound, that which falleth cap. 85.
may be drawen out, then thou shalt cause one to take both Cels. lib. 5.
sides of the wound in his hand, then he shall discover a little
of the wound, so make the first stich of the needle at the ex-
treamity of one side of the wound pearcing the skinne and
muscles, not touching the periton, thereafter put the needle
in the other side through the periton, muscles, and skinne,
then

then make an other stitch, like to the first, not touching the periton, then make the fourth poynt like the second, piercing periton, muscles, and skinne, so continue it till it be all sewed, taking the periton on the one side, and leauing it alwaies on the other. If the Epiplon be altered, cut it away, tye the rest in feare of fluxe of blood, hold forth the one end of the threed till it fall off it selfe.

Pet. What is bandage, or ligatour?

Ligatour
which is the
second helpe
in cōioyning
of wounds.

Cels. li. 5. ca. 26

Orib. li. de fasc.

Fower points
in correcting
accidents of
wounds.

Aposthume.

Hemeragie.

Ga. 3. de crisib.

Ioh. It is a peece of cloth made long two or thre elles, and in breadth thre or foure inches, according to the member and hurt, the cloth must be soft, cleane without hem or seame, and more slacke in wounds than in fractures, and of it there are diuers sorts; for some are to containe, as in simple wounds; some are to expell matter, as we see in caue wounds; some are defensiuies to stay fluxion; some to retaine the medicaments on the part, as in the throat and belly; some are mortificatiue, which we vse in legs or armes gangrened, to cut them off. The way how these bandages should be used, are after diuers manners, according as you shall heare in their proper places hereafter.

Pet. Which is the fourth poynt obserued in curing of Wounds?

Ioh. To giue order to the accidents, which are double, to wit proper, and accidentall.

Pet. Which are proper?

Io. Aposthume, Hemeragie, and Putrefaction.

Pet. What is Aposthume?

Ioh. I haue set downe the definition, signes, difference, and cure therof in the general chapter of Aposthumes.

Pet. What is Hemeragie?

Io. It is an issuing of the blood in great aboundance, the vaine or artier being cut, riuen, or corroded: there is another flux of blood, which sometime commeth at the nose, and chaunceth often in dayes criticke, which should not be stayed, vnlesse it be excessive.

Pet. How should the excessive flux be stayed?

Ioh. By

Io. By thinges about and on the place, which coole, aggluate, and drie, by ligatours, cauters actuall, and such like, as I shall set downe in the Chapter of Wounds, with flux of blood.

Pet. What is Putrefaction?

Io. It is that which corrupteth and letteth the spirit and naturall heat in the member, where through it becommeth rotten and putrified.

Putrefaction.

Pet. What is the cause of this putrefaction?

Io. Either corruption of the spirit vitall, or else viscous and cold humors, which stop the passage of the vitall spirit, some are causes primitives as stroakes, contusion, straight binding, and such like.

Pet. Which are the accidentall causes?

Io. Euill complexion, feuer, dolour, spasme, paralysie, syncope, and alienation.

Symptomes
accidentall.

Pet. What is euill complexion?

Io. It is an euill comixtion of the foure humors, when one raigneth more than another, as was sayd in the first Booke.

Evill comple-
xion.

Pet. What is feuer?

Io. It is an extraordinary heat, beginning in the heart, sent through all the body with the spirit and blood, by the vaines and artiers.

Fever.

Pet. By what meanes is it cured?

Io. It is distinguished according to the time, cause, and nature, which points belong to the Physitian.

Cure.

Pet. What is Dolour?

Io. It is a feeling of a thing, which hath a contrary quality in our bodies.

Dolour.

Pet. What is the cause of dolour?

Io. Solution of continuity, or some sodaine alteration; the accidents which come of it, as also the cure, is set downe in the generall chapter of Tumors, yet wee will say some-what of it at this present. All dolour maketh alteration of humors and blood, which maketh inflammation, for the

Paul. li. 2. ca. 39

which foment the place with oyle of Roses, with the white of an egge, if the dolour be great, stupifie the part with oyle of Poppie and Opium, with Mandrager, also the roote of Solanum brayed and put with the same, is good to mitigate the dolour, as sayth Galen : if it be not appeased by these remedies, it is signe that the nerues are hurt, for the which haue recourse to the wounds in the nerues.

Lib. 5. meth. & lib. 3. cap. 4.

Spasme.

Pet. What is Spasme?

Arnald. lib. 1. byeni. cap. 25.

Ioh. It is a malady in the nerues, making involuntary mouing, drawing the muscles and tendons towards their beginning, vneasie to relaxe.

Pet. What is the cause of spasme?

Hip. apho. li. 5.

& 6. apho. 39.

& Gal. lib. de

sympto. causis.

Ioh. Repletion, euacuation, and dolour.

Pet. Is it dangerous?

Ioh. Avicen saith, that all spasme confirmed in wounds is mortall, others are curable : that which chaunceth through thrusts in the nerues is euill. If it happen by great euacuation of blood, it is mortall, as sayth Hippocrates, and better it is, that a feuer come in a convulsion, then convulsion in feuer : spasme after feuers, is mortall, as saith Hippocrates?

Pet. Which are the signes of spasme?

Ioh. Difficile mouing of the body, tension of the necke, contraction of the lippes, affriction of the iawes, peruerction of the eyes and face, which, if it take the course to the parts appoynted for respiration, it is lamentable, and the sicke shall soone dye, that which is confirmed, is incurable.

Pet. What is the cure of it?

Ioh. First, in good dyet, with dry ayre, moderate sleepe, open belly, eschewing the passions of the mind, vsing corroboratiues, we foment the part with Hydrelion or Hydromell, sometime bathe with water wherein hath been sodden Malloves, Althea, and Violets, extremities of Calues, Gutton, Goates, Lambes, and such like, with a certaine quantity of oyle : being taken out of the bath, rub the part with oyle of Violets, Sweet Almonds, Vernes grease, or Gutton,

Cure.

Hutton, also rubbe the necke, backe, and head, being rased, *Gal. 6. meth. cap. 3.*
 with oyle of Lylies, Vulpinum, Turpentine *Phylosopho- Gal. com. ap. 17. lib. 5.*
rum. For the same purpose, dry perfumes are good; it shall
 be good sometime to draw bloud on the same side, if there be
 plenitude with inflammation: if there be cacochymie, purge
 the body of the humors which abound: if the cause come
 of dolour, or some bite of a venomous beast, the dolour must
 be appeased, and apply on the soze, Treacle and ventosies,
 to draw out the venenosity.

Pet. What is Paralisie?

Ioh. It is a mollification, relaxation, or resolution of the
 nerues, with priuation of the moving, whereof there is two
 kinds, vniuersall and particular.

Pet. What is the vniuersall?

Ioh. It is that which occupieth all the body sauing the
 head, and if it possesse the head also, it is called Apoplexie,
 which is another kind.

Pet. What is the particular?

Ioh. It is that which possesseth one member onely, as the
 hands, feet, tongue, legges, and such like. *Gal. 3. de locis affectis. ca. 10.*

Pet. Which are causes?

Ioh. Some are interne, and some externe. Interne, as
 grosse humor, which moysten the nerues in the braines and
 marrow, which let the vitall spirit to passe. Externe, are
 wounds, incision, falls, strokes, contusion, aposthume, cold
 bandage, all outward things that may let the animall spi-
 rit to passe.

Pet. Is it curable?

Ioh. All paralyses are difficile, by reason the nerues are
 destitute of their natural heat, which is the efficient cause of
 curation, yet some are curable: when the nerue hath lost
 the feeling and moving, it is called Apoplexie; when it com-
 meth to one side, it is called Resolution of the part. *Arnald. breui. lib. 1. cap. 24. Cure. Gal. 2. de locis affectis.*

Pet. How is it cured?

Ioh. By vniuersall and particular remedies; vniuersall,
 as purgations, Blisters, bleeding, good dyet, hote and drye;
 particular

particular, as emplaisters, linements, ventosies, cataplasms, fomentations, also the balme of Guydo, who counselleth to apply ventosies in the beginning of the nerues. Togatius counselleth, a liquor set downe in additionibus Petri apponensis descriptionis mesue, also to rubbe the necke, backe, and parts most offended, with *unguentum marciatum* D^r agrippa: D^r this, which was shewed to me by my well experienced friend Maister William Clowes, Chyrurgion D^rinary to Queene Elizabeth of worthy memorie, and is thus, Rec. *Artimesia Rosarum damass an. M. 4. florum lavendula primula veris basiliconis, mentha maiorane an. M. 2. foliorum lauri abrotani, origani, cammomilla an. M. 1. absinthii, Rosmarini pulegei an. M. sem. bulleant simul omnia in suffi. quantilique deinde adde aque composita vel malvosa lib. sem. fiat focus*, after the part be well dreyed, they shall vse this linement, Rec. *Olei primula veris unc. 2. medulla tibiae equi in aqua vite cocti unc. 3. olei castorei unc. 1. olei pereonis unc. 1. sem. musci in oleo cammomilla dissoluti gra. 20. misceantur, & fiat linementum.*

Syncope.

Pauli. 1. ca. 37

& 38.

Gal. 12. meth.

cap. 5.

Pet. What is Syncope?

Io. It is a suddaine fall and decay of all the whole forces of the body, and of all accidents it is the worst.

Pet. Which are the causes of it?

Io. Great euacuation of bloud, intemperature of the noble parts, vehement passion of the spirit, feare, lacke of courage, rotten vapours, as happen in pestilent fevers, and all things that may intercept and destroy the vitall spirit.

Cure.

Gal. 10. inge-

nio sanit. ca. 5.

Gal. 12. meth.

cap. 4.

Pet. What is the Cure?

Io. First, to encourage the sicke, speake little, giue him a little wine, cast water in his face, and hold vinegar at his nose: draw his extremities, and chiefly the finger, and rub the part affected with this: Rec. *Olei castani, terebinthinae an. unc. 2. misceantur & ungatur.* With this vnguent, Rec. *unguenti martiati, unguenti Agrippae an. unc. 1. sem. olei castani, & nardini & de piperibus an. drag. 1. sagapini, apopano-*
cis dissolutum in vino an. drag. 2. cera parum, fiat unguen-
tum,

tum, quoungatur nervorum origo?

Pet. What is Alienation?

Ioh. It is an inordinate perturbation of the mind, with diuersity of speech, whereof there are two kinds, proper, and accidentall: the proper, is that which we call madnesse: the accidentall, is that which we call raving, as chaunceth in *Gal. 9. meth. cap. 10.* hote feuers, and other maladies, wherein hote felumes ascend to the head, or by hote and cold ayre, as sayth Avicen, also by putrefaction and venenosity of our meat and drinke, and is cured by diverting the fumes with frictions and ligatures of the extremities, vsing Glisters, and rubbing the head and necke with Drypodium, and diuers other thinges which may be prescribed by the learned Physitian.

Pet. What is the first thing to bee obserued in curing of Wound?

Ioh. To conserue the substance and the temperature of the hurt part, and consolidate the wound, which is done with unguents, emplasters, tents, plumations, as ye shall heare in particular. *Things obserued in curing wounds.*

Pet. Tell mee some thing of Plumations, Tents and their vse?

Ioh. Plumations are made of little peeces of cloth, the threads drawen out, or the peeces of cloth themselves, wolle, or tow, the pith of Elder tree, the haire of a Hare, Gentian. Of these, some are round, some are triangulars and quadzangulars, the Ancients giue them diuers denominations, either of the matter they were composed of, or of their forme: some are applyed dry, others wet in diuers liquors, as whites of Egges, wine, vinegar, or oyle, according to the disposition of the part. We apply them vnto. Sometime we apply many, otherwiles few, as the case requireth. The Tents are sometime made of cloth, otherwiles of sponges or rotes of certaine Plants, Brasse, Lead, Silver: some caue within, others not; of length and greatnes according to the hurt; some are euen, others crooked, yet alwayes round, and are vsed for diuers causes, as when wounds are

Gal. com. apho. 31. & li. 2. de offic. medici.

Holle. li. 3. ca. 4. De materia chirurgica.

Cels. lib. 5.

Consolidatio

to be amplyfied or cleansed, also in caue wounds with losse of substance, in confused woundes, altered by the ayre, also when the wound is afflicted with phlegmon or any other tumour against nature, also in wounds which come of byting, for such wounds haue some venenosity. In wounds with corruption of bone. In all other wounds we vse not these things, but induce the siccatrize and consolidate the wound.

Pet. What is Consolidation?

Ioh. It is that which hath force to ioyne, consolidate, and dry the wound, and maketh it like vnto the skin.

Pet. What is Skinne?

Ioh. It is nothing else, but the flesh made dry and hard by the worke of nature, and vertue of medicaments, and is like the other skinne, but not of the same nature in all points.

Pet. There are many other things, which may be spoken generally of Wounds, which (for want of time) wee will referre till our next meeting: against which time I will bring with me in writing, my opinion of Wounds in particular, aswell made by Gun-shot, as otherwise; and then we will entreate of Vlcers after the same manner.

Vulnera cur metuis? miles cur martis & ignis?

Omnis in his chartis tuta medela patet.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of the curation of Wounds, and first of the wound in the flesh without losse of substance.

I Haue spoken in the precedent Chapter, that wounds in the organicke parts receaue no curation; now according to your desire I will prosecute these which happen in similar or simple parts, beginning with the simple wounds in the flesh, which is without losse of substance, either with accidents or without. As for the causes, signes, and Judgements, you haue heard sufficiently in the precedent Chapter:

ter: but for the Cure, the simple wound in the flesh, healeth by ioyning the lippes of it together and helpe of nature: yet for the more assurance we vse to let it bleed a little, if it hath not bled sufficiently already: next we dresse it with a cleane cloth or soft sponge, then we close, and put on it the white of an Egge with lynt, bind the wound, and stirre it not in two or three dayes; the white of the egge preserveth it from inflammation, heat, delour, and bleeding. If the wound be great that it ioyneth not by the simple ligatoz, wee vse a future, with pouders incarnative or retentives, composed of *Sanguis draconis*, Thus, Galticke, Bolarmenie, wheat flower, all mingled with whites of Egges, and a little oyle of Roses, with lynt on it as before. Also a double cloth broader than the wound, wet with oyle of Roses and vinegar, bind it, and stirre it not for two or three dayes, if accidents doe not chance; and being remoued, wash it with warme Claret wine, wetting plumations in the same wine, which haue the vertue to drye and comfort. If the wound be deepe and these remedies not sufficient, we make a liquoz of oyle of Hypericon and Turpentine, with the yolke of an Egge, or a little of my balme set downe in the Chapter of Gunshot. I vse, especially following the warres, this digestiue made of yolkes of Egges hard roasted, and beaten with a little oyle of Hypericon, Turpentine, and Myrhe, so this keepe along time, and bringeth the wound to matter, the which not auoyding for the scituation, which is too high, we scituate the part in such sort, that the orifice is lowest, as for example, if the wound be in the thigh, and there be a cavity in the knee, wee situate the knee in such sort, that is much higher than the thigh, if it auoyde not that time, and the cavity be great, we make incision in the bottome of the cavity, or cut it altogether. Thou mayest know which of those issues is best by the greatnesse of the wound and nature of the part, it shall be best to make it in the bottome of the cavity, vsing a hollow tent in it to auoyde the matter. We vse also a seton, which is a little cord or peece of cloth, rolled

Cure.

Ga. 3. & 4. metho. cap. 10.

Hip. l. b. de v. t.

Celsus li. 5. cap. 26.

Gal. 3. Thera.

cap. 4. & 3.

meth. cap. 10.

Ga. 4. meth.

cap. 4.

Gord. part. 1.

Holler de mater. chirurgica.

Gal. li. 3. meth.

Cels. lib. ca. 26.

Brunus, Guido.

Gal. 3. meth. in forme of a cord, annoynted with some liquor mundificatiue, Drawing it sometime from one issue to another, and so continuing till it be cleansed, dressing it twice a day, thereafter I vse some glutinative medicine, as you shall heare in the next Chapter.

CHAP. III.

¶ Of the composed Wound with losse of Substance.

Definition.
Cure.

Gal. li. 4. meth.
Artis parue
cap. 92.

Gal. li. 2. ca. 1.
de compos. phar.

THE composed Wound is when there is losse of substance, to wit, skinn, flesh, and bones: for the Cure we vse two intentions, that is, reparation of the substance lost, and induction of the siccatrize: that which is lost, if the body be well disposed, it is repaired by nature onely, vsing in the meane time medicaments that are cleansing and drying. If the flesh reue not in his fashion, we vse medicaments sarcotickes, which shall be made of Iris of Florence, Thus, Masticke, Aloe, Colaphonie, Pix resnia, Farnia, Hordei, Orobi, Fenugreci, Lupinorum, Apopanax, Miriba, Sarcocolla, and sanguinis draconis with unguentum aureum mesue. If the wound be deepe, mix some of these pouders with Wine, and wash the wound with Turpentine in forme of vnguent, and put it in the wound either with plumations or tents, dresse it twice a day in Sommer, and once in Winter, vsing an emplaster that dryeth and comforteth with bandages. In these wounds there are foure intentions to be obserued; first, to ingender such substance as is lost; secondly, to know the temperature of the body and hurt part, to the effect, we may iudge, whether the medicaments should be cold, hote, or drye; thirdly, to know the accidents which happen to the sore; fourthly, the region, ayre, and way of life. The wound being filled vp, we induce the siccatrize with epuloticke medicaments, as red Desiccative, Album kasis, Cerusse, Plantine, also to wash the wound with

Gal. meth. ca. 3

with wine, wherein hath been sod Balust and Allom, or this
 emplayster. *Rec. Tutia preparata, plumbi crudi, antimonii* *Gal. 3. meth. cap. 5.*
crudi, corticis mali granati, balustorum, nucum gallarum, boli
armenici, sanguinis draconis an. drag. 1. accipiantur omnia si-
mul cum unguento epompholigos unc. 3. fiat magdaleon bone
 consistentia, you shall find diuers other remedies set downe *Lib. 2. de mate. chirurgic. ca. 4.*
 by Holler. Take heede that the siccatrize bee neither high,
 lowe, hard, soft, nor inequall; the high happeneth, when
 it is not dzyed enough, and must be mended by scarrificati-
 ons, medicaments, cataretickes, and corrosiues; the lowe,
 contrarywise cometh through lacke of some peece of bone
 or too much dzying, and is helped onely by frictions; the
 inequality cometh through the poynts of the needles, *Hippo. com. in apho. 45. lib. 6.*
 which hath bene ouer thicke and ill done, and is helped by
 medicaments, emollients, discutients, and astringents.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the contused Wound.

The contused Wound, to the which chaunceth great ac- *Definition.*
 cidents, according to the Instrument it is done with,
 is a kind of solution of continuity, made with a bruiſe, and
 is called by Gallen & some late writers *Echymosis*, in Greeke *4. Theurapen-*
ticorū. & com. in aph. 20. li. 6.
Thasma, and *Nygma*, in Latine *Atriciſ*, and *Contuſio*; in
 the which there is separation and dilaceration of the flesh
 and muscles thereof, with great quantity of blood, and diffe-
 reth somewhat from attrition as sayth Avicen, for contusi- *Gal. li. 4. meth. cap. ult.*
 on happeneth in the fleshy parts, and attrition is done in
 the heads and ends of the muscles. The Signes are like *Signes.*
 vnto other wounds, with inequalitie and roughnesse in the
 flesh and skinne, diuersity of figure, according to the diuer-
 sity of the cause, the part and parts about are blacke and li-
 uide, by reason of the blood which is out of his place and re-
 mayneth in these parts, and cannot be euacuated by sensible
 or insensible transpiration, but by suppuration. The Judge- *Judgements.*
 ments

Cure.

*H'p. li. de vlce.
& vulne. capi.
Cels. li. 5. ca. 19*

Celsus, Pavlus

*Gal. de compos.
medicamen. &
Ætius lib. 5.*

ments, shall bee according to the greatnesse of the hurt, for great contusions are dangerous, for the corruption of the member, and consequently the body also. As for the Cure, there are foure intentions, first, to stay the flux, if the contusion be with wound, as oft happeneth; but if without wound chiefly in the head, I vse only oyle of *Mar*, or new *Mar* it selfe applyed in forme of playster: next to stay the fluxion of humors on the part by euacuation, as purgations, bleeding, ventosing, ligatours, frictions, good regiment in vnnaturall things: thirdly, in vsing particular remedies, first digestiues, for such woundes must suddainly be brought to suppuration, for the which, vse this cataplasme of *Mallows*, *Violets*, *Althea* sodden in fresh broth, putting to it a little *Barly* flower, *Butter*, *Basilicon*, and the yolkes of *Egges*, with a digestiue: Or this, take *Clare*, *Turpentine*, *Calues* grease, *Goose* grease, *Hony*, *Myrhe*, oyle of *Roses*, mingle all together. To appease the dolour, vse oyle of *Cammomill*, *Roses*, *Lyllies*, *Myrtles*, *Dryōdin*, and *Volarmenie*. The fourth intention is, in correcting of the accidents, as dolour, *Aposthume*, *Gangren*, for which vse such remedies as you haue heard in the second Booke. The wound suppured, and the accidents corrected, it must be cleansed with honny of *Roses*, and *Turpentine*, *Mundificatiue de appio Apostolorum*, and such like, as you shall heare in the last Booke. Being cleansed, we vse incarnatiues, and desiccatiues, as was set downe in the former Chapter.

CHAP. V.

Of Wounds doone by Gun-shot.

*Anton. Ferrus
de archib. vul.*

I haue spoken of simple, compound, & contused wounds, now will I entreat of wounds with dilaceration and losse of soft and hard parts, and is made by diuers sorts of Instruments, as bullets of *Lead*, *Iron*, *Steele*, *Brasse*, *stones*, and

and other such like matter in diuers figures, as round, triangular, quadrangular, pointed, flatte, little, and great, which sometime penetrate, sometime not, whereof our Ancients haue made no mention, except onely Celsus lib. 7. cap. 5. who telleth not with what Instrument they were shot with; therefore though some haue written of late, yet because they are of diuers opinions, and written in sundry languages, I will shew my opinion touching the same, not making any mention of others who haue written of the same. These kind of wounds are accompanied with tumour, dilaceration of flesh, vaines, artiers, nerues, tendons, ligaments, and boanes, superficial, profound; otherwhiles through the body, and according to the difference, the Chyrurgion must take his indication to diuersifie the remedy: in like manner, aposthume, dolour, corruption of the parts gangrened, and mortified through the great abundance of bloud, dispersed betwixt the muscles: also for the dissipation of the naturall heate, sometime one onely accident, otherwiles diuers together, for the which we vse two curatiue intentions, to wit, restitution of such things as are lost, and to conioyne the parts diuided. These wounds come indifferently to all parts of our body whereof there are diuers opinions: some thinke that there is venenosity in the powder, and burning in the bullet, which is false, for the things whereof the powder is ordinarily made, as Brimstone, Saltpetre, coales of diuers sorts of trees, Water, Wine, and Aquavite, haue no venenosity in them; likewise there is no burning in the bullet, for if the bullet of lead being shot a great way, should burne, through heat would be melted it selfe. I haue cured diuers within these thirty yeares of diuers nations, which haue followed the warres in Fraunce, and other Cuntries, in the which I haue found no more difficulty then in other contused wounds: so I thinke these accidents come onely by confusion and dilaceration of the flesh, and not by any venenosity, or vition: yet there may besome extraordinary mixture

*Barthol. magi.
de vuln. schlo-
pitorū curati.*

*No burning
in the Bullet.*

Cure.
5. Intentions
to draw balls.

Gal. therapen.
Intentions to
appease dolor.

in the powder, which causeth venome, for the which wee take some other indication, according to the thing. The Causes, Signes, Differences, and Judgements, are not much different from those of other wounds set downe, and sufficiently discoursed in the generall Chapter; as for the Cure there are five intentions; first, to drawe the ball; secondly, to appease the dolour; thirdly, to cause suppuration; fourthly, in mending generation of flesh and consolidation; fifthly, in correction of the accidents. As touching the first and second, to draw out the bullet and appease the dolour, I haue discoursed at length in the generall Chapter, neuertheless, because in these wounds there is vehement dolour, which weakeneth the sicke, hindereth nature, causeth fluxion, letteth suppuration, and consumeth the flesh which is contused; I will set downe things more particularly for the appeasing thereof, in changing the temperature of the whole body, in due vsage of the six vnnaturall things, by purgations, bleeding, and abstaining from things which cause dolour, as great tents, sections, straight bandages, wrong situation of the part, incision, vntlesse there be great neede. The topicall remedies, as cataplasmes with bread, milke, yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, also Hallowes sodden and beaten with wheat flower, oyle of Roses, Hogs grease, and Saffron, are good: *℞ this, Rec. Sanguis draconis, boli armenici an. vnc. i. pulueris rosarum & myrtilorum an. vnc. di. aceti vnc. i. abumina ouorum quatuor, olei rosacei quantum sufficit, fiat vnguentum.* If there be great heat, oyle of Roses, with whites of Egges and Vinegar, layd about, and on the part, is good. Also cerat Galen, *℞ vnguent. rosat. mesues.* with bol armenie, Sanguis draconis, powder of Roses, and Myrtles. If we feare inflammation, which oft chan- ceth till the seauenth day, vse the same remedies and shift them twice or thrice a day. The tents shall be soft, wet in Turpentine, with a little oyle of Hypericon & Aquavite, according to the nature of the part, and vse this remedie hot, and continue it till the inflammation be past, let the sicke eat
and

and drinke little, that he ingender no superfluities. Avicen counselleth to giue meate to the sicke onely for sustentation of nature, abstayning from wine, for it is enemy to all wounds, drinke sodden water with Sugar, or Honey, or ptylane, till the inflammation be past, keepe rest and quietnesse, abstayning from all actions of the spirit, watching, & women, according to the disposition and nature of the hurt.

The third intention consisteth in medicaments suppurations, which must be done with speed, to the end, they be lesse subiect to inflammation, vsing remedies which are of quality hote and dry, with vertue to correct the putrefaction, and let the Gangren and mortification of the part: there are of diuers formes; the simples are made of oyle of Hypericon, yolke of Egges, Lync-seede, Lillies, Turpentine, Myrre, and such like: Or this, *Rec. Terebinthine vnc. 2. corticis thuris drag. 1. mastichis drag. 3. olei hypericonis, & rosarum an. parum, vitellum vnius oui fiat medicamentum.* Or this, which I most commonly vse of Hypericon, Turpentine, and yolkes of Egges, or my balme which is excellent in all kinds of wounds, made thus, *Rec. summitatum & florum scrophularie & hypericonis an. quantum volueris, officiglossi, vel herbe carpentariorum & consolida regis an. quantum volueris, terebinthina veneta, quantum sufficit, macerentur in sufficienti quantitate olei hypericonis, insolentur omnia in sole calidissimo spatio 40. dierum in vase plumbeo, vel vitreo duplicato, postea fiat fortis expressio, seruetur liquor probalsamo.* The fourth intention is to mundifie and regenerate that which is lost, which must be done with things that haue little or no mordication, or sharpenesse, according to the nature of the part, as this, take sirupe of Roses, Violets, Fumetarie, Worme woode, Honie of Roses, vnguent de apio, apostolorum fuscum, egyptiacum: Or this, take Turpentine, honie of Roses, Iris of Florence, Barly flower, Succia apy, of each a little, and make an vnguent. If there be great putrefaction, and the matter in great abundance, vse this. *Rec. Terebinthine vnc. 4. vitellorum onorum vnc. 2. vnguenti egyptiaci drag. 1.*

Hippo. lib. 5.

aph. 17.

3. Intention.

Hip li. de vlce.
section. 7.

4. Intention.

drag. i. fiat mixtio. The wound being mundified & voided of all superfluitie, we vse for the regeneratiō of flesh, *unguentū aureū*, *basilicon maius*, *emplastrū de betonica*, *diapalma*, *tetra*, *pharmacum*, *gratia dei*, *oleum mastichini* & *absinthij*, mixe therewith a little flower of carley, Lupines, and Drobb, with Thus, Myrre, Masticke, and Aloes. Sometime we vse in these sortes of wounds, a certaine drinke called *potio vulner. curat.* nerar, wherewith wee wash the wound, and is thus made, *Rec. consolida maioris* & *media*, *serpentaria*, *lingua canis ceruina*, herbe Roberti, *glycyrriz*, *c. pimpinella*, *artemisia*, *scabiosa*, *plantaginis*, *aristolochia*, *agrimonia*, *betonica*, *pedis columbini*, *capilli veneris*, *centauria maioris*, & *minoris*, *gaiaci*, *salsiparelle*, *millefolij*, *baccharum lauri*, *cupatorium*, *abscinthium*, *rom. petroselinum*, *millefolium*, *arnoglossa*, *cande equina*, tops of Colwort, reddish, siccorie, horse hoffer, of which, all or some make a decoction in water and aromatize it with Cinamond, Honey or Sugar, drinke of it twice or thre a day as it is needefull, and also thou maist wash the wound, putting thereto a little honye of roses or sirope of roses. The wound being filled with flesh, it must be dried with medicaments epupoloticks which by their astriction and drying do harden the flesh, and make a substance like to skinn, as *unguentum desiccantium rubrum*, *diapompholigos*, *album rasis*, *dia calcitios*, *triapharmacum*, *cerusse de minio*, mixing therewith *galbanum*, *acasia*, *sarcocollaplumbum* & *asvstum*, *allumen*, *calx lota*, and such like. The first intention is in correcting the accidents, which are diuers and great, for some come by accidents, or some are sharpe feeling of the part hurt, as dolour, inflammation, conuulsion, feuer, and such like, some come through violence of the bullet, as extinction of the naturall heat of the part, hemoragie, dilaceration, confusion of the nerues, fractures of the bones, and some by the ignorance of the Chyrurgion; for the which cause he must be diligent, to stop such accidents, and if they happen, to helpe them with speed.

s. Intention.

Chap.

CHAP. VI.

C Of burning with Gun-powder.

I T happeneth oftentimes in Armes that men are nere shot, & sometimes in handling of powder, or by syring of flasks which often chanceth, by the which ensueth great accidents; in so much that the affected part by the violence of the fire is altogether destitute of the proper humidity, and dryeth up in such sort, that it maketh an escharre in the skin and flesh, chiefly if the shot or powder be nere unto the part. As for the Cure of the which, the Chyrurgion should with all possible diligence remove the intemperature which chiefly consisteth in the softning of the escharre, and may be done two wayes; the one, by topicall remedies and Digestives, which doeth not too much heat, nor hath the vertue to inflame. The other is done with such medicaments as have the vertue to pacifie the paine and preserve from putrefaction; such medicaments must be applied about the wound and on the escharre with Cotton, Lynt, or pieces of cloth frampled in those medicaments made of two yolkes of eggs, beaten with oyle of Roses, some Barly flower, and a little Bolarmenie. It shall be necessary to put a double linnen cloth about the wound, sopt in oyle of Roses, and yolkes of egges beaten together, take not away the escharre with violence, but let it fall off it selfe, which done and the paine pacified, you shall mundifie, cleanse, incarnate, and scarratize the wound, as in others you have heard: for this purpose I have often used this vnguent, which doth heale without any marke, as thus. *Rec. Albumen ovorum numero duo tui alexandrin: calcis vine novies lota unc. 2. cera recentis, unc. 1. misceantur cum oleo rosaceo, quantum sufficit, fiat vnguentum.* Or this, which I did learne of an old Parisian priest, who vaunteth himselfe to be very expert in healing any kind of burning by this liquoz; take fire or eight Meats feet, bruise them

Cure.

Paul. lib. 4. cap.

Rol. lib. 4. ca.

13. 11.

Alphonse.

forrus.

Guerfita. de

vul. filopeto.

them well, and boyle them in water till they be all consumed, then take the grease of them and put in a glasse in the Sunne, or before the fire in winter, powre out the water if any be, couer it close and keepe it, of the which you shall put vpon a linnen cloth, and apply to the sore. Remove not the cloth untill it be whole, but only annoynt it euer being drye with a Goose quill, so it shall bee whole in short space without marke: Some doe vse for this purpose oyle of Linnet or small water, also sherpes dunge fryed with hogs grease till it be dissolued, adding thereto a little veriuice, passe it through a cloth and annoynt the burnt part.

CHAP. V.

C Of Wounds in the vaines and artiers.

Having spoken of the wounds in the flesh, in like manner you shall heare of them in the vaines and artiers, either with losse of substance, or without losse, which are accompanied with great flux of blood, which happeneth when the orifice of the vaine is opened, and is done by incision and imbecillity of the veines, abundance of blood, or some sharpe quality, and when their tunicks are diuided, confused, and pearced, or else when the blood goeth through the veines, as the sweat through the skinne, the tunicks and membranes are diuided by some externall cause, as contusion, ryding, shooting, falles in diuers manners. The Signes are these, if the fluxe be of the artier, or vaine; of the artier, the blood cometh leaping out subtilly red and hote. If it be more grosse, blacke, and thicke, and not leaping, it proceedeth of the vaines, as saith Avicen. The Judgements are, if the blood come out in great abundance it is dangerous, chiefly when there is either convulsion, skinne, sounding, belching, or raving; if it be not stayed, it causeth death, because it is the treasure of life. As for the Cure, there are two intentions, the first to stay the blood, the second to conglutinate the wound:

Bru. li. i ca. 12

Gal. 5. metho. cap. 2. & 12. metho. cap. 7. Signes.

Gal. 5 me. ca. 7

Judgements.

Hip. aphorif. 3. lib. 5. & lib. 7. apho. 9.

Cure. Gui. tract. 3. cap.

Wound : the bloud is stayed by filling vp the wound with
 dry lynt, and aboue it an astringent or cloth wet in vinegar; *Gal. lib. 5. me-*
 if that stay it not, remoue the lynt often and wet it in Vine- *tho. cap. 2.*
 gar, which stauncheth it much : For these things cold and
 mordicant, stay fluxe of bloud in the wounds : or make this
 medicament of *balarmenie. sanguis draconis. thuris, aloes,* of *Hip. apho. 20.*
 each like quantity, mixe them with the white of an egge and *lib. 5.*
 the haire of an old Mare cut small, thereafter bind it reaso- *Gal. 5. me. ca. 4.*
 nable straight, wetting the bands, clothes, and all about it *Auc. tract. 2.*
 in opecrate, touch it not in foure dayes, in touching remoue *cap. 18.*
 all very softly, if it sticke to, humect it with oyle, whites of
 Egges, or wine. Some to stay blood, put this powder, in
 the wound, which I haue sometime vsed, viz. mans blood
 dyed with burnt cloth, wherewith thou shalt fill the wound
 full; some apply ventosies, frictions, ligatures, on y^e parts op-
 posite, some hold their thumbe long on y^e mouth of the vaine, *Gal. principio*
 which is a good remedie, for the bloud coniealeth in the vaine *locorum affec-*
 and so stauncheth. If for all these remedies it stauncheth it *torum. cap. 7.*
 not, we apply on the vaine or artier a little lint wet in vine-
 gar with a little powder of Vitreoll, otherwise we knit them
 as was taught in the Chapter of Aneurisme : if that can-
 not bee done, we cauterize them with hote Irons, taking
 heede to touch the parts neruous. Shelande counselleth *Shelande.*
 the gumme *Lemnium* sodden in Rhenish wine, which *Albucasis.*
 hath many vertues, for it digesteth, mundifieth, incarna-
 teth, and is good in wounds of the head, as saith Matheolus. *Matheolus.*
 If none of these staunch flux of blood, especially in the vaines
 iugulars, I haue sometimes applyed a little astringent the
 breadth of the wound, and holden my finger a day or two
 vpon it, by which meanes I haue cured diuers: if it be in the
 matrix, intestines, or bladder, it shall be stayed by injections
 of iuyce of Plantine, or some astringent powders infused
 in astringent decoction, and such like; the blood being stayed,
 the wound is healed as others, hauing regard to the part,
 for as the vaine is more drye than the flesh, and more soft,
 than the artier, so it must haue contrary remedies : in like

manner the wound in the arter is harder to be healed, than that in the vaine. Sometime there commeth such fluxe of bloud at the nose, that it is hard to staunch, for the which take an ounce of Boll, the Barke of Pomgranet tree, Balsam, and galles, of each three drammes, seed of white Poppie two drams, incorporate all together with the white of an Egge and Vineger, and applye on the temples and nose, it by this the violent flux doe not stay, take foure graines of my *Requies*, which infallibly stayeth all fluxes; otherwise follow forth such things as are set downe in the Chapter of Flux of bloud at the nose.

My requies.

CHAP. VIII.

Of wounds in the Nerves, Tendons, and Ligaments.

Lanfrancus.

Chir. parua.

Causes.

Signes.

Gal. metho. 4.

cap. 6. & 6.

lib. 2.

Judgements.

Brunus. lib. 1.

Chirur. cap. 5.

Gal. 6. therru.

Wittes and thrusts in the nerves chance in diuers parts of our bodie, and in diuers manners according to the instrument it is done with, some are simple, others composed superficial, profound, according to the diuersity, of the which we must diuersifie the remedy. The Causes ye haue heard in the generall Chapter. The Signes are knowne by offending of the mouing and feeling, and by the vehement dolour, which causeth fluxion, feuer, spaine, raving, inflammation and fluxion on the nerves. The Judgements are, that all wounds in the parts neruous are dangerous, for the great communication they haue with the braines, and the nerue halfe cut, is more dangerous and dolorous, than if it were all cut, which if so be the action of the member doth decay or at the least some part thereof: also wounds in the ioynts are for the most part mortall, because of the Aponeuroses, of the Tendons and membraines that they are covered and knit with; so euill accidents doe happen, chiefly being profound. As for the Cure, if the body be full of humors, purge and let bloud, with quietlying and strict dyet, if the

if the nerue be thrust, beware of putting to it any medicines
 conglutinatives, but first of all some gentle remedies to ap-
 pease the dolour, hold the wound open: if it be narrow and
 deepe, incise it that the matter may passe more easily, then *Rel. lib. 3. ca. 5.*
 put in the wound a medicament that heateth and dryeth, to
 wit, oyle of Hypericon, Turpentine of Venice, Aquavite, *Pau. li. 4. ca. 54*
 and a little Euphorbe, some put to the Turpentine and oyle *Gal. meth 6.*
 of Hypericon, a little quicke sulphure, rubbe the about with *Gal. cap. 6. de*
 oyle of Sage, Turpentine, and Annieseds, which must be *comp. medic.*
 reiterated twice or thrice euery day. If there be putrefacti- *Aetius lib. 4.*
 on or inflammation, vse a cataplasme made of Barly meale, *cap. 27.*
 Lyncseed, Oreb sodden in Sapa, Vinegar, or Drimell:
 sometimes cometh picking of the nerue in the armes by *Gal. 6. meth.*
 bleeding, for the which vse this set downe by Mesues. Take *cap. 2. & 3.*
 two ounces of oyle of Oliue, of salt two ounces, seeth them *Mesues de a-*
 together, and put to it oyle of Turpentine, and put it hotte *gritudo. lib. 6.*
 in the wound: if dolour happen, it shall be appeased as ye *cap. 3.*
 haue heard in the generall Chapter: if conuulsion, rubbe
 the head, necke, backe, and vnder the armes, with oyle of
 Lillies, Bayes, *costini et lumbricorum*, Hennes grease,
 Calues marrowes, vnguent de althea: if the nerue be cut
 in length and appeareth to the sight, abstaine from all sharpe
 remedies, as Euphorbe, vse *Diapampholigos* dissolved in
 oyle of Roses. Also this remedy of homie dissolved in oyle *Gal. 6. meth.*
 of Roses, Ware, a little Turpentine, all which remedies *cap. 2.*
 must be applyed warme. If there bee much matter in the *Hippo. lib. 5.*
 wound, dresse it softly with bombast, or washed with sweet *apho. 18.*
 wine, and lay on it the emplaster *Triapharmacum* or *Enea-*
pharmacum. If the nerue be cut ouerthwart, there is great
 danger of conuulsion and inflammation, for the fibres which
 are cut, communicate with the vncut. For the Cure of the
 which, rest, keepe drye, and draw blood, with such other re-
 medies as ye haue heard. If the nerue be confused, and the *Gal. 6. meth.*
 skinne also, and bled, it requireth a medicament drying, *cap. 3.*
 and binding the parts disioyned, made of Drimell, flower
 of Beanes and Oreb sodden together, putting thereto a little

*Gal. 6. meth.
cap. 4.
Gal. de comp.
Phar. lib. 3.
cap. 4. & 9.*

flower of Gruy, also to rubbe the part with oyle of Roses, and the white of an egge, thereafter soment the wound with warme wine. If the nerue be contused without offence of the skinne, rubbe it with oyle of Camomill, Iris, and Rue. If the tendons be hurt, which is a substance mixed with nerues and ligaments, they haue the same cure that nerues haue, but the medicament must be more strong and dry. If y^e ligaments be hurt, which are like the nerues & tendons, it requireth a stronger medicament, for they haue little feeling, not communicating with the braines, they proceed from the bone, and goe to the bone, so any medicament drying may be vsed without offence: thereafter fill vp the flesh, and consolidate the wound, as others.

CHAP. IX.

¶ Of wounds which happen by byting of venomous Beasts.

*Cels. li. 5. ca. 27
Pau. li. 5. ca. 8.*

*Signes.
Iudgements.*

Cels. ibid.

Pli. lib. 2. ca. 1

Arnald. lib. 3.

breui. cap. 13.

Seeing wee haue spoken sufficiently of most parte of woundes done by instrumentes and things inanimate, now it resteth to speake of those which are done by liuing creatures, as men, horses, oxen, swine, bees, apes, serpents, and diuers others, the which are not without venom. The Signes are euident: the Iudgements are, that those which are venomous, are most dangerous, for if good order be not taken, they goe to noble partes, so that death doth ensue: Paulus Aegineta reporteth that ma's biting when he is fasting in the morning, is very venomous. Gordonius lib. 5. cap. 25. 26. &c. saith, that the biting of a madde dogge is most dangerous, for albeit the sicke feele not much in the beginning, yet after a moneth or a yeare it doth appeare, for in that time it seeketh the heart, being of nature and qualitie to seeke the destruction thereof. I knew a boy in London bitten with a madde dogge, and being well sixe weekes dyed afterwarde. Antonius Beneuenius counselleth to take

take treacle with wine and minister to such as are bitten, or hurt by venomous beasts, also the hearb *Betonica* bruised and put on the wound, in like manner it shall be good to apply ventosies with scarrifications, also sucking with the mouth by medicaments attractiues, by cauters and such like. If the wound be little, wee wash it with oxycrate warme, after the ventosies are taken away, it shall be good to open little dogges, cattes, or fowles and lay on it, sometime to apply cauters actuals, to consume all that which is affected. If the beast be very venomous, salte or bryne with a little Honie, in the which nepeta hath bene sodden, is very good. And likewise the treacle of Andromach applied in forme of a plaister. Or this, *Rec. picis nigrae, axungiae veruicinae, olei antiqui an. partem unam galbani onc. i. fiat unguentum*: the vngent of Diuus is good for all woundes both venomous and not venomous, in al this time we must comfort the noble partes, giue drincks of triacle and mithridate, and let not the sicke sleepe. If the venom be dispersed thzough the body, vse purging, vomiting and bleeding, also prouocation of sineate and bryne. The venom by these meanes being taken away, procede in the cure, as is sayd in other woundes. As for the stinge of the bee you shall presently pull it out, thereafter rub the part with the iuyce of Malloves.

Cure.

*Pa li. 5. ca. 27**Gal. 13. thera.**cap. 6.**Dios. li. 8. ca. 14**Theodo. lib. 2.**cap. 19.**Aetius lib. 4.**Serm. 1. ap. 10**Paul. li. 5. ca. 5.*

CHAP. X.

I Of Wounds in the bones.

Having spoken of wounds in the flesh, vaines artiers, nerues, ligaments and tendons, now we will intreat of those which happen in the bones, which is an incision done by some instrument that cutteth, thrusteth or breaketh, sometime superficiall, otherwiles thzough the substance thereof. The Judgements as saith Hippocrates, if Crisipelas doe happen in a bone vncouered, it is an euill

Definition.

Gal. 6. therap.

Judgements.

*Fillop. expo. in
librum.*

Hip. de vul.

Lib. 1. cap. 16.

*Lib. 9. sue me-
dicine.*

Cure.

Aui. lib. 9.

sue medicine.

signe : if the great bones bee hurt, as the thigh, legge, or arme, it is without all question very dangerous, if by the stroke of instrument any peice of boane bee separated, thou must by fitte medicamentes helpe the separation, and not draw it by force, for that causeth great accidentes, as fistules, fevers, syncope, convulsion as saith Auicen. The Cure is not different from the curation of other woundes, if the bone be broken or cutte, it must be bound and dressed as ye shall heare in the Chapter of fractures. If it be discovered, we put on it, as counselleth Auicen, the powder of myrrhe, which causeth the flesh to grow on it, then vse incarnatiues, desiccatiues, & cicatrize the wound as others.

CHAP. XI.

Of Wounds in the head.

Definition.

*Hip. de vulne.
Capitis.*

Cause.

Judgements.

Signes.

Here it shall be necessarie to vnderstand, that in our bodies there are three noble parts, whereby we are gouerned, and without them can doe nothing, as the braines, the heart, and the liuer, for the which three parts nature hath ordained for euery one a seuerall domicill, as the head for the braines, the thorax or breast for the heart, and the inferiour venter for the liuer, the which three domicilles being wounded, there must some other particularities bee obserued for curation thereof, then ye haue heard. Therefore we will discourse of them scuerally, and first of the head. The head, wherein are contained the braines, is subiect to solution of continuitie which sometime is simple, otherwhiles composed with fracture of the crane, some penetrateth the membranous, other the proper substance of the braines, the Cause and Judgements are, as ye haue heard in the Chapter generall of Woundes. The Signes of the simple are as in others: the signes of fractures mortall in the skull, are feuer before 12. dayes in Winter, and 7. dayes in Sommer, euill colour of the wound, liuide, little quantitie of

of matter, the skinne drie and aride, the tongue blacke, a-
voiding bnauares of excrements and water, the sicke ra-
ueth, pustules in the tongue, convulsion in the parte oppo-
site, some fall into apoplexie, and death followeth. The
signes of healing of fractures in the head, if after the head be
trepaned, or the bone cut out by stroke or otherwise, the
membaine called *dura mater*, being of naturall colour and
mouing, the flesh that groweth, be red, the sicke removing
well his necke and iawes, all these are good signes; other-
wise not. The simple wound is cured as others: the
composed with fracture and other accidents is cured after
diuers manners, according to the diuersitie of the fracture,
as ye shall heare. The bone is sometime broken superfici-
ally, otherwhiles to the middest, and sometime thorough
both the tables, offending the membaines that couer the
baines; of the which fractures there are five kinds, the first
is called fissure or cleft, which shalbe knowne by incision of
flesh to the pan in forme of S. Georges crosse, then separate
the crane from the pericrane, put in lint or caddie to dilate
the wound, to the end the trepan or other instrument touch
not the flesh: if in cutting any veine or arter it bleede, it
must be knit. Thou shalt know the cleft by rubbing on it
with thy nayle, which if you suspect to be in both the tables,
cause the sicke to holde his mouth and eyes close, holding in
his breath, and if there issue out humiditie by the cleft, be as-
sured that both the tables be riuen, for the which we must
eether with trepan, congin, or other instrument cut the bone
to *dura mater*, taking away the least you can of the said bone
as counselleth Celsus, giuing onely issue to the bloud and
matter contayned in the place. The second kind of fracture
is called contusion, which is oftentimes so great, that it se-
parateth the crane from the flesh, for the remedies whereof
we vse sections to euacuate the bloud, yet applying no hu-
mide remedies which are contrarie to the bone of the head:
sometime the cranium is pressed in by the stroke, cheifly in
children, that haue the bone yet soft, which sometime rise of
themselves,

Cure.

*Rol. li. 8. ca. 2.**Hip. lib. de.**vulneribus.**capitis.**S. Georges.**crosse.**Phillip expo.**in lib. Hip. de.**vulne capitis.**cap. 23.**Lang. francus.**chirurg. parua.**cap. 8.*

themselves, if not we apply ventosies and cause the sick to hold in his breath to make it rise, emplasters which haue the force to draw. If so: all this, it doth not rise, incise the flesh and apply a firefound, if that be not sufficient, apply a trepan, then an eleuator. The third kind, is pressing downe of cranium which commeth by the weight of the instrument it is done with, or else with a fall from some high place and is reduced as the precedent, if it be pressed downe by peeces, it must be lifted with the eleuator or pincetts meete to draw these peeces, without the membaines, apply not the trepan if the bones be altogether broken. The fourth kind, is called incision in the bone, whereof there are diuers kinds according to the diuersity of the instrument, according to the which wee must diuert the remedies: if it chance the flesh and bone be all cut, thou shalt by the counsell of Celsus, euacuat the bloud if any be, cleanse & dresse well the wound, close the bone with the flesh, sow vp the wound, leaving a space for the tent to euacuat the matter in both sides. The fift kind of fracture, is called counterclift, that is, when the cleft of the bone is in the part opposite to the soze, and of all fractures this is the worst, and deceaueth most the Chirurgion, for in it there is no signe but coniecture, and by feeling of the hurt man, in oft putting his hand on the place, and if he got the stroke with violence, falling after he got it, and did vomit, notwithstanding there be no cleft where he got y stroke. I haue knowne sundry dye in this case, chiefly at the battle of Sandlis in Fraunce a valiant Captaine of Paris, who had a stroke on the right parietary, who notwithstanding of all handling by skilfull Chyrurgions dyed within 20. dayes, at which time his *Cranium* was opened, and there was found great quantity of blood vnder the left parietarie, with a cleft in the same. There is another kind of maladie, called commotion or astonishment of the braines, the which causeth the same accidents, as the fracture of the *Cranium*, and is caused by falls from high places, strokes, shot of bullets, launces, or by the sound of a Cannon shot,

Celsus.

Captaine
Mutio.

Astonishment.

or with the hand, as sayth Hippocrates speaking of a man, who gaue a yong woman in playing, a little blowe on the *Sepi demo. n.*
os bregma, who incontinent tooke a feauer and conuulsion,
 voyded humors by the care, and so dyed.

We must vnderstand that any violent stroke may asto-
 nish the head, and be occasion to breake vaines and artiers,
 not onely of those which passe betweene the sutors, but also
 those betweene the tables, for the suspension of *dura mater*;
 of the which commeth great flux of blood, which runneth be-
 twixt the bone and membzaines, or betwixt the membzaine
 and bzaines, which afterwards doth rot and cause many ac-
 cidents, as dimnesse of sight, vomiting of choller, which *Divers simp-*
 chanceth by reason of the nerues of the first coniugation, that *tomes.*
 hath connerion with the stomacke; in like manner inflam-
 mation of the membzaines, which communicate to all the
 body, and causeth feuer, raving, aposthume, corruption in
 the bzaynes, and death. The wounds of the head must in
 no wise be neglected, albeit they be but small, for oftentimes
 in little wounds come great accidents, and especially in bo-
 dyes euill disposed. The Cure hereof consisteth, first in ab-
 stayning from wine and strong drinke, vsing *Ptylsan*, or
 sodden water with a little sirupe of *Uyolets*, or *Acetose*, cal-
 led *rotus diuinus*, so continue till the accidents be past, let the
 sicke eat little and of good digestion, as Capons, Chickens,
 Pigeons, Meale, Mutton, and such like, vsing a straight
 dyet till the accidents be past: in the meane time he may vse
 Comfits of Carue, conserue of Roses, for such things keepe
 the vapours from ascending to the head, the ayre must nei-
 ther be hot nor cold, sleepe moderately, and purge gently
 with Glysters, blæde in the cephalicke vaine, according to
 the accidents. *Parey* telleth of a man, from whome hee
 drew 100. saucers of blood in flower dayes, who thereby
 was cured, and otherwise had dyed. *Pareys.*
 Shaue the head and *Shaue the*
 apply Cataplasmes of flower of Beanes, and Drimell, *head.*
 with the oyle of Roses, and such like, that are somewhat
 cold and humide, vse frictions and ligatozs on the extremi-
 ties,

*Filloz. exposit.
in lib. H p. de
vulner. capitis
cap. 17. & 28.*

*Hip. de lo. is in
homine.*

*Hip. de locis in
homine.*

Hip. Cel. Avi.

ties, ventosities on the shoulders, sometime to open the vaine
pappis frontis sub lingua, and the artier on the temples. Ab-
staine in the sicknesse and long after from women and per-
turbations of the mind. The perticulat is thus, first wee
consider if the bone be broken, that must be trepained, con-
ged, or lifted, for the doing whereof, the place must first be
incised as ye have heard; yet it is not needfull to trepaine
in all fractures and clefts, for sometimes the first table is of-
fended, yet not penetrating to the duploy, otherwhiles the
duploy contused, the second table whole, sometimes the bro-
ken bone is a little lifted, so that the matter contained hath
place to passe, and therefore it is not needfull to trepan. If
any pece of bone do fall on the *dura mater*, it must be drawn
by fit instruments, the Trepan is good, when the clefts are
so little that the matter cannot euacuate, yet it is not meete
to trepaine in all fractures as ye have heard, not to discover
the braines, without necessity & good iudgement, so that the
young Chirurgion may not so hastily, as in time past, trepan
for euery simple fracture: I will shew when trepaning
should be vsed, for what cause, and in what places, also the
way to trepane well. First the Chyrurgion shall well con-
sider the stroake and symptoms, if it be little and the vaine
betwixt the two tables, or those that hold vp the *dura mater*
with the crane be offended, and the blood fallen on the mem-
braine, then the trepan must be vsed to withdraw that mat-
ter, which otherwise would cause death, sometime it must
be vsed for the out-taking of the little bones that pricke the
membaine, also that more commodiously we may apply our
remedies: In all these things Hippocrates counselleth to
trepan. When the fracture is in the first table, wee vse the
trepan exfoliative to giue issue to the blood which is betwixt
the tables. The time we should trepan is two or thre daies
at the furthest after the hurt, long delay causeth defluxion of
humors on the *dura mater*, which putrieth and causeth in-
flammation, so incontinent after we haue perceiued the of-
fence of the crane, and that the membaines suffer, which
is

is known by the sond or finger, wee should trepane in the beginning: yet some doe stay untill the 7. 10. or 14. day, which is dangerous, for the which cause be advised in iudging therein. Then we must know what places may indure the trepan, and which not, for to auoyde diuers accidents, considering first if the bone bee broken and separated in diuers peeces, which if it be, the peeces must be lifted by fit instruments, and not by the Trepan. In like manner wee must not trepan on the fractures, for that cutteth the vains, artiers, and filaments, which passe betwene the pericrane and *dura mater*, and cause great dolour and hemeragie of blood: for the which cause, if occasion constraine vs to trepane in those parts, we apply the trepan on both sides of the suture, for the auoyding of the aforesayd accidents, as also for euacuation of the humors contained. The Trepan in like sort must not be applyed on the open of the head in yong Children, being yet soft and not solide, nor on the temples, for the muscles tempoꝛall, where there is abundance of artiers, membꝛaines, and nerues, whereof commeth great fluxe of blood, feuer, conuulsion, with other euill accidents, yet if fracture doth chaunce in those parts, we apply the trepan a little aboue the sayd muscle tempoꝛall. Wee must not trepane on the boane *Petrosa*, which is vnder the sayd muscle, nor on the boane of the eyes, because there is great cavity, full of ayre and humidity, ordayned by nature to prepare the ayre that goeth to the braines. And these are the places which we should eschew in applying the trepan, yet I haue seene some trepanned in these places, and healed, but not without great hazard. The way to trepane is thus: First scituate the head of the hurt in good scituation, and holden by some body that it doe not wagge, close his eares with Cotton, haue a good fire, least the cold ayre enter on the membꝛaines, which may make putrefaction, then the Trepan perforatiue shall be applyed,

Hip. de. vul. capitis. 8.

Hip. de fract. capitis.

A Trepan.

A Trepan, with other Instruments for the head.



to make a hole for the piramide of the great Trepan, next apply the whole Trepan with the piramide, turning it about softly, till thou hast made away with the teeth of the Trepan, then take out the piramide, otherwise it shall passe and offend the membraines, continue in turning softly the Trepan, sometime to lift it, to put off the sawinges of the bone, and when thou art at the duploy, which shall be perceived by the outcoming of the blood, you shall consider if it be needefull to passe further, as yee haue heard, take good hœde in trepanning of the second table, lifting oft the Trepan and sounding if it be nere cut, if it be moze cutte on the one side then on the other, presse the Trepan on the thickest part, and in this take good hœde, for often in cutting the one before the other, thou scratchest the *dura mater* which causeth inflammation and death: being almost cutte, assay with the elauator to draw it without violence, if there be much of the sawings on the *dura mater*, take them out. This I thought good to aduertise the young Chirurgion touching this operation, which being done, thou perceyuest if the membaine be inflamed or in any wise altered as oft happeneth, and is most dangerous, for which we giue glisters, drawe blood, and vse fomentations on the place of anodines and repercussives. If there be alteration, make a medicine of honie of Roses, sirrope of Wormewood, aquauite, with a little aloes and myrre, some adde to it a little white wine. If there be great putrefaction, put thereto a little Egypciac: if there be neither inflammation nor alteration, it shall suffice onely a little aquauite with honie of Roses, so continuing till the membraines be mundified, applying alwayes the medicines hotte, and cure it afterwarde as other Wounds. Use alwayes aswell in this, as all woundes of the head, the emplaster veneticum, prescribed in The poore mans Guide, and also the emplaster of betonica, or diacalcios malaxed with wine. There is great Iudgment to be vsed in doing this operation, and fete there are founde that do it well. Many I haue seene of verie learned

*Fillop exposi.
Li. hip. de vul.
capi. cap. 36.
Celsus.*

*Fillop. lib. cir.
10. ap. 39. &
91. & 92.*

learned and expert men, & heard of diuers to my great ioy & comfort, among which M. George Baker sometime Chirurgion ordinarie to that worthy Prince Quene Elizabeth; and now to his most sacred maiestie a man of great learning and experience most fortunate and dexter in this operation, like as in all other operations of Chirurgery: God increase the number of such in this kingdome.

CHAP. XII.

Of wounds in the thorax.

Definition.

Rol. li. 3. cap. 23.

Cause.
Signes.

Cure.

The Thorax which is domicill to the heart and lights, suffereth solution of continuity in diuers manners, whereof some are externe and doe not penetrate, others penetrate to some of the partes contained therein, as the heart, lights, mediastin & diaphragma, some passe through out, of the which some are curable, some incurable, and some mortall, as yee haue heard in the Chapter Generall, as also the Causes and Signes. Those which penetrate at the backe are more dangerous, then at the interior part, because of the vaines, artiers, nerues, and such like. The Cure consisteth in good dyet in the fire vnnaturall things, purgation, letting of blood according to the temperature of the body, time, and Region. Those which doe not penetrate, differ nothing from the generall of other simple woundes, sauing onely in binding, which must be incarnative, sometime narrow, otherwhiles broad according to the difference and scituation of the wound. Touching those which penetrate, there is great diuersitie of opinion in the cure, some are of the opinion to consolidate the wound as soon as may be to hinder the externe ayre to hurt the parts vitall, others giue counsell to holde them open, and in case the issue be not large enough, to dilate it, and make it larger, that if there bee any bloud or other thing in the capacitie, it may aboide, but which of these wayes ought to be followed, the iudgement

ment of the expert Chirurgion is to bee required : knowing first, if it doth penetrate, which shall bee done in closing his mouth and nose, and then holding a candle to the wound, if the ayre commeth forth, it is sure that it penetrates ; if there be blood in y^e capacitie, you shall know by y^e ponderosite of y^e diaphragma, accompanied with dolor, feuer and vomiting; if any cheife part be offended, ye shall know by the signes set downe in the Chapter Generall. If neither blood bee shed, Signes of the wound penetrate nor any part offended, ye shall conglutinate the wounde, putting no tent therein, vsing onely a little of my balme set downe in the Chapter of Gunshot, in the meane time vse one potion vulnerat in such as doth penetrate. If there be any little thing left in the wounde, nature will easily discharge it, for (as saith Galen) it doth expell not onely that which offendeth, through the pannickles, but also through Com. 7. apho. the middest of the bones. Those which penetrate with effusion of blood on the diaphragma and are not mortall, must be tented with a thread at the tent, to the end that if it goe in, it may be drawn out again, cause the sicke to lie on the soze side, chiefly when you dresse him, that the blood and matter may issue at the wounde, vsing alwaies iniections of barley, pimpernell, pilosell, buglose, scrofularie, cheruill, all sodden in water, putting thereto a little honie or sirrope of roses, with a little white wine for a certaine time. Sometime the blood cannot euacuate by the wound, it being higher then the diaphragma, which causeth difficultye of respiring, for the which make an issue, as ye haue heard in *Empiema*, to euacuate the humoz contained : if the putrefaction be great, mixe with the foresaid iniection a little egipciac, the wound being mundified, with this or such like, thou shalt vse this iniection, which is somewhat desiccative. *Rec. rosarum, balaustiorum, mirtilorum an. onc. i. mirabolani, citrini an. onc. 2 mellis rosati parum, coquantur in aqua plantaginis, ad consumptionem tertie partis :* with this thou shalt washe the wound, twice aday.

If the body be of an euill temperature, or that the nether part of the lights be hurt, it stayeth not quickly, but will voyde much; then we must vse a tent of Lead or Silver, that is hollow within, that the matter may euacuate, we vse also this decoction to drinke in the morning, fasting foure holwers after. Take Scabius, Buglosse, a orange, Pimpernell, Aristolochia, Agrimonie, Betonie, pilosell, an *M. se vnarum mundiarum, seminis hipericonis, & cardui bened. Et an. unc. 1. florum trium cordialium an. P. 1. coquantur in aqua, adde in sine uni albi parum, sirapi rosati, & cinamomi an. unc. 2.* vsing on the wound the emplaster *Diacalciteos* maledared in wine. If notwithstanding these remedies, it remaineth long in healing, and doth degender in fistull: for the curation of the which, haue recourse to the Booke of Ulcers and Chapter of Fistula.

CHAP. XIII.

¶ Of Wounds in the bellie.

Cause.
Singes
Iudgements.

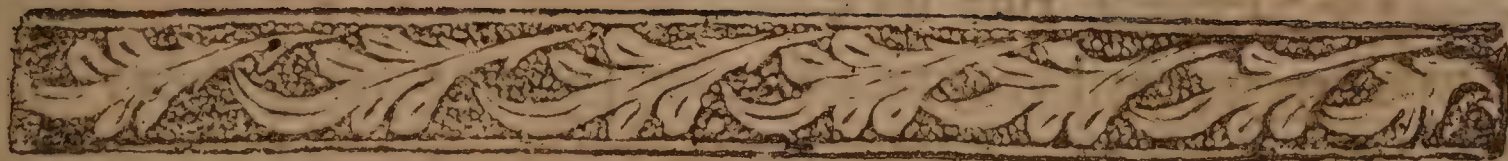
Paul. lib. 6.
cap. 52.

The inferiour bellie, wherein the Liuer with the Kidneys and Silt are inclosed, is often wounded in diuers manners, some penetrates, and some not; offending the parts contained, as the stomacke, Liuer, Silt, Kidneyes, gut, vaines, artiers, the epiplon and vriters, or some other parts: The Causes, Signes, & Iudgements whereof, we haue heard in the generall Chapter. The Iudgements, those that doe not penetrate, are cured like other simple wounds; those which penetrate into the capacity, require another manner of cure. Wounds in the side, in the oblique muscles are not so dangerous, as those in the transversall, because that the periton is vneasie to so in specially in *musculo recto* which descendeth from the breast to os pubis. Also little wounds in those places are more difficill, than those that are more ample, in them if the guts come out, they tumifie, and so are vneasie to put in againe: for the which vse such

such remedies as ye haue heard in *Axymphalon*, vsing the
 suture *Gastrophike*; if the guts be peared, they must *Allu. lib. 2.*
 be sewed with suture pellito: (as was shewed in y^e generall *cap. 45.*
 Chapter) and cast on the wound the powder of Aloes, Myr,
 Masticke, and Woll, and reduce it softly into the own place, *Hip. apho. 53.*
 vsing an emplaster retentive and agglutinative. If the *sect. 6.*
Inge. um be cut, it is impossible or most difficult to heale, by *Rol. li. 3. ca. 30.*
 reason of the great vaines contained therein, if any of the
 guts haue changed colour, there is no hope. If the Caule
 or *Omentum* be altered, it must be knit and reduced, as yee
 haue heard in the generall Chapter. In all wounds in the
 bellie vse Blisters and iniections, astringents, and deter-
 siues, chiefly if the great intestine, matrix, or blad-
 der be hurt. And so we end this Booke of
 Wounds, and shall follow out that
 of Ulcers after the same
 manner.

Y. 2

THE



THE SEVENTH BOOKE; *Of Ulcers.*

*Which containeth X. Chapters ; whose Contents
bee these ; by PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Ulcers in generall.
2. Of Ulcers sanious, and their curation.
3. Of the Ulcer Virulent.
4. Of the Ulcer profound and Cavernous.
5. Of the Ulcer Sordide and Putride.
6. Of Ulcers difficile to cure.
7. Of Ulcers with corruption of the Bones.
8. Of Ulcers Cancrous.
9. Of Fistula.
10. Of Burnings.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of Ulcers in generall.

Interloqvitors. Peter, and Iohn.

Pet.



Seeing wee haue amply spoken of Tumors
and Wounds and of their Definition,
Cause, Signes, and Cure ; so in like man-
ner wee will proceede in Ulcers, seeing

Definition.

*Gal. de. can. ar-
tis. cap. 6.*

many tumors and wounds doe suppure and degender in vl-
cers, so it is needfull after the Booke hereof, to speake of vl-
cers, and first I demaund what is an Ulcer?

Ioh. It is a solution of continuity made by erosion in di-
uers parts of the body, out of the which proceedeth a matter
purulent,

purulent, which hindereth the consolidation thereof.

Pet. Are they not different?

Ioh. Some differ in nature, in substance, in quantity, *fi. Difference of*
figure, and accidents. *ulcers.*

Pet. How differ they in nature and substance?

Ioh. Some are simple in the flesh without any other in-
disposition, as sayth Galen; others are composed with one, *Tang. lib. 3.*
or more maladies, as vlcers with intemperie, corruption of *Gal. lib. 2. met.*
the bone, Apothume, nodosity, and diuers other accidents.

Pet. How differ they in figure and quantity?

Ioh. Some are round, long, profound, superficial, great,
and small.

Pet. How differ they by accidents?

Ioh. Some are putride, dolorous, fistulous, cancrus,
some are inueterate, some recent, some in one member, some
in other places.

Pet. How many causes are there of vlcers?

Cause of ul-
cers.

Ioh. Three; primitive, antecedent, and coniunct.

Pet. Which are the primitives?

Ioh. Contusion, scratching, heats, application of sharpe
medicaments, corrosion, great cold that extinguisheth the
naturall heat, chiefly in the extremities.

Pet. Which are the causes antecedent?

Ioh. Euill humors in the body, which come of euill nou- *Gal de causis*
riture, or euill disposition of the body, or some part thereof, *morbor. ca. 16.*
chiefly the Liuer, ventricle, and Spleen. *Et. cap. 4. met.*

Pet. How are those humors causes of Vlcers?

Ioh. Partly by their euill quality, partly through aboun-
dance of them doe spoyle, open and corrode the most debill
parts of our body, not hauing force to resist such malignity,
and so causeth vlcers.

Pet. Which are the coniunct causes?

Ioh. The foresayd humors conioyned in the parts vlc-
red, as also all other violent things that haue force to vlc-
rate the same part

Pet. Which are the Signes?

¶ 3

Ioh. They

Signes.

Ioh. They are euident; or are in the body, & are knowne by the dolour, nature, or the place, accidents and excrements, and such as you shall heare in the fixe kinds of proper vlcers.

Gal.com. 3. aphor. lib. 1. de officina.

med. i. & 3. de locis affectis.

Difference.

Pet. Which are those fixe kinds of vlcers?

Ioh. The first is sanious, 2. virulent, 3. filthie, 4. cancrus, 5. putride or stinking, 6. corrosiue or rotten away.

Pet. Haue they no other names?

Ioh. They haue fiue other names, and first by the humors, secondly by y^e matter, that cometh from them, thirdly of the accidents, fourthly of the sickness, fifthly by comparing them to the similitude of beasts.

Pet. How take they their names by the humors?

Ioh. Some are of the Phlegmatick humor, and are called Phlegmaticks, some by the blood, and are called sanguinis, be the chollos, chollosicke, and by melancholy, melancholick.

Pet. How take they the names of the matter?

Ioh. Of the great abundance of sanie or humidity, it is called vlcer sanious, of the pus, purulent, of the sordidities, it is called sordide, of the virulence, it is called virulent.

Pet. How take they their names of the accidents?

Ioh. Of the hardness called callositie it is hard and callous, of the cauters it is called cauernous, of the fistule, it is called fistulas, of the putrifaction putride, of the corrosion or malignitie of the matter, corrosiue, of the cankers or hardness turned ouer it, called cancrus, of the dolor, dolorous, of aposthume, aposthumus. In all vlcers where any of these raygne, they heale not, till they be taken away.

Pet. What is callositie?

Ioh. It is a dry flesh without dolor, because it hath no vaine, to make it humide, no nerue to giue it feeling.

Pet. How is that called, which commonly cometh from vlcers?

Ioh. It is called sanie or matter.

Pet. What is Sanie?

Ioh. It

Ioh. It is a corruption of the part, in hich nature cannot digest, and make it to nourish the same.

Pet. How many sortes of sanie is there?

Ioh. Two, to wit, that which is commendable, as it ought to be, and that which is not.

Pet. Which is commendable?

Ioh. It is that which is white, light, equall in consistence, neither thick, thin, nor euill tasted.

Pet. Which is not commendable, or euill sanie?

Ioh. It is a corruption of the instrument, much altered through vnnaturall heate, and according to that alteration it produceth euill sanie.

Pet. What call you Pus?

Ioh. It is a kinde of sanie made of the nouriture and superfluitie of the member, tending to corruption by the alteration of the naturall heate and debilitie of the member, out of the which cometh a matter called *virus & sordities*.

Pet. What is virus?

Ioh. It is that which is ingendred of the most subtile & hotte parte of the pituitous humoz, which nature cannot digest for the great abundance thereof, of which Guido alleged 4. kinds, cold and hote, redde and watric.

Pet. What is it thou callest sordities?

Ioh. It is a grosse matter, ingendred of grosse humozs.

Gal. lib. 3. metho.

Pet. What callest thou durities, or hardnesse?

Gal. 3. metho.

Ioh. It is a thing hard and solide, not easie to be corrupted, which may come of three causes, that is, great heate, congelation, repletion.

cap. 4. 6. & 7.

Pet. What callest thou fistula?

Gal. lib. de tumoribus con.

tra naturam.

Ioh. It is a profound vicer, having the entry, hard, narrow, deepe, cauernous, from the which proceedeth a matter virulent.

Pet. What is putrefaction?

Ioh. It is a change of the substance of our whole body, or of some part thereof, through an vnnaturall heate.

Pet. What is the cause of putrefaction in our bodies?

Ioh. It cometh, either that the spirit animall is corrupted, or cannot goe to the parte, for colde, heate, apostume, pustules, vlcers ambulatiues, venomous; also putting of oyles and such like in deepe vlcers, do corrupt the flesh, also too much vsing of refrigeratiues in hotte apostumes, and legators which intercept the spirite.

Three sortes
of putrefaction.

Pet. How many sortes of Putrefactions are there?

Ioh. Three, to wit, Gangren, Estachiles, and Histiomen.

Pet. What is Gangren?

Ioh. It is a putrefaction of the parte hauing yet feeling, and differeth in that from others.

Pet. What is Estachiles?

Ioh. It is a putrefaction of the member, or parte thereof, without feeling, corrupting both flesh and bone.

Pet. What is Histiomen?

Ioh. It is a whole corruption of the member, eating and consuming the whole body away.

Pet. What is Corrosion?

Ioh. It is a consumption of the flesh, through the bitterness and sharpnesse of the humors.

Pet. What are the causes of Corrosion?

Ioh. The malignitie of the flesh, the humor chollick, phlegmatick, salt admired.

Pet. What callest thou Cancer?

Ioh. It is a malady of a matter colde and drie, being hot by putrefaction, hardnes, and other signes, as ye haue hard in his proper Chapter.

Pet. What are the Iudgements?

Iudgements.

Hip. 6. lib. 45. apho.

Ioh. There are diuers, according to the accidents that fall; and first, that vlcers remaining a yeare or more vncured, make the bone vnder them altered and rotten, and when such vlcers are whole, there remaineth a cavitie in the part vlcered; all vlcers that are euill coloured blacke are esteemed malignes; if any vlcer being filled vp and ready to cicatrize, begin sodainely to runne againe without manifest

manifest cause, it is in danger to become fistulous. *Hipo.* *Hip. 6. lib. a-
crates* saith, that vlcers which haue no haire about them, are *pho. 4.*
vneasie to heale and cicatrize; also those vlcers which come
by reason of some maladie, as hidropsie, and cachexie, are
hard to heale. *Hippocrates* saith also, if any man haue an vl-
cer, whether it be come to him befoze his sicknesse, or in *Lib. 1. progo.
cap 6. lib. 10.
meth.*
the sicknesse, and the sicke dye, that vlcer shall be befoze hee
die, drie, blew, or pale. The same *Hippocrates* saith also, that *Lib. apho. 58.*
those who haue vlcers accompanied with tumoz, doe nei-
ther fall in conuulsion, raving, nor frensie, but if the tumoz,
goe away without manifest cause, and if the vlcer be in the
backe, the sicke falleth in spasme: if befoze in the bodie, in
rauing and frensie: if in the thorax befoze he falleth in em-
piem and plurisie, all vlcers accompanied with varices, or
intemperie, and those also that haue the sides hard, are diffi-
cile to heale: all vlcers in the extremities of the muscles of
the legges and armes, are difficile and dangerous: as also
those, which penetrate in the body: such vlcers as chaunce
in the extremities of the bodie, as in the face, or handes,
make oft phlegmons, or other tumozs against nature, and
in crisis of a maladie, are difficile.

Pet. Which are those which are of easie curation?

Ioh. Those which happen in bodie of good complexion, *Cure,*
and in the which none of the foresaid accidents doe happen.

Pet. Which are the chiefe causes that hinder the healing
of vlcers?

Ioh. According to Galen, the chiefe cause is want of good
bloud to engender flesh, or else that it is euill either by qua- *Celsus lib 7.
titie or quality of it selfe, also dolour, intemperie apostume,
cap. 3. 4. meth.
contusion, Crispelas, Echymos, the south wind which is
cap. 5. & 2.
hote, humide and putrefactive enemy to all wounds and vl-
Alex. apho. pro
cers as saith Guido, also superfluous flesh, hardness, callosity
199. lib. 1. &
of the sides, corruption of the bone, varices, hemeragie of
com in apho. 8,
bloud: also roundnesse in figure, for the which *Hippocra-
tes* counselleth, if the vlcer bee round, to put on it an other
forme. Imbecillitie of the part vlcered, indisposition of the
lyuer*

*Gal. lib. 5. metho.
tho. cap. 10.*

*Paul. 4. cap. 40
41. & 42.*

*Gal. 4. metho.
cap. 1.*

lyner or milke, retention of the monethly course in women, and of the hemorrhoides, and also the applying of medicines vnnicete for such vlcers. Many ignorant Barbers faile here, in, thinking one kind of emplaster to bee good for all sores, in the which they are deceiued: for he that would cure vlcers, must first take away the cause, as also the impediments and accidents, otherwise hee trauaileth in vaine, as saith Paulus, for the persourmance whereof, we must ordaine first good dyet, secondly take away the cause antecedent, to witte, the humors which fallcth, which shall be done by purging, bleeding, according to the cause and the parte: thirdly correct and heale the accidents and indispositions which accompanie the vlcer: these things done, hee may come to the curation hereof, as shall be particularly set downe of every kinde of vlcer, in his proper place.

CHAP. II.

Of Vlcers sanions and the Curation thereof.

Gal. 4. metho. ca. 1.

Cure.

AS in the former Chapter I haue spoken of vlcers in generall, of their difference, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure, so now I will particularly intreat of them. All vlcers are either simple or composed with some other maladie: the simple vlcer requireth onely desiccation, those which are composed, and ioyned with some other accident, except those accidents be taken away cannot heale, for the cure of the which, there are foure Intentions: first in the way of life, which shall be according to the strength of the sicke, nature of the maladie, and abundance of the humors in the bodie, as if the humors be hotte and sharpe, wee ordaine colde things. The second Intention is, in diuerting and intercepting the matter antecedent, which is done by purgations and bleeding if the strength permit, also by frictions,

ons, ligators, application of emplasters, that haue the force
 to repell the matter. The third Intention is in correcting *Gal. lib. 3. ca. 8*
 the accidents leyned with the vicer, as colour, tumoz, con- *& com. in aph.*
 fusion, excrescence of the flesh, callositie of the lippes, rot- *31. cap. 7.*
 tennesie, of the boane, vauice and wormes. First then, we
 must labour to take away the intemperie, which shall bee
 knowne by the colour of the member, by the touching and
 feeling of the patient, which sometime is hotte, sometime
 colde, which if it be drye, we remedy it by purgation and
 bleeding, also if neede be, foment the place with hotte water:
 till it grow redde, as counselleth Galen: thereafter vie this
 vnguent made of mallowes, sodden in water with a little
 hogges grease and honie mixed with nutritum, ceratum,
 galeny rosatum, populeon, incorporate with plantaine wa-
 ter, morrell and houslecke. If the Intemperie be humyde, *Gal. lib. 2. ap.*
 vse vnguents that drye, as pompholigos, de plumbo, ce- *10. & com. in*
 rusa, allom water, vnguent basilicon, citrinum, fuscum de *apho. 8.*
 althea: or this fomentation of claret wine, in the which
 hath bene sodden Roses, betonie, wormewood, rock allum.
 If the Intemperie be cold, we foment the parte onely with
 wine, wherein wormewood hath bene sodden, hyssope, ca-
 lamint, rosemary, vnguent basilicon, and de althea. If the
 Intemperie be hotte, we remedy it by water of plantaine, so-
 lanum, houslecke, or vnguentum rubrificum, cum campho-
 ra, or cerat galen: if there be colour with vicer, which
 cometh of intemperie, erosion, of a subtil humoz or solu-
 tion of continuity, or plenitude of grosse humors, or a flatus-
 ous spirite, for the which take vnguent populeon, oyle of
 yolkes of egges, vnguentum album camphozatum, with
 other such as are in tumors, if the colour be vehement, we
 make a cataplasme narotick of barley flower, oyle of roses,
 henbane, mandrager, poppie, all sodden in milke. If the *Gal. 3 me. sap.*
 colour be accompanied with tumoz, first loke to the cause of *3. & 5.*
 it, thereafter, ordayne the dyet straight and colde, bleeding,
 purging, according to the nature of the humoz, with such
 particular remedies, as ye haue heard in tumors; The ex-
 crescence

*Lib. 5. meth.
cap.*

*Gal. 4 metho.
cap. 2.*

*Pau. lib. 4. cap.
42.*

*Gal. 5 me. cap.
13. & 3. meth.
ca. 3.
Pau. lib. 4. ca.
55.*

cence of the flesh shall be taken away with cauters, razors, sheeres, powder of mercurie, burnt allom, *astrum, squama, aris, unguentum agiptiacum, apostolorum, vitrioli romani.* The hardnes is cured by Remollients and Resolvents, as goose, henns, ducke, and calaes grease, oyle of Lillies, *lumbri-
corum, vulpinum, muscilaginis* of althea, and fenigreci, *ba-
silicon, diachilon magnum de muscilaginibus*, thereafter scarifie as counselleth Auicer, then put powder of mercurie or cut it with a Rasoz to the soft part. If the vlcer become blacke and red, scarifie it, and lette it bleede well and apply things drying. If it be accompanied with varice, it must be taken away as yee haue heard in the Chapter of varix. If there be rottennes in the bone, yee shall haue recourse to the proper Chapter. If there be wormes in the vlcer, we must consume the rottennes and humiditie they are ingendred of, and kill them also, with the decoction of wormewood, Agrimony, marubium, Centoie, Calamint, which is good to wash the vlcers also in the eares, fasting spittle is good for vlcers in the eares, and other parts as saith Archigenes, and Theodoricus, and make the Cicatrize well saoured, with the foresaid decoction wash the vlcers, as also with oyle of wormewood, the powder Aloes, mixed with the oyle of Absinthe and a little ware is very good. Millefolium taken the weight of one drame in white wine killeth the worms in the belly also. The fourth intention consisteth in healing of the places vlcered, which shall be done in taking away the impediments, as ye haue heard thereafter, cicatrize the vlcer with such things as are set downe for the consolidation of wounds.

CHAP. III.

Of vlcers virulent and corrosiue.

Here yee shall heare of those two vlcers which are not much different: those vlcers which haue certaine virulencie

lencie and venenositie are called virulent, but after the bit-
 ternes augement and corrode the flesh and maketh it
 greater it is called corrosive, or eating vlcer, if it eate much
 of the flesh not going deepe, it is called ambulatiue, if yet it
 doth augment it becommeth in cancer or lupus as yee shall
 heare. The cause of these vlcers are euill bilions, humors,
 sharp and biting, the which get some malignity, venenosity
 by there aduersion, and happen oft after Herpes or wounds
 that haue bene irritated by sharpe and biting medicaments.
 The Cure is first in the manner of life, according to the dis-
 position of the body and humors that raigne, next in purging
 partly for the euacuation of such sharpe humors, thirdly in
 applying fit medicines on the vlcer, as if it be very humide,
 the medicaments must be more drying and like to the part,
 as this, take water of allom or plantyne, decoction of cypres,
 Mirabalon, bark of Pomgarnet, and such like. If there
 be great heate in the place, coole it by refrigeratiues, and de-
 sicatiues, Guydo for such vlcers vseth a cake of lead rubbed
 with quicksiluer, *unguentum pompholigos, de minio, or de
 plumbo, unguentum rubrum cum camphera*, take any of these
 mixed with a little *rubia ineparate, plumbi, vsti, cerusa, lose,*
 beaten in a mortar of lead, with water of plantine, a little
serra sigillata, with a little oyle of Roses, make an vnguent.
 If the malignitie be great in the body, drye and consume
 these humors, with cauters actuall, powder of mercurie
 mixed with vnguent rosat, till such time the malice be con-
 sumed, thereafter wash it with the decoction aboue specifi-
 ed. If by all these remedies we profit not, or if the patient
 may not suffer the actuall cauter either through feare or
 tendernesse, we vse the *thochisces* of *diandron de musa arse-
 nic, copporous*, vsing alwaies defensives to repercute the flux-
 ion, which may come through the violence of these remedies.
 If these be not sufficient, Auicen counselleth to cut the mem-
 ber infected and vlcered.

Definition.

Paul. lib 4.

cap 41.

Lan. cap 11.

Causes.

Lib. 1. meth.

ap. 4.

Cure.

Gal. 12. meth.

Gal. li. 5. meth.

cap. 10.

CHAP. IIII.

¶ Of the vlcer profound and
Cavernous.

Definition.

Cause.

Signes.

*Gal. ad. gla. ca.
8. & li. tumo.
cōtra naturā.*

Cure.

*Gal. 3. meth.
cap. 8. & 9.
& lib. 4. ca. 7.
& 2. ad. glau.
cap. 8*

*Par. lib. 4. ca.
4.*

The vlcer cavernous hath the orifice streight and the bottom broad, many cavernes some right, some oblique with diuers fractuosities without hardnes and callosity, and so differ from fistules. The cause of such vlcers is apostumes wounds euill healed, in the which the matter hath bene long retayned, and the orifice higher then the bottom, as ye haue heard, the party debilitated, so causeth dedurion of superfluous humors, not onely of the part but of all the body. Thou shalt knowe these cavernes by the sound, either of lead, silver, or a wax candle, and humor therein contained by the iniection if it be white and cerusse, it is cold, if it be subtil and reddish, the matter is hote, those that are easie to heale haue little matter with deminution of dolour and humor. The cure of such vlcers consisteth first in the way of life, with remedies, according to the qualitie of the humor and nature of the part vlcered, as also the situation, the dolour, intemperie and other accidents, that entertaine the vlcer. As for the topicall remedies if the orifice be in commodious situation, that the matter may euacuate, by vnguents, emplasters, mundificatiues, desiccatiues, with lygatures, coppresses, fomentations and iniections of red wine, if the orifice be high, and the bottom low, the member must be situate in such fashon that the nethermost part be as ye haue heard in wounds cavernous. If by the situation, the matter doth not euacuate or if it be in such places, that it cannot be so situated, then make an insicion from the crifice to the bottom with meete instruments, thereafter appeare the dolour, and flux of blood; if it be in such parts that this insicion be not sauely done, then make an issue in the bottom, and put a seton as in wounds cavernous, or a tent with

with some fit medicine, that mundifieth as ye haue heard in *Toga. li. 2. cap.*
tumors, or this *Rec. mellis lib. 2. viridis aris 5. olei resai lib. 17.*

1. aristolachia longe, alluminiis ceruse an unc. 1. fiat unguen-
tum, or wash with wine and honie called *mulsum*. If the
humor bee sanguinolent and euillsaoured, wash the vlcer
with Drynell, Allom water or honie, *aqua marina*, with a
little egyptiac. Albucasis, counselleth to dissolue egyptiac *Albu. lib. 2.*
with hidromell, which mundifieth and correcteth the malignitie. *46*
If the matter be subtil and watry, take barley, agri-
monie, centory, wormwood, and seth in honie and vineger,
it being cleansed vse this incarnatiue & glutinatiue, take the *Lib. meth. 3.*
rootes of Iris, Plantine, Agrimony sodden in water and *cap. 3.*
honey. Auncer counselleth the *emplastrum catholicum* & *cen-*
torium which is of a merueilous effect in this, put also in the
emplastrum de minio. d. e. calcis eos or nigrum, composed with
galles, honie powder of Iris, aloes, myrre, and such like.
Toga, setteth a marueilous good medicine to conglutinate
vlcers made thus, *Rec. decoctionis hordei lib. 1. mellis rasati*
unc. 3. sacrocalla drag. 2. mirra thuris an drag. 1. vini odoriferi
unc. 3. bulliani ad consumptionem tertiae partis addendo alce pa-
rum, straine this and put it on and in the vlcers and bind it
vpward, shift it once a day, till the vlcer be whole vsing al-
wayes the emplaster of diapalma, mixed in Claret wine,
fomentation with wine, copresse, and bandage, wæt in the
same.

CHAP. V.

C Of the filthy & rotten vlcer.

These vlcers which are accompanied with abundance
of matter thick, tough, and euill colored are called by *Definition.*
Guydo, and other sordids and filthy, if they augment, rot, *Gui. trac. 4.*
and mortifie the flesh, vlcered, boyding a matter euill saou- *de. vlc. rib.*
red and cadauerous, they are called vlcers putrids. If the
malignitie and rottennes becommeth in gangren it is called
vlcere

Causes.

ulcer gangrenos The cause is abundance of grosse humors, proceeding of an aduction and ebullition of blood, for the which they become venenous and maligne as cannceth after carbuncles, anthrax, tumors and wounds, euill dressed. The

Cure.

Paul. lib. 4. ca. 45.

Gal. 3. meth. cap. 6. & 7.

Gui. trac. 4. Naly abbas.

Lib 7. apho. 91

Cure of them consisteth, in regiment as ye haue heard in the Chapter of carbuncle, the vsing of the detraction gatac is good to drye vp the humors, and encuat them by sweating. Auicenn commendeth much purging of the bodie to discharge the part of these euill humors, by medicines mundificatiues, like as humiditie by drying medicines, by ventosies, scarifications, horseaches, epithems. Topicall remedies are fitt to wash the place with hydromell and aqua marina, apostolicon or egiptiac and put on the vlcer, applying on it an emplayster de bolo, with cloth wet in oricrate. If the matter gender in corruption, wash it with oricrate, water of cinders or white sope, with this emplayster made of saltfish, flower of aristolochia longa and oroby, sodden in wine and out on the sore. If this be not sufficient, take this medicament, which is greatly approved by Auicenn, *quod recepit dragaganti rubri dicti auripigment unc. i. calcis vinee aluminis corticis mali punicis singulorum unc. 6. i. thuris galarum singulorum unc. di. cera & olei an. quantum sufficit, fiat unguentum*, with defensives of bol. If for all this, the vlcer augment and grow worse, we vse more strong remedies to consume the putrefaction, as cauters actuals, razors, or other medicaments that haue vertue to make a scale, according to the saying of Hippocrates, that which healeth not by medicaments, it healeth eyther by iron or fier, which shall be continued tyll ye come to the good flesh, and shall be knowne by the colour. Arsenick or vitriol roman is good to seporate the rotten from the whole, being mixed with aquamite, bonie and egiptiac. If by all these remedies ye profit not, but that the euill doth augment, the parte must be cut off, for the safety of the rest, as councelleth Celsus.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Vlcers difficile to heale,
called Cacoethe and Chironia.

Ye haue heard, that some vlcers are easie, some hard, and some indifferent, but those vlcers which heale not after all things duely vsed, are called Cacoethicks or malignes, and long in healing, and by Galen, dispulorica. The Cause is, the euill temperature of the bodie, as, if the humors be vitiated, called by the greekes cachochimie, or if there be abundance of humors, called by the greekes plethorie, they must also be euacuated, the callositie or intemperie in the part must be taken away. The signes are, the duration of the vicer, the indisposition and malice of the humor, the hardnes and callositie of the lippes tumified, there cometh some in quantitie, but thin, euill sauoured, little colour, sometime healeth, and oft openeth vp againe, chiefly in the feet and legges. As for the Cure, ye must take away the cause, and reduce the parte to the naturall, otherwise it is impossible to heale it. If there be plentitude, cachochimie, intemperie, eyther of all the bodie, or some parte interne, as the lyuer, the mylte, the stomake, or else the parte vlcered about it, vice in the humor, or some varix, roundnesse and hardnesse of the vicer: first ye must purge the body, as ye shall finde expedient, blode if cause require, vse good dyet, eate things that ingender good humors, vsing decoction of Salsaparilla, made thus. Take Salsaparilla unc. 4. guiac unc. 1. di. macerentur per noctem in lib. 8. aquae purissimae, bulliat len. to igne, ad consumptionem mediae partis, addendo in fine, siniculi bulli, pilosella, pimpinella, quinque nerui garophillate, consolidae maioris et minoris capillorum omnium an. m. di. glicerize rase unc. di. fiat decoctio, capiat summo mane et sudet, et a prandio unc. 4. sine sudore et a ijs horis si voluerit. This is a most excellent helpe for all vlcers. If the fault be in the lyuer,

Definition.

Cause.

Paul. lib. 4. ca. 46.

Signes.

Cure.

Gal. 4. meth. cap. 5.

Ga. 4. me. ca. 2. et 4.

*Hip. lib. de. vl-
cerib.*

*Celsus lib. 5.
cap. 26.
Hip. lib. de.
viceribus.
Ga. 4. me. ca. 2.*

liver, milke, or stomacke, corroborate these parts by aduise of the learned Physician; if the fault be in the part vlcered, eyther being tumified with varix, or other accidents, it shall be corrected as in vlcers sanious, as also if it be round. If the salt be in the humors which occupie the vlcer, they must be euacuated. All vlcers which are difficile to cicatrize, must haue the blood about them euacuated, either by scarifications, or horseleaches, and washing it with allom water, and such as ye haue heard in vlcer putride. If the part about the vlcer be blacke, liuide or redde, scarifie it, and euacuate well the blood, applying a dyer sponge, with medicaments defensives, as in vlcers sanious. If the lippes of the vlcer be callous, hard, and liuide, it must be consumed with medicaments, if not that way, we cut the hardnes to the quicke flesh, and let it bleede well to diuertize the fluxion, and intercept the cause of the hardnesse. These things all obserued, thou shalt followe out the rest of the cure, as is set downe in the simple vlcer.

CHAP. VII.

¶ Of vlcer with corruption of the boane.

Definition.

*Hip. lib. 6.
aphor. 45.*

Singes

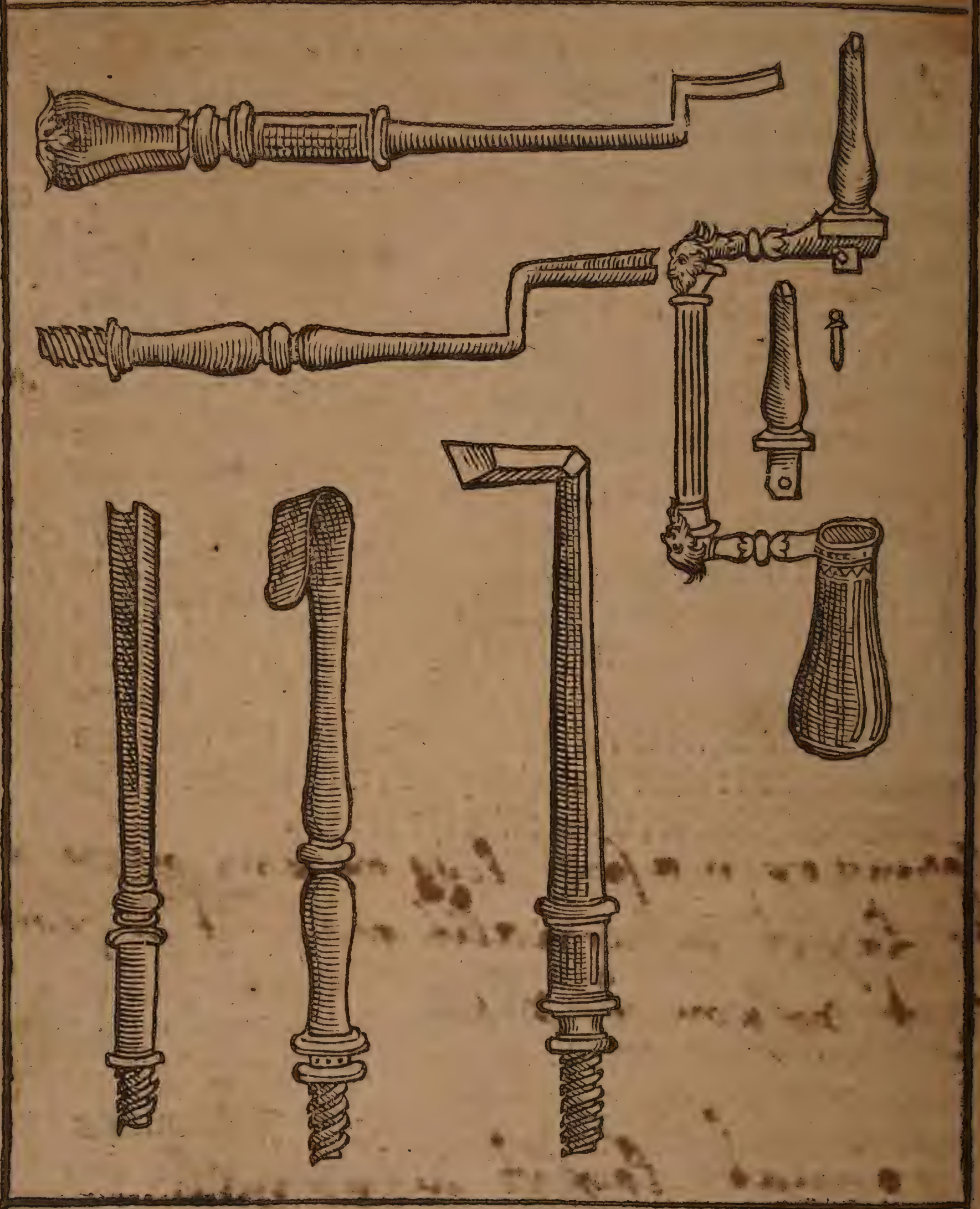
There are some vlcers, which after they are healed and cicatrized a certaine space, become tumified and suppure and renew the vlcer againe, which chaunceth when the vlcer hath bene long in healing, maligne, fistulous, gangrenous and cancerous, by the defluxion of the humor in the proper substance of the boane, as we see in the virulence of the venerean sicknesse, or other humor malignant, the which consumeth the periost, rotteth the boane, if they continue ayre thereby, and consumeth the blood, which is the proper nouriture thereof, also application of oyle, or things vnctuous on the boane, which corrodeth. This corruption commeth by degrees: first by comming fat, through the humor

humor which is soaked in it; next, either blacke or rotten, and *Celsus lib. 8. cap. 2.* is knowne by the matter that cometh from it, which is viscous, thin, subtil, black, and stinking, also great store of spongyous flesh, the corruption is also knowne by the sight, not being white as it ought, also by the sounde, not equall but knotty and soft. For the Curation, after remedies vniuersall, let there be used a good diet, purging, and bleeding, *Cure. Celsus lib. 8. cap. 2.* and vsing this potio in the morning, not eating foure hours afore, nor thre after. *Rec. hordei mandipartes. 3. gentiana partes. 2. centaurea minoris partes. 3. coquantur in vino albo,* putting to a little gaiac, this potion is good for the suppuration of the bones as is learnedly written by Togatious. The particular remedies are of thre kinds, that is, rouging cankers, potentiall and actuall, before the application of the which, wee must be assured what quantitie of the boane is altered, then incise the vlcer, discover that which is offended, and if the rottennesse be but superficiall, we vse rougin till we perceiue the blood, which sheweth it not to be altered. The bone which is nere consumed, as in the head and such places as be nere the noble parts, and ioyntes and in the ridge of the backe, we vse also the rougin.

*or laying open a sore legg or any other part
take layis infernalis make it in powder
lay it upon y^e sore*

to make layis infernalis **Instruments**
*take saws &c. on shabed liues & scathe
them together untill it be come a poue*

*Instruments to separate and take away
rotten and consumed bones.*



With this powder of the roots of *aristolochia*, *iris*, *flaventa*,
corticis pini, *thuris*, *aloes*, *floris*, *aris*, an. partes aequales, Stamp
them in aquavite and drye them in an oven, which shall be
done twice or thrise, and lay these powders on the bone,
with the emplaster *diacalciteos* or *betonica* : ye may also
mire these powders with a little honey or *aureum*. If these
things

things be not sufficient, and the alteration be greater, we use cauters potentiall, or oyle of vitriol, oyle of vitriol, mercurie, camphire, sulphure, salis, antimonie, incense and such like. But if the rottenesse be great, fat and vntious, we apply Cauters actually once or twice, to separate the whole from that which is rotten, perforating till the outmost of the altered bone, which ye shall know, when ther cometh no more humiditie: if you continue them longer, you consume the humiditie naturall, which should ingender flesh betwixt the rotten and the whole bone, for the which haue good Iudgement. This remedie hath vertue to corroborate and comforte the parte, and dryeth and consumeth the euill humors, and helpeth the separation of the bone, the which being perceiued, shake it by little and little, and draw it not by force: if it be drawne before the flesh be growne on the whole bone, the ayre will alter it. Of this remedie cometh no dolour, if ye touch nothing but the bone, after the Causers are applyed, we use oyle of roses, with whites of egges for the first two dayes, then mixe whites of egges and fresh Butter with Honye, thereafter some mundificatiue till the bone be exfoliated, then use the powder aboue written mixed with honie to incarnate and cicatrize, thereafter console the vlcer, in place of the bone which is lost, there ingendereth a hard substance, or callositie which serueth in steade of the bone. *Gui. trac. 4. de vlcerib.* If the rottenesse come to the marrow, *Alba. lib. 2.* and the bone be all corrupted, there is no remedie but amputation, except in the head, haunch, and rigge backe, in the which we use remedies palliatiues as ye haue heard.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the vlcers Cancrous, and their Curation.

Having intreated heretofore of Cancer in generall, here we will speake of the vlcered, which as saith Guyde, *Definition.* is an vlcer round, horrible, hauing the lippes thick, harde, Z 3 inequall,

Paul. lib. 3. ca.
67.

Cause.

Signes.
Aetius. lib. 4.
cap. 43.

Cure.
Gui. tract. 4.
de ulcerib.

Gal. 2. ad gla.
cap. 10.

Hip. 6. apho. 1.

Gal. 14. metho.
cap. 10.

inequall, soordide, turned ouer, cauernous, euill saoured, of colour liuide and obscure, accompanied with many vains full of Melancholick blood, boyding a matter virulent, sanious, worse then the venom of beasts, subtil, watry, black or red. It is so called for two causes as saith Auicen, the one because it cleaueth so fast to the part, as Cancer to that which it taketh hold of, the other because it hath vaines about, like the fete of the cancer. The cause, cometh of the cancer vnulcered, and vlcers euill cured, and by the humors Melancholick which come from all the partes of the bodye, which do putrifie and heate, so acquire a sharpnes and venositie, and breede cancer. The Signes are these, the cancer vlcered is still redde, caue to the profound of the member casting a virulent matter in great abundance, pricking dolor, and irriteth by the applycation of remedies, and operation manuall, so not to be touched, and therefore called, *Noli me tangere*. The Cure generall consisteth in purgation and dyet, as in tumors cancrous, Guydo commendeth a potion made of capillars, *herbi Rebeti, scrofuralia, contruodi*, Treacle and methridate are good, for they cause venom to come out in the skinne. The particular is, if it be in such a place that it may not be taken away with the braunches, it shall be done by incision, cauterization, or corrosion, and that the blood be all well exprimed out of the vaines, thereafter cauterize it with such as haue force to consume the euill humor, *quoniam in extremis morbis, extrema sunt adhibenda remedia*. The arsenic sublimat is excellent, for it mortifieth in one day cancers, fistules, and other strang maladies: apply defensives and anodins: produce the fall of the scale as in the vlcer precedent. When ye perceiue that there is neither stinck nor virulencie, but good flesh, heale it as other vlcers. If it be in any part that it may not be thus handled, or the patient will not, or that it is vncureable, we vse palliative remedies, the which consist cheifly in good diet, abstayning from things contrary, vsing nourishing things, thereafter euacuation, generall purgations, bleeding, applying

ing on the part medicaments corroboratiues, liniments and refrenants to diuert the fluxion, with other proper medicines, as this : take the iuyce of *scabius* & *solani* an. vnc. 2. *plumbi vstiloti*, *unguenti phompholigos* an. vnc. di. *unguenti albi* vnc. 2. *diacalciteos* vnc. di. *oleum emphacinu* parum agitentur in mortario plumbeo. There are diuers other proper medicaments for this effect, as *succus solani*, *spuma argenti*, *cerusa olei*, an. partes equales contundantur & agitentur in mortario plumbeo, donec habeant colorem plumbi. When there is great dolour seeth *althea* in Wine and honey putting thereto a little oyle of *Roses* to make a cataplasme, also wash the vlcere with wine, wherein *capus barbatus* and *carduus benedictus* hath been sodden. There are diuers vnguents and liniments set downe afore in the tumors Cancrous.

CHAP. IX.

Of the vlcere fistulous.

Fistula is an vlcere deepe, straight, round, cauernous with great hardnes and callositie, from whence proceedeth an humor virulent. *Paulus Aegineta*, saith it is a sinuosity cal-
 lous not dolourous in diuers parts of the bodie chiefly as-
 ter apostumes not well cured and hemorroides which
 haue run long, as also apostumes hemorroidall. Of it there
 are diuers sorts. The causes are, as in vlcers cauernous,
 but the humor which proceedeth from it, is worse comming
 of an euill phlegmatick melancholick and adust, humor cau-
 sing a bitternesse and venenositie. The signes are knowne
 be the sound, and by the humor that commeth out which is
 virulent, stincking, not dolourous, except it be neare the
 nerue. *Galen* calleth it a firing because it is caue within,
Paulus compareth it to the recte, that haue cauities as also
Aetius. The Iudgements some heale easily, some are long
 in healing, and some are incurable. Fistules with many
 cauernes are difficile as saith *Celsus*, those that are nere to

Definition.

*Gal. li. tumor.**contra. natu.**ram.**Pau. lib. 4. cap.*

49.

Cel. lib. 7. ca. 4.

Cause.

*Guliel. de. sali.**ecto.*

Signes.

*Aet. lib. 6.**Gal. lib. contra**naturam.*

Iudgements.

Celsus. ibid.

*Paulus. lib. 6.
cap. 78.*

*Arnold. de vil-
la noua.*

Difference.

Celsus. lib. 5.

cap. 23.

Cure.

*Paul. lib. 6. cap.
77. & hip. lib.
de locis in ho-
mine.*

any noble parte as in the thorax, also in the bladder, matrix, and intestines are all perillous and mortall, those in the ribs backe, ioynts are suspect, and of difficill curation. Fistules in the Fundament, which haue the orifice interioꝝ, are hard to heale; all fistules in bodies euill disposed, are of long curation. There are diuers soꝛts of fistules, foꝛ some are superficiall, others do penetrate, some oberthwart, some right, soe simple, others composed with one oꝛ moe sinuosities, some end in the flesh, some in the bones, and some in the cartilages. As foꝛ the cure, we must first consider by the Iudgement and sound, the deepenes and cauernosities, if it be callos, and endeth eyther in tendons, cartilages oꝛ bones, oꝛ penetrateth within, all which things considered, we ordain the way of life, and purge the body according to the nature of the humoꝛ, thereafter coꝛroboꝛate the parts interne with this potion, which hath oft bene experimented by old authors. *Rec. hordei mundi scrofuralia an. partem vnā agrimonie, centaurea, plantaginis minoris an. partes duas, aristolochia partem di. foliorum oline, filopendula an. partes duas, scindantur omnia minutim pisentur bulliant in vino albo cum parum saccari.* Of this decoction ye shall take a draught euery morning 4 houres afoꝛe meate. The particular remedies consist in 4. things, first to dilate the orifice, if it be streight, which shall be done by tents of gentian, bryony, spong prepared, ciclamur, if the fistule doth penetrate deape, tie a threed to the tent; the orifice being dilated, we come to the second point to take away the callositie, which is done either by incision, cauterization, oꝛ by remedies causticks and coꝛrosiues, oꝛ to cut it with thæres oꝛ rasoz, oꝛ with such remedies, as ye haue heard in vlcers cauernous. If it be profound and in such places wher it may be knit, we put a needle with a strōg threed through it, and knit the threed euery day moꝛe and moꝛe till it be consumed as ye heard in the fistula of the fundamēt. If it end in the bone & it be filled, it must be discovered, and handled as ye haue heard in the proper Chapter. If it end in the tendons, oꝛ membranes, it is dolorous and the mat-
ter

ter sanious and clammye ; if one the vaine or arter, ye shal perceiue bloud. All these things considered, if the callositie cannot be taken away by manuell operation, apply medicaments caustick, as counsel our annicients, like as *trochisces de aphrodellis* or powder of mercury, *auripigmentum* or white sope, or a tent couered with ascrick, or with strong water, or steepe any of them with vinegar and distill in the wound, that is good: where there are many cavities, so that liquor goeth through all, let it remayne two dayes, putting about it refrigeratiues and repercussives, some cauterize the with cauter actuall. Thereafter apply on it to appease the dolour, & to cause the scale to fall, oyle of roses, with whites of eggs, as ye shall finde in the poore mans guide, till the great heat be past, and the scale fallen, and that the fistule voideth matter commendable, which is a signe, that the caule is abolished. The 3. point consisteth in medicaments mundificatiues and incarnatiues, as ye haue heard in vicer cauernous The 4. point consisteth in sacotices, or cicatrisants, as ye haue heard before. If the fistule be incureable, penetrating to a part principall, or such other as ye haue heard, as also if in curing of it, there come a more dangerous accident, as in the fundament happeneth voluntary eiection of the matter fecall or conuulsion, in such wee should not seek the perfect cure, but vse palliatiues and purgations, of the humor pituitous, and melancholick, mundificatiues to mundifie the euill flesh and matter in the wound, thereafter desiccatiues, as *diachilon iriatum*, *desiccatorium rubeum*, *diapalma*, and such like, which is the generall cure of fistules. As concerning the cure of fistules as in the fundament, which is done by manual operations, you haue heard in the 46. Chapter of particular Tumors.

Causticks to
consume the
callositie.

CHAP. X.

¶ Of Burning by fier, hote oyle, water,
and other liquors*Cure of burning by fier.**Topicall remedies.**Superficial burning.**Medicaments for burning.*

Because oftentimes by Burning, and violent heates, happen diuers times great inflammations, vlcers dolorous with many euill symptoms, and oftentimes of difficile curation, for the which I will shew the way to Cure, such vlcers in diuers parts of our bodye. Such as are superficiall are subiect to inflammation, such as as be profound to excoriation and exulceration: the meaner sort haue onely little blisters on the skinne: in all which is dolour, rednes, ordure and such like, all evident and apparant to the sight: the Cure is, if the combustion be great in ordering the way of life tending to tenuitie, next in vsage of vniuersall remedies according to the humors which rayne, the topicall remedies are diuers according to the diuersitie of the accidets. Aristotle counselleth in burnings done by great heate, to holde the burnt place to the fier by the which meanes the one heate draweth out the other, for this purpose whites of eggs, oyle of Roses, rose water is good to be vsed: those pustules which are superficiall, accompanied with inflammation and colour, must be cured with things that refresh, as whites of egges, water, vinegar, Houflick, Lettice, Sorrell, Plantaine, Henbane, *Solanum*, Roses, or the waters of those things, and applyed to the place with a cloth wette therein, in like manner Allom, ceruse dissolued in Campher water is good: these things haue the vertue to pacifie the paine and inflammation and heale small burnings: ye may also for this purpose take the blades of Leekes, or Onions peeled well beaten with salt, or Lettice, with salt and apply to the burnt part, which hath a maruelous vertue in healing: the rootes of Lillies, fryed in oyle of Roses, or the leaues sodden are also good: for this purpose some doe vse to apply the inner part of a rotten apple in forme of a cataplasme which is also good,

if

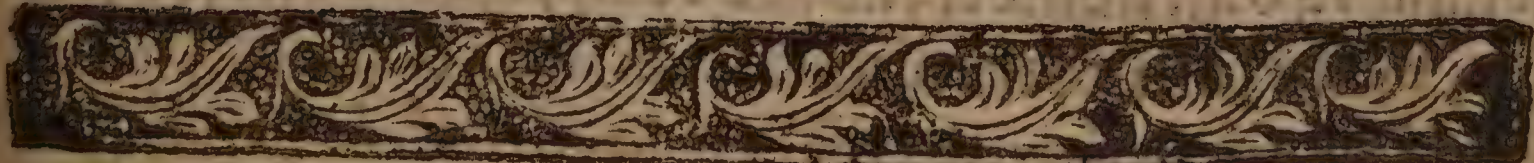
if the blisters be very great open them, if there be vlceration
 vse remedies, lenitiues and desiccatiues made of 3 ounces of *For vlceratio*,
 nuttes, ware one ounce and a halfe, mix them together and
 washe them in Plantine water, and lay on it also sodden
 Leekes in wine, or the iuce of them with *unguent rosat*, is
 good: if the soze neede mundifying take turpentine well wash, *Mundificatiue*
 ed in decoction of barley, a little sirrope of Roses, with Aloes, *for burning*,
 and barlye meale, the soze being mundified cicatrize it with
unguent pupuleon, *diapompholigos album*, *rasis de minio* or *di-*
acalcitheos mixed in red wine or dissolved, wet a cloth there
 in and lay vpon the soze. The sozesaide remedies must be
 softly applyed and seldome handled, oft handling doth irre-
 tate and cause fluxion for the wich I haue set downe a re-
 medie in the Chapter of burning by Gunpowder which doth
 cure all kinds of burning in short time with one plaster on-
 lie. This remedie following is verye easie to be had, and
 doth heale without any marke, which is thus, take the bark
 of the Elmetree keepe it one night in water and take it out
 the next morning, then you shall perceiue a glutinous mat-
 ter on the inner side of it, which you shal take of, and
 annoint the soze therewith, with a geese quill,

this healeth perfectly in short

space, and so I end this

Booke of Ulcers.

The



THE EIGHT BOOKE.

*Of Bones, and certaine diseases in-
cident to them;*

*Which containeth V. Chapters ; whose Contents
bee these ; by PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of the number of bones in mans body.
2. Of Fractures in generall.
3. Of the curation of fractures.
4. Of dislocation in generall.
5. Of the embalming of dead corps.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the number of bones in mans body.

Interlocvutors. Peter, and Iohn.

Pet. **H**Auing heretofore breifly set downe such sort
of maladies which happen commonly in the
soft parts; so now wee will follow out to intreat of those
which happen in the hard & solide parts, as the bones : but
for the better instruction of thee & al young Chirurgiōs, be-
fore I enter in fractures, it shal be expedient to speake some-
what briefly of the number of the bones in mans bodie :
Then, what are the number of them reckoned by the most
part of Anatomists?

Ioh. In that there is diuersitie of opinions ; some of them
reckoning 246. in number, as are comprehēded vnder these
verses, by the learned mediciner Gualterus Riff.

*Addes quater denis bis centum senag, habebis,
Quem sois multiplici conditus ossa semel :*

Portraiture

Portraiture of the bones.



other

other late Anatomists have obserued and found in there dis-
 258. bones in section 258. bones, besides these little ones, that are in the
 mans bodie. fingers and toes called, *sesmorda*, whole number are uncer-
 taine.

Pet. After What forme be those bones diuided?

66 bones in
 the head.

6. in the eares.

6. in the eyes.

L. b. In diuiding of them I shall begin at the head, as
 the most noble and principle part of the whole body, and is
 composed of 66. bones viz. 14. in the cranium which is thus
 deuided: the first is called *coronall* or *os frontis*: the 2. is cal-
 led *occiput* and is most thick, and soide, how be it in young
 ones it may be diuided in many parts: the third is called
Sphenoid or *Basiler*, which is the foundation of the rest, the 4.
 is called *ethmoid* situate aboue the nose, vnder the frontall, it
 is spongiuous: the 5. and 6. are the two bregmas, Dexter and
 sinister, called *parietaria*, they are of figure *triangular*, and
 verie weake. The seauenth and eight are the two called *pe-*
trofa, or *lapidosa* which be neare vnto the eares, sixe in the
 eares, whereof there is thre in each one, called *Incus* *flapes*,
 and *malleolus*. In the face are 52. thus diuided, the vpper
 Chast or iaw, is composed of 18 bones whereof the first two
 are called *zigma*, and *Inguia* in Latin, or *os paris*, 6. in the
 eyes, to wit, thre in each orbit beside the great cauitie of the
 eye in the which the most part of the teeth are implanted, 2.
 in the cannell of the nose, which are hollow and spongiuous,
 through the which the excrement of the braines do descend,
 2. of the nose one in each side, 2. of the roose or vpper part of
 the mouth called *sphenoides* or *os cunei* and *basilire*, and one at
 the root of the tongue called *Hyodes*, which by Andreas de Lo-
 ran and other curious Anatomists, is dyuided in sixe bones,
 it maketh the tongue to be more sure and firme: With two
 little ones in the vpper Iawes *ethmoides*, called *colatoria*,
 which is spongiuous and compleats the number of 18. The
 neither Iawe or chast which is in yong Children, is diuided
 in two, with the number of thirty two teeth, which are thus
 diuided, the first eight which be before are called *Incisores*
 which is to cut that which we eat, the next foure are sharp
 pointed

pointed ordeined to breake our meate, and are called *canini*, they be neare the nerues that passe by the eyes, and in pulling out of them do often times enbaunget the eye, for the which they are called by the vulgar people the eye teeth, they doe giue young ones in there brading, then folloeth two which are most great and broad, ordeined to bruisse & grind that meat which wee haue taken, for the which they are called *molares* and doth compleat the 66 bones of the head.

Eie teeth doe grieue young children.

Pet. Seeing you haue verie particularly descriced the bones of the head, I would in like manner that you should describe vnto me the number of the bones in the thorax?

Ioh. The part which by the Anatomist is called thorax ^{66 bones in} or coxlet contained from the first verteber of the neck vnto ^{the thorax.} *os axis*, and is composed of 66 bones, and are thus diuided in the 7 vertibres of the neck, 12 in the back, 5 in the lungs, 6 in the *os Sacrum*, 4 in the *os Coxis*, which maketh 34. with 24. ribbes, deuided in 14 trewe ribbes, called *costa vera*, which are tied to the sternon or breast bone, and ten called *Nothi*, which are lowest and tyed to no part. The sterne or breast bone, which is composed of three and by some curious Anatomists, of seauen bones in young ones, it is cartilaginous moze soft and spongiuous nor the rest, in such sort that if any vlcet do happen in it, it endureth a whole age as saith Hippocrates, and 1. in the heart which is cartilaginous, 2. *clauiculs*, and 2. of the shoulber or spalds, called *omoplate*.

Pet. Seeing you haue described those bones, wherein the three noble parts are contained, in like manner I would craue of you the number of the bones of the extremities, which vphold and defend the rest, of the bodye, and first to describe in. how many bones the armes and hands are composed of?

Ioh. They are composed of 60. bones, besides the *sesmoide*, which are thirty in each arme and thus diuided, first the great bone in the arme called *brachium*, 2. vnder the arme the one called *cubitus*, and the other *radius*, the hands which is Instrument of Instruments as sayth Aristotle, apt to take

3 in each finger.

take, receaue, and hold, is composed of 27. bones in each hand, viz. the Carpe called *Brachiale* his 8 hard bones, & are ioyned to the arme: the *Metacarpe* called *postbrachiale*, of 4 bones, and are ioyned to the fingers, with five fingers, whereof each one hath three bones, which maketh in number 50.

Pet. In how many bones is that part which vpholdeth the body composed of?

66 bones in the legges.

52 bones in the feete.

Ioh. The legges which are Instruments motiues, are composed of 66 bones, which maketh 33 in each one, and are thus diuided, the heinch bone which is composed of three, the one called *Ilium*, the other *Ishion*, and the third *Pubis*, & the great bone in the thigh called *Femur*, with that of the knee called *rotula*; 2 in the leg, the bigge one called *Tibia*, or great focill, the lesser called *Vlna*, or little focill, with the feete which are composed of 52 bones, besides the *sesmoide*, which is 26 in each foot, thus diuyled: the vpper part of the foot called the tars is conioyned to the legge, it is hard and solide but without spongiuous, and is composed of seauen bones, of the which three are nameles, but are called by some Anatomists *Calcoides*: the other foure haue names, whereof the one is called *Calcaneum*: the second *astragall*: the third *navicula*: and the fourth *Siboide*: the metatars is composed of 5 bones, which be hard without, and caue within, full of marrow with 14. in 5 toes: to wit, three in each one of foure, and two in the little toe. There is found in the ioyns of fingers and toes, certaine little hard bones, called *Sesmoide*, yet not reckoned by many of the Anatomists by reason of the vncertainty of their number, which is sometime ten, twelue, fiftane, eightane, the most part which I did obserue euer either in reading of any number of Anatomists, that haue written, as also in diuers sections, which I haue seen, was 15. their vse is to fortifie the ioyns of the fingers and toes, and to preserve them from going out of their owne place.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of Fractures in generall.

Pet. Like as in euery generall Chapter of the former Booke, I haue demaunded of you somewhat generally of that matter whereof I was to entreat of; the which methode I am now mindfull to prosecute, and because that all bones which are offended are either vitiated, remooued, out of their owne place, bruised, or broken; for the which I will first demaund of you what is a Fracture?

Ioh. It is a generall diuision, decision, or solution of continuity of the bone, called in Greeke *Catagma*, of the which there be seauen differences, and according to their effects haue diuers denominations, as for example: when the bones are broken in the middelt onerthwart, it is called by the Greekes *Agma*, and by the Latines *Ruptura transversalis*, or *virgalis*. The second kind is done according to the length of the bone, yet not separating altogether one part from another, but onely rent: such kind of Fracture is called by the Greekes *Chidasedum*, and by the Latines *Fractura linealis*. The third kind hath the name according to the forme, or by the similitude of certaine fruits, peeces of woode, stalkes of Colworste broken: such kind of fracture is called by the Greekes *Cauleum*, which is when the bone is not soundly broken, but lifteth in diuers peeces, called by the Latines *Astales*. The fourth kind is called by the Greekes *Raphanidum*, which is when y bone is smoothly broken like a raphard, and is called by the Latines *Fractura raphanalis* or *Arundinalis*. The fift kind is when the bone is broken in diuers peeces, bruised, and creished like a pet, called by the Latines *Quassatio*, and by the Greekes *Apagma*: such kind of fracture happeneth often in wounds done by Gunshot. Like as the first kind called by the Latines *Rimularis*, and by the Greekes *Alphitidon* or *Carpedone*, which is, when the bone is subtilly broken, and of all kind of fractures those

Com: in aph: 23, lib: 1, de articulis, & com. 1. lib. 1. de fracturis. Paulus lib: 6, cap: 89.

Com: in aph: 9, lib: 2, de fra. & cap: 6. de const. artis, & cap. 10. de morb. causis.

be most dangerous and often deadly, chiefly in the ioynts and neere therevnto. The seauenth kind is, when a little part of the bone is superficially separated like vnto a little spelch or sclat, called by the Grekes *Apotrasis* or *Acopape*, the Arabians doe call it *Alcasin*, and the Latines *Refractio* or *Precisio*. There be diuers other differences of fractures mentioned by the Grekes, yet little spoken of by Hippocrates or Galen; and by reason I find them of small importance, I will for this present omit them, although some of the learned hath made some mention.

Paulus lib. 6.
cap. 89.

Pet. Is there no other difference mentioned by our Ancients?

Gal. lib. 6.
meth. cap. 5.
Cels. lib. 8. ca.
7, 8, 9, 10.

Ioh. I find that Galen hath somewhat spoken of two differences of fractures, the one made ouerthwart, the other along the bone like a peece of clouen wood. And Celsus speaketh of a third kind which is oblique; in the which fracture the poynts of the bone enter into the flesh, and doth procure great dolour.

Pet. Are all Fractures simples, or composed?

Ioh. Some are simple, other composed with wounds, inflammation, gangren, vlcers, colours, and such like.

Pet. Differ they not after no other manner?

Pan. ibide.

Ioh. They doe differ according to the part where the fracture is, as in the head, nose, backe, legges, armes, fingers, and such like.

Pet. Which be the causes of Fractures?

Haly Abbas
serm. 8.

Gal. lib. 2. de
fract. & com.

9. apho:

Celsus lib. 8.

cap. 10.

Avic: tract. 2:

cap. 1.

Galen 6,

meth. & com:

in apho: 6, lib:

2, cap. 5.

Ioh. Haly Abbas and Galen doe say, that all outward things that haue force to bzuise, bzeake, cut, or cleaue, are sufficient to cause fracture.

Pet. Which be the signes of Fractures?

Ioh. Avicen, Rasis, and Celsus doe say, that by the sight and feeling of the part with the hand, thou shalt easilie perceauinequality: as also feele a noyse or bzuite in the hand, ling of it with dolour on the part.

Pet. Which are the iudgements of Fractures?

Ioh. All fractures in hard and dry bones as in old people, are

are more difficile and are longer in healing, then such as are soft and humide, as in yong people. Auicen saith, that fractures in cholericque and old people are very difficile, and in very old people be very impossible: all fractures in the ribs ioyned with inflammation and spitting of bloud, are most dangerous.

Pet: Which be the fractures that are easiest to be cured, and which are most difficile and dangerous?

Iob: All fractures in the ribs which are simple, also such as be in the middelt of the armes, legges, and fingers, and made ouerthwart, are not dangerous; but to the contrary, all fractures nere the ioyns & in the heads of the bones are difficile, and the motion afterwards not good, and those which presse inward are worse than those which goe out. All fractures in the head how little so euer they be, are dangerous: all fractures where they are many broken peeces, are dangerous: those with wound are difficile, because the bandage cannot be done without dolour of the wound. Cel. sus saith, that fractures in the thigh are euill, because the member remaineth often shorter: all those that are eminent and haue much marrow, are dangerous.

Pet: Are all fractures healed in a certaine space?

Iob: Some are longer in healing, some shorter, according to the greatnes, hardnes, and drynesse, fractures in the head are healed in 35. dayes, in the thigh in 45. dayes, in the legs and armes in 40. dayes, the nose in 16. dayes, the ribbes in 20. dayes, in the iawes, the shoulder, clauicles, hands, feet, are healed in 20. dayes, in the hanch and point of the shoulder in 40. dayes, and likewise in other places, according to the nature of the bone, the age, the ayre and time of the yeare, and constitution of the body, the dyet medicaments and gouernment of the sicke, which things duly done doe shorten the time of the cure. The defect of the aliment viscus is helped by somenting with hote water, the oft handling and shifting it doth prolong the time, as also straight ligatours, so indeed there is no time limited, but

Ccm: in aph: 42, lib: 1, de fracturis.

Paulus lib. 6.

cap. 110.

Hip: lib: de fracturis.

Gal. lib. 6:

meth: ca. 5, &

apho. 68, li. 2,

de fracturis.

Roland: lib: 3.

Cel: lib: 8.

cap. 10.

Cel. li. 8. c. 10

Hip de fractur:

cap: Hip: ibid.

Hip: ap: 6. & 8

& li. 2. de frac.

Athor: 55:

Cel: li: 8. ca: 7.

Avic: tract: 2:

cap: 9.

Paulus lib: 6,

cap: 89.

Com.aph. 4. 2. Some are longer, some shorter time in healing, as we see by
& li. 1. de frac. daily experience.

CHAP. III.

Of curation of Fractures in generall.

Albuc. lib. 3. **I**n the precedent Chapter ye haue heard what fracture is,
with the causes, signes, and Judgements: now remaineth the cure, for the which ye must consider, first if there be
inflammation, to deferre the reduction till it be past, for to e-
uoyd great accidents, then wee must haue a quantity of
whites of Egges, and oyle of Roses, beaten together with
Compresses, bands, serules, machins, lacs, oricrate, and
men to helpe you, with other things necessary for the pur-
pose: hauing all these in readinesse, there remaineth yet five
points, the first is in extension of the member, which is done
by laying it on a bench or other place proper, the sicke being
well scituated, there must be two persons to hold the member
fractured, the one at y^e nether part, the other at y^e upper part,
of the which one draweth vp, another down to make the ex-
tension; if the hands be not sufficient to doe this, wee take
rods, or strong cloth and bind fast the member one to the
upper part, another to the nether, which shall be drawne by
two men contrary, as ye haue heard. For the same purpose
you may vse glossocomes, if great force be needfull, beware
of extention, chiefly in dry bodies, for feare of dolour, feuer,
and conuulsion. The second intention, after the extention
is made, thou shalt take the member softly with thy hands,
and reduce the bones in scituation naturall, then loose the
machins that the muscles may goe to their owne naturall.
The third intention is to bind it well, and to hold it in the
same estate vnmouing, which is done by medicaments and
bandage, we apply for the first time an emplaster astringent
or defensiu made of Bol, drie flower, whites of Egges, and
oyle of Roses, it shall be best to rub the member with cerat
Galen.

Gal. 6, meth:
cap: 5.
Theod. lib. 2.

Soranus.

Bru: li. 1. c. 18.

Gal. cap: 12.
constit artis.

Hip lib: 1. de
fractu: com.
apho: 12. &
lib: 1. de artic:
& 6, met: c. 52
Cel. li. 8, c. 10

Hip: aph: 21. &
li: 1. de fract.
Aph: 6, & li.
2. de officina.
medic & li. 1.
de fracturis.

Galen, oyle of Roses, Myrtill, or Masticke, before the application of the astringent, the cloth must be wet in oricrate and the bands also. Whereafter bind the member, of the which our ancients vsed only two kinds, to wit, the vnder band which Hippocrates calleth *Hypodesmedy*, and the vpper band which he calleth *Hypodemos*. The nether band is divided into 2. or 3. the first is shott beginning right on the fracture wearing vpperward towards the knee; if the fracture be in the legge, the volutions must bee close together, this kind of bandage letteth the fluxion on the member hurt. The second band which must be longer, shall beginne in the same fashion, making two or thre circumbolutions on the fracture, conducing downwards, this bandage maketh expression of the bloud which was fallen on the fracture, let the volutions bee further asunder, being lowe yee shall weare vp againe, and end at the other ioynt. The third band shall beginne at the nether ioynt and passe vpperwards on the fracture to the other ioynt, and there end with the rest: the band must be of cleane cloth thin, soft, without seame or hem, of length according to the member, and the bzeadth of 3. or 4. fingers, reasonable strong, that they bee neither too straight nor too slacke bound, the straight maketh dolour and inflammation and letteth the vitall spirit, likewise the too loose binding, holdeth the bones together, so there must be mediocritie in that matter. The band being gouerned in such fashion, you must consider that the legs, thighs, and armes are smaller in the nether parts than the higher, therefore wee must put double clothes to the proportion of the member, to make the small parts equall with the rest, and also that our splents that are made of Cards, Wood, or white Iron, be holden faster by the vpper band. There must be thre splents made hollow, the first which is biggest shall embrace all the vnder part of the fracture as fundament, the other two shall be put on both sides a little space one from another; these thre splents being placed on the vnder band doe hold them fast, and also keepeth the bone

Aph. 12. & 17
lib. 3. de offi-
cina medici.

Com. aph. 13
& li. 1. de frac.
Cel: lib: 8.
cap. 10.

Gal. 5. de offi.
medic. & Cel.
lib: citato.

Hip: apli. 19,
& 26 lib. 2. de
offici. medi &
com. aph. 21.
& li. 1. fractu.
& com. 36. 1.
de fracturis.

Aph. 41. li. 1.
de fracturis.

Hip: lib: 1. de
fracturis,

Aph. 1. & 2. &
lib. 3. de offi-
cina medici.

Cels. lib. 8. ca.
10. & Hip. li.
1. de fracturis.

Lib. 6. meth.
cap. 5.

Aph. 29. & li.
1. de fractu. &
apho. 4. ibidē.

Hip. apho. 45.
& 46. & lib. 1.
de fracturis.

Paulus lib. 9.
cap. 89.

steady from moving, they must not be put to afoze the seauenth day, also they must be narrow at the lower end according to the member, broad and strong on the place fractured, with a little Cotton or Wool. Our ordinary practise is to vse them the first day, if there be no inflammation, and being done, we apply the two vpper bands on them, called *Epidesmons*, the first shall beginne in the inner side of the nether ioynt, and turne vppward to the vpper part of the member. The second shall beginne in the vppermost part, in the outside, turning inwards, so the one shall goe contrary to the other in forme of S. Andrews Crosse, as sayth Celsus. The member bound in this fashion and scituated according to the scituation of the vaines, artiers, nerues, and muscles, as saith Galen; the next we must take a napkin and solwe a little straw in euery end of it, solwe it together and lay the member in the middle of it: some for this purpose do vse a little box of six pence the length of the member, bind it with little cords or ribban, scituate it right, soft, and high, so continue it thzee dayes, if no accidents happen, reuue it againe in thzee dayes, but if the fracture be simple, we reuue it not befoze the seauenth day, or longer. The seauenth day past, reuue it euery 7. Day, or 12. or 20. day if other accidents doe not happen as sayth Hippocrates, vse defensives in the superiour parts, at least in the beginning, also foment it with warme water for that reuoketh the bloud, comforteth the part, and humecteth it with a pleasant humiditie. The fourth precept is in generation of callosity, first they shall eat meat of good suck, to ingender good bleud, yet somewhat straight, till the 10. day be past abstaine from strong drinke, for in that time the inflammation and feuer do passe, eate Meale, Button, and Kidde, vse medicaments emplastricks that heate moderately, also an emplaster or cataplasme of whites of Egges, fine flower, and Roses, till the 20. or 25. day be past; in all the time of the cure after the 10. day be past, the nourishment must be enlarged, because the generation of flesh cannot be done but by things of good

good nourishment, but the Caule which is named by the Latines *Callus*, and by the Greekes *Poros sarcoides*, by the Arabians *Arosbon*, may bee made by it selfe without any helpe, chieflie in humide and viscus persons, as in young people and children: but those of elder age which are of a more hard and dry constitution, the union of Caule of the bone cannot bee made but by the helpe of some glutinous substance, which doth gripe the broken bone in such sort, that being dried, hardly can it be separated in those, this Caule is ingendered of the part most viscus and grosse of the nourishment of the bone: like as euery part doth draw the owne proper nourishment, euen so the bone doth draw the part most viscus of the aliment, for the which the nourishment ought to be such as hath the vertue to engender y^e caule chieflie in old people; thou maist know whē y^e caule is making, if in tying the first band it seeme bloody & not wounded, it sheweth the caule to be making, the to fortifie y^e same we vse euery three dayes to wash the member with decoction of Roses, and mosse of the Dake tree, putting thereto a little *Oxycrosum* or *de althea*, if in this time it itch, as often happeneth, foment it with water and salt, and vse fomentation of hote water, and emplasters of pitch to reuoke and draw the aliment to breed the Caule. If the Caule bee too great, we bind a cake of Lead on it or some medicament that digesteth, as counselleth Galen; all emplasticke substance healeth moderately. The first precept in correction of the accidents, for sometime there is wound with the fracture, and then it must be banded more slacke, vsing more bands and no splents, also more straight dyet. If either Phlegmon, Contusion, or Gangren, cure them as y^e haue heard in their proper Chapters. If they be not proportionably, it must be amended by breaking of it, which must be done as for it be hard, otherwise it breaketh in some other part: to do the same, it must be fomented the space of 15. days with Hennes, Goose, or Cockes grease, fementations and cataplasmes that haue force to soften the Caule, as this; take

Avicen.
Guydo.
Brunus, Albu.

unguent de althea and agrippa, of each unc. se. olei Camome-
lini, Lillies, and Laurell, axungie gallinae anseris, and fresh
butter, of every one unc. i. with a little Ware, so being sof-
tened it separateth easily, sometime it requireth a little force
to doe it. Avicen and Guydo write in diuers manners to
doe this, which I counsell no man to try, for better it is to
suffer a little deformity of a part, then losse of the whole bo-
dy, to wit, death, which often happeneth. As for the cu-
ration of Fractures in the head, looke Hippoc. de vulneribus
capitis, & Galen 6. meth. cap. 6. & Celsus lib. 8. cap. 3. & 4.
& Paulus libro sexto, cap. 90.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Dislocations in generall.

Pet. Like as we haue done in Fractures, so wee will fol-
low out in Dislocations: but for the better vnder-
standing thereof, I would know of you after how many fa-
shions the bones are ioyned together, before wee come to
the definition of the disease?

Ioh. All bones are ioyned generally two waies, to wit,
by *Archon*, that is, by Articulation, and by *Symphisin*, that
is, by naturall Union.

Pet. How many sorts are there of Articulation?

Ioh. There are two, to wit, *Diarthrosis*, that is, connec-
tion with mouement manifest to the sight, as the legges,
armes, feete, and hands: *Synarthrosis*, is mouing more
obscure to be perceaued, as the teeth, the sutors of the head.

Pet. How many sorts are there of manifest moouings?

Ioh. Three, to wit, *Enarthrosis*, that is, when there is a
great cavitie, that receiueth a long roundnesse, as the thigh
with the haunch: The second is *Arthrodia*, that is, when
a superficial cavitie receiueth a little superficial head of a
bone, as the arme and shoulder with the osseplat: The
third is *Ginglimus*, that is, when the bones receaue one an-
other.

other, as in the connexion of the knee, and the cubitus with the arme.

Pet. How many sorts are there of obscure moouings?

Ioh. Galen sayth that there are thre, to wit, *Suture*, as *Lib. de ossib.* the sutures of the head: the second is called *Gomphosis*, that is, when the boane is infixed in like a nayle, as the teeth in the iawne bone: the 3. is called *Harmonia*, as the nose with the head, the bones of the face which are ioyned together like a lyue.

Pet. You haue spoke sufficiently of Articulation, now tell me of naturall Vnion, and how many wayes it is done?

Ioh. Two wayes, either without mediation, but by succession of time groweth together, as the nether iaw-bone, which manifestly is distinguished in children; or else by mediation, and is done thre wayes, to wit, the Cartilage, as the bone *pubis*: secondly, by the nerue or tendon, as the *Sternon*, and as *Ilium* are ioyned together: thirdly, by flesh, as the teeth are fastened.

Pet. What is Dislocation?

Ioh. It is an out-going of the bone out of the naturall seat, which letteth the moouing.

Paulus lib: 6,

cap: 3.

Bru, li. 1. c. 20.

Pet. How many differences are there of Dislocation?

Ioh. Thre, of the which the first is called Complete, when the bone is altogether out of the place: the second is Incomplete, when the bone is not altogether, but a little out: the third is Distortion, Elongation or Peruersion of the ligament.

Pet. How many wayes is Dislocation complete done?

Ioh. Foure wayes, before, behind, or outward, and inward, some vp, some downe, but not oft scene.

Cel: li: 8. ca: 15

& cap. 11.

Gal. cō. apho.

5. li. 3. de fra.

& aph: 1. li: 4.

de articulis.

Pet. How many differences hath Incomplete?

It hath thre, the first, that the ligament in the ioynt and about it is relaxed, as chanceth in the haunch: the second, when the ligament is forced by great violence, as the legge or foote in making a wrong or crooked steppe: the third is, when by little and little the ligament relaxeth and bringeth

the

the bone after it, as chanceth in the backe.

Pet. How many differences hath the third, which is called Distortion?

Ioh. No difference, but onely the bone is made longer from the other.

Pet. Which are the causes of luxation?

Cause.

Ioh. Two; to wit, Externe and Interne.

Pet. Which are the Externe?

Gal. de causis

morb. ca. 2.

& artis parua

ca. 8 com. a-

pho. 26. & lib.

1. de articulis.

Cel. lib. 8. ca.

11 com. aph.

1. lib. 11. de

officin. medic.

& com. 55. li.

3. de fracturis.

Ioh. Falls or stroakes, and too violent extending of the member violently against the figure naturall.

Pet. Which are the Interne?

Ioh. Great aboundance of humors pituitous, gathered in the ioynture, which humecteth the ligaments, and maketh them soft and humide, so the bone goeth out, or by the extenuation of the muscles about the ioynture.

Pet. How know you Dislocation?

Ioh. By the extraordinary tumor of the place, by the emptinesse of the place where the bone was, by the priuation of the moving, accompanied with dolor.

Pet. By what iudgement or signe know you those that are easie, and those that are difficile, and those which are incurable and mortall?

Judgement.

Ioh. I iudge by the kind and diuersity of the Dislocation and body, as for example, the knee is easie to goe forth and to goe in, also the finger, in like manner members leane, and where the nerues & ligaments haue store of humidity and moysture, the arme difficile to goe forth, and hard to put in againe: and in grosse, fatte, and tender people, those with fracture and apostume are euill to heale; those are very difficile that haue the sides broken; those which haue bene long out, are almost impossible to be reduced; the two uppermost vertebres of the necke being out, letteth the respiration, and so the party dyeth within the space of 3. days.

Paulus lib. 6.

cap. 3.

Celsus lib. 8.

cap. 21.

Cure.

Pet. What methode vse you for the cure hereof?

Ioh. The methode generall for all Dislocations hath 4. Intentions: the first is, to put the bone in his owne proper place,

*From the
first intention
the bone is
put in his
owne place
and the
ligaments
are
restored
to their
owne
place
and the
muscles
are
restored
to their
owne
place
and the
nerues
are
restored
to their
owne
place
and the
blood
is
restored
to its
owne
place
and the
life
is
restored
to its
owne
place*

place, the extention of the member first made, with hands
or Machins : the second intention is, to continue it in the
place by good medicaments and bandages, as in Fractures:
the third is, to put the member in right scituation : the
fourth, to giue order to the accidents, as by good dyet, pur-
ging, and bleeding if need be, and reduce the Dislocation be-
fore the inflammation be come, otherwise stay till it be past:
when it is neere whole, or the accidents past, we shall vse
things to corrobore and comfort the part with certaine
simples sodde in wine, next, the emplaster *Oxicrosum*, or
ad Fracturas.

Pet. If the Dislocation chance with Fracture, what is to
be done?

Ioh. First, reduce the Dislocation, next, the Fracture if
it be possible, some reduce, the Fracture, next the Dislocati-
on, it being reduced and the Dislocation simple, foment
with oyle of Roses, whites of Egges, and cloth wet in ori-
crate, with splints, putting it in good figure, with as little
paine as may be. It must not be stirred till the 7. day, ex-
cept inflammation or some euill accident doe fall, at which
time foment it with hote water, thereafter the astringent
as in Fractures, keepe good dyet, eat little for 4. or 6. days,
till the inflammation be past. If the luxation be ioyned with
a wound, first haue care of the wound with lenitiue medi-
cines, next, giue order to the Dislocation : but if the dislo-
cation and fracture do both possesse one part and at one time,
first the dislocation must be reduced, next the fracture, as is
moze at large set downe by Guyd and Tangat. If the dislo-
cation happen by causes externe, as by abundance of hu-
mors which loseth the ligaments, we must vse astringent
and drying medicines. If it be accompanied with dolour
and inflammation, it must be cured as I haue sayd before. If
there be feuer, vse good dyet, purgations, and bleeding, in
the end of the cure we corrobore the part with decoction of
Roses, and Wormewood in wine, thereafter the emplaster
Oxicrosum, or *ad fracturas ossium*, till the end of the cure.

Chap.

Celsus lib: 8.

cap: 11.

Hipp: apho: 4.

lib: 4. de artic.

Alb: li: 3. ca: 1.

Pau: lib: 6. ca:

12, 13, 4, 15.

Guy: 2. doct:

cap: 1.

Hip: apli: 65,

lib: 4, de arti:

Hip: lib: citato

Cel: li: 8, com:

in aph: 23. li: 1

de artic: ca: 6.

& lib: 3. meth:

Paulus lib: 6,

cap: 22.

Guydo.

Tangatius.

Cel: lib: 8.

C Of embalming the dead corps.

How to pre-
serue the dead
corpes.

Scythians.

Jo. 19. 39.

Christ embal-
med.

Gen. 50. 2.
Iacob embal-
med.

Herodotus.

Gen. 51.
Ioseph em-
balmed.

Having in all this worke endeauoured my selfe by all possible means, to cure and preserve the health of man euen from his birth: so now it behoueth to shew the forme and methode how to preserve the diseased or dead body euen to the graue, in such sort that the yong Chirurgian may bee the better experienced in all things which concerne the humane body, as well dead, as liuing: and that according to that ancient vse and custome which euer hath bene vsed by the godly in all ages, as evidently appeareth by the Scriptures, as also by prophane Histories, which make mention that there was neuer a Nation so barbarous, not the very Scythians but haue euer had such care of the buriall and embalming of their Parents and friends, which was meruailous. The which forme hath euer continued to this day, as well by Christians as Infidels, whereof diuers examples may be alleadged as well in the new as in the old Testament. I read in the 19. of Iohn how Nicodemus brought Myrrhe and Aloes mixed together, about the waight of 100. pound, and annointed the body of our blessed Saviour Iesus Christ, then wrapped him in Linnen cloaths, thereafter buried him as was the order of the Iewes, to bury their dead. Also I read in the 50. chap of the 1. Booke of Moyse called Genesis, how Ioseph commanded his seruants who were Chyrurgians to embalm his Father for the space of forty daies, till hee was carryed from the land of Egypt to the land of Canaan, where hee was buried in a double caue which Abraham had bought for a buriall place. Herodotus reporteth, that the custome of the Iewes was most commonly to embalm them for keeping 40. or 60. dayes. Also in the last Chap. of Genesis, that Ioseph himselfe was embalmed, put in a chest and carried to Egypt. As touching other Histories, diuers Authours might be here alleadged,

leadged, but for the present we shall content vs with a few.

Cyrus King of Persia, commanded that his body should bee well bowelled, but that no Sepulchre be made for him but the earth which produceth grasse and flowers; neuerthelesse Diodorus maketh mentiō of the costly erection of the tombs builded by Semiramis Quēne of most excellent memorie, who builded Babilon, subdued Ethiopia, and made warre in India, wherein was engraued these words,

Cyrus king of Persia embalmed.

Diodorus.

What King shall euer haue need
of money, wea'th, or treasure,
Let him plucke vp this Tombe with speed,
and take thereof at pleasure.

Darius King of Persia reading those words, caused the said Sepulchre to be opened, wherein hee found these other verses engrauen,

Darius.

Unlesse thou haddest bene a King,
conetous of money, insatiable, and desirous,
Thou wouldest neuer haue undone, broken, and violate,
The graues of them that were extinct by fate.

Autonius Sabellicus doth write, that Sertorius passing through Barbarie found a Sepulchre in a Citie called Tigena, which was 40. cubites of length, wherein was richly embalmed the body of Anthius, who was a man of meruailous strength, with whome Hercules did wrastle, hee was befoze the incarnation of Christ 1588. The sayd Sertorius commanded that the said Sepulchre should be moze richly reedified then it was befoze, albeit he should haue dishonoured himselfe by violating so notable a monument, as Plutarch reporteth. There be diuers other learned men, who haue written sundry Testimonies of the richly embalming of the Iewes, which are not necessary to be spoken of for the present; here I onely intend to shew the yong Chirurgian briefly the forme of embalming in our time, which must be done after this mauner. First, the dead corps must be layd on a table vpon a cleane linnen cloth on the backe, then make your incision from the Clauicul vnto the os pubis,

Sertorius.

Anthius embalmed.

Plutarch.

Forme of embalming.

then

Embalme the
heart.

Aromaticall
powder.

Oyntment of
the bodie.

then lift vp the sternon with the muscles of the inferiour belly, taking forth all that is therein contained : as also the bzaines after the skull be opened by the sawe, all those must be presently buried, except onely the heart, which may be embalmed with the body or alone, and put in a box of Lead or otherwise, as shall be thought expedient by their friends, which done, wash the body with Aquavite and Wine, then make deepe and long scarrifications on the armes, backe, lungen, legges, thighs, and buttockes, chiefly in those parts where the great vaines and artiers be, to the end the bloud may auoyd the better, which otherwise might engender corruption, which done wash the thre venters and incised parts with Aquavite, spirit of wine, and strong Vineger, wherein hath bene sodden Abscynth, Allom, Collosynth, Aloe, and Salt, then dry all those parts diligently with a water sponge, or otherwise ; then you shall haue those powders in a readines, which commonly are made of Roses, Cammomill, Cumin, Helilot, Hynt, wormewood, balme, Sage, Lavender, Rosemarie, Laurell, Hariolyn, Time, Cypzus, of each a certaine quantity, all dyed and put in powder, Gentian, Iris of Florence, Calamus Aromatick, Nutmegs, Cloues, Cinamon, Pepper, Beniamin, Alloes, and Myrhe, of each a small quantity, beat all in grosse powder, and fill vp the belly and skull therewith ; as also whole incisions and sowe them vp close againe with a needle and threadd, thereafter annoynt the whole corps with Turpentine mixed with oyle of Cammomill, or some Aromaticall oyles that be extracted by quinticens, then couer ouer the whole body with the foresaid powders, thereafter wrappe it in a Searecloth, which shall be thus made, take 4. pound of Wax, Rosat 2. pound, sheepes grease 1. pound, *Resini pini* 1. lib. dimid. *olei Petri*, or Spice, so much as shall be requisite, mixing therewith some Colophon, Masticke, Storax and Gumme Arabicke : The cloth must be wet in that composition, and refreshed a little, then inuolue the corps in it, which done, tye it fast with small cords in all parts, then

then couer it with Linnen cloth, or for persons of higher dig-
nity take layze or camerige. In all the time of this worke
we vse to burne in the chamber Benjamin, or other odori-
fferous things: others to make a pleasant sauour, vse a can-
dle of Benjamin, Muske, Storax, Labdan, charcole, Cloues,
skin of the Pomgranet, red of Roses, of each a little quan-
tity, put all in fine powder and mire with Gumme of Dra-
gagant, whereof you shall make your candle, dreyethem
slowly, which you shall burne in the chamber during all the
time of your operation. Some common people for bowelling
vse a few of the most common of those hearbs with vnquen-
ched Lyme, the ashes of the stalkes of Beanes, and of the
Oake tree, wash the body with Vinegar and stiffe vp with
those pouders, then inuolue the corps in a common Seare
cloath, tye it with small cords as the former, put it in a close
chest of Lead or timber. This is the forme to preserve ei-
ther the dead corps aboue or beneath the earth: but if a-

What should
be burned in
the chamber.

Embalming
of common
people.

ny would haue them to continue embalmed, for to

endure 100. or 120. yeares, you shall find a

perfect way to doe the same in my

Booke called The poore mans

Guyde.

The



THE NINTH BOOKE,

Of Bleeding;

And diuers other operations of Chyrurgerys
which containeth XXXIII. Chapters; *Whose Contents*
bee these; by PETER LOVVE
Scottishman.

- Chap. 1. Of bleeding, and such things as should be obserued therein.
2. Of such rules as should be obserued in bleeding.
3. Of the 17. vaines of the head, the way to open them, and their effects.
4. Of the scituation of the 3. vaines in the arme, the way to open them, and their effects.
5. Of the 3. vaines in the hands, their scituation, way to open them, and their effects.
6. Of the 4. vaines in the fundament, and their effects.
7. Of the 4. vaines in the legges, their scituation, & effects.
8. Of things that ought to be considered to blood well.
9. Of things to be considered after the vaine be opened.
10. Of Arterietomie or incision of the artier.
11. Of boxing and ventosing.
12. Of things requisite before the applying of ventosies.
13. Of the way of applying ventosies.
14. Of bloud-suckers or horseleaches, and their effects.
15. Of the Seton, the qualities thereof, & way to apply it.
16. Of the actuall and Potentiall cauters, & their composition.
17. Of Cauter potentiall, and their composition.
18. Of the caution in applying the cauters.
19. Of the way to apply cauters.
20. Of Baths, and their effects.
21. Of certaine cautions before bathing.
22. Of things to be obserued before the entrie to the bath.
23. Of Frictions, and the effects thereof.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of Bleeding, and the things therein
to bee obserued.



Bleeding, which the Grekes call
Phlebotomia, and the Latines *Ve-*
na sectio, is an incision of the vein
artificially done, either to retaine,
diuert, or euacuate blood, and other
humors contained within the bo-
die; for the which Avicen doth
terme it *vniversalis euacuationem*,
and that for diuers reasons; first,

Gal. aph. 2.
com. 17.

Avicen.

because it doth take away aboundance of humors which of-
ten are contained in the veines above measure; next, it doth
euacuate both good and euill humors, which are contained
with the blood through the whole body above, and is a thing
most necessary to be knowen by all Chyrurgians, not onely
for the healing of maladies, but also for the conseruation of
our bodies from sickness, and sometime both for healing and
preseruing; for the which it is most necessary that the Chy-
rurgian should know the number of the veines and their
true situation, to the end he take not one for another: for
sometimes the situation is variable, and imparts not ac-
customed, very difficile to be opened. The Chyrurgian
must also know the way to open them, with such things as
should be obserued before and after bleeding, with the effects
following thereupon, which be diuers, reckoned by the lear-
ned, of the which Saturne maketh some mention in these
verses,

Iohan. Baptis.
Suf. de sang.
missendi rati.

Hipp. com. in
aph. 25. ca. 47

Exhilarat tristes, iratos placet, amantes,

Ne sint amantes, Phlebotomia facit.

which is to say, It maketh glad the pensive, and mittigates

B b

the

Al.
cap. 4.

Iohannes
Baptista.

Suf. lib. de
sang. missio.
Hip. aph. 22.
Gualter. Riff.

Heliogabalus
serm. 9. par. 2.

the wrathfull, it impedeth lust, and such as are sicke from being madde, especially by letting blood of the Cephalicke vaine. There be diuers particular commodities which doe proceed of bleeding sayth Galen, and diuers other learned Writers : first, it quickeneth the spirit, and purgeth the braines, helpeth the memory, and maketh the senses more subtile, clarifieth and sharpeneth the sight, voyce, and wit, heateth the marrow, and wasteth such superfluous humors which make the marrow in the bones to be cold, it purifieth the whole senses, & remoueth those fumes which ascend to the head and trouble the senses ; it stayeth vomiting, and lax, as sayth Avicen, for it draweth the humor from the center, to the circumference ; it profiteth much against immoderate waking, for it taketh away humors, from the which diuers sharpe vapours ascend to the head and stayeth sleepe : it remoueth heauines, dulnesse, and sluggishnes of the body, helpeth difficulty of hearing, by taking away such humors as doe prouoke thicke vaporous spirits, and send to the head and passages of the eares the same : it refresheth the pores and strength of the body, helpeth digestion, euacuath euill blood, and is a naturall euacuation of all the whole humors of our bodie, by the which infinite maladies are cured, those be the commodities for the most part which doe ensue of bleeding, and are set downe by Saturne in these verses.

*Lumina clarificat, singerat Phlebotomia,
Mentes, & cerebrum, callidas facit esse medullas,
Viscera pargabit, Stomachum, ventremq; coerct,
Puros dat sensus, dat somnum, tædia tollit,
Auditus, vocem, vires, producit & auget.*

Seeing the commodities of this remedy is so worthy and necessary for mans health, how iustly may we blame those malicious Ignorants that condemne the same, contrary to the opinion of the most learned, and against all reason and experience ? Now it followeth to know the number of the vaines which ordinarily are opened by the learned, for curing

ring of maladies, which be 41. in number, viz. 17. in y^e head, 6. in the armes, which is three in each one, 6. in the hands, 4. in the fundament, which is two in each side, 8. in the legs, the which vaines must be opened diuersly, the great ones are opened long-ways, the little ones ouerthwart, that which is in the tip of the nose, is opened by pricking of it, not lifting the skinne. As touching the particular opening of euery vaine and the commodities following thereupon, you shall heare in the Chapter following, particularly.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of such rules as should be obserued in bleeding.

Sometime the blood is vsed for the preservation of the body from sicknesse, as you haue heard, yet not commonly vsed in children afore 14. yeares of age, except in great necessity, neither in old people after 80. yeares, because the abundance of blood at that time is not great, nor the forces strong : but for the healing of diseases which is the second commoditie of bleeding, we doe let blood both yong and old people, and sometime rather the old than the yong, for sometime one of 60. will better endure bleeding then one of 20. and a child of two yerres old sometime will endure bleeding twice in one day, and one of thirty, three or foure times in a day, as I sometime remarke it. Secondly, wee must weigh the strength of the sicke, for in strong people wee let blood largely, those that are weake and extenuate, not so much, although Galen, Celsus, and others, counsell in beheading dolours and carbuncles, to draw blood, *vsq; ad animæ defectum*, of the which often come great accidents, so not to be vsed so largely : if the blood be euill and corrupt, you must take aduise with the learned Physition for the remedy thereof. Hurnius and Galen doe counsell, if the blood be euill and corrupt to draw it by little and little, and so procure

Rasis.

Auenzo. li: 7.
cap. 3.

Galē, Celsus.
Hip. li. i. aph.
Pau. li. 6. c. 40

Hurni. praxis
medic.
Gal. li. 4. cap.
10. meth.

Tral. li. 9. c. 2.

Gal. de sang.
missione.Langfrancus.
Gal. lib. de
arthridide.Hip. 7. aph.
Oribasius.
Arnaldus.Gal. de cura.
ratio. per fan.
missio. cap. 21
6. meth. ca. 5:Constantinus
Africanus.Gal 4. aph. 10
aph. & de cu-
rat. per sangu.
missio. ca. 10.

good blood by degrees instead thereof, which must bee done by good nourishment. If the body be of good habitude, well nourished, and the vaines tumified and full of blood, you may draw more largely then of others, which are of a weaker and worse temperance: such as are trained up in hote Countries, nourished with hote meates, doe better endure bléeing then those in cold Countries, and they haue their blood more hote, so are more subiect to hote apostumes and feuers. The other cause of blooding, which is vsed for the preservation of health, should not bee done in Winter nor Sommer, but in the Spring-time, when many diseases are cured, and must be done in the morning before the day grow hote, but that blooding which is vsed for the healing of sicknesses, may be done at all times and at all houres, according to the symptoms that happen to the diseased: such as are ordinarily accustomed to let blood either when the hemorrhoides or monethly courses are retained, or to prevent great maladies, are let blood in diuers parts according to the cause, sometimes in the armes, otherwhiles in the legges or feet, as shall be found expedient. The excellent Astrologians are of opinion that the Starres, Planets, and Signes, haue great power in mans body, and doe thinke that euery humoz of mans body is gouerned by certaine of those signes, as the sanguine by Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorne; the Phlegmaticke humoz by Aries, and Sagittarius; the chollericke by Cancer, and Pisces; the melanchollicke by Libra, and Aquarius; and according to their opinion with some Physicians as Constantinus, Africanus, blood must not be let of that part where they alleadge the signe to be: which signs is not was not obserued of y most learned physicians and Chyrurgions; like as Hippocrates, Galen, Oribasius, Sardinus, Aetius, Paulus, Rasis, Avicen, Haly Abbas, and diuers others, Latines, Graekes, and Arabians; for when the body is grievously oppressed with maladie and griefe, we doe not nor must not stay for the course of celestiall signes, either to purge or let blood, except onely in the criticke

Of things to be obserued in bleeding. *Lib. IX.* 373

criticke or iudgement day, which is called by the Latins *dies decretory*, in the which in either sicke or hurt people happen oftentimes great mutations or presages of life or death, which is very needfull to be remarked by all Chyrurgions. The criticke day doth often happen after the beginning of the sickenes, the 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 14, 17, 21, or 28. day: in which dayes, neither medicines nor bleedings should be ministered, neither any naturall nor voluntarie euacuation be stopt; like as fluxe of the belly, blood at the nose, vyne, sweat, vomiting, fluxe of the hemorrhoides or moneths, in women, but gently to entertaine the same. Some there be who follow the opinion of the Egyptians in obseruing of dayes which are inuented by them, and are called *dies Aegyptiaci*, who were of opinion, if any had fallen sicke or been hurt in such dayes, they should hardly haue escaped: the which appeares to me to be fabulous. Neuerthelesse according as they haue written I will repeat them, and are these: the 1, and 7, of Ian: the 3, and 4, of Feb: the 1, and 4, of March: the 8, and 10, of April: the 3, and 7, of May: the 10, and 15, of June: the 10, and 13, of July: the 1 and 2, of August: the 3, and 10, of Sept: the 3, and 10, of Octob: the 3, and 5, of Nouem: with the 7, and 10, of December. The excellent and learned Mathematicians doe say, that there is three certain daies that should be obserued by Chyrurgions not to let blood, to wit, the first of August, the 4, of September, the 11. of March. As likewise the 10 of August, the 1 of December, and the 6. of April, are obserued by some Philosophers to be very perilous to surfeit much in eating and drinking, for in them men may incur dangerous sicknesses and often death. I read in an old Philosopher Arabian, a man of diuers rare obseruations, who did remarke 3. Mondays in the yere to be most vnfortunate, either to let blood or beginne any notable worke, viz. the first Monday of April the which day Caine was borne and his brother Abell slaine. The second is the first Monday of August, the which day Sodome and Gomorra were founded:

Three most vnfortunate dayes.

Herode did
kill the chil-
dren.

Fortunate
dayes recko-
ned by the A-
strologians.

founded. The third is the last Monday of December, the which day Iudas Hecariot was borne, who betrayed our Sauiour Jesus Christ to the Jewes : these three Mondays with the Innocents day, by diuers of the learned are reputed to be most vnfortunate of all dayes, and ought to be eschewed by all men for the great mishaps which often doe happen in them ; and thus much concerning the opinion of our ancients of dayes. So in like manner I will repeat vnto you certaine daies which be obserued by some old wizards, chiefly the curious Astrologians, who did alleadge that there were 28. dayes in the yeare which were reuealed by the Angell to good Ioseph, which euer haue been remarked to be very fortunate daies, either to purge, let blood, cure wounds, vse merchandize, sow seed, plant trees, build houses, or taking iourneys in long or short voyages, in fighting or giuing of battaile or skirmishing : they do also alleadge that children who were borne in any of those dayes could neuer be poore, and all children who were put to the Schooles or Colleges in those dayes, should become great Schollers, and those who were put to any craft or trade in such dayes, without doubt should become a perfect artificer and rich, and such as were put to trade of merchandise should become most wealthy Marchants. The daies be these, the 3. and 13. of Janu : the 5. and 28. of Feb : the 3. 22. and 30. of March : the 5. 22. and 29. of Aprill : the 4. and 28. of May : the 3. and 8. of June : the 12. 13. and 15. of July : the 12. of August : the 1. 7. 24. and 28. of Sept : the 4. and 15. of Octob : the 13. and 19. of Nouem : the 23. and 26. of Decemb : and thus much concerning the daies which are by the most curious sort of the learned remarked to be good, and euill But to returne to the Mediciners whose rules are more sure, and should rather be followed : There are some who doe precisely obserue the course of the Moone, except for some reasonable cause, and doe obserue the new Moone rather then the old, which ought to be considered by reason of some other euacuation, for the which old women must be let blood

blood the old of the *Moone*, and yong women in the new,
as noteth *Gordonius*, in these words.

Luna vetus veteres, Iuvenes noua Luna requirit.

If he whome we would let blood be constipat, giue him a
glister remollient, or some *Cassia Manna*, or some other gen-
tle purgation: yet in some cases we let blood without any
purging, proceeding as in *Pleurisies*, inflammation of the
lungs, apoplexies, squinnances, suffocations, fluxe of blood
at the nose, and in such persons who abound in blood, and
not of euill humors; also in women with child, especially
if they grow heauie, slipperie and ouer-charged with aboun-
dance of blood: also such as haue had great falls from high
places, w^{ch} such as by any accident are become dumbe, such
persons we let blood in both the armes largely: further
we must consider if the meate he eateth be digested, and if
the blood bee grosse vse frictions to subtilize it and make it
runne: if any great and long maladie hath proceeded, or
great euacuation either of the hemo^rrhoides or monethlie
course, fluxe of the bellie or vomiting, bathing, cold regions
or complexions in people ouer old or euer young, long wa-
king, or great vsing of women: in those cases bleeding shold
be deferred except for great occasions, and then it must bee
moderately done: those lets or impediments are set downe
by *Saturne* in these verses.

*Gal.li. 10. de
comp. medic.
secund. loc.*

*cap: 2.
Auic. 4 prim.
cap: 4.*

Langfrancus.

*Roge. de phle-
botom. venar.*

*Frigida natura, & frigens regio, dolor ingens
Balnea, post coitum, minor aetas atq^{ue} senilis
Morbus prolixus, repletio, & estas
Si fragilis vel subtilis sensus stomachi sit
Et fastidit tibi non sunt Phlebotomandi.*

J. King

h

Also such as be let blood should haue his mind so much as
can be free of all passions, chiefly feare which retyzeth the
blood to the center of the body; if he feare fainting, he must

eat an egge before, or a tost in wine and lye on his bed, beware to sleepe immediately thereafter for diuers respects, as saith Saturne in these verses.

*Sanguine substracto sex horis est vigilandum
Ne somni fumus ledat tibi sensile corpus
Ne nervum ledas, non sit tibi plagaprofunda
Sanguine purgatus ne carpas prociuus escas.*

After the bleeding keepe dyet for a day or two, eating things of light digestion, abstaine from Milke, all salt meat, cold drinke and ayre, vse moderate exercise.

CHAP. III.

Of the scituation of the 17. vaines in the head, the way to open them, and their effects.

Portraiture

*Portraiture of the Vaines which Chyrurgions
doe comonly open.*



Vaines in the
head that be
opened.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95.

The vaines which be the proper receptacles of the blood, are diuersly dispersed throught the whole body of man, carrying the same to euery part thereof, which often be opened for letting of blood; of y^e which we are to speake at this present, and first of those in the head which commonly be opened; the first is called *vena frontis, preparata* or *recta*, and proceedeth of the Jugular intern, scituated in the middelt of the forehead, for the opening of the which, thou must bind the neck with a napkin till the vaine appeare, doing the like in all other vaines of the head, next draw the Lancet on the vaine, and open it aslope, take heed you goe not too deepe for feare of the Pericran,



Lancets



It is good for all inveterate dolours of the head, chiefly the Hip. 5. aph. 68.
 hinder part of the head, for all diseases of the face, and in-
 flamation of the eyes, frensie : this kind of bleeding doth
 divert or turne, & plucke backe the blood the contrary way,
 and is called by the Latines *Revulsio*, and by the Greekes
Antispas, it hath been used by our Ancients for a soueraigne
 remedy

Auic 3. primi.

Gal. li. de cu-
rat. per san.

missionem ca.

16. & lib. artis

med. cap. 95.

Baptista Sul.

lib. de sangui.

missione.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95.

Hip. lib. de

Aera & aqua.

Avicen.

Haly Abbas.

Albuc. ibid.

remedy, as witnesseth Avicen, and diuers others of the lear-
 ned, who did open the basilicke vaine of the right arme for a
 Pleurisie on the left side. Hippocrates and Galen do coun-
 sell to let blond of the basilicke vaine of the same side where
 the pleurisie or paine is, the which opinion is much disputed
 among the Physicians, who for the most part do agree to let
 blood the arme opposite for diuerting great fluxes of blood. I
 my selfe doe euer let blood the part opposite for any paine or
 griefe, by the which I haue euer found great helpe. The
 Second vaine of the head is called *vena puppis*, scituate in
 the hinder part of the head, and is opened as the former,
 which is good for dolours of the head and sleepinesse. The
 third is called *temporalis achoris*, or *sterilis*, and hath the o-
 rigen from the Jugulars, scituate on the temples, and hath
 many branches, it is opened for the migrom, dolours of the
 eares, Ophthalmie, and watering of the eyes. The fourth
 is called *auricular*, scituate behind the eares, and must be o-
 pened as the others, the haire being shaven, & the part rub-
 bed with a rough cloth till the vaine appeare: the opening
 of it is good for deafnesse, paine in the eares, old catarres, he-
 micranes, all vlcers maligns: but if they bee cut wholly,
 they make a man to be sterile, as saith Hippocrates, which
 thing was practised amongst the Scythians to make men ef-
 feminate and serue them like women. The fift is called
Ocular, and proceedeth of the Jugulars internes, scituate be-
 twixt the eyes and the nose: in opening of the which you
 must not goe too deepe, in case you hurt the muscle that mo-
 ueth the eye, by the which oftentimes it draweth the eye a-
 side, and sometime the wound becommeth fistulous: all
 the vaines of the head should be opened with Flambets, e-
 specially in such as are not skillfull, for feare of not going too
 deepe, the opening of this is good for maladies of the face,
 affections of the eyes, eye-lids, and scabs. The sixt is cal-
 led *Nasall*, scituate on the tippe of the nose betwixt the carti-
 lages: in opening of it go deepe with the Lancet, it is good
 for heauinesse of the head, fluxions on the eyes, and all red-
 nesse

nesse of the face, yet not commonly vsed, neither was opened by Galen nor any of the Greeces. The 7. is called *Labier*, scituate in the inner side of the lippe: the opening of it is good for corruption of the gummes, fissures in the lips, vlcers in the gummes and nose. The 8. is called *Ranall*, vnder the tongue, and proceedeth of the Jugular interne, it is opened ouerthwart, not going deepe in feare to make the tongue immobile, because there the nerue motiue is neare vnto those vaines: it is good for the scinancy inflammation of the Amigdals, *Uvula*, and other affections or aposthumes of the mouth and throat, as also for such as become dumbe and lose their speech any wayes. The 9. is the Jugular, and taketh his originall from the vaine caue ascendent: it is good for the scinancy, inflammation of the halfe, Suffocation, fluxion on throat, Leprosie, melancholique Maladies, maligne and corrodent vlcers, Hemicrane, and Rhume. Remember that all the vaines of the head must be opened as the rest. Avicenna is of the opinion, that y^e vaines of the head being opened, letteth generation, because of the animall spirits which dissipe, the which opinion is refelled by diuers of the learned and daily experienced.

Albuc:ibid.

Haly Abbas,

Roge.lib.de

phlebotoma

venatum.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the scituation of the three Vaines in the arme, the way to open them, and their effects.

The first of three vaines in the arme is called *cephalica*, *spatulina*, *capitalis*, or *humeralis*, as saith Galen, which is most high and externe in the arme, & hath neither vaine, artier, nerue nor tendon vnder it, in opening of the which make a good issue, otherwise it is in daunger to aposthume, because that oft there remaineth lapped blood, for the thicknesse of the flesh; it is good for all dolours and paine of the head, eyes, eares, throat, and Epilepsie. The second is called *mediana*, *vena matricis matricalis*, *mediastina*, *cardiaca* or *purpurea*.

Alb.li.2.c.9.

Rasis, Oriba.
Avicen, Haly
Abbas,

Gal. Riff.

Rasis lib. 28.

purpurea, it is composed of the basilicke and cephalicke scitu-
ated betwixt them, in the middelt of the arme, vnder it is a
nerue or tendon of the muscle *biceps*, sometime both, for the
which we must be warie and take good heed in opening it,
for feare of Gangren, convulsion, or dolour, it must be ope-
ned athwart, and is good for all diseases that happen to the
body, both superio: and inferiour. Once I saw in opening
of this the nerue pricked, of the which within the space of 4.
dayes after there came a soft tumor in the *Omoplat*, with a
relaxation of the ioynt, as also all the ioynts of the body, for
the which the deepe profounding is forbidden by Avicen,
and Rasis. The thurd is called *basilica*, *hepatica*, *vena inter-*
na, *iccorina*, *regia*, or *vena axillaris*, and is scituated lowe
downe in the arme, accompanied with a great arter vnder
it, for the which you must haue a great care and beware of
Aneurisme. Rasis forbiddeth to bleed in this vaine, but
in great necessitie. It is opened for the obstructions of the
liuer, inflammations in all the body, as also parts vnder the
head, hardnes of the liuer, dolour of the stomacke, pleurisie,
and difficulty of breath.

CHAP. V.

¶ Of the three Vaines in the hands, their
scituation, the way to open them, and their effects.

Gal. lib. de
San. missione.

Gal. defecti.

The first of the three vaines is called *cephalica*, or *ocula-*
ris, and is scituated betwene the thumbe and formost
finger, and is opened longwayes, because it is little, and is
good for dolours in the head and affections of the eyes. Ga-
len sayth, that the vaines in the hands giue not much blood,
because they are but little branches, and therefore were not
opened by the mediciners Greekes. The second is called
palmaris, *titularis*, or *asellaris*, and is onely a branch of the
basilicke, it is scituated betwene the middle finger called *me-*
dianus, and the thurd finger called *anularis*, and is good for
the

the Jaundise and maladies of the liuer, being let blood in the right hand, and the other in the left hand called *splenetica*, for the affections of the milt, and diuers other commodities which ensue thereupon, as at large is set downe by the learned Schoole of Saturne in these verses.

*Ex saluatella tibi plurima dona minuta
Splenem hepar pectus vocem precordia purgat,
Innaturalis tollit de corde dolorem.*

The third is called *funus brachij*, and is a branch of the *cephalicke*, scituate on the finger *medius*, opened in default of the other two. These vaines must be bathed in hote water, in opening of them, as those in the fete.

CHAP. VI.

¶ Of the foure Vaines in the Fundament, and their effects.

Each side of the Fundament are scituated two vaines. Hemorrhoids, and are opened for affections of the fundament, especially the hemorrhoids, and diuers other melancholique maladies.

CHAP. VII.

¶ Of the foure Vaines in the Legges, their scituation, and effects.

The first of these foure vaines is called *Popletica*, and cometh from the vaine *Femorall*, as all the rest, it is scituated in the bending or pleye of the ham, open it for all affections in any part contained in the inferiour venter. The second is called *Saphena*, scituated within the foot, neere or aboue the ankle upon inside, opening of it, ye must not profound depe because the parts are neruous, and so mortal accidents often happen. Note that all vaines in parts neruous, must be

Gal. de curat.
per san. missi.

be opened longwise, except *Sciatica* which must be opened a little athwart, yet Galen saith that all vaines in parts nervous must be opened longwise, and are not so much subiect to euill accidents : this being opened is good for affections of the kidneys, matrix, gonorrhea maling that returnes in againe, and also it prouoketh the purgation in woman. Be circumspect in letting blood the foot, for it weakeneth more than any other, as saith Avicen, therefore I vsed alwayes to women a tablet cordiall, or else they eate some what as fore. The third is called *Sciatica*, scituated about the ankle, and is opened athwart as ye haue heard, it is good for sciatickes, dolours in the thighes and ankles. The fourth is called *Medium* or renall, and is scituated vnder the bending of the foote, and is opened for such maladies, as the other. Some say that about euery knee about thre fingers there are two great vaines, which the Arabians call *Salsores*, and say if the sicke be let blood in them, he dyeth presently, but Galen is not of their opinion.

CHAP. VIII.

¶ Of things which are to be considered to bleed well.

Lib. 9.

Rasis.

First, the Chyrurgian must be in a light place either naturally, or with candle, also his owne sight should be good as sayth Haly Abbas, and must haue a ligatoz, that goeth twice about the arme, an inch broad, also he must haue a round staffe to hold in his hands ; in like manner a little oyle to rub on the vaine to make it souple, also annoynt the Lancet with sallet oyle, before the blood which will appease the paine, he must haue diuers Lancets, of the which some are large, some round pointed, when the paine is superficial, also when need is to make a good issue and euacuation, which we vse in putride feuers, and when the blood is thicke and the sicke strong : some must be long, sharpe poynted to open

open when the vaines are deepe and hidden, as also to make little issues in small superficiall vaines, and when need is to make deriuation as if the person spit blood, or bleed at the nose. The issue you make, must bleed long to diuert it: we make the issue litle in people that are out of y^e wits, that the issue may be soone consolide, by reason that such people loose the bandage, and oft blood much. The incision must be made one of 3. wayes, to wit, in length, breadth and oblique, making always an incision in middelt of the vaine, not cutting it altogether, which if it be, the blood commeth not well, but alongst the arme, and the extremitie of the vaines retireth one from another. Then let him make the issue as it should be, & cause the blood to come well out, rub first the arme, if thou wouldest blood gently with a hote cloth or thy hand, the knit it with the ligatour a little aboue the elbow, let the binding be steady, so the vaine will shew it selfe the better, then the sicke shall close his hand, that the vaines may shew the better, thereafter if it be the right arme the Chirurgian shall take it with his left hand, nere to the part where he intendeth to wake the issue, holding his thombe on the vaine that it stirre not, for oftentimes it rolleth and slydeth from the Lancet, sometime it yeareth being full of wind. This being done, he shall marke the place with the foremost finger of the right hand, making a little marke with his nayle on the vaine, then he shall take the Lancet betwixt the thombe and the foremost finger in the middelt of it, and to the end that he tremble not, he shall leaue the other three fingers on the arme, and leaue the finger and thombe that holdeth the lancet on the left thombe which holdeth the vaine, then open the vaine softly slyding the poynt of it in the vaine not suddenly: if the vaine be not opened at the first time, pricke suddenly againe a little aboue or vnder the first, ye may do the same if the hole be not great enough to let out the blood in a reasonable quantity. The vaine opened in that manner, the party shall hold the stasse in his hand, that he may rest his hand, and the blood come out the better. Hauing drawn

Rasis.

Bartapallia.

Ætius lib. 9.

Haly Abbas.

lib. 1.

Guliel. de sal-
veto.

Et

such

Gal. Auic. A-
uerrois.

such quantity of blood as the cause requireth, he shall presse out that which remaineth, if there come out any fat as oft happeneth in grosse people, thou shalt put it in againe, that done, put a peece of cloth the breadth of three or foure fingers double on the wound, and wet it in water, bind the arme with a band of an inch broad, that goeth 3. or 4 times about the arme, winding it about about the elbow, and vnder that it neither be too straight, nor too slacke. If the vaines bee small blood, then after meat rather than before, for then they are more full of blood, doe not eate nor drinke for an hower or two after.

CHAP. IX.

¶ Of things to be considered after the vaine is opened.

Auerrois.

Oftentimes chanceth after the vaine is well opened, that the blood commeth well forth, and afterwards suddenly doth cease, it happeneth through too straight ligation saith Auerrois, or else for an apprehension, and sometime through wrong and euill situation of the arme, in these poynts ye must slacke the ligatour, comfort the party, and scituate the arme right, sometime the cause is in the thickenesse and grossenes of the blood, for the which rub the place incised with a little oyle. If the party be weake, which shall be knowene by the changing his colour and the blood running alongst the arme, in this ye shall loose the ligatour, close the wound, lay the sicke on his backe, cast water in his face & vinegar to smel, & giue him a little wine, within a while after loose the band and let him bleed, till ye haue got such quantity of blood as shall be requisite, stirre not nor labour thy arme but carry it in a figure triangulare, sleepe not two howers after. Let the blood stand, to know the nature of it, for in our body there are diuers sorts very variable, according to the diuersity of the age, the complexion, countrey, kind.

kind of the sickness, and parts of the body. We shall iudge the nature and quality of the blood three wayes, by colour, taste, and substance. As for the colour, good naturall blood should be red, sweet as phlegme naturall, and of meane substance, when it congealeth not, it is a signe that some of the other humors are with it, when it is red, cleare, and glutte- ring, it signifieth abundance of choller, when it is blackish, abundance of melancholy naturall or adust which stoppeth it to congeale, the fatnesse of the blood keepeth it also from congealing.

Arist. lib. 2. de
partis animal.
cap. 4.
Gal. lib. de. a-
tra bile. & de
simp. med.

CHAP. X.

Of Arteriotomie or incision of the Artier.

Like as for diuers maladies we let blood the vaines, so we doe in some artiers. Arteriotomia is a detracti- on of blood by the diuision of the artier, which was not much v- sed saue only Menodotus, Albucasis, & some others, but is great- ly in v- se now, chiefly those in the temples and behind the eares, for great fluxion of catarrhes on the eyes, breast, and maladies of the head ingendered of a hote fluxion inuetera- ted, and vaporous spirits which are contained in these arti- ers. In opening them, first I shau- the haire, and rub the part with a rough warme cloth, that the artier may appeare the better: in opening the artier of the temples, tye fast the necke with a napkin after the forme, as you haue heard in opening the vaines, then consider with your finger the bea- ting of the artier, then marke it with a drop of inke or with your nayle, then make a little incision in the body of the ar- tier, as in the vaine, not cutting it altogether, draw such quantity of blood as is needfull, then stay it, and put on the wound an emplastrum of Basticke, or halfe a Beane clo- uen, with a compresse and bandage. Some feare this kind for that the blood is ill to stay, and also for an Aneurisme: it is good in long dolours of the side, and all dolors that pro-

Celcius.

Albu. lib. 2.
cap. 2.

Gal. lib. 1.
chro.
Paul lib. 4.
cap. 35.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 4. ced from an hate pituitous substance, also for swining, giddinesse, long defluxion, and waxing of the eyes.

CHAP. XI.

Of Boxing, and Ventosing.

Gal. 15 met.
med. cap. 4.
Alb. li. 2. c. 93.

Henricus
Rantzovius.

Hip. apho. &
lib. de oculorū
morbis.
Magni. regi.
sanitat.

Ventosing which the Latines call *Ventosatio*, is no other thing but application of an instrument, either for the euacuation of some humoꝝ vnder the skinne, or to diuert the course of an humoꝝ to some other part, and to drawe away such things as are hurtfull, that nature cannot chace forth, and also to draw out wind in some part of the body. It is called *cucurbitula*, or *pixis*, and is made of brasse, horne, glasse, wood, or earth in diuers formes some short, some long necked, for the most part wide bellied, and are called *ventosae a ventre*, as saith Avicen: some are bigge, some lesse, according to the proportion of the member, the mouth is reasonable wide, the lippes round and thicke, and are applyed most commonly in diuers parts of our body. They are sometime applyed with scarrification and extraction of blood, otherwile without scarrification, as also on diuers parts of our body, according to the cause, as to drawe out some hurtfull humoꝝ of the body, with scarrification and extraction of blood. First wee applye them in the necke to euacuate the humoꝝ from the head, for heauinesse of the head, fluxions on the eyes, affections of the face, and stinke in the mouth: secondly, wee applye them on the middelt of the necke behind, for difficulty of breath and cough: thirdly, vnder the chinne and sides of the necke, for dolours and vlcers of the mouth, corruption of the gummes, Megrims, Opthalmie, and soze teeth: fourthly, on the shoulders for diseases in the thorax, pleurisie, spitting of blood, affections on the shoulders, of repletion, for many affections of the head and throat: fifthly, on the region of the reynes, good for aposthumes and dolours of the reynes and liuer: sixthly,

on

on the middest of the armes, for dolour in those parts, and in stead of letting blood, and is vſed both in old and yong: Seuenthly, on the *os sacrum*, and thereabouts, and is good Rasis li. 9. c. 8. for the hemoꝛrhoides, and fistules in the fundament: Eightly, on the middest and rootes of the thighes, and is good to prouoke the monethly course, for stranguerie, dolours of the matrix, bladder, and kidneyes. The ventosies without scarification, which we call drie ventosing, are applyed for the most part in a .ii. places. First, on the open of the head, for relaxation of *Umbula*, and to stay the rhume, as saith Galen. Secondly, vpon the *hypocondres*, to diuert the bleeding at the nose, as saith Galen, when the right nosethrill bleedeth, put the ventosies on the region of the liuer; if the left side, on the milt, so in like manner on all parts that bleed, we put the ventosies on the part opposite, for the communication that the vessels haue one with another. Thirdly, on the pappes, to diuert the purgations that runne much, according to the saying of Hippocrates, *Si mulieri menstrua sistere uolueris cucurbitulam, quam maximam sub in animis defige*, and for the ventositie about the liuer. Fourthly, in the beginning of the nerues for Palsie. Fifthly, on the nauill for the windy collicke. Sixthly, on the flanke for ventositie of the milt. Seuenthly, on the nauill or wombe, to reduce the intestine, or matrix fallen, ventosities in the belly, and dolours which happen in time of purgations. Eighthly, we applye them on vritors, to drawe downe the stones and grauell to the bladder. Nynthly, on the eares and mouth of vlcers, to draw out any thing contained therein, also for drawing out of poyson. Tenthly, if any where there is matter deepe, to draw it out to the superſice, as in *bubons venerians*, also in *parotides maligne*, or in any other part where need is to draw any thing to the superſice. Eleuenthly, on the necke for Squinancy.

Hip. 5. aph. 2.

Bartapallia.

Guydo.

Aui. 3. canod.

Haly Abbas.
lib. 9.

Oribasius.

*CHAP. XII.***C** Of things requisite before the applying
of Ventosies.

Gal, Avicen.

First, if the body be plethorick, it must be taken away by bleeding, otherwise the ventosie is noysome; next, if the blood or humors be thicke, we vse to foment the place with hote water, and rubbe it long with a hote cloth; thirdly, that ye neuer scarrifie, except the application of the dyve ventosies haue preceaded, because the blood must first be drawne to the place before it be euacuated; lastly, that it be not applyed in the bath, but an hower or two after, or longer.

*CHAP. XIII.***C** Of the way to apply the Ventosies.

Magninus.

Albucrafis.

Haly Abbas.

Galen.

Pauli, 6, c. 41.

The Ventosies are applyed with hords being fastened to the bottome with a little ware or emplaster to hold it, that it fall not on the skinne, that being done, light them and applye them on the part. Some vse two or three peeces of Ware candles put on a pece of a Card, money or Gould, the breadth of a crowne, being lighted, set them on the midst of the part, thereafter apply the ventosie, and being applyed a certaine space, ye shall, so to take it away, presse the flesh under the lippe of it, to let in the ayre, and so it shall fall, which being done, make certaine scratches in the skinne with a Launcet, sometime many, otherwhiles few: in delicate folke and childzen, we make fewe scarrifications, if the blood be thicke, make the scarrifications profound, if the humor and blood be subtil, the scarrifications must be supreficiall, and applye the ventosies as before, let it remaine a reasonable time, and euacuate the blood, as ye shall find expedient, if not sufficiently at one time, ye may reiterate.

reiterate twice or thrise, always scarrifying, especially when there is venenosity or malignity in the place, by reason of the blood being thicke and grosse. That being done, it shall be very necessary and expedient to dry the place with a soft cloth, annoynt it with oyle of Roses, butter, *cerat Galen*, or *Alb. lib. 2. rosat Mesues*, and sleepe an houre after.

CHAP. XIIII.

¶ Of Horleaches or Bloud-suckers,
and their effects.

These little beasts, which the Latins call *Sanguisuga* or *Hirudines*, in our tong Horleaches, are little wormes, the length of two inches or thre, great, like to a Goose quill, well known to all Chirurgians, ingendered in fresh water, pondes, poles; of the which there are two sorts, the one maligne, as those which are bred in rotten standing water, *Magninus re-* where carrion hath been cast, of the which come great acci- *gini sanat.* dents, as tumor, inflammation, blcers, apothumes veno- mous, as we read of one *Messalinus*, who dyed by putting one on his knee. Therefore we must abstaine from those that haue the head greater then the rest of the body, and are greene coloured, glittering, with blew rayes on the backe, the rest of the body being blacke: we must chouse such as are found in cleane water, in ponds and sandy ground, that haue their head little and bodies small, round, red bellied, the backes rayed like threds of Gould, such shall be kept a *Arnaldus de villa noua.* day or two in cleane water, to purge them befoze they be ap- *Haly Abbas.* plyed, as also to cause them draw the better. Some keepe them ten or twelue dayes, changing the water once in two or thre dayes, after the which manner they may be kept a whole yeare in glasses or pottes of earth, changing the wa- *Avicen.* ter once in tenne dayes, with a little cromes of white bread, *Theodoricus.* we vse them for the same purpose, as scarrifications, and in such places where ventosies cannot be applyed, as in the
Cc 4 lippes,

Alb. li. 2 c. 37

Gal. lib. de
herudin.Henricus
Rantzovius.

lippes, gummes, legges, fundament, mouth of the matrix, and such parts as are emptie of flesh, as nose, fingers, toes, also about old vlcers, and aposthumes of the emunctories, and others that are venomous, rubbing the part ye put them on, till it grow red. They draw onely superficially the blood which is in the flesh, and so are good *pro morbis subiecuraneis*, like as in the scabbe called *vulgo*, which is a foulness of the body, with spots of diuers colours: also in the disease called *impetigo*, which is that which we call ordinarily the Ring-woyme: also in great itching in any part they be thought meete to be vsed, then scarification, because they draw the corrupt blood more profoundly: if they be applyed on the fundament, they make euacuation from all the members, the part where we applye them must be very cleane, otherwise it will not abide, in applying of them take them with a piece of cleane cloth, or with your hand softly hold their head to the part you would haue them bite, and so the more easie doing thereof, we put a drop of Pigeons, or Chickens blood on the part, or picke the part a little to cause some blood to come out: then if you would haue them to draw much, cut the ends of them with the sheeres to let the blood runne: otherwise, if they fall away too soone, you may applye fresh ones in their place, or the same being well stripped, and the blood expiunt out of them betwixt your two fingers: if you would make great euacuation, you may apply two or three at the first, so make the fall away you shall put a corne of salt or droppe of Vinegar on their heads, or a few finders, otherwise separate them with an horse haire: if after they fall the place bleed too much, we applye Cotton, or burnt cloth, or cloth wet in cold water, or halfe a Beane bound and tyed to the part: sometimes by unskilfulnesse it happeneth the Blood-sucker doth drawe too much, or else the party is suffered to bleed much after they fall away, whereof euill accidents often happen; as chanced in the person of a worthy and notable Captain my good friend, called Captaine Gonsales a Spaniard, who hauing

son &

some vlcers on his legges, did cause to apply eight Bozlea-
ches thereto, by the which he lost neere six pound of bloud,
thereafter fell in *Icteria* and ebolition of cholericke humoꝝ,
quia sanguis est frenum cholera, thereafter he became hydro-
picke incurable, *quia qui calido sunt hepate si in ascitam inci-
dant omnes fere sunt deplorati*, so this Gentleman dyed to the
great griefe of many; so my counsell is, that after they
be taken away and made reasonable euacuation, that you
by all meanes stay any further fluxe of bloud. If there be
venenosity in the part after they fall, we foment the part
with water and salt, sometime a cornet or little ventosie to
draw out that which they haue left, some doe vse before the
applying of them, to purge the body, if it be repleat with
humoꝝs.

CHAP. XV.

Of Seton, the qualities of it, and way
how it should be applyed.

Seton which the Latines call *Seta*, is a little round cord, Definition.
which of old was made of haire or thread, and now is or-
dinarily made of small Linnen cloth, wollen yarne, or silke,
and is drawne through the flesh or skin with a sharpe na-
dle, in diuers parts of our bodies for diuers occasions, like
as for rebullion, euacuation, deriuation, or interception of
some humoꝝ, like as in the necke, betwixt the 1. and 2. verte-
bre, sometime lower downe, and is good to diuert and draw
away fluxions from the eyes, catarchs from the head which
might fall on the stomacke, gummes, loynes, backe, han-
ches, and other ioynts or parts of our body. Secondly, we
apply it in the *Paull*, when it is swelled or tumified with
water or other humoꝝs. Thirdly, in the coddies, for wa-
ter or weake humoꝝs contained in those parts; as also for
such as are hydropicke. Fourthly, we applye them in
wounds which do penetrate throuhg one part to another as
throuhg a legge, thigh, arme, or other part for the better
euacuation.

Diuers places
where the Se-
ton should be
applyed.

evacuation of matter in those wounds, they are applyed with an hote Iron as did our Ancients, or without fire as now is commonly practised : for performing whereof, if in the necke, wee set the sicke in a chaire, then one taketh the necke behind, where you would applye it equally, betwixt his hands, neither more to one side then to another. I doe ordinarily marke the part with inke befoze, then take the skinne with the one hand next the head, and the other lower downe, leauing two inches or thereabout boyd betwixt the hands, then the Chirurgian shall take hold of the same with his pincers

Instruments of Seton.



made for that purpose, thereafter pierce it with a sharpe Instrument, then passe the needle through both the holes of the pincers, being first threaded with the Seton or cord: some doe vse onely the needle being sharpe pointed, for this purpose, beware you picke not the muscle of the neck, so you must hold the skin fast with the pincers and cause the sick to moue his head, so you shall easely perceiue if the muscle be taken hold of: if so be, let goe the gripe and take onely the skinne, then pearce and passe your needle with the Seton which shalbe an ell in length or thereabouts to the grossenes of a small Goose quill, then take out the needle, and let the Seton remaine, rubbing so much of it as possesseth the wound with common digestiue, fresh butter, or *serat Galen*, and aboue the wound applye an emplaster of *seratum refrigerans Galeni*, *rosatum Mesues*, or such like for two or thre daies, thereafter *betonica* or *diapalma*: some for this purpose doe onely apply Woodbind leaues as wee vse in cauters, drawing the Seton the breadth of the wound euery day at mo: ning and night, till it be almost nere the end, make it euer cleane, that no filth remaine on it, then draw it the other way after the same manner, by the which meanes one Seton will serue a moneth, or longer: when you please to change it, sow another new Seton finely to the end thereof, in such sort that it slip not in through passing, then cut away the old, and leaue the new, and continue this from so long as shalbe found expedient, while the humo: be wellevacuated, diuerted, or intercepted: some in long maladies doe continue this one yere or two according to the greatnes of the disease. To apply the Seton in the spauill, or coddes, you shall onely take hold with your pincers the cods, or skin of the spauill, and pearce it with a reasonable great needle, passing and vsing it as the former; it were verie good before the applying of the Seton, to purge the body, as also a little after it be taken away, for feare the euill humo: take their course to the part where the Seton was of before.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Cauters actuals, their formes, and whereof they are composed.

The cauter actual, which is called by the Latins *Cauterium actuale*, is a remedie that hath been thought by our ancients verie profitable for the helpe and recouerie of many diseases : it doth burne actually the part where it is applyed, and is most commonly made of Iron, Masse or Leade : some are made for the welthyer sort of Gould or Silver in diuers formes according to the disease and part where they are applyed, as ye may perceiue in Lib 9. Chap. 7. and it is thought for some diseases oftentimes to be more meete to be vsed, then the potentiall cauter : if we consider the nature and substance whereof the potentiall is composed, by reason that some ingredients thereof are venomous and the actual is without venenositie, so more healthfull also, verie sudden, and sure in operation, not offending nor causing any accident to the partes adiacent where it is applyed : it is enemy to all venome and corruption, preserueth the part where it is applyed from putrefaction, and consumeth mightily the maligne and venomous qualitie which is hid in any part of the body, it being there applyed, it correcteth the cold weake temperature, consumeth and drieth vp all superfluous humiditie, with diuers other profitable helps: For y^e which learned Chirurgions of old, did vse diuers formes of actual cauterizations, as witnesseth Galen, Hippocrates, and others who sometime did cauterize with burning oyle, stampe the roote of *Aristolocia*, therein, then light it at the fier, and applyed it burning to the part. *Celius, Aurelius, Dioscorides, and Aetius*, sometime did cauterize with drie goatsdung fired, *Aetius* with boyling oyle, *Albucrasius* did cauterize teeth and other corrupt parts with boyled Butter, *Guydo* with melted *Wismstone* : all those formes were wont to be applyed in diuers

Gal. 6. simp.

cap. 27.

Alb. li. 1. c. 2.

Celsius, Aure-

lius, Dioscori-

des, Aetius,

Aetius.

Alb. li. 1. ca. 27.

Guydo.

Albu, loco ci-
ra.

diuers parts of the body, for diuers occasions. Like as for discharging of nature, eyther by reuulsion, interception, or euation of any humoꝝ, which did offend either in quantitie or qualitie, also for euacuating of a malignant and venomous vapour that is hid in any part, chiefly about vlcers corrosiues, and ambulatiues, fluxions of the nose, *Agilops*, ciatick passions, and all other parts that require euacuation, they are sometime applied on the head, at that part where the suture sagittall doth end, and the coronall begin, which I haue often practised for the megrim and other dolors of the head, by which meanes diuers grosse humoꝝ and vapours doe exhale from the braines: they be likewise applyed for the epelepsie, to giue issue to some vapour venomous at that part which often causeth the disease, they be also vsed for thortnes of breath, dolors of the teeth, eares, and spuinances, inflammation of the amygdals, *Columella*, and other diseases of the mouth, anheles: also for the haire which grow within the eyelids, in *Polipus*, *Osera*, some vse to apply them in fise sundry parts of the head, for Leprosie: but for the rare effects which follow vpon it, for the present, I will ouerpasse them. These be the formes and vtilities of those actuall cauters which was practised by our ancients: On those parts where we apply those cauters for gangrens, or great flux of bloud, we put on the parts adiacent a compresse wet in *Oxicrate*, iuce of *Plantaine*, *Mozall*, or whites of Egges, beaten with *Plantaine* water, and the cauter being applyed to corrupt bones: in vlcers we apply about the borders of the sayd vlcers, little peeces of cloath wet in eyther of those liquoꝝ, or a little *refrigerans Galeni*, which both doe pacifie the paine, and causeth the escarre to fall: it softneth the escarre and parts adiacent, by the humiditie. This cauter by the heate doth ercitate the naturall heate from the center to the circumference, after the applying of it, we commonlie doe vse a digestiue made of oyle of *Roses*, *Turpentine*, and yolkes of Egges; others vse onely oyle of Egges, and *Turpentine*, mixed

mixed with a little powder of *Aristolochia*, & Beane meale. Some late Practitioners (chiefly the Italians, who haue been more curious then is needfull) haue for the most part neglected all those formes of cauterizing, alleadging them to be ouer vehement, fearefull to be practised, and not to be vsed but in great extremities, like as in staying of vehement fluxe of blood, in great vaines and artiers, in gangrens and mortifications, carbuncles and bubons malignes, corrupt and rotten bones, they being enemies to all rottenesse and corruption, and helpeth the separation of the bones: also in venomous vlcers and byting of venomous beasts, are very profitable: as for all other occasions that they were vsed for by our ancients, we now doe vse in their place the potentiall cauter, as you shall heare in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the cauter Potentiall, and composition thereof.

The potentiall cauter which the Latines doe call *cauterium* *potentiale*, or *pyroticum*, is that which by the extreame heat hath the force to burne the part where it is applyed like fire, leauing an escharre or crust. It is composed of diuers sorts of matter which be hote in the fourth degree: of these, some be extreame hote, others not so hote according to their operation. Among the which are reckoned Cautarides, Vitrioll, Tartall, Arsenicke, Oypimont, Sublimat, Strong water, oyle of Vitriol, Cloues, Sage, or Brimstone; as also of diuers other things, as ashes of the barke of Ashe, Palme, Oake, Figge, and Vine-tree, Beane stalkes, quicke Lyme, Salnitre, Ammoniacke, *Axungia vitri*, Vine-stone, and grauell, all these or a part of them ye may steepe in water foure or fīue dayes, couering them close, and removing them with a peece of wood euery day, morning and evening, then straine it through a cloth, and keepe it in glas-

M. Io. Quintred his cauters.

M. William Clowfe his cauters.

ses for your *lixivium* or *capitellum*; When you have to doe to make your cauters, you shall boyle such quantity of that lixive in a Brazen pan at an hote burning fire, till such time as it shall be coniealed to salt or stone, which being taken from the fire, you shall cut it in little peeces, to the bignes of a pie or halfe a pie, and put in close glasses, that no aire enter therein. The forme of their composition which I doe vse is this, take the ashes of the inward barke of Ashe, Palme, Dake, and and Vine-tree, Beane stalkes, *Esula*, quicke Lyme, gravill, *Axungia vitrei*, of each halfe a pound, Allom, and Roman Vitreol, of each 6. ounces, steepe all in 15. Eng. pintes of running water, which will be about 5. Scottish pintes, mire all in an earthen pot the space of 5. or 6. dayes, removing it every day with the baton of wood as you have heard, then put forth the water and save the grounds, and boyle it at a very hote fire till it grow somewhat thicke, at which time you shall adde unto it two drammes of *Oppium* disolved in *Aqua vite*, it hath the vertue to pacifie the paine, and make the escharre moze soft. Or this forme which was used by my M. Iohn Quintred Doctoz of Chyrurgerie at Paris, thus made, *Rec. Axungia vitrei lib. sem. salis gemme unc. 6. sublimata unc. sem. cineris sarmentorum & truncorum fabarum, an. lib. sem. aqua lib. 10. infundantur spacio 5. aut 6. dierum, & fiat capitellum in fine decoctionis, adde drag. 2. oppij.* Or these which are composed by M. George Baker Chirurgeon to his Maiestie, thus made, take the ashes of the Dake and Vine-tree, stalkes of Beanes, and *Esula*, of each a reasonable quantitie, gravill, Vine-stone, *Axungia vitrei*, of each a little quantitie, steepe them all in water, with a little quicke Limestone, whereof you shall make your capitall, passe it, and boyle it as the former.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of certaine cautions in applying of cauters, and on what parts they vse to be put for diuers diseases.

The Potentiall Cauter is applyed in diuers parts of the body for diuers paines and diseases, for the which great care must be had both for the nature and temperature of the person, and the nature of the part where they are applyed: for in strong rude people, like as Parriners, Labourers, Porters, Wyoners, and such like, sharpe strong cauters may be vsed. In delicate tender people, women, and children, the cauters must be more weake: as also people who be extenuate and leane, may not endure strong cauters, because their bodies are membranous which prouoketh great dolor. In applying your cauter beware of nerues, membranes, tendons, and heads of the muscles, great vaines, and artiers. If the body be repleat, you shall first purge and let blood: they are applyed in diuers parts of the body, but for most common in the head, armes, and legges. They vse to be applyed in foure diuers parts of the head, the haire being first rased, but most often in the fore-head, where the suter sagittall meetes with the coronall, which part is remarked by Albuicras. after this sorte, the Chyrurgian must cause the sicke person to put the point of his thombe vpon the top of his nose, then extend his middle finger right line so farre vpon his forehead, as he can iudge which part shall bee the iust place where the cauter should be applyed, and must penetrate to the bone, which is good for fluxions on the eyes, the Megrin, and other dolours of the head, the epilepsie, difficulty of breath, Ophthalmie, rednesse of the face, paine of the teeth, eares, and squinancy. Wee apply them behind and aboue the eares, in both sides of the head, at the extremitie of the suter lambdoid, taking good heed of the muscle cratophit, for the more assurance of the which, hold on

Albu.lib. 1.
cap. 2.

Do

the

Theo. lib. 3.
cap. 45.

Bru lib. 2.
cap. 18.

Hip. lib. de.
natura ossiu.

the point of your finger fast on the part where you would apply the cauter, then the sick must close & open his mouth, by which meanes you shall perceiue where the sayd muscle endeth, by the motion of the said muscle. Fourthly, we apply them in the necke. There is an Italian Mediciner that vaunteth himselfe to be the first autho^r of applying of Cauters in that part; yet I haue read, that, that part was obserued a long time before by Hippocrates: this Cauter should be applied betwixt the first and second vertebze, for invertebrate fluxions and diseases of the eies, for Cauters and distillations of the head, to evacuate and stoppe them from falling on the thozar, and some principall part; they are also put on the inner side of the arme, about the middelt thereof, nere vnto the vaines and artiers, but no waies touching them: for assurance of the which, hold your finger on the part, cause the sick to moue his arme, so he shall easily perceiue if there be either vaine, artier, or nerue vnder it: wee apply them on the leggs, within three inches to the knee, eyther in the out-side betwixt the two bones, or in the inside nere vnto the vaine, and is good for the critick, for interception of humo^r, which doe cause and entertaine blcers and paine in the leggs & fete: They are also applied in diuers other parts of the body, to giue issue out to y^e matter therein contained, or where there is vehement dolour or humo^r malignant, and fume vapo^rous, and in the emunctories to giue issue to any vapour or humo^r, which must be done before the perfect suppuration thereof, as you haue heard in the chapter of Parotide.

CHAP. XIX.

C Sheweth the way to applie Cauters rightly.

To apply Cauters rightly, the Chirurgion must firstly marke the place, either with the point of his finger, or drop of Inke, then make a little emplaster the bredth of a
xii.

rii.pence either of *Diapalma*, or some astringent and sticking
plaister with a little hole in the midst of it, as you shall think
meet for the greatnes or littlenes of the issue that ye would
make, applie the plaster in such sort, that the marke of the
Inke appeare in the midst of the hole of the sayd plaster,
then apply your Cauter on the sayd hole. Some doe wet this
hole with a little spittle before the applying of the Cauter,
so it shall worke more easily, thereafter put an other em-
plaster aboue it and bind it with a little thick compresse, let-
ting it remaine till such time it worke the effect you require,
which wilbe in foure or fve houres, if you thinke that the
first Cauter hath not gone deepe enough, applie another af-
ter the foresaid manner, which being done, take away the
plaster and scarifie the escarre, and apply on it to separate
the escarre or burnt part from the hole a little oyle of roses,
turpentine, or butter, with a little Iris of Florence, or basili-
con, some after the first emplaster is taken off, doe cut clean
away the escarre with a bistorie. I doe only scarifie; there-
after applie a medicament for foure or fve daies, in which
time the escarre doth commonly fall away, and the humoz
taketh the course to that part; which done, it must be holde
open till such time as the disease be whole, for which it was
made to hold it open, we vse a great pie, a little ball of Gold
or Silver gilt, of the bignes of a small Pistoll bullet, some
make those bals of Kubarb, Woodbine, Bush, or Agarick.
I my selfe doe vse certaine bals, which last fve or six mo-
nethes, and hath the vertue to draw and hold open, and are
thus made. Take wax i. dram. Verdegreace, Opimount,
and Hermodates of each i. vnc. Sublimat and powder of
cautarits of each dim. vnc. with a little rayson. I make
little bals which may be kept for your vsage, and vse as the
formers, putting on the wound a woodbine leafe, with a com-
presse of cleane linnen cloath in two doubles, tie it with a
band and dresse it morning and euening, if it boyd much:
if not, once a day: for such as trauell, and may not euer get
Woodbine leaues. I doe vse Seare cloath which lasteth fve

or six weekes wiping it cleane and vsing sometime one lipe, sometime another, and is thus made. *Rec. emplastrum triaformaci. lb. sem. cera alba unc. 2. champhora unc. 1. li- targini aurei puluerizati unc. 2. spicimardi unc. 1. olei olivarii unc. 1. misce omnia simul.* Melt all these ingredients, there- after dip a round linnen cloath therein, then cut it in peeces, to serue for your vse: as also it is good for cold humors, and blcers: Sometime we are constrained to continue those Cauters for a long time, if so happen euery yere once, it were good they were remoued a little, eyther higher, or low- er, or sidewaies; so the matter will auoyde the better, for oftentimes the borders of the Cauters become callous and hard, so empaseth the much flowing of them. If you please not to renew the Cauters, you may consume such callosities by such remedies as yee haue hard in blcers, with callositie, if in those Cauters or fountenels there be excreffence of flesh, which sometime groweth and weareth forth the bullet, it must be cured by such remedies as yee heard in blcers, with excreffence of flesh: It happeneth some- times after the fountenell or Caulter beginneth to runne, there commeth inflammation & dolour in and about the parte for remedy whereof you shall applye *Ceraum refrigerans, Caleni, Pupuleon, Rosatum Mesues*, or some vnguent, or Cataplasme Anodyn: oftentimes when those is- sues doe run much and are not often handled and dressed, the parts adiacent become vlcered or excoziate by the acry- monie of that humor which floweth, which causeth great paine; for the cure whereof, you must anoynt the part with *Cerat Galen, Pomad*, or red desicative, vntill such time the excoziation be whole. As for these that make a skarre like vnto the Caulter Actuell, they be of diuers formes, and are applyed in sundry parts of the body, for diuers affections, as you haue heard.

CHAP. XX.

Of Bathes and their Effects.

Bathing, as by the learned *Herodotus* is at large declar'd, *Herodotus*
 red, is a washing and steeping of the whole body, for
 the better preservation and conseruation of mans health,
 and recouerie of that which is lost, which was had in great
 vse and custome amongst the Ancients, as among the *Antillus lib. 1*
de remedi.
 Greekes, Arabians and Latines, and is also very much v-
 sed and practised in all Nations in these our daies, and is
 reckoned among the sorts of euacuations, a singuler reme-
 dy: whereof there are two sorts, one naturall, and another
 artificiall. The naturall are sayd to be such, as come, and
 proceede naturally out of the ground, and are alwayes
 warme and hotte of themselves, but yet are of diuers sorts,
 qualities, and vertues, according to the diuersitie of the *Tralian, lib. 8.*
 places, from whence the water commeth and proceedeth, as
 if it come from Salt, Allom, Sulphur, Brasse, Copper,
 Golde, Iron, and such like. The Salt is good for pitui-
 tous, cold, and humide Maladies, Hydropsie, dolours,
 paynes and aches of the belly, stomack, matrix and kid-
 neis, also it is good for all Catarres, Epilepsie, dolors of
 the bladder, head, stomack and eares, whites of women, and
 scabbes generally through all the body, as is at large dis- *Gal. de sanita,*
 coursed and set downe by Galen. The Alluminous are *tuenda;*
 drying and heating, and is good for all colde and humide
 diseases and sicknesses, vomiting of bloud, staying the he-
 merchoides, the monethly course of women, aborting with
 childe, varices on the legges, hydropsie, maligne vlcers, rot-
 ten, waterie tumors, for all sortes of vomiting, The
 Sulphurous are drying in the 4 degree and heale the parts
 neruous, which are cold and humide, soften the hard parts,
 appease dolour, and comfort the stomack and spleene, they
 are good for the stone, strangurie, for all cold and humide
 Maladies, Palsies, Hydropsies, Apoplexies, yet they

Lib. de. medē
morbis.

Lib. citato.

Gal. de. sanita-
te tuenda. lib.

Hip. Celsus.
Fuchius.

must be moderately vsed. Those, whose minerall is Iron and Steele, are colde, stipticke and drie, good for hotte and humide Maladies, as Goutes and dolors, of the articles, debilitie, and softnes of the Stomack and milt, apostumes in the eares, monethly course, flux of vrine, hemorhoides, out-comming of the fundament, and all vlcers in the bladder, as sayth Fuchius. The Copperis, which heate, resoluē, clense, consolidate, are good for colde and humide diseases, dolors of the guts, maligne vlcers, and members contused, also for maladies in the mouth, inflammation in the throat and amigdalles, all sicknesse of the eyes. Those that haue their minerall Golde, are hotte and drie, and good for the collicke, voluulus, fistules, Goute, maligne vlcers, cold stomacks, the stone, rupture, scabbes, leprosie, diseases of the eyes, stinck in the mouth, palpitation of the heart, as sayth Fuchius. The Leade being the minerall, they are good for all maligne vlcers, canckers, fistules, diuers affections of the skinne, kidneis and bladder, whites in women, hemorhoides. There are some mixed with diuers of these together, as in *Lorraine, Burgundie*, and diuers parts of *Almaine and Italie*, of the which *Wickerus* and *Fuchius* haue amply written. The artificiall bathes are artificially made, by imitation of the naturall, to supply the want thereof, as of running water and mirtion of one or moe of these minerals, diuersifying and appropriating them according to the disease, sometime to heate Iron and Steele redde hotte, and flake it in the water, and so it participateth the vertue. Sometime by mixing of hearbes, flowers, rootes, simply, sometime the decoction of them, also of milk or wine, according to the disease, as to appease dolor, to soften. to open the conduites, to loose or binde in all these sorts. Sometime we vse water called *balneum aquæ dulcis*, of the which come great effects, so that it bee alwaies warme, it is good for all outward affections of the body, it heateth, appeaseth dolor, openeth the pores of the skinne, tempereth and euacuateth ill humors, prouoketh the purgations and

and hemorroides in women, discusseth and digiteth the excrements, softneth the hard parts, humecteth all the parts of the body, prouoketh sleepe, corroborateth the ventricle, helpeth the concoction and naturall heate, good for all affections of the matrix, inflammation of the lights, for all intemperie, except the humide, dolor of the head and eyes, maladies of the lights, lassitude of the stomack and back, for all fluxions and members vlcered, for all scabbes and vices in the skinne of both old and young, it softneth the articles, clarifieth the voice, moueth vrine, bringeth the flesh and skinne in good temperature, it mundifieth and is good for hectic feuers and phrensies as saith Hippocrates, it discusseth flatuosities, and sharpe excrements, the water must not be too hot, for it healeth and closeth the pores, and so letteth the excrements vnder the skinne to come forth. It must be done with great discretion, otherwise it will be offensive, as you may perceiue by this Epigram.

*Balnea, vina, venus, corrumpunt corpora nostra;
Restitunt eadem balnea, vina, venus.*

CHAP. XXI.

¶ Of Cautions to be vsed in Bathing.

Notwithstanding of the great benefit, which commeth thereof, it must be moderately vsed, for the excessive vsing hereof offendeth the heart, causeth syncope, taketh away the appetite, loseth the ioynts, resolueth the naturall heate, prouoketh næssing, moueth humors and offendeth the vlcers as sayth Galen. The bathe must be made in this sort, first there must be a vessell of the length of the party, of two foote broade, of height two and a halfe, or thre, it must be almost full of water. After he hath remaineth a while in the bath, fill it with warme water, couer the vessell aboue with a conerlet, sheete, or some such like thing; hauing remained therein as long as is needefull, the partie shall

Gal. lib. de
sanit. tuen.

Henricus
Rantzovius.

Herod. lib. de
remed. foris
adhibendis.

come forth of the bath, and dry himselfe with hot clothes, put a hot sheete about him, and cover all his body warme, put him in bed, cover him with light warme clothes, so he shall sweat very easily: after he hath sweat one houre or longer as he may endure, then take the wet sheet from him and dry him with warme napkins, chiefly the head under his armes, breast, and roots of his thighs, then let him rest in his bed an houre or two, till he be reasonably refreshed, then give him a drye cleane warme shirt, and let him keepe his chamber warme all that day, some do thinke it not meet to wash the head, grounding theselucs only vpon these verses. *Sepe manus, raroq; pedes, caput verò nunquam, esse lauandū;* if the party be strong, he may bath himselfe in like manner the after none, and so continue three or five dayes as shall be thought expedient, entring sometime once a day, otherwhiles twice, adding to the bath such sorts of dregs or hearbs as shalbe most expedient, and hollesome for the patient, and his disease: the common sort vse commonlie in all bathes, these hearbes following, chiefly in the spring and sommer when they are in vertue, mallowes, marsh-mallows, violets, parietarie, fumitarie, Fenill, Angelica, Dragon or Buglosse, Plantaine, patience, agrimonie, beare scote, hearts tongue, betonie, roses, which all or some of these may be sodden a little afoze they bee put in the bath.

CHAP. XXII.

Of thingsto be obserued before ye enter into the Bath, in, and after Bathing.

Antillus.

Hip. apho. 31.
Bru. lib. 1. de
balneis.

Iohan. Franc.
de balniorum
utilitate.

First as councelleth Antillus, a very ancient mediciner the party should be fasting, or else foure houres after meat, for, as sayth Hippocrates, a man must not enter in hauing his belly full of meate and drinke, so it is meett time in the morning, or foure houres after none. Next, ye must beware that no noble part be offended, nor much debilitated, for if the humors be moued by the bath, the pores and

and waies dilated, the humors goeth easily to the part offended. The partie must also before he enter, be purged, no weake body should enter therein. While he is in it, hee must keepe himselfe warme, the bath must be meanely warme, neither too hot nor cold, for if it be too hot, it closeth the pores of the skin, letteth the fourth coming of the excrements, and heateth the blood. Hippocrates counsel-
 leth to be silent in the bath and in no waies commoued, if he was feeble, he may take a little wine or a sop of bread dipped in it, or some pynes to quench his thirst, as counsel-
 leth Cassius in his problemes, let him drie the sweat of his
 face and temples and behind the eares. He must not stay so long the first day, as the rest, Herodotus counsell-
 leth to remaine halfe an houre at the first, afterwards an houre or two. After the coming forth, the party must be well drie-
 ed chiefly his head as counsell-
 leth Hippocrates, for humiditie is as great an enemy to the head, as cold, he must haue the passage open to the naturall excrements, and not eate
 for two houres after he come forth of the bathe.

CHAP. XXIII.

¶ Of frictions, and their effects.

Of rubbing and frictions, Galen hath amply written in
 his booke *de tuenda sanitate*, as also Aetius, Paulus, Paul. Aetius,
 and Oribasius, with sundrie other learned men, who haue
 used them for diuers occasions, & in diuers manners, some-
 time with oyntments and oyles, which was in great vse
 amongst the Romaines and Greeces. Those who were
 olde used rubbing with oyle of *irinum*, *camomelinum* & *nar-*
dinum. Hippocrates commendeth the same very much, for
 saith he, it hath the force to bind, loose, increase flesh and di-
 minish the same, for hard rubbing doth loose and mollifie,
 much rubbing diminisheth the flesh, meane rubbing doth
 augment and increase flesh.

They

Henricus.
Rantzovius.

They are vsed for diuers other occasions, as ye haue heard, namely to loose and open the pores and conduits of the skinne, to make thinne humors, and auoyd all obstructions, for the diuerting of fluxion from any part of the body, and especially from the head. They must be done with a cloth or sponge, first softly and easily, sometime to continue untill the flesh swell and become redde, and may bee done at all times, and chiefly in the morning, beginning at the lower parts, so to ascend to the head, which is accounted generall rubbing. If any particular part be diseased, rubbe onely the place affected whereby in sundry diseases diuers effects are wrought.

THE



THE TENTH BOOKE,

Of Antidotaries Chyrurgicall;

Which containeth XIII. Chapters; whose Contents bee these; by PETER LOVVE

Scottishman.

- Chap. 1. Of medicaments in generall.
 2. Of medicaments Anodines.
 3. Of repelling medicaments.
 4. Of medicaments attractiues.
 5. Of medicaments resolutiues.
 6. Of remollient medicaments.
 7. Of suppuratiues.
 8. Of mundificatiues.
 9. Of incarnatiues.
 10. Of Cicatrizants.
 11. Of medicaments agglutinatiue.
 12. Of medicaments Catereticks.
 13. Of medicaments that stanch blood.
 14. Of Oyles, vnguent, and plaisters.

CHAP. I.

C Of medicaments in generall.



In this Booke we will speake of diuers sorts of medicaments commonly vsed by the Chyrurgians, in the which we shall first shew the definiton and diuision of euery one seuerally, both simples and composed, wherof they proceed and take their originall, as of Plants, Trees, Beasts, Earth, or Sea. Of the parts of Plants,

as

as of the leaues, flowers, barke, roote, seede, gumme, iuyce
 or oyles. Of beasts, as of Vipers, Serpents, Cantarides,
 Frogs, Cats; or of the dissimulare parts of beasts, as the
 Liuer, Lyles, Heart, or Braines; also of the bones, mar-
 row, grease, bloud, milke, and flesh; likewise of the excre-
 ments, as of the Haire, Hornes, Dunge, and such like. Of
 Minerals or earth, as Stones, Mettals, Oypiment, San-
 daracha, Sulphur, Cadmia, Litharge, Quicke siluer, Ar-
 gent, Calcites. Of the Sea and Waters, as all kind of
 Salt, Sponges, Asphaltum, Pitre, Amber, Bitumen,
 Bissaphalen, Garinum, Alcionium. The compounds may
 be made of these simples diuers waies, as oyles, Unguents,
 Liniments, Cerates, Cataplasmes, Emplasters, distilled
 water, Fomentations, Vaporations, Suffumigations,
 Gargarismes, Bathes, and such like: but for the better
 vnderstanding of this matter, we shall shew the degrees of
 medicaments, and next the measure and weight. There

4. degrees of are foure degrees of medicines, hote, cold, drie and humide,
 medicaments. and haue foure qualities, as heating, cooling, drying, and
 humedding, but not manifestly, and is so little, as scarcely
 knowne by the sence. The second degree is heating, cooling,
 drying, humedding manifestly, as is apparant to the iudge-
 ment. The third degree is heating, cooling, drying and hu-
 medding, offending the senses, but not extreamely. The
 fourth degree is hote, burning, and maketh a scarre and cor-
 rupteth the senses, as quicke Lyme, all caustickes Actuell
 and Potentiall, cold, which mortifieth and obtundeth the
 senses, as Opium, and all stupefactiues, or drie, which burne
 like Cauters actuall: humide is not so vehement, as the
 others, for humiditie is not of such force, except it be ioyned
 with cold, of the which Galen hath made no mention. After
 this manner the medicaments were put in degrees, before
 Galen, as reporteth Dioscorides.

Galen.

Dioscorides.

Temperate
 things.

Medicaments temperate in hote and cold.

The Medicaments that are temperate in heate and cold,
 are Faba, lens, hordecum, fructus & folia brusci, species ca-

a bruno

fructus pillorum

pillorum veneris, axungia suilla, oleum dulce, cera, lac, vitellus oui, lytargirus, adianum, cadmia, glisiri, cucurbita, fructus, folia brassi, cortices citri, &c.

Medicaments hote in the first degree.

Aristolochia rotunda, alihæa, amigdalæ dulces, iuiubæ, castaneæ, ficus brassica, absinthium, apium, eupatorium buglossa, borago, mercurialis, morsus diaboli, salvia, scolopendria, ebulus spicanardi, aloë, trit cum, fennigrecum, semen Lini, mel, butirum, sacharum, serum lactis, melilotus, vinum novum, senecio, sambucus, ebuluo, agaricum oribus ænulum.

Medicaments hote in the 2. degree.

Guajicum, Cyperus, Calamus aromaticus, Peonia, Nux Indica, nux muscata, amigdalæ amara, enula campana, branca vrsina, consolida major, sanicula, dens leonis, eruca, gariophyllata, lauendula, cardamomum, marthubium, mentha domestica, petroselinum, scabiosa, feniculum, thus, mirra, mastiche, sarcocolla, bryonia, betonica, rubia tinctori, fumestarie, galitricum, genista, lupulus æsippus, melissa mentha ranunculus.

Medicaments hote in the 3. degree.

Gentiana, Aristolochia longa, Polipodium, Pyrethrum, raphanus, satyrion, acorus, gingiber, iris, apium risus, artemisia, cheresolium, cupressus, helleborus, scrophularia, nasturtium, organum, salvia, ciclamen, dictamus, opopanax, rosmarinus, galbanum, Juniperus, anisum, hisopos, abrotanum, salyrium, rosmarinus, staphisagria, apopinax, rhapentichum, faniculi, asserum, anisum betonica, colocynthus, costus, ligustum, perforata, ruta sabina, galbanum, iris radix.

Medicaments hote in the 4. degree.

Allium, Cepa, Tithimallus, Sinapi, Euphorbium, Piper, oleum petroleum, pyrethrum, Anacardus, satureia.

Medicaments cold in the 1. degree.

Castanea, Malua, Granata dulcia, Spina alba, Gramen, hepatica, lilium, tonuallum, hordeum, atriplex, pira, poma, viola,

viola, rosa, cotoneum, malum, granatum.

Medicaments cold in the 2. degree.

Pomum persicum, Cucurbita, Cucumer, Asininum, Sinoglossum, primulaevis, pulmonaria, mala granata fetida, psillium, balaustia, acacia, plantago, pomum persicum endivia, lenticula palustris, nymphæa.

Medicaments cold in the 3. degree.

Virga pastoris, Acetosa, Endivia silvestris, Tormentilla, portulaca, vermicularis, semper vivum, solanum hortense, fragraria, ribes, camphora.

Medicaments cold in the 4. degree.

Papaver, Opium, Cicula, hiosciamus, mandragora.

Medicaments moist in the 1. degree.

Enula campana, Malua, Buglossum, Borago, Spinachia, amigdales, juiubæ, nuxindica, semenlini, butirum, viola, pisa.

Medicaments humide in the 2. degree.

Lilium, Conuallum, Lenticula palustris, Nymphæa, Lactuca, branca visina, cucumer asininus, portulaca, primulaevis, eruca, dactili, psillium, ammoniacum, atriplex, pulmonaria, æringium, cucurbita.

Medicaments humide in the 3. degree.

Satyrium, Endivia silvestris, Fragria, Cucurbita, brassica.

Medicaments humide in the 4. degree.

Argentum vivum.

Medicaments drie in the 1. degree.

Feniculum, radix Althææ, morsus Diaboli, Sambucus, mala granata, Ebulus, castanea, hordeum, fenigrecum, camomilla, mellilotum, crocus, thus, argenti spuma, sarcocolla, faba, fumus terræ, tormentilla, acetosa, mercurialis salix, granum shenanthum.

Medicaments drie in the 2. degree.

Aristolochia, Guajacum, Cyperus, Calamus Aromaticus, Cynamomum, Anethum, Abrotanum, Cerefolium, Consolida major, Opium, Centaureum, virga pastoris, Cynoglossum,

Cynoglossum, Sanicula, dens Leonis, Hissopus, Genista, Marthumbium, Petroselinum, Scabiosa, Pimpinella, Cardamomum, Amigdales amara, Millium, Nux Indica, Nux Muscata, Myrrha, Orobus, Mel, Anethum, Cyperus, cypressus, custula, endivia, fœniculum, lavendula, garriophyllata, lupulus, milissa, mentha, ficus, mala granata, mastick.

Medicaments drie in the 3. degree.

Lauendula, Cytlaminus, Alcorus, Raphanus, Piretum, gentiana, galanga, serpentaria minor, Absynthium, artemesia, Apium Risus, betonica, chelidonium, cicuta, helleborus, scrophularia, ligustrum, nasturtium, origanum, pentaphillon, rosmarinus, Sabina, Anisum, nigella, Agnus castus, allium, cumminum, sanguis Draconis, galla, abrotanum, perforata, pulegium, ruta, tormentille, serpentaria, acetosa, assarum, creta marina, acetum, alloe, Milium,

Medicaments drie in the 4. degree.

Piper, cithimallus, anacardus, satùrea, oleum petroselinum, Sinapi, euphorbium, allium, nasturtium.

¶ Of the Weights and Measures of Medicaments, vsed by the Chyrurgians.

Lib. Signifieth a pound, that is to say, 12. ounces.

Onc. Signifieth one ounce, which is, 8. drammes.

Drag. Signifieth a dram, which is, 3. scruples.

Scr. Signifieth a scruple, which is, 20. graines of wheat.

Gra. Signifieth a graine of wheat.

Denarius and Drachma is all one.

M. Signifieth *Manipulus*, and is as much as one can hold in his hand.

P. Signifieth *Pugill*, which is as much as one can take betwixt the thombe and the two foremost fingers.

Cyathus. Signifieth so much as one may easily drinke at one draught.

Pet

Yet forasmuch as the perfect knowledg in compounding of medicaments, which are ordinarily used by the Chyrurgions, cannot well be known without the knowledge of the quantity of both waights and Measures; so for the better instruction in that matter, I will briefly declare to you as they are ordinarily marked by the Physicians and Chyrurgians in this our time.

Libra, hath this marke.

Semis.

Vncia.

Quarta.

Dragma.

Scrupulus.

Grana.

Ana, of each one a little much, marked thus.

Libr. semi.

Semuncia.

and so of the rest: but because there be diuers sorts of diseases and sundy symptoms which happen in them, for the which I shall set downe diuers sorts of remedies which are used by the Chyrurgions, as well for the helpe of the symptome, as recouerie of ill diseases, like as Medicaments, Anodines, Repercussives, Attractives, Resolatives, Emolients, Suppuratives, Mundificatives, Incarnatives, Siccatrizants, Agglutinatives, Cathareticks, Septicks, Causticks, and such as doe restrain flure of blood; of all which I will beginne at Anodines, and so prosecute the rest.

CHAP. II.

Of Medicaments which appease dolour called Anadins.

Gal. lib. 2 de
locis affect.
Gal. 12. meth.
& de palpitat.

Dolour is a grievous thing, like as pleasure is a ioyfull, the which is cured first by knowing the cause, next by the ablation of the same. The Cause of dolour is either distemperature,

temperature, or solution of continuity which is either hote, dry, or humide. The hote causeth vehement paine. The drye moueth paine, but not so vehement. The humide maketh almost no paine at all. The medicaments Anodin called *Galli. 5. c. 18. simp.* by the Greekes *Paogonia*, are those that haue force by their temperate heate to appease the dolour, of the which some be Proper, some be Improper. The proper Anodins are those which by a contrary quality open and take away the cause of dolour, like as *oleum laurinum* in cold dolors, *violare* in hote dolors, *hydelium* in drye dolors. The Anodins improper are those which not by themselves, but by accident appease the paine, and are called by the Greekes *Narcotickes*, the which stupifie the feeling of the part and make it more heauie : The office of the proper Anodins is to euacuate, digest, rarifie, & extenuate the euill humors which be sharpe, thicke, vapoious, and cold.

The Anodins proper, are either Simple, or Composed.

The Simple, like as *oleum amygdalarum dulcium*, *butiri*, *lini*, *ouorum*, *hyperici*, *axungia*, *galline*, *anatis*, *anseris*, *folij malne*, *violarei*, *parietarie*, *medulla vituli*, & *cerui*, *aqua calida*, *semen lini*, *camomilla*, *fenugrecum mellilotum*, *folia hyoschiami*, *ol. oliuarum* & *anethi*.

The Compound Anodins.

The Compounds of these are oyles, vnguents, liniments, and plaisters, fomentations, cataplasmes, and such like, which may be made according to the varietie of the disease.

Anodines hote.

Oleum Anetinum, *Camomellinum*, *Amygdalarum dulcium*, *lumbricorum*, *lini*, *vulpinum*, *mellinum*, *triticeum*, *de vitellis ovorum*, *sambuccum*, *ceræ*, *terebinthinæ*, *irinum*, *hyperici*, *laurinum*, *iuniperinum*, *sulphureum*, *piperum*, *massicinum*, *rosmarinum*, *petrolum* : Of these all mixt together, or some Ware mingled with them, ye may make liniments, vnguents, as *occicrosum*, *nicolai*, *de althea*, *resumptivum*, *ænulatum sine mercurio*, *marciatum*,

E c

arragon,

arragon, agrippe, cerati filij, zacarie filagrij, cyroneum em-
plastrum, ceratum, andromachi, fofus aqua vitæ, panus ca-
lidus in ea merfus & admotus, ifta valent in fedatis dolori-
bus que procedunt a materia frigida, vnguentum comitif-
fæ is proper for the matrix, martiatum for the nerves, bac-
cæ lauri for the bellie.

Linimentum callidum.

Hote linimēt. *Rec.* Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium, Sambutinum, an.
vnc. 2. ladani vnc. 1. croci drag. 1. se. mufcilaginis feminis
althææ, & lini extractæ in aqua melliloti, vnc. 2. cere vnc. se.
feminis anethi, vnc. 1. se. succi caulium vnc. 3. bulliant ad
succorum consumptionem, fiat linimentum.

Aliud.

Hote cerat. *Rec.* Picis, Burgundiæ, vnc. 3. Theriacis & Mithridati,
an. vnc. 1. pulueris feminis anifi, dauci an. drag. 1. se. olei
irini & camomillini, an. vnc. 1. fiat ceratum.

Cataplasma.

Cataplasme. *Rec.* Florum melliloti in fapa coctorum, vnc. 4. Quorum
vitella 4. ad duritiem in aceto cocta, olei anetini & camo-
millini, an. vnc. 1. se. fiat cataplasma.

Aliud.

Rec. Baccarum lauri, Iuniperi puluerisatarum an. drag. 3.
coquantur in vino veteri & oleo rosato optimo, fiat cata-
plasma.

Anodina frigida.

Cold anodins *Oleum omphacinum, Papauerum, Rosarum, Violarum,*
liliorum de hyosciamo vnguentum, populeum de lytatgiro
refrigerans galeni, fantellinum, mufilago, pfilij, cydoniorū,
opium, cum croco, emplastrum de mineralibus, vnguentū
deficcativum rubeum.

Compounds.

Cold compo- *Rec.* Cere alba vnc. 5. Olei Camomillæ, & Rosarum
sed liniments. an. vnc. 2. ouorum, lutea 8. succi coriandri & papaueris ala-
bi an. vnc. 2. croci & opij an. scr. 2. misce cum oxycrato, fi-
at linimentum.

Aliud.

Handrag

Aliud.

Rec. Ouorum vitella, 2. foliorum Violarum vnc. 2. opij drag. 1. croci scr. 1. fiat linimentum.

Cataplasma.

Rec. Medullæ panis albi, in lacte vaccino Infuse lib. 1. se. Cold cata-
farinæ, fabarum, hordei & orobi, & lentivm, an vnc. 1. omnia plasme-
nia dissoluatur foliorum hyosciami & coquantur ad crassiti-
em, deinde adde olei rosarum, violarū, oxyrhodini an. vnc.
1. opij, croci an. drag. 1. fiat cataplasma.

Aliud.

Rec. Soli hyosciami recentium M. 2. coque cum hydro-
mel, admoveantur parti inflamatæ, cum pauca farina hor-
dei.

Vnguentum.

Rec. Vnguenti rosati vnc. 6. pupuleonis vnc. 2. musci Cold vnguenti
laginis, seminis psilij & cydoniorum an. vnc. 1. se. fiat vn-
guentum.

Aliud.

Rec. Seminis psilij, olei rosacei, an. vnc. 2. ceræ albæ,
vnc. 1. fiat vnguentum.

¶ Of Narcoticks, which are Anodins

Improper.

Like as in taking away paine there are 3. things to be
Observed, to wit, the cause of the paine, the paine it selfe,
and the part where it is: for the which Galen hath set downe
three kinds of medicaments. Of the which some take away
the cause, some the paine and not the cause, others neither
the cause nor pain, but only the feeling of the part, & by accident
the paine. Of the which some be simples, others composed.
Galen forbiddeth the vsage of such except the body be pur-
ged, & in no wise in weake parts & neare the noble part, for
the great accidents which often doe ensue by the paine.

Tral. li. 8. ca. 6

Gal. lib. 3. de
facul. sim. c. 18

Gal. li. 13. me.

Narcotickes simples.

Mandragora, Hyosciamus, Papauer, Lactura, Succus
E c 2 opij,

opij, semperuiui, solani, camphora, oleum in quo torpedo
viva fuit extracta, cicuta.

Composita.

Cold compo- Philonium, Romanum, Pillulæ de Cynoglossæ, Oleum
sed narcoticks hyosciami, papaveris, mandragoræ quibus opij, nonnihil
diluitur.

Unguentum.

Vnguent
narcoticke,

Res. Vnguenti pupuleonis, olei violacei, an. vnc. i. se-
minis hyosciami, corticis mandragore opij, an. scr. i. ceræ
quantum sufficit, fiat vnguentum.

CHAP. III.

¶ Of Medicaments Repercussives.

Gal. li. 5. c. 18.
simp.

Nicol, Alexā.

The medicament Repercussive called by the the Latines
Repercutiens or *Repellens*, is that which by the cold
qualitie putteth backe the humors, or else by the astringion
corroborateth the part or by one or both letteth the fluxion of
humors, of the which there are diuers kinds, some are cold
and humide, others cold and astringent, some hote and a-
stringent, and are either simple or composed.

The Simple with small or no astringion, like as rosa, en-
diuia, lactuca, acetola, vmbilicus veneris, portulaca, viola,
nenuphar, aqua frigida, serum lactis, coriandrum, arno-
glossum, trifolium, parietaria hyosciamus, poma, pira, al-
bumen oui, cauda equina, caprifolium, fortiora, virgula pa-
storis, bursa pastoris, plantago, solanum semper vivum, me-
lones cucurbita, citruli, lens palustris, psilium, omphacinū,
cidonia, mirtili, malicoria, balauſtia, mandragora, acacia,
sanguis draconis, papauer, opium, bolus armenus, cerusa,
terra sigillar, antimonium, plumbum vstum & non vstum,
consolda maior, farina lupinorum & cribi, vitriolum, rap-
sus barbatus, nux cupressi, oliui folia. *Repercussives hote*
and

and astringent are those, *Consolida maior, absynthium, centaureum, marrubium, cardamonium, cyperus, calamus aromaticus, folia cupressi, farina lupinorum, & orobi, sal, alumen, vitreoli, species, and Sulphur, of these simples you may make compounds.*

The Compounds.

Oleum rosarum, Omphacirum, Absynthium, Oliuarum, cammomillinum, nasticum, mandragoræ, papaveris, cidoniorum, myrtilorum, vnguentum citrinum, pupuleum, album rasis, deficcariuum rubeum, ex litargiro, santellinum, rosatum, bartholomeum, refrigerans galeni, pectorale, album camphoratum, aqua rosatum, oxycrosum, diamoron, syrupus rosarum, violarum, aqua, in qua verbenæ fuit decocta, cerussa, vnguentum somniferum, empl. diacalsithios, triaфармаcum citrinum.

Linimentum repellens.

Rec. Muscilaginis, seminis Psilij & cidoniorum in aqua Liniment re- rosarum & plantaginis extractæ vnc. i. pulueris santali al- percussive, bi, rosarum rubrarum, seminis plantaginis, an. drag. se. cum pauco cerato refrigerantis galeni & oleo rosateo, fiat linimentum.

Aliud.

Rec. Olei rosati & omphacini, an. vnc. i. vnguenti pupuleonis & comitissæ, an. vnc. se. agitentur simul in succe plantaginis & solani ad succorum consumptionem.

Ceratum repellens.

Rec. Vnguenti rosati drag. 6. Santali rubei drag. 5, San- Cerat reper- tali albi & citrini, an. drag. 2. se. boli armenici drag. 3. Spodij cussive, drag. 2, cāphoræ drag. i. ceræ albæ vnc. 2. olei rosati lib. se.

Cataplasma.

Rec. Muscigilanis, Psilij & Cidoniorum in aqua vel suc- Cataplasme co plantaginis, & opij extractæ vnc. 3. farinæ hordei vnc. 2. repercussive, fiat Cataplasma.

Aliud.

Rec. Succo Oxalidis, Oxylapathi, an. vnc. 4. farinæ hor- dei, vnc. se. coquantur, & fiat cataplasma.

CHAP. IIII.

C Of Attractiues.

The medicaments Attractiues which the Greekes call *Elcticon*, by the Latines *Attrahentia*, are contrary to the Repercussiuues. For so much as they drawe from the Centre to the circumference, and are of temperature hote, and substance thinne, to the end they may pearce more easily; and may be diuided into three sortes. The first draweth by the naturall heat, the second by putrefaction, the third by an hidden property; some adde the fourth kind, *per fugam vacui*: like as in ventosling, boring, sucking, by bandages, frictions, horseleaches, visicatories, mendicaments caustickes, the which indeed be not properly called medicaments Attractiues. Of the foresaid there are two kinds, viz. **Simples, and Compounds.**

Simples.

Like as Sabina, Cepa, Aristolochia, Tapfia, Herni-
daetilus, bryonia, omnes titimallorum species, radix, lilei,
abrotanum, vrtica, serpentaria minor, gentiana, asphodel-
lus, bdellium, apopanax, gummi rutæ, calx viua, nastur-
tium, assa fetida, Xilobalsamum, carobalsamum, thus, mir-
rha, maiorana, flos rosmarini, narcissi radix, radix brio-
niæ, brassica, aqua vitæ, aqua marina, berula, ammo-
niacum hederæ, pix, bitumen, calx viua, sulphur, radix
ciclamini aurei, pigmentum, arsenicum, calcantum, am-
monicum, calaminthum, allum, dictamus, Sinapi, assarū,
Sigillum beatæ Mariæ, galbanum, viscus, quercinus, eu-
phorbium, piretrum, cantarides, nitrum, omnes salis spe-
cies sinabrum, hydrargyrus anagallis.

The Compounds.

Oleum Hederæ, Viscus quercinus, pix liquida, terebin-
thina, oleum philosophorum, vulpium, laurinum, rutace-
um, Anetinum, petrolium, de castoreo, de tartaro, de hy-
percono, de nuce indica & muscata, de sulphure, de laseri-
bus,

For more see

bus, vnguentem Aragon, martiatum, fuscum, nicolai, agrippæ, theriaca, sapa, mithridatum, confectio anacardina, emplastrum diachilum magnum & parvum, de meliloto, apostolicon nicolai, oxicroceum. Those which draw by putrefaction, Stercus omne, presertim columbinum, capris num, fermentum, caseus vetus. Those which draw by property occult: omnia medicamenta purgantia, ambar, pæonia, magnes.

Unguentum attrahens.

Rec. Ammoniacy Galbani, Sagapeni, an. vnc. i. dissol- Attractive
vantur in aceto, vt artis est colentur, deinde adde terebin- vnguent.
thinæ, vnc. se. olei veteris parum, fiat vnguentum.

Emplastrum.

Rec. Spumæ argenteæ, Cerussæ, Salis, an. vnc. 2. omnia Attractive
seorsim triticum oleo veteri, subigantur & coquantur, de emplaster.
inde vsui seruentur.

Aliud.

Rec. Radicum arundinis vnc. 2. florum Angelicæ, mani,
radicis brionis, altheæ vnc. se. contendantur simul & mel-
le accipiantur & admoucantur parti.

Cataplasma.

Rec. Ficus pingues N. 6. passularum mundatarum vnc. Cataplasme
i. coquantur, adde postea ceparum subcineribus coctarum, attractive.
capitum liliorum alborum, an. vnc. 3. Misce cum sermen-
to, sale, & vitellis ouorum, fiat Cataplasma.

Dropax.

Rec. Picis liquidæ, Ceræ, Colophonis, an. vnc. 2. olei
veteris li. se. nitri drag. 2. sulphuris vini. drag. i. se. piperis
albi, Euphorbij an. drag. i. Misce simul, fiat Dropax.

*CHAP. V.***¶** Of Medicaments Resolatiues.

The Medicament resolatiue, which the Grækes call
Diaphorticum, the Latines *Resoluens* or *Digerens*, and

commonly called *Carminatiuum*, rarifieth and euaporateth by insensible trāspiration the humors, openeth the pores of the skinne, and is of quality hote, which are diuided into two sorts, to wit, the Proper which is weake, and Improper which is strong.

The Propers.

Proper resolatiues simple.

Sabina, maiorana, rosmarina, ciclaminis, origanum, absinthium, melilotis, atriplex, spicanardi, camomillum, anethum, anisum, cumminum, hisopos, fumus terræ, malua, parietaria, vrtica, ebulus, sambucus, valeriana, semen lini, abrotanum, adianthum, medulla ceruina humana, aristolochia, brassica, brionix radix, sulfur, fenigrecum, galbanum, hordei, tritici, lupinorum, farina erui, malua cum toto, melilotum, menta, mercurialis, piper, resina, sulphur, sterqus omne, therebinthina, adeps anserinus, anatinus, gallinaceus, ceruinus, leonis, caseus vetus, aqua callida, vinum, lana succida.

The Impropers.

Improper resolatiues simple.

Semen vrticæ, Dictamnium, Ciclamen, Cæpa, radix, Cucumeris agrestis, apium, flos rosmarini, spuma nitri, acetum, hermodactilus, aqua viæ, piretrum, semina omnia calida, bacca lauri, origanum, coriandrum, cinamomum, cherefolium, nux muscata, calamus odoratus, sabina, maiorana, pulgium, absinthium, anisum, spicanardi, piper, sterqus caprinum.

Composita resoluentia.

Compound resolatiues.

Oleum Camomille, Aneti, dulce, vetus, olceræ mirrhæ terebinthinæ, hypericonis, maioranæ, violarum, de cera, de croco, de bombace, terebinthinæ, Sinapi, sulphureum, petroleum, sartarum, lumbricorum, catellorum, liliatium, vulpinum, amygdalarum, dulcium, amararum, sambuci, iuniperi, de lateribus, scorpionis, saluæ, minthæ, rutaceum, de euphorbio, de tartaro, de spica, de petroleo, de baccis, vitellus ovorum, jrinum, nardium, seminis lini laurinum, philosophorum, omne oleum igne calefactum, emplastrum, stomaticum, diachilon magnum, de baccis laurij, de ranis, marciatum,

marciatum, Iriatum, de vigo, de melliloto, Philippi philagrei, vnguentum resumptivum, arragon, enulatum, neapolitanum, oxycrosum, mesux, agrippæ, gummi ammoniacum, dellium, apeponax.

Unguentum resoluens materiam calidam.

Rec. Olei Camomillæ, Liliorum & violarum, an. vnc. i. Vnguentum re-
butiri recentis sine sale drag. 3. cere quantum sufficit, pul- solued hore.
ueris, camomellæ drag. i. fiat vnguentum.

Unguentum resoluens frigidens materiam.

Rec. Olei Liliorum, seminis lini & erini, an. vnc. i. se. Vnguentum re-
emplastri de musilaginibus, de mellilo, an. vnc. se. pulueris solued cold
ireos betonicæ, an. drag. i. fiat vnguentum. humors.

Cataplasma resoluens.

Rec. Farinæ fabarum, lini & fenigreci, an. vnc. i. disso- Cataplasma
nantur & coquantur in oxycrato ad pultis crassitiem, adde resolued.
pulueris florum camomillæ & melliloti, an. drag. i. ouorum
vitellos, 3. croci drag. i. olei camomillæ & aneti, an. drag.
3. butiri recentis, vnc. se. fiat cataplasma.

Ad flatulentum tumor.

Rec. Olei anetini, & Liliorum, an. vnc. 2. Olei rutæ & To resoluere
laurini, an. vnc. i. succi rute, vnc. 2. bulliant ad succorum woundy tu-
consumptionem, ceræ quod sufficit vel loco succi aduce mors.
tantillum aquauitæ ad penetrationem.

Ad hydropicos & equos humores.

Rec. Stercoris Columbini, Caprini & vaccini, an. P. i. To resoluere
florum rutæ, camomillæ recentium, seminis lini & anethi a watry tu-
an. P. i. fermenti veteris, vnc. 2. nitri drag. 2. bulliant mor.
omnia simul in aqua decoctionis apij, deinde pistentur &
super lanam succidam bene carpinatam cataplasmatibus instar
extendantur, deinde calido ventre, hydropico aut hydr.
cele applicetur.

CHAP. VI.

C Of Medicaments Emollients.

The medicaments Emollient are called by the Grækes *Malactica*, and by the Latines *Emollientia*, the which haue the vertue to soften the hard parts, and bring them to their naturall estate, of the which some are Common, and some Proper.

The Common.

Gal. 5. simpl. Are those which haue the vertue to soften the hard parts, which is done either by congelation, extenuation, or drynesse.

The Proper.

Are those which soften the hardnes done by congelation, and are meanlie hote, or else dry or humide, for if the hardnes be done by congelation, the medicament must be hote and drye. If it be droughth as often chaunceth in scirres, y medicament must be hote and humide, always whether it be hote, humide, or dry, it must be more moderate than the attractive, and lesse than the suppurative. In the vsage of the remedies two things are to be obserued, the one, if any of the noble parts be hard, wee applye no mollients except they be mixed with the astringents, neither they be used in tumours scirrous the which are either simple, or composed.

Gal. 13. meth.
lib. 5. sim. c. 1.

The Simples.

As Medulla ceruina, Equina, Canina, Vitulina, Vaccina, ursina, hædina, leporina, humana, porcina, gallina, caprina, leonina, anserina, anatina, vulturina, butirum, gumi amoniacum, bdellium, lapopanacum, galbanum, sodanum, terebinthina, resina, colophonia, pix, herbæ remollientes, malua cum toto violaria, parietaria, mercurialis beta, narcissi radix, radix brionia, cucumeris siluestris, semen lini, radix liliorum, althæa, atriplex, & fenugreci, ficus pinus, leuis, hordei & tritici farina, caput & pedes arietis cocti, cum pelle in aqua vel lacte, Here you must marke that the mar-
rowe

rowe and grease of all kind of animous, which are of the high kind, are more hot then the females and Eunuchs; and that of wild beasts and fowles, is more hote then the domesticke or tame.

Composita emollientia.

Oleum Liliorum, Lumbricorum, Amygdalarum dulcium, de lino camomillæ, vulpinum, iuniperinum, oleum vetus, althea, ceratum filij sathariæ, vnguentum agrippum, resumptivum, nicolai, diachilum magnum, cum gummis, triapharmacum, de musilaginibus, de althea, ceratum philagrij, oxycroceum, ceroneum, de vigo sine mercurio, oleo liliorum & jriino dissolutum, hydrelum.

Compound remedies resolved.

Emplastrum remolliens.

Rec. Emplastri de musilaginibus & Diachilon communis an. vnc. 2. emolliantur cum oleo liliorum, fiat massa emplastri, adde pulueris Ireos & sulphuris parum.

Softening plaster.

Aliud.

Rec. Cerati Filij Zachariæ & philagrij an. vnc. 3. vngenti vigonis siue mercurio, emplastri de melliloto & diachilon ireati an. vnc. 1. se. amoniaci in aceto dissoluti vnc. 1. pulueris seminis vrticæ drag. 2. misce cum vnguento de althea, & oleo camomillæ, fiat ceratum, & valet ad tumoris gutturis, parotidis & aliarum paruum.

Softening Cerat.

Emplastrum remolliens & resoluens.

Rec. Vnguenti de althea vnc. 1. emplastri de musilaginibus & diachili jriati an. vnc. se. emplastri oxycrociæ, melliloti, & ceronei, an. drag. 2. malaxentur cum oleo liliorum, camomillæ, & parum ceræ si addideris amoniacum, bdellum, major vis erit.

Resolving plaister.

Cataplasma emolliens.

Rec. Farinæ hordei vnc. 1. foliorum caulum coctorum & præparatorum manipulos duos, vitellos ouorum duos, olei liliorum quantum sufficit, fiat cataplasma.

Cataplasme resolving.

Aliud.

Rec. Furfuris macri trituriati manipulum vnum, amoniaci in oxymellite dissoluti vnc. 2. misce & fiat cataplasma.

Chap.

CHAP. VII.

¶ Of Medicaments Suppuratiues,
or maturatiue.Hip. 6. epidi-
morium.

The medicaments suppuratiue, or maturatiue called by the Grekes *Peptica*, by the Latines *Maturantia*, are those, which by their naturall heat seeth and bzing the blood and humors superfluous into matter; of the which there is two sorts, some be emplastricks which by closing of the pores augment the naturall heat, so that the matter being retained, maketh generation of *Pus*; the other kind is hot according to the proportion of the naturall heat of the part affected, of the which there are simples and composed.

Simples.

Like as *Aquæ focus modice calens radix Althea, Liliorum capita, violarum, malua, acetosa, farnia triticia, hordeacea, volatilis fenugreci medulla panis tritici, fermentum vetus, adeps porcinus, vitulinus, vaccinus, butirum, pix, resina, semen lini, fenugreci, buglossi, radix brionia, cepæ, branca vrsina, radix cucumeris agrestis, senecio buglossum, his malua, parietaria, ficus, passula, cepe ciclamini, as also all medicaments which are of temperature hote and humide, being mixed with medicaments emplastricke substance that may close the pores, poma, malua cocta, vitellus ouorum, mel crudum, amoniacum, galbanum, laddatum, thus, stirax.*

Composita.

Oleum liliorum, ol, ouorum, butiri, Hyperici, Lumbricorum, Hypericonis, resine, vnguentum basiliconis utrumque diachilum magnum, commune parvum & album, macedonicum, tripharmatum galeni, de muscilaginibus, vnguentum resumptum, emplastrum de fermento, demotriti, macedonicum.

*Cataplasma suppurans.*Suppuratiue
cataplasmes.

Rec. Farmæ hordei, tritici, an. vnc. i. Mellis rosati & violati, an. vnc. se. cum oui vitello, fiat cataplasma.

Alind.

Alind.

Rec. Olei violati, vnc. i. se. cum oui vitello, agitetur cum vnguento basilici parum, & admoneatur parti, multum valet in corporibus puerorum. Suppuratiue
for delicate
people.

Alind.

Rec. Altheæ cum toto, foliorum parietariæ, malnæ violarum, branca vrsinæ, an. M. se. seminis malnæ bis malnæ, lini & fenegreci, an. drag. 3. ficuum pinguium numero 4. coquantur in aqua, deinde bene contusa cribrantur & pascentur per setaceum quibus adde farinæ fabarum & hordei an. vnc. i. olei liliorum & butiri recentis, & axungie suillæ an. vnc. se. fiat Cataplasma.

Vnguentum.

Rec. Diachili magni & albi, an. vnc. i. vnguenti resumptini, vnc. se. basilici, vnc. se. olei lumbricorum parum, fiat vnguentum. Vnguent
suppuratiue.

Alind pro partibus nervosis.

Rec. Farinæ hordei, vnc. i. se. ouorum vitellos duos rebinthinæ & olei liliorum, an. vnc. se. fiat Cataplasma. Suppuratiue
for nervous
parts.

Alind.

Rec. Olei nucum, Axungie suillæ veteris, an. vnc. 2. ceræ flauæ, vnc. i. se. mellis communis, fiat vnguentum his omnibus simul liquatis.

CHAP. VIII.

¶ Of Medicaments mundificatiues,
or abstersiues.

The Medicament cleansing, called by the Grækes *Rip-ticon*, and by the Latines *Detergens*, is that which hath the strength to separate and drain away the excrements purulent from the centre of the vlcers to the circumference, the which is of temperature hote, and of substance thin: and is of two kinds, the one is weake, domestick, and is either sweet or salt, as farina fabarum, hordei, cicerum, semen lini, saccarum,

saccarum, oxymell, terebinthus, thus, mel, despumatum, amygdalæ amara, erui farina, radix indicus, nitrum vstum, nitri spuma, pumex, and diuers others which Galen hath written at length in the Chapter aboue mentioned, and are diuided in simple and compounds.

The Simples.

Like as Farina fabarum, Hordei, Lupinorum & Oribi, absynthium, agrimonia, betonica, apium, mirrhæ, thus, sarcocolla, aloë, abrotanum, flos æris, fellis, leporis, flecas, pix resina, pix græca, virudi æris, tuthea præparata, mel, enula campana, brionia, serpentaria vtriusq; figillum beatæ mariæ consolida maior, cum toto consolida regalis, terebinthina, iris, centaurea minor, solani radix, arnoglossum, gentiana, marthubium, calx lota, helleborus, æs vstum, calchantum crudum & vstum, auripigmentum, allumen, serum lactis, butirum, stercus caprinum, amygdalæ, Aristolochia vtraq; melissa eupatorum, fumestore, artemesia, mastick, sarcocolla, dragagantum.

The Compounds.

Compound
mundificatiues

Oleum de vitellis ouorum, hypericonis Mellis, Mirrhæ, Guaiaci, terebinthinæ de tartaro, vnguentum fuscum, diapompholigos, vnguentum viridi andromachi, emplastrum diuinum, de appio, apostolorum, ægyptiacum, puluis mercurialis, farina frumenti, hordei, mel solutum cum oleo rosato.

Emplastrum detergens.

Emplaster
mundificatiues

Rec. Terebinthinæ venetæ vnc. 7. Gummi Elemni, vnc. 3. resinæ vnc. 1. se. liquefiant omnia simul, deinde refrigeratis quodammodo, adde pulueris Aristolochiæ longæ vnc. se. sanguinis draconis vnc. 1. se. fiat Emplastrum.

Medicamentum blande detergens.

Cleansing
medicaments

Rec. Mellis rosati vnc. 1. vitellum vnius oui, farina hordei quantum sufficit, terebinthinæ in aqua plantaginis lotæ drag. 2.

Unguentum detergens.

Vnguent
cleansing

Rec. Olei Hypericonis vnc. 2. Gummi Elemni vnc. 1. se. cera

cera vnc. se. terebinthinæ vnc. i. misce. & fiat vnguentum.

Aliud.

Rec. Picis resinæ lib. i. Picis græcæ lib. se. butiri recens lib. i. se. viridis æris drag. se.

Aqua detergens.

Rec. Florum æris vsti vnc. 3. Tutia preparata in vino Cleansing albo vnc. i. vini albi odoriferi vnc. se. aquæ plantaganis water. vnc. se. misce omnia simul.

Aliud.

Rec. Vini albi vnc. 2. Floris æris drag. i. auripigmenti, drag. 2. misce simul cum aqua rosarum.

CHAP. IX.

Of Medicaments Incarnatiues.

This Medicament which the Greekes call *Sarcoticon*, the Latines *Generatio carnis*, hath the force to drie and change the bloud which commeth to any part, into flesh. It dryeth without mordication, it thickeneth it, and conuerteth it into flesh. Such medicaments by the absterision and desiccation moderately done, helpe nature. It should be dry in the first degree, to the end the two excrements which are grosse and subtil, being contrary, viz. absterision and desiccation, may not let the action of nature in the generation of flesh. Of the which there are three kinds, viz. weake, strong, and very strong, because in a wound or vlcer the superfluous humidity exceedeth the naturall habitude, as for example, if an vlcer be in a very dry part, the medicament must be more drie, for this cause there be sarcoticke medicaments drie in the 4. degree.

Gal. 3. meth-
& 2. de com-
positio, pliar.
Gal. simp. 6.

The weake.

Olibanū, colofonia, mastick, aloe, farina hordei, fenogreci & debēt applicari corporibus humidis & delicatis.

The Strong.

Aristolochia, iris florētia, farina lupinorū, orobi, calcantum vstū & debent applicari corporibus siccis, & vulneribus cōcauis.

The

The most strong.

The most strong are proper to be applyed in deepe vlcers, as centaureum maius & minus, plumbum & antimonium vltum, glutinum adustum, linaces, mirrha. If a wound or vlcer be aierie, yet in a manner be very humide, the medicament must be drie in the first degree. If the wound or vlcer be charged with great humiditie, and the part neuerthelesse very drye, the medicament must be drye in the second and third degree. Of the which some are simples, others composed.

The Simples.

Olibanum, Mastica, Aloc, Borax, colophonix, farina lupinorum, orobi, hordei, fenogreci, fabarum, lentium, tritici, aristolochia vtraq;, radix iris florentix, vitriolum vltum, pix liquida & sicca, mirrha, sarcocolla, mel, antimonium, plumbum vltum, oleum omne, pompholigos vtraq;, betonica, succus pilosellæ, bursa pastoris, squamma aris, hypericon, centarea minor, sanicula, verbena, scabiosa, pimpinella, lingua canis, ceruina, thus, dragagantum, terebinthina, semen hyperici, artemisia, lingua bovis, polinum guinni arabici, cadmia, tuthie.

The Compounds.

Oleum rosarum, Absynthij, Masticis, de nuce muscata cydoniorum, vitellus ouorum, Irinum, Omphacicum, thuris, sarcocollæ, vnguentum aureum, basilicum, Mesues, emplastrum gratiæ Dei, croceum, comitissæ, de betonica, diapalma, tripharmacum, ceruse, pretiosum agurdone descriptum, de ienua, nigrum.

Emplastrum Sarcoticon.

Emplaster incarnatiue.

Rec. Centaureæ minoris manipulos tres, macerentur viginti quatuor horis in vino albo, deinde quoq; ad mellis crassitiem, adde lactis muliebris, vnc. i. terebinthinæ vnc. 6. ceræ nouæ, vnc. 2. resinæ, vnc. i. thuris, masticis, gummi arabici, an. vnc. se. fiat emplastrum.

Vnguent incarnatiue.

Vnguentum Sarcoticon.

Rec. Pinguedinis anseris, porci, galinæ & mellis, an. vnc. i.

vnc. i. aloes & calcis vinæ tantillum, succi brassicæ quantū sufficit, misce, & fiat vnguentum.

Aliud robustioribus corporibus.

Rec. Pulueris Aristolochia rotundæ, corticis Ireis, thuris an. drag. 3. aloes, mirrhæ, cadmiæ, masticis an. drag. 3. mellis quod satis erit.

Aliud ex Etio.

Rec. Farinæ, tritici, drag. 2. colophoniz, drag. 1. misce.

Aliud.

Rec. Rasuræ panni linei bene mundati drag. 5. apoponacis drag. 2. mellis, olei rosatum an. drag. 5. litargiri, aloes, sarcocollæ an. drag. 1. se. fiat vnguentum.

Pulvis Sarcoticus & Cephalicus.

Rec. Pimpinellæ, Betonicæ, Gariophilatæ, Valerianæ, an. drag. 1. pilosellæ drag. 5. fiat pulvis quo cavum vlcus inspergatur.

CHAP. X.

Of Medicaments Cicatrizants.

The Medicament Cicatrizant, called by the Græks *Epiloticon*, by the Latines *Cicatrizans*, is that which hath the power to make and cicatrize by his drynes and astringion without acrimonie drying the flesh. In such manner, and maketh it in substance like to the skinnē, yet not according to the first intention, by reason that parts *Spermatickes* doe not ingender in all points as befoze. This medicament is hote in the third degree, and is diuided into *Simples* and *Composed*.

The Simples.

As allumen vsum, vitriolum vsum, galla, spongia vsta, litargirum, polipodium, terra sigillata, squammæ æris, aristolochia rotunda, centaurea, malicorium, oliuæ, apij semen tritum, flos mali granati rosa, anethum vsum, aloë, cacties lignorum, pompholix, spodium, nux cupressi, calx lota, F f æs vsum,

R. Pulv. Rhai
— *Cinnamon*
— *Zingib.*
— *Cary*
— *Specac*
— *Antimon*
℞. Prop. In
℞. f. p.

æs vstum, mineralia vsta & lora, mirrha, thus, plumbum, radix cucumeris siluestris, bolus armenus, cerussa, sarcocolla, pumex vstus terra lemuia, calcantum siue attramentum sutoreum.

Composita.

Emplastrum de cerussa, de minio album rasis, Vigonis, triapharmacum, diacalcithios, de siccativum rubeū, diapompholigos, aqua aluminosa, & plura descripta in capitibus de vulneribus.

Emplastrum Epileticum.

Emplaster siccatrizant.

Rec. Lapidis calaminaris, terræ sigillatæ an. vnc. 4. ceræ nouæ vnc. 5. olei rosati vnc. 2. olei hyosciami & papaueris albi an. vnc. 2. se. olei violarum vnc. 4. aqua vitæ drag. 3. fiat emplastrum.

Pulvis.

Pouder siccatrizant.

Rec. Sarcocollæ, Glutinis piscium, Cryfocollæ, pumbi vsti, squamæ ferri an. drag. 1. misce, fiat pulvis.

Ulceribus pudendorum citra morsum siccantis.

Ulcers in the Yard.

Rec. Aloes loti & æris vsti an. vnc. se. puluerescentur tenuissime cum puluere malecorij & balaustiorum & vsui seruentur.

Alind.

Rec. Olebani, Aloes, sanguinis draconis an. drag. 3. Aristolochiæ rotundæ, cerusæ, corticis pini, centaurei minoris an. drag. 1. gallarum, balaustiorum an. drag. 2. fiat pulvis.

Aqua Epiletica.

Siccantizant water.

Rec. Succiporulacæ, Caprifolij, Acetosæ, Arnoglossæ an. lib. 1. albumina ouorum vigenti, aluminis rupis puluerisati lib. 3. vitrioli romani vnc. 6. misce, & distilla.

*CHAP. XI.***C** Of Medicaments Agglutinatiues.

The medicament Agglutinative called by the Grækes *Simpliticon*, by the Latines *Agglutinans*, is that which hath the vertue to drie the humiditie that is betwixt the lips of

then put to the Terebintine, and gine it little ſeething, then remoue it from the fire, and forme the roles. It is good for wounds of the head, it doth mundifie, incarnate, agglutinate, cicatrize, and paciſieth inflammation.

Emplaſtrum gratia dei.

Rec. Terebintinae lib. ſs. Refina lib. 1. Cerae albae vnc. 4. Maſticis vnc. 1. Betonicae, Vebena, Pimpinellae an. M 1. The hearbs muſt be bzuiſed and boyled in white wine, till the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine out the liquoz. In the which put the Ware, Roſine, and Maſticke, and boyle till it come to the conſiſtence of a plaſter, then take it from the fire and put to the Terebintine, remoue it well, then forme your plaſter.

Emplaſtrum diuinum.

Rec. Galbani, Myrrhae an. vnc. 1. & drag. 2. Amoniaci vnc. 3. & drag. 3. apoponatis, maſtichis, ariſtolochia longae, æruginis an. vnc. 1. Litargiri, olei communis, an. lib. ſs. cerae nouae vnc. 8. Thuris vnc. 1. & drag. 1. bdellij vnc. 2. Magnetis vnc. 3. The Litarge muſt be mingled with the oyle by ſtirring of it, thereafter boyle it till it become ſomewhat thicke, then adde the Ware it being cut in ſmall pieces, the which being lignified is taken off the fire, then is put to the Galbanum, Amoniacum, Apoponax, & Bdelliū, diſſolued in Vinegar and wine, then boyle it and ſtraine it, thereafter put the pouders, Myrre, Maſtichis, thuris, ariſtolochia rotundae, magnetis; then ſprinkle it with fine powder of Æruginis. This plaſter is good for tumors with corruption of the bones and malignant ulcers. It conſumeth corruption, and ingendereth new fleſh.

Deo laus, honor, & gloria in ſempiternum.

Candido Lectori.

Candide Lector, quiſq; ex hoc libello fructum perceperis, bene precare D. Iacobo Hamiltonio, Abricornia Comitum, in cuius, ac Reipub. gratiam conſcripſi,

Vale.

*A generall Table of the most principall matters
contained in this booke: the first number sheweth
the Booke; and the second, the Chapter.*

A

Abstinence done two waies lib. 2. ca. 5.
Ægylops defined: cause, signes, Iudgements, Cure. lib. 5. ca. 15.
Ægylops, sometime with corruption of the bone. *ibid.*
Age is defined. lib. 1. cap. 11.
Age described by Salomon. *ibid.*
Aged people should obserue rules in their dyet. lib. 1. cap. 12.
Agria is defined. lib. 4. cap. 5.
Aire is defined. lib. 2. cap. 1.
Aire is of two sorts. *ibid.*
Of Aire dependeth the constitution of our bodies. *ibid.*
Of Aire dependeth the disposition of our humors. lib. 5. cap. 12.
Alienation is defined. lib. 6. cap. 1.
Aliment is defined. lib. 2. cap. 2.
Aliment is of two sorts. *ibid.*
Alopetia is defined, with his cause, signes, Iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 2.
Amputation from the ioynt. lib. 4. cap. 7.
Amputation of superfluous fingers & toes. lib. 4. cap. 8.
Amigdales defined, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 37.
Anger defined, with the effects. lib. 2. ca. 6.
Aneufisma defined, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 41.
Angiua defined, and cured. lib. 5. cap. 38.
Anodine remedies. lib. 5. cap. 53.
Anodines hote & cold. lib. 10. cap. 2.
Antrax defined, with the cure. lib. 4. ca. 5.
Apostumes defined, and cured. li. 4. ca. 1.
Appetite should be followed in the quality of meat. lib. 2. cap. 2.

Aqua cælestis with the compositiō. l. 5, c. 63.
Arteriotomie defined. lib: 9, cap: 10.
Asses milke for Carlinomia. lib: 4, cap: 16.
Astringent for the clouen lippe. li: 5, ca: 28.
Astringent for wounds. lib: 6, cap: 6.
Astringent for fractures. lib: 8, cap: 2.
Atheorema defined, and cure. lib: 4, ca: 14.

B

Balme of *John de Vigo*. lib: 5, ca: 63.
Balme of the Author for wounds done by Gunshot. lib: 6, cap: 5.
Balme agglutinatiue. lib: 10, cap: 11.
Bals of gold, siluer, or wood. lib: 9, c: 19.
Bandage for fractnres. lib: 8, cap: 7.
Bandage for sore paps. lib: 5, cap: 42.
Banquets forbidden. lib: 2, cap: 2.
Bathes defined, with their nature. l: 9, c: 20.
Bladder, with his diseases. lib: 5, cap: 63.
Blind people haue their other senses more strong. lib: 1, cap: 10.
Blood nourisheth the body. lib: 1, ca: 6.
Blood of a Pigeon for Mydriasis. li: 5, c: 18.
Bleeding at the nose, and cure. lib: 5, ca: 16.
Bleeding at the nose, ured by words. *ibid.*
In bleeding, diuers things to be obserued. lib: 9, ca: 2.
To bleed well, what should be considered, lib: 9 cap: 8.
Blood knowen three wayes. lib: 9, cap: 9.
Bulus for the bladder. lib: 5, cap: 63.
Bonnet to pull out haire. lib: 5, cap: 6.
Bones haue no feeling. lib: 5, cap: 19.
Bones of fish in the halfe, with the cure, lib: 5, cap: 38.
Bones in mans body are 258. l: 8, c: 1.
Bones Sesmoide are 15. *ibid.*

Bone

The Table.

Bones are conioyned two wayes. li: 8, c: 4.
 Bread new baked is euill. lib: 2, cap: 2.
 Bread should be baked with Anyseeds. *ibid.*
 Broth for aged people. lib: 1, cap: 13.
B. uncocteli is defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 4.
Bubo is defined, and cure. lib: 5, ca: 66.
Bubons ele defined, with the cause, & cure.
 lib: 5, cap: 55.
 Burning with Gunpowder. lib: 6, cap: 6.
 Burning by fire or oyle. lib: 7, cap: 10.
 Byting with venomous beasts. li: 6, ca: 9.
 Byting by a madde dog. *ibid.*

C

C *Acoetbes* defined, with the cause, and
 cure. lib: 7, cap: 6.
 Cake of Lead for vlcers virulēt. li: 7 c: 3
 Callosity defined, lib: 7, cap: 1.
 Canker defined, with the cure. li: 4, ca: 16.
 Candle of wax for the Carbuncle. li: 5, c: 64
 Candle to burne in the time of embalming.
 lib: 8, cap: 5.
 Carbuncle defined, with the cure. li: 4, ca: 5.
 Carbuncle in the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.
 Cataplasme for Schirre. li: 4, ca: 15.
 Cataplasme for Hemorrhoides. li: 5, ca: 29.
 Cataplasme for the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.
 Cataplasme for sore paps. lib: 5, cap: 42.
 Cataplasme for Aneufisma. lib: 5, ca: 41.
 Cataplasme for *Struma*. lib: 5, cap: 39.
 Cataplasme for paine in the tooth. li: 5, c: 29
 Cataplasme for the Amygdals. li: 5, ca: 37
 Cataplasme for *Hernia gutturis*. li: 5, ca: 40.
 Cataplasme repercussive. lib: 10, ca: 3.
 Cataplasme attractive. lib: 10, cap: 4.
 Cataplasme resolative. lib: 10, cap: 5.
 Cataplasme suppurative. lib: 10, cap: 7.
 Cataplasme to stay flux of blood. li: 10, c: 13
 Cataplasme for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Cataplasme for Parotides. lib: 5, ca: 24.
 Cataplasme for Gangrena. lib: 4, cap: 6.
 Cataract defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 19

Causticke to consume callosities. li: 7, ca: 9.
 Cauter actual defined. lib: 9, cap: 16.
 Cauter, how to be applyed. lib: 9, cap: 18.
 Cauter actual hath diuers vtilities. li: 9, c: 16
 Cauter potētiā with his cōpositiō. li: 9, c: 19
 Cauters for the gut. lib: 5, cap: 66.
 Cauter actual for Panaris. lib: 5, cap: 72.
 Cauter actual for the teeth. lib: 5, cap: 30.
 Cauter actual for Epau'is. lib: 5, ca: 32.
 Cauter actual for Fistula. lib: 5, cap: 46.
 Cauter actual for Thymus. lib: 5, cap: 47.
 Cauter actual for Polypus. li: 3, ca: 25.
 Cauter actual for vlcers virulent. li: 3, c: 7.
 Cauter actual for rotten vlcers. lib: 5, ca: 7.
 Cauters of M. George Baker. li: 9, cap: 17.
 Cauters are to bee applyed in diuers parts.
 lib: 9, cap: 18.
 Cautions in applying cauters. *ibid.*
 Cauters to be applyed in foure parts of the
 head. *ibid.*
 Cauters on the legs. lib: 9, cap: 18.
 Cauters to stay flux of blood. lib: 4, ca: 7.
 Censure Candle. lib: 8, cap: 5.
 Chirons in the hands, or membranes in the
 eye. lib: 5, cap: 4.
 Chyrurgerie defined. lib: 1, 2.
 Chyrurgerie invented by God. *ibid.*
 Chyrurgerie before other Sciences. *ibid.*
 Chyrurgery practised by Kings. *ibid.*
 Chyrurgions exempted from all publique
 charges. lib: 1, cap: 1.
 Chyrurgerie speculatiue first obserued by
Hippocrates. lib: 1, cap: 2.
 Choller defined. lib: 1, cap: 6.
 Chollerians are hasty & prompt. li: 1, ca: 5.
 Cicatrizes should be corrected. li: 6, ca: 3.
 Circoccele defined, the cause, signes, and
 cure. lib: 5, cap: 61.
 Clap of the halse defined. lib: 5, cap: 30.
 Clifters for vlcers in the bladder. li: 5, ca: 63
 Colyre for Hordeleon. lib: 5, cap: 16.
 Colyre for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Colyre for Enchylops. lib: 5, ca: 15.
 Complexion of those in the East and North
 parts.

The Table.

parts. lib: 1, cap: 5.
 Comresse for wounds. lib: 9, cap: 8.
 Concoction is of three sorts. lib: 1, cap: 6.
condilom defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 48.
 Congestion defined, with the cause. li: 4, c: 1.
 Conserue for the sight. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Convulsion in wounds. lib: 6, cap: 1.
 Cornes defined, and cure. lib: 5, cap: 75.
 Corrosion defined. lib: 6, cap: 1.
 Criticke dayes. lib: 9, cap: 2.
 Custome not to be neglected. lib: 2, cap: 2.
 Cure for ignorants. lib: 5, cap: 26.

D

DAvier to draw teeth. lib: 5, cap: 30.
 Dead corps, how to be preserved.
 lib: 8, cap: 5.
 Decoction for teeth. lib: 5, cap: 31.
 Decoction approued for hydropsie. li: 5, c: 45.
 Decoction sudorificke for *Thymus*. li: 5, c: 47.
 Decoction for the gut. lib: 5, cap: 67.
 Decoction for wounds in the Thorax.
 lib: 6, cap: 12.
 Decoction for vlcers. lib: 7, cap: 6.
 Decoction for fistules. lib: 7, cap: 9.
 Decoction for the eares. lib: 5, cap: 23.
 Dyet, a friend to nature. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Digestion would haue rest. lib: 1, cap: 2.
 Digestiue for wounds. lib: 6, cap: 2.
 Diseases of the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 10.
 Diseases of old people. lib: 1, cap: 11.
 Diseases of the bladder. lib: 5, cap: 63.
 Diseases of the prunall. lib: 5, cap: 8.
 Diseases of the Cornea. lib: 5, cap: 10.
 Diseases of the nerue opticke. *ibid.*
 Dislocatiōs defined, with the cure. li: 8, c: 4.
 Distilled water for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Dolour defined, and cure. lib: 5, cap: 1.
 Dolour of the teeth. lib: 5, cap: 29.
 Dolour of the eares by wormes. li: 5, c: 22.
Dracunculus defined, & cure. lib: 5, ca: 70.

Dreames not to be neglected. lib: 2, cap: 4.
 Drinke to be vsed in spring time. li: 2, ca: 2.
 Drinke immoderately taken, is hurtfull to
 the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 Drinkers of water. *ibid.*
 Dropax. lib: 10, cap: 4.

E

ALe hath diuers vertues. lib: 2, cap: 2.
 Ale composed of diuers grains. *b. d.*
 Ale composed by our Auncients of
 Cockle or Darnell. *ibid.*
 Eares subiect to diuers passions. li: 5, c: 11.
 Earrings. lib: 5, cap: 12.
 In Eating, time should be obserued. li: 2, c: 2.
Ectyma defined, with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 3.
Edema defined, with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 11.
 Elements defined. lib: 1, ca: 4.
 Elements 4 in number. *ibid.*
Elephantiasis defined and cured. lib: 5, c: 71.
Empicma defined. lib: 5, cap: 43.
 Emplaster *contra rupturam*. lib: 5, cap: 69.
 Emplaster attractiue. lib: 10, cap: 4.
 Emplaster Mundificatiue. lib: 10, cap: 8.
 Emplaster Incarnatiue. lib: 10, cap: 9.
 Emplaster Ciccatrizant. lib: 10, cap: 10.
 Emplaster agglutinatiue. lib: 10, cap: 11.
 Emplaster for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 15.
 Emplaster resolutiues. lib: 9, cap: 5.
 Enchylops defined, and cured. lib: 5, c: 15.
 Encanthus defined, and cured. lib: 5, ca: 32.
 Epinetis defined, and cured. lib: 4, cap: 3.
Epimenides slept 57. yeares. lib: 2, ca: 4.
 Epyplon, with the composition. lib: 5, c: 51.
 Epiplocele defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 57.
 Eresipelas defined, with the cure. li: 4, c: 9.
 Eresipelas in the matrixe. *ibid.*
 Estachiles defined. lib: 7, cap: 1.
 Euacuation defined. lib: 2, cap: 5.
 Excrements of Goats. lib: 4, cap: 16.
 Excrements of Cats distilled. lib: 5, ca: 12.
 Excre-

The Table.

Excrements of Myce for *Alopelia*. li: 5, ca: 1.
 Exercise very profitable. lib: 2, cap: 3.
 Exercise to be vsed before meat. *ibid.*
Exitus Longano: defined, & cured. li: 5, ca: 50.
 Eye, a most notable sence. lib: 5, ca: 9.
 Eye of a dead Virgine. lib: 5, ca: 10.
 Eyes are hurt by ouer-great light. li: 5, ca: 12.
 Eyebright. *ibid.*
 Eyes are the windows of the soule. li: 5, ca: 9.
 Eyes are of sundry colours. lib: 5, ca: 10.

F

F Alculties are 3. in number. lib: 1, ca: 8.
 Fasting heateth the blood. li: 2, ca: 2.
 Fastnesse of the eye, & vse. lib: 5, ca: 10.
 Feare defined with the euill effects. li: 2, ca: 6.
 Figure defined with the cause. li: 1, ca: 14.
 Figure is of 4. sorts. *ibid.*
 Fistula defined, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 46.
 Flux of blood at the teeth. lib: 5, ca: 37.
 Fluxion of the eyes. lib: 5, ca: 12.
 Fluxion maketh tumors. li: 4, ca: 1.
 Flux of blood at the nose. lib: 5, ca: 26.
 Fomentation for *Exitus Longano*. li: 5, ca: 49.
 Fomentation for *Bubonocoele*. lib: 5, cap: 52.
 Fomentation for *Interocele*. lib: 5, cap: 56.
 Fomentation for *Epiplocele*. lib: 5, cap: 57.
 Fomentation for *Phisocoele*. lib: 5, cap: 59.
 Fomentation for the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.
 Fomentation for the eye. lib: 5, ca: 12.
Formica defined. lib: 4, cap: 9.
 Fractures in wounds of 5. kinds. li: 6, ca: 11.
 Fractures defined, with the cure. lib: 8, ca: 1.
 Frictions and their effects. li: 9, ca: 23.
 Fundament subiect to 13 diseases. li: 5, ca: 45.
 Fundament closed in yong ones. li: 5, ca: 48.
Furuncle defined with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 4.
Furuncle is of two sorts. *ibid.*

G

Gals of beasts for *Mydriasis*. lib: 5, ca: 18

Ganglion defined, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 8.
 Gangrena defined, with the cure. li: 4, ca: 6.
 Gargarisme for *Angina*. lib: 5, cap: 38.
 Gargarism for vlcers in the mouth. li: 5, ca: 33.
 Gargarism for the clap of the hals. li: 5, ca: 36.
 Glands tumified in the mouth. li: 5, ca: 39.
 Gland on the yard. li: 5, cap: 65.
 Gluttons wrack their bodies. li: 2, cap: 2.
 Gold for taking away haire. li: 5, ca: 17.
 Gout cyarick defined, & the cure. li: 5, ca: 67.

H

H Aires on the eyes. li: 5, ca: 17.
 Hairshay defined, with the cure. lib: 5, cap: 28.
 Head is subiect to 200 maladies. li: 5, ca: 1.
 Health defined. lib: 3, cap: 1.
 Hearbs good for the sight. li: 5, ca: 12.
 Hemerage defined. li: 6, ca: 1.
 Hemorrhoides defined, with the cure. lib: 5, cap: 49.
Hernia gutturis. lib: 5, cap: 40.
Hernia umbilicalis, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 44.
Hernia ventosa. li: 5, cap: 59.
Hernia humeralis. li: 5, cap: 62.
Hernia intestinalis. li: 5, ca: 56.
 Hordelion defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 16.
 Humors defined. lib: 1, cap: 6.
 Humors of the eye. lib: 5, cap: 10.
Hydrocephale defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 7.
 Hydropsie defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 45.
Hydrocele defined. lib: 5, ca: 58.
 Hydromell composed. li: 5, cap: 12.

I

I Dlenes the mother of vice. li: 2, cap: 3.
 Idlenes bringeth old age. *ibid.*
Ignis Persicus. lib: 4, ca: 9.
 Incision made 3. wayes. lib: 4, ca: 1.
 Incision of the ligament beneath the tong. lib: 5, cap: 34.

The Table.

Incision of the Palate. lib, 5, cap, 36.
 Incision of the Trach. arter. lib, 5, cap, 37.
 Incision of *Emp. ema.* lib, 5, cap, 43.
 Incision of Hydroptic. lib, 5, cap, 45.
 Incision of the Fistula. lib, 5, cap, 46.
 Incision of *Jaterocele* lib, 5, cap, 55.
 Incision for *Circoccele*. lib, 5, cap, 61.
 Incision of the Prepuis. lib, 5, cap, 65.
 Incision of the Varix. lib, 5, cap, 69.
 Incision Circular. lib, 5, cap, 28.
 Iniection for the bladder. lib, 5, ca, 63.
 Iniection for Wounds. lib, 6, cap, 12.
 Intemperies done two wayes. lib, 3, ca, 1.
 Intestines, wheerof they are composed.
 lib, 5, cap, 51.
Jnterocele defined, with the cure. li, 5, c, 56.

K

KYbes defined, and cured. lib, 5, ca, 74.
 Kings Evill defined. lib, 5, ca, 34.

L

LAviment for the teeth. li, 5, c, 31.
 Leprosie defined. li, 5, c, 71.
 Leprosie most incident to Swine. *ibid.*
 Lyce defined, with the cause. li, 5, c, 4.
 Lyce cause some to dye *ibid.*
 Ligatours for *Epaulis*. li, 5, c, 32.
 Ligament for the tongue. li, 5, c, 34.
 Ligatour for the pallate of the mouth,
 lib, 5, cap, 36.
 Ligatour for the Fistula. *ibid.*
 Ligatour for *Thymus*. li, 5, c, 47.
 Ligatour for Warts. li, 5, c, 73.
 Ligatour for Wounds. li, 6, c, 1.
 Ligatour for bleeding. li, 9, c, 8.
 Ligatour for Spasell. li, 4, c, 7.
 Ligament of the Prepuis. li, 5, c, 65.
 Lineament for the gut. li, 5, c, 66.
 Lips pale coloured & hacked. li, 5, c, 27.

Liquor for blood at the nose. li, 5, c, 26.
 Liquor to make white teeth. li, 5, c, 29.
 Liquor for sore pappes. li, 5, c, 42.
 Liquor agglutinatiue. li, 10, c, 6.
 Lotion for the mouth. li, 5, c, 33.
 Lupus in the Legs. li, 4, c, 16.
 Life of man subiect to 5 mutations. li, 1, c, 11.

M

M*Acroccephal'e* defined. lib, 5, cap, 7.
 Malady defined. li, 3, c, 1.
 Malady is of three kinds. li, 3, c, 2.
 Maladies of the eye. li, 5, c, 10.
 Maladies of the membranes. li, 5, c, 8.
Malum sanctæ manus. li, 5, c, 71.
 Masticatories for the eyes. li, 5, c, 12.
 Measures of medicaments. li, 10, c, 1.
 Meat defined. li, 2, c, 2.
 Meat to be vsed by aged and yong. *ibid.*
 Medicaments Sarcoticks. li, 6, c, 2.
 Medicaments suppuratiues for wounds.
 lib, 6, cap, 1.
 Medicaments for burning. li, 7, c, 10.
 Medicaments are of foure degrees. li, 10, c, 1.
 Medicaments hote and cold in degrees. *ibid.*
 Medicaments Narcoticks. li, 10, c, 2.
 Medicaments Repercussives. li, 10, c, 3.
 Medicaments Attractives. li, 10, c, 4.
 Medicaments Resolatiues. li, 10, c, 5.
 Medicaments Emollients. li, 10, c, 6.
 Medicaments Suppuratiues. li, 10, c, 7.
 Medicaments Mundificatiues. li, 10, c, 8.
 Medicaments Incarnatiues. li, 10, c, 9.
 Medicament Putrefactiue. *ibid.*
 Medicament to stay flux of blood. li, 10, c, 13.
 Medicament for Polypus. li, 5, c, 2.
Medriasis defined, and cured. li, 5, c, 18.
 Melancholy defined. li, 1, c, 6.
 Membranes of the braines altered. li, 6, c, 11.
Membrana adnata. li, 5, c, 15.
 Membranes of the eyes. li, 5, c, 9.
Morpeons defined. li, 5, c, 4.

Month

The Table.

Mouth serveth for sundry vses. l, 6, c, 9
 Moouing defined. l, 2, c, 3.
 Moales defined, and cure. l, 5, c, 74.
 Muscles Sphincter. l, 5, c, 51.
 Muscles of the eye. l, 5, c, 10.

N

N Arcoticks is defined. lib, 9 cap, 2
 Navill neere cut dangerous l, 5, c, 44
 Nits ingendered of Lice. l, 5, c, 4.
 Needle for the Haireshaw. l, 5, c, 28.
 Needle of gold or siluer for Fistula. l, 5, c, 46
 Needle for *Circocoele*. l, 5, c, 61.
 Needle for the Cataract. l, 5, c, 10.
 Needle for wounds. l, 8, c, 1.
 Nerues of the eye, their vse, and whence
 they proceed. l, 5, c, 10.
 Nerus of the eyes differ frō other nerus *ibid*
 Nerues of the eyes why they are full of pe-
 rosity. *ibid*.

O

O Pthalthon defined, & cured l, 5, c, 13
Ophthalmia defined & cured. l, 5, c, 19
 Oyle for corrupt teeth. l, 5, c, 30.
 Oyle of Frogs for the gut. l, 5, c, 67
 Oyntment for Scrophule. l, 5, c, 39
 Oyntment to take away haire. l, 5, c, 17.

P

P Anaris defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 72.
 Pappes, their diseases. l, 5, c, 42.
 Paralisis in the fundament. l, 5, c, 97.
 Paralisis in the neck of the bladder. l, 5, c, 63
 Paralisis defined, cause & cured. l, 6, c, 1.
 Parotides defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 24.
 Paraulis to be opened l, 5, c, 32.
 Periton don defined. l, 5, c, 51.

Periton hath two tunicles. *ibid*.
Phigetblon defined, and cured. l, 4, c, 3.
Phyma defined, and cured. *ibid*:
 Phlegmatitians, and their nature. l, 1, c, 5.
 Phlegmon defined, and cured. l, 2, c, 6.
Phymosis defined and cured. l, 5, c, 55.
Physocoele defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 59.
Pillules for the head. l, 5, c, 12.
 Plurisie defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 33.
 Plumations, and their nature. l, 6, c, 1.
 Polican for the teeth. l, 5, c, 30.
 Polypus defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 25.
Polytricon. *ibid*:
 Pomade for hacked lips. l, 5, c, 27.
Potus diuinus defined. l, 6, c, 11.
Priapismus defined. l, 5, c, 65.
Pterigium defined. l, 5, c, 72.
 Pouders to make white teeth l, 5, c, 31.
 Pouders for *Ophthalmia*. l, 5, c, 24.
 Pouders to stay blood at the nose. l, 5, c, 26
 Pouders for the pallat of the mouth. l, 5, c, 36
 Pouders for *Thymus*. l, 5, c, 47.
 Pouders incarnatiue for wounds. l, 6, c, 2.
 Pouders to stay flux of blood. l, 6, c, 7.
 Pouders aromaticke for dead corps. l, 8, c, 5
 Pouders Cicatrizant. l, 10, c, 11.
 Pouders for vlcers in the yard. *ibid*.
 Pouders to consume flesh. l, 10, c, 11.
 Pouders for *Tinea*, li, 5, ca, 6.
 Pouders to correct superfluous flesh, l, 5, c, 8
 Pouders for the eyes, li, 5, ca, 12.
 Pouders for the weeping eye, li, 5, ca, 14
 Pouders caustick to consume flesh, l, 5, c, 32
 Pouders for the Sphafel, li, 4, ca, 7.
Pus defined, lib, 7, cap, 1.
 Putrefaction defined lib, 6, cap, 1.
 Putrefaction of two sorts. *ibid*:

R

R *Annullus* defined, & cured, l, 5, c, 35
 Reduction of the Epiplon li, 5, c, 56
 Receipt of M. William Cloues. l, 6, c, 1
 Remedy for hollow teeth, lib, 5, cap, 31.
 Remedies.

The Table.

Remedies cordiall. lib: 4. cap: 7.
 Remedy to take away haire. lib: 5. cap: 12.
 Remedy for Aneurisma. lib: 5. cap: 41.
 Remedies for burning. lib: 7. cap: 10.
 Remedies to consume flesh. lib: 9. ca: 19.
 Repercussives to be vsed. lib: 4. cap: 1.
 Repercussive medicaments. lib: 10. cap: 3.
 Repletion is of two kinds. lib: 2. ca: 5.
 Resolative for windy tumors. li: 0. c: 5.
 Resolative for watry tumors. li: 10. ca: 5.
 Rest dullereth the body. lib: 4. cap: 1.
 Retraction of the tong. lib: 5. cap: 34.
 Reading & writing euill after meat. l. 2. c. 3.
 Romanes of old did eat openly. li: 1. ca: 2.

S

S Adnesse defined, with the Symptomes, lib: 2. cap: 6.
 Sarcoma defined. lib: 5. ca: 15.
 Sarcocoe defined, and cured. lib: 5. cap: 60.
 Satiriasis defined. lib: 5. ca: 65.
 Schir defined, and cured. lib: 4. cap: 15.
 Scrophule defined, and cured. lib: 5. cap: 34.
 Senses externe. lib: 1. cap: 8.
 Seton defined. lib: 9. ca: 15.
 Seton in the Scroton. lib: 5. cap: 58.
 Seton applyed in diuers parts. *ibid.*
 Sex defined. lib: 1. cap: 14.
 Shamefastnes defined. lib: 2. ca: 6.
 Shell Snakes for Hydrocephale. lib: 5. c:
 Sight reioyceth in blew, violet, and greene, lib: 5. ca: 12.
 Syrupe magistrall for the head. *ibid.*
 Sicknesse doth proceed of some humors. lib: 1. cap: 6.
 Sicknes in Autume very vnholosome. l: 1. c: 5.
 Sincope defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.
 Signs not obserued by the Phisitiōs. l: 9. c: 2.
 Skinne defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.
 Sleepe defined, and cause. lib: 2. cap: 4.
 In sleeping, lye first on the right side. *ibid.*
 Sphasell, or S. Antonies fire defined l: 5. c: 7.

Spasme defined, and cured. lib: 6. cap: 1.
 Spermatike vessels are foure. lib: 5. cap: 52.
 Spirits defined, & are of 3. sorts lib: 1. ca: 10.
 Steotema defined, and cured. li: 4. ca: 14.
 Stones how to be cut. lib: 5. cap: 52.
 Stones and their vsage. *ibid.*
 Seare cloth for Cauters, lib: 7. c: 19.
 Seare cloth for dead corps. lib: 8. cap: 5.
 Sound of Lead for Fistula. lib: 5. cap: 46.
 Suture defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.
 Sutures are of three kinds. *ibid.*
 Suture drye. *ibid.*
 Suture Gastraphicke. *ibid.*
 Swyne subiect to Leprosie. lib: 2. ca: 6.
 Symptomes are of three kinds. lib: 3. cap: 5.
 Symptomes of the humor Vitrei li: 5. ca: 12.
 Symptomes of Christalline humor. *ibid.*

T

T Abes defined, and is of two sorts. lib: 5. cap: 11.
 Teares whence they proceed l: 5. c: 10.
 Teeth defined, and their number. li: 5. c: 29 & lib: 8. cap: 1.
 By teeth men may prognosticate long or short life. lib: 5. cap: 29.
 Teeth that are mowly, to be filed. li: 5. ca: 30.
 Teeth artificiall. *ibid.*
 Teeth superfluous. *ibid.*
 Teeth mowly and euill sauoured. l: 5. c: 31.
 Temperament defined. lib: 1. cap: 5.
 Temperature of man known 5. waies, *ibid.*
 Temperature of man and woman, li: 5. c: 14.
 Terminthus defined, and cured, li: 4. ca: 3.
 Terebintine of Venice for the bladder. lib: 5. cap: 63.
 Thirst defined. lib: 2. cap: 2.
 Thymus defined, and cured. lib: 5. cap: 37.
 Tinea defined, and cured. lib: 5. cap: 6.
 Tinea in yong children is contagious. *ibid.*
 Tinea leaueth the part empty of haire, *ibid.*
 Tinea deliuereth men from Epilepsie. *ibid.*
 Tooth.

The Table.

Toothack, with the cure. li. 5, ca. 29.
 Topicall remedies for the stones. li. 5, ca. 52.
 Topicall remedies for Interocle. li. 5, c. 56.
 Topicall remedies for gunshot. lib. 6, cap. 5.
 Topicall remedies for vlcers cavernous.
 lib. 7, cap. 4.
 Topicall remedies for rotten vlcers. li. 7, c. 5.
 Topicall remedies for burning. lib. 7, cap. 10.
 Topicall remedies for the eyes. lib. 5, ca. 12.
 Topicall remedies for Ægylops. li. 5, ca. 15.
 Triacle for wounds by venomous beasts.
 lib. 6, cap. 8.
 Trepan for the head. lib. 6, cap. 11.
 Trepan when and where it should be vsed.
ibid.
 Trepan for the sternon. li. 5, ca. 3.
 Tumors defined, and cured. lib. 4, ca. 1.
 Tumors are of 4. sorts. *ibid.*
 Tumors in the Cods. lib. 5, cap. 53.
 Tumors in the Thorax. lib. 6, cap. 12.

V

VArix defined, and cured. lib. 5, cap. 69.
 Vaines of the eyes. lib. 5, cap. 10.
 Vaines that should be let blood.
 lib. 9, cap. 1.
 Vaines in the head to be opened. lib. 9, ca. 3.
 Vaines in the arme to be opened. lib. 9, ca. 4.
 Vaines in the hands to be opened. li. 9, ca. 5.
 Vaines in the fundament. lib. 9, cap. 6.
 Vaines in the legs, & their office. li. 9, c. 7.
 Ventoses defined, and their forme. li. 9, c. 11.
 Ventosies how to be applyed. lib. 9, cap. 13.
 Vertues defined. lib. 1, cap. 3.
 Vertues animall are of 2. sorts. *ibid.*
 Vinegar squilitique. lib. 5, cap. 31.
 Vlcers in the necke of the bladder. li. 5, ca. 63.
 Vlcers defined, and cured. lib. 7, cap. 2.
 Vlcers sanious cured. lib. 7, cap. 3.
 Vlcers profound and virulent, defined, and
 cured. lib. 7, cap. 4.
 Vlcers rotten & filthy, defined. lib. 7, cap. 5.
 Vlcers with corruption of the bone, defi-

ned, and cured. lib. 7, ca. 7.
 Vlcers Cankerous, defined, and cured.
 lib. 7, cap. 9.
 Vnguent for the cure of Canker. li. 4, c. 16.
 Vnguent for Aneufisma. lib. 5. cap. 41.
 Vnguent for the Hemorrhoides. li. 5, ca. 49.
 Vnguent of *Divus* for wounds. lib. 6, c. 9.
 Vnguent Anodins. lib. 10. cap. 2.
 Vnguent attractiue. lib. 10. cap. 4.
 Vnguent Suppuratiue. lib. 10. cap. 7.
 Vnguent resolutiue. lib. 10. ca. 5.
 Vnguent incarnatiue. lib. 10. ca. 9.
 Vnguent mundificatiue. lib. 10. cap. 8.
 Vnguent for blood at the nose. lib. 5. ca. 29.
 Vnguent for the eyes. lib. 5. cap. 11.
 Vnguent for Tinea. lib. 5. cap. 6.
 Vnguent for Warts. lib. 5. ca. 72.
 Urine of Carcinoma. lib. 4, cap. 16.
 Urine for vlcers in the eares. li. 5. ca. 23.
 Vvula defined, and cured. li. 5, ca. 10.

W

WAking much, is noysome. li. 2, c. 4.
 Water distilled for the eyes.
 lib. 5, cap. 12.
 Water congealed vnder the sternō. li. 5, c. 43.
 Water for Polypus. lib. 5. cap. 45.
 Watry tumors that depend of Oedema.
 lib. 4, cap. 13.
 Water of separatiō for *Exanthemata*. li. 5, c. 5.
 Water of Cats for the eares. lib. 5. ca. 22.
 Water of *Cardus Benedictus*. lib. 4. cap. 16.
 Water-Canker, with the cure. lib. 5. cap. 33.
 Weaknes of the sight. lib. 6, cap. 12.
 Weights of medicaments. lib. 10. ca. 2.
 Wind defined, with the nature. li. 2, ca. 1.
 Winds from the North are euill. li. 5. ca. 10.
 Winds oppressing the stomacke. lib. 5. ca. 10.
 Windy chollicke. lib. 5. cap. 51.
 Windy tumors which depend of Oedema.
 lib. 4, cap. 12.
 Womē become sooner old thē men. li. 1, c. 12.

Wormes.

The Table.

Worms not ingēdered in the teeth, l: 5, c: 29
 Wounds defined, and cured, li: 6, ca: 1,
 Wounds mortall, *ibid*:
 Wounds of euery internall part, *ibid*:
 Wounds simple how to be cured, li: 6, ca: 2.
 Wounds composed to be cured, li: 6, ca: 3
 Wounds contused defined, & cured, l: 6, c: 4
 Wounds done by Gunshot, cured, l: 6, c: 5
 Wounds in the nerues and tendons, with
 their cause, and cure, lib: 6, cap: 8.
 Wounds by venomous beasts, & cure,
 lib: 6, cap: 9.
 Wounds in the bones, and cure, li: 6, ca: 10
 Wounds in the Thorax, & cure, li: 6, ca: 12

Wounds in the belly, & cure, lib: 6, cap: 13
 Warts defined, and cure, lib: 5, cap: 73.
 Warts vnder the prepuis, lib: 5, cap: 65.
 Wine should be moderately vsed, li: 2, c: 2

Y

Yard with the composition and scituati-
 on, lib: 5, cap: 69.
 Yard is subiect to many diseases, with
 the causes, and cure. lib: 5, cap: 65.

FINIS.



As binders & press in copiers & bookes
 together & sellen them as fistulacis
 nasses & so on it nasses

fracturifere out of 20 yells of out 244
 bleed from together for fistulacis

To the reuerend Father in God Iohn, by the
permission of God Arch-bishop of Glasgow; Peter
Lowe wisheth the accomplishment of all perfect
Honour, and felicitie.



When I had collected and turned into our vul-
gar language, This little worke (Right Ho-
norable); I considered with my selfe, that in
ancient time, and also in this our Age, men
haue euer accustomed to dedicate their tra-
uels vnto such vertuous Personages as they
haue honoured: and I examining my selfe, vnto whome I might
addresse this Treatise of the Presages, I thought good to offer
and present the same in all humilitie to your Honour: It be-
ing the worke of Hippocrates the Paragon of Phisitians, and
your Lordship the patterne of learning, the patron of learned
men, the fittest to Iudge of their workes. For I must confesse it,
euer since it pleased God to place your Lo: in your Ecclesia-
sticall eminencie aboue vs in this Citie, I haue euer been incli-
ned to testifie my affection to your Ho: by my humblest en-
deauours: But hauing nothing in my power, but my simple de-
sires; my hands being too short to come to solide asserts, I giue
this publique testimonie to the world of my inward disposition,
and consecrate my selfe and my labours to your Lordships
most honourable Patronage. Your Honors piety in religion, pru-
dencie in pollicie, knowledge in all sciences, (Quoniam nomine
religiosissimo, prudentissimo, & eruditissimo Principi ac-
ceptissimus es) and grauely tempered with affabilitie in ciuill
conuersation, shall protect me from Momus malicious enuie,
procure me the fauour of good men, incourage me to under-
take further paines for the publique vtilitie, oblige me more and
more to your Honors seruice, and wish your Lordshippe all con-
tentment, prosperitie, and long life, long to rule in Gods Church,
gouerne the common-wealth, and better the estate of all those
that bee subiect to your Honours authoritie. I humbly take
my leaue from mine owne house in Glasgow, the 7. day of No-
uember. 1611.

Your L. most dutifull to
A 2 commaund, Peter Lowe.



The life of Hippocrates.



His Maister
was Pithago-
ras.

He restored
Phisicke, long
lost.

Hippocrates
Prouerbe.

Hippocrates was the sonne of *Heracides*, as *Galen* doth affirme in the first Booke of Regiment of hot feuers, but as others say, the sonne of *Esclepius*, he was bred and borne in the Isle *Cos*, his Maister and Instructor was the great *Pythagoras*. His naturall inclination was towards good,

for hee hated, loathed, and abhorred all pompe and worldly pleasures and venereal luffs. He constrained also his schollers by an oath to bee silent and keepe taciturnitie, modestie, affabilitie, and humilitie, aswell in manners, as in apparell. *S. Hierome* testifieth that he restored the science of Phisick, beeing almost lost Five Hundreth yeares viz. since the time of *Esculapius*. Hee was little in body and stature, but faire and exceeding well fauoured: he had a good and strong head: he went slowlie and softly: hee was very pensue and of fewe wordes: hee was no great eater, nor glutton: hee liued 95. yeares, he vsed oftentimes this sentēce. *He that will live in libertie, let him not desire that which he cannot obtaine, and he who would haue that which hee desireth and coneteth, let him desire nothing but that which hee may obtaine.* Furthermore he who would live peaceably in this mortall life, let him conforme himselfe to him who is inuited to a feast, who giueth thanks for all which is layd before him, and grudgeth not at any thing which is omitted. He liued in the time of *Eliachim*, *Malachias*, *Pereno*, and *Socrates*.

The



¶ The protestation and oath of diuine
Hippocrates.



Hippocrates doe vow, promise and pro-
test to the great God *Appollo* and his
two Daughters *Higine* and *Panadie*,
and also to all the gods and goddeses,
to obserue the contents of this oath, or
tables wherein this oath is carued,

written or ingraued, so farre as I can
possible, and so farre as my wit or vnderstanding shall bee
able to direct me, viz. that I yeld my selfe tributarie and
debtor to the Maister and Doctor who hath instructed me
and shewed mee this science and doctrine, euen as much
or rather more then to my Father who hath begotten me,
and that I shall liue and communicate with him and fol-
low him in all necessities, which I shall know him to haue
so farre as my power shall permit, and my gods shall ex-
tend. Also that I shall loue and cherish his children as my
brothers, and his progenie as mine owne. Further, that I
shall teach, shew and demonstrate the sayde science (gra-
tis) without rewarde or couenant, and that I shall giue all
the Cannons rules and precepts, freely, truely, and faith-
fully to my Maister his children, as to myne owne, without
hiding or concealing any thing, and to all other Schollers
who shall make the same oath or protestation, and to no
others. Also that in practising and vsing my science to-
wardes the sicke, I shall vse onely things necessary, so farre
as I am able, and as my spirit and good vnderstanding shall
giue vnto mee, and that I shall cure the sicke as speedy as
I may, without dilating or prolonging the Malady. And
that I shall not doe any thing against equitie, for hatred,
anger, enuie, or malice, to any person whatsoeuer : Moreo-

Tributarie to
his Maister.

Loue his
Maisters
children.

The Oath of Hippocrates.

uer, that I shall minister no poyson, neither counsell nor
Not to mini- teach poyson, nor the composing thereof, to any : Also,
ster poyson. that I shall not giue, nor cause to be giuen, nor consent that
To giue no- any thing be applied to a woman breeding, or bigge with
thing to wo- child, to destroy, or make her voyd her fruite. But I pro-
men, to cause test to keepe my Life and Science purely, sincerely and in-
abortionment. violably, without deceit, fraude, or guile. And that I
shall not cutte, nor incise any person hauing the stone, but
shall leaue the same to those that are expert in it : and fur-
thermore, I shall not enter into the Patients house, but
with purpose to heale him : & that I shall patiently sustaine
the iniuries, reproaches, and loathsomnesse of sick men, and
all other base raylings : and that I shall eschew as much as I
may, all venerious lasciuiousnesse. Moreouer I protest,
be it man, woman, or seruant, who is my patient, to cure
them of all things that I may see or heare either in mind
or manners, and I shall not bewray that which should be
concealed and hidden, but keepe inuiolable, with silence,
neither reueale any creature, vnder paine of death. And
therefore I beseech our Gods, that obseruing this Pro-
testation, promise and vow intirely and inuiolably, that all
things in my life, in my Art and Science, may succeed
securely, healthfully, and prosperously to me, and in the
end eternall glory. And to him that shall violate, transgresse
or become periured, that the contrary may happen vnto
him, viz. miserie, calamitie, and continuall maladies,

Heere Hippo-
crates shew-
eth, that the
place of bles-
sed is eternall,
and the paine
of the wicked
infinite.

The end of the Protestation.

The



The first Booke of the Presages of diuine Hippocrates.

The Preface.



My Phisitian or Chirurgion
desiring to purchase glory & The Phisitian
honour, the loue of the peo- should be
ple, and some wealth by his skilfull.
Science, ought to shew him-
selfe skilfull and expert, and
that by declaring to the Pati-
ents the signes past, present,
and future, of their Maladies,
and shewing the things ouer

past by the sicke men, and aduertising or reducing to their
memoxy, things forgotten: which the sicke persons know-
ing, will the more confidently commit themselves to their
hands, presuming and thinking that he hath a generall
knowledge of all Maladies, and that they shall bee speedily
cured, the which is true. For hauing such knowledge of
things past, present, and future, he may more easily helpe
the Maladies, although it be impossible to any Medicine
Chirurgion to cure and heale all diseases: for it should be
a greater thing, then to foretell the future accidents. For
it sometimes happeneth that the sicke die by the violence or
malignitie of the Maladie before the Phisitian be called:
some die shortly after the Phisitian Chirurgion are arri-
ued, the same day: also one or two dayes after before that
by his science and diligence he may correct and take away
the perill and dangerous accidents. Therefore he ought to
endeauour, and enforce him to know the nature of such
sicknes, also the strength of the sicke, to the end he may a-
uoyde defamations, opprobrious speeches and reproches,
the

The Presages of.

Death to one.
Health to a-
nother.

the which doing, he shall make himselfe admirable, and more diuine then humane, presaging death to one, and health to another; hauing likewise regard to the qualitie, goodnes, and malignitie of the aire, which circumsurrounds the sicke, as the vniuersall aire, the times, & qualities of the yeare, also the good and euill aspects of celestiaall bodies, which foreseeing, hee shall eschew dishonour, and shall get renowne and friends in all his actions.

How the Phisitian or Chirurgion may presage by signes of the Face, in sickness.

To contem-
plate the face.

Alteration of
the face, eies,
and temples.

Opportunitie
of sleepe.

Now to foretell, foresee, or presage well by the signes in dangerous and vehement Maladies; It is requisite to consider and contemplate the Face of the sicke. First to know if it be such as in health, or but a little different: and if it be so, the mediciner Chirurgian may haue a good presagement and hope of Recouerie. But if it be greatly altered, and changed, as followeth, hee shall esteeme it in perill and danger of death, when the nose and nostrils are extenuated and sharpened by the same Malady, and the eyes hollow, and the temples, viz. the parts betwene the eares and forehead are leane, and the skinne of the brow is hard, drie, and loose, and the eares cold and thronke, or almost doubled, and all the face appeareth black, pale, liuide, or leaden and greatly deformed, in respect of that which it was in time of health. When these things before mentioned appeare in the Face, or the most part of them, In the beginning or first daies of the Malady he must enquire (if he cannot knowe by any other token) if it happen not by watching too much, or that the Patient hath not had time or opportunitie to sleepe, or if he hath had a naturall flux of the belly, or if the said things haue happened by famine: for if it be so, he ought not to feare danger. On the contrary, if the Face appeare such and continue, and the Patient

Hippocrates.

fient saith, that the said things doe procéde of watching, loosenes of body, noꝝ by fasting, the Mediciner Chirurgion may assuredly pꝛesage death appꝛoaching; and if the Maladie hath already continued thꝛee oꝛ foure daies, after (having considered that as is aboue mentioned) it becometh him to contemplate by other signes, as by the eyes, lippes, hands, and other parts of the body.

To pꝛesage by the signes of the *Eyes*, and *Lippes*,
in sicknesse.

If the Eyes cannot see the day oꝛ light, and weepe oꝛ Euill signes of polozꝛe out teares against nature, and against the Pati- the Eyes.
ents will: Also when it seemeth that they are like to fall out of the head, oꝛ that the one is evidently growen lesse oꝛ diminished, oꝛ that the white of the eyes is red, and the vaines appeare red, oꝛ liuide, oꝛ that they are bleared oꝛ dimme, oꝛ trembling and very moueable, oꝛ deepe & sunck in: also when the sick becommeth squint eyed and looketh Mortal signes
ouer-thwart, with a terrible & obscure looke, and hath the of the visage.
visage all disfigured and fearefull: all these signes are pernicious and mortall. Also when the Patient sleepeth with his eyes halfe open (and doth not so by custome) and the white of the eye shew it selfe, the eye lids being onely closed, if this happen not by the flux of the body, noꝝ by laxative medicines, it is a signe of death. Also when the eye lids, the lips, and nose same to be cꝛoked and drawen awꝛy, also mortified and liuide: these signes with the proceedings, foꝛetell death to the sicke. Likewise when the lips are leane, hanging downe, colde and pale, against the nature of the sicke, the Mediciner Chirurgion may pꝛesage and prognosticate death to appꝛoach.

To pꝛesage by the manner of *Lying* and *Reposi-
ng*
in sicknes,

The Prefages of

Stifnes of the
legges.

Euill signes.

To sleepe
with open
mouth.

As for Lying, it is a very good signe when the Patient reposeth and resteth on the right side, or left, at his ease, hauing his hands vpon his stomack or elsewhere, not being stiffe of his legs, but flexible, and to repose as in health, is best. For to lie with neck, hands, & feet stridely extended and vnflexible, is an euill signe. Likewise when the sick turneth, wrings, and tosseth vp & down often times, with starting either in sleep, or waking, and making the beds feet where the head should be, casting himselfe down, not knowing what he doth, is an euill signe. Also if hee often vncover himselfe hauing no great heat in the extremities, & that he casteth forth his armes, legs, feet & head, somtime on this side, somtime on that, it is a signe that he is in great anguish & distresse. Also it is a pernicious signe to sleepe with the mouth open, contrary to nature. Likewise to sleepe with the face vppward, hauing the legs enterlaced, and folded together as it were cords, and that by the force and violence of the Maladie, is a bad signe, or when they are much enlarged against reason. Likewise he that sleepe contrarie to nature & custome, with the belly downward laid close to the bed, sheweth and signifieth confusion and alienation of senses, or great rage & dolor of the belly. Also whosoever in the day of Critication, and force of the Maladie, constraines and forceth himselfe to rise, & sit vpright, and is impatient, puts himselfe in danger, and it is an euill signe in all vehement & great Maladies, but worse in pulmonick passions.

To Prefage by the Teeth, in sicknes.

When one gnaweth the teeth (not as a man that hath extreame cold) but with collision in the Jower, & hath not had it naturally, nor by custome, it signifieth troubling of the spirit & consequently death, and if he be shortly after voided of reason and alienated, it signifieth death approaching.

To prefage of Death by any Vicer.

Hippocrates.

If there happen to the sicke person any Ulcer, Antrax or Carbuncle, whether it goe before the Malady, or come with the Malady : if the Ulcer dry vp, and become either greene, liuide, or black, and you perceave the sicke to grow worse, you may prognosticate death ensuing.

To presage by the *Hands*, in sicknes.

When any Patient is sicke of the hote or burning Fever, or in the Malady of the lungs called Peripneumonia, or of bastard frenzie, and not perfect, or of great dolor of the head, and seekes heere and there, about below & upon the bed, threds, & haire of the face, also feathers, or filth of the coverings, straw, rushes, and other things, and thinkes to take hold of the feeling & wales, the which are almost all signes most commonly.

To presage by *Breath* or *Respiration*, in fevers.

The Breath or Respiration signifieth often dolors or inflammations, or burning heat in the spiritual members, as in the hart and lights, but when it is great and rare, so that there is any long space betwixt the Respiration, it signifieth alienation of understanding and reason. And when the breath issueth out of the mouth & nostrils very cold, it foretels great perill of death. But gentle Respiration in any hot Maladie being ioyned & accompanied with a Fever, is a signe of health in those that do end in forty daies.

To Prognostication by *Sweat*, in fevers.

The healthfull, commendable, and good Sweat in all hot Maladies, is that which hapneth in the day of Critication & Judgement, and chisely when it is uniuersall and the Patient finds himselfe thereby eased and strengthened. And if it happen not in the same day & be not uniuersall, it is no good signe. For the mortall Sweat is particular and cold as in the forehead, in the head or face only, and this in

Sweating is healthfull in the Critick day.

The Prefages of

the burning Feuer and other Maladies declareth continuance of the Maladie.

To prefage of the *Right side* and *Left in Feuers.*

When the Patient feels not any dolour, tumor, hardnesse, or Inflammation vppon the Ribbes, it is a very good signe, and when the one side is as soft as the other, without dolour. But if there be dolour, tumor, hardnesse, or Inflammation on both sides, or on the one more then the other, it is an euill signe. For if he feele great motion or pulsation in one of his sides, hee may prognosticate great distresse and dolour, or alienation and confusion of Reason. If with this pulsation the eyes be very moueable, the Patient is in daunger of Frensie and to be frantick, or to destroy himselfe.

To prefage by signes of Tumors or Apostumes vnder the sides.

The Collection of Apostume in a burning Malady vnder both the sides with tumor and dolour, is more dangerous then vnder one of the sides onely, and chiefly lesse dangerous vnder the left side then vnder the right: and if the Patient die not in the first daies, and if it continue many daies and the feuer cease not, nor the Apostume diminish, it is a signe that it shall come to maturation; and if it happen on the seauenth day with the flux of blood at the nose, it easeth much, and the Medicine Chirurgion may prognosticate when the Patient saith that he hath paine in the head or forehead, and that his eyes are dimme or obscure, & chiefly when the Patient doth not exceed 30. or 35. yeeres of age. And when the collection or Apostume is soft and without dolour, and moueth or varieth when it is handled, it requireth longer time to be cured, then the precedent, but it is not so dangerous. And if it continue 60. daies, and the feuer cease not, neither the tumor diminish, it shall come to maturation and purgation: you shall prognosticate

Hippocrates.

cate so much of Apostumes in the belly: the Apostume then being hard, great, and with dolour, is dangerous & most fall: The soft without dolour and volable from one place to another, is of longer continuance, but without comparison lesse dangerous.

To presage of *Apostumes* in the bottome of the *Belly* in
feuers.

The *Apostumes* of the *Belly* doe neuer become so great, as those that breed under the *Mozzle*, and yet they are lesse which ingender vnto the *Paull*, and most commonly they come to suppuration or putrefaction: It is a good signe when they purge by flux of blood at the *Nostrils* from the part of the *Apostume*: also all such *Apostumes* by laps of time, and in the end may come to putrefaction and purgation. It is then convenient to consider that the forenamed *Collections* or *Apostumes* come by diuers meanes to putrefaction or purgation, for some purge altogether outwardly, and are little, round, and sharp or pointed, they are most healthfull and least most fall: The large, grosse, and flat, spacious & not round nor sharp, are dangerous: and those which breake and purge within the belly, although they make some tumors outwardly, are more pernicious & dangerous, then those which make no eminence outwardly, & which haue not the skin discoloured.

To presage what the matter ought to be that
issueth out of *Apostumes*.

The Corruption and matter which commeth out of *Apostumes* altogether white, and not unsauorie, is good and healthfull: that which is otherwise, how much the more it differs from white, so much the more is viscus and bad.

The end of the first Booke.

The



The second Booke of the Prefages of *Hippocrates*; and first of *Hydropsie* in feuers,

All manner of *Hydropsie* with the hot feuer, is dangerous and mortall: for when the Patient is molested and afflicted by any vehement feuer and grievous delour, then he dieth. This Maladie often proceedeth of the Hepatic passion which is the Malady of the Liver: It happeneth also by passions in the Guts, Intestines, and Entrails, Meseraick, baines or melt, & other inferiour parts: That which comes by the Entrails or Meseraick baines & other parts, is knowne by Inflation in the feet, and by long and continuall flux of the body, albeit the dolor of the belly is not mitigated nor appeased, nor the belly diminished nor growen lesse. That which proceeds of the Liver is known by the signes following, viz. the Patient hath a dry cough and spitteth almost nothing, and his belly is hard & bound in such sort, that there commeth nothing from it, but with great paine and travaill: also his feet are swollen: Moreover there are tumors and inflations sometime on the right side, sometime on the left, then they depart and dissipate, that is, they goe and retourne.

To prefage of the signes of *Life* and *Death*,
in hot Feuers.

When the Patient is cold in the head, hands & feet, and that the sides & belly are burning & vehement hot, it is a signe of an euill and dangerous Malady. But when the sicke person doth easily turne himselfe from one side

Hippocrates.

side to another without trouble; also when all the body is equally hot, and sauerie, it is a signe of salubritie. On the contrarie side, when all the members are heauie, or the armes & legges, or all the body, it is to be feared. And if the Nails be therewith liuide or leaden, one may prognosticate Death approaching. But if the Nails, fingers and feet be altogether black, it is not so dangerous a signe, especially when any other good signe doth appeare, as if the Patient feele no great dolour, and beareth it strongly, and endureth his sicknes without anguish, albeit that which is black will fall away, and the diuine or leaden will be euacuated by Apostume.

To presage by signes taken from the *Genitors*,
and *Tarde*, in feuers.

When the *Genitors* and *Tarde* are thronke in, and apparantly diminished against nature, it is a signe of great dolour, and present death. Euill signe.

To presage by *Sleeping* and *Dreaming*
in feuers.

As for sleeping and slumbering, the one is naturall and healthfull, and the other vnnaturall and vicious. The naturall rest is taken in the night, and waking in the day: And although it is not altogether wholesome to sleepe from the breake of the day to 8. or 9. of the clocke at morning, yet notwithstanding it is more profitable, then to sleepe in the rest of the day: But if one neither sleepe by night nor day, it is dangerous, and a signe of great dolour, of folly, of alienation of senses, reason, and understanding, eyther present or future.

To

The Prefages of.

To prefage by purging of the Belly, or fecal excrements, in fevers.

Dangerous
Accidents.

Good signe.

As for easing of the Belly, and euacuating of superfluities and excrements, it is best when the sicke person follows the custome in Maladies which he did in health, & especially according to the qualitie and quantitie of his diet. For how much the more it is dissonant and different, it is so much the worse. The naturall egestion ought not to be too liquide or adust, but indifferently proportioned & compounded in colour to the meates, and that the Patient goe to stoule without paine or dolour. And if the matter be liquide, it is not altogether to be disliked when it comes without ventositie or violence, & not often in a short time. For so it would make the person, weake, debile, slowward, and in danger of swooning, and death: It is also to be allowed about the end of the Malady, that the egestion & excrementall matter become thicke and not too dry, and of a good colour, as drawing nere to red and browne, and be not verie vnsauorie. Also if there come forth wormes about the end of the sicknes with the excrements, it is a good signe. Likewise in euery Maladie the belly ought to be fleshie and not round, nor full of wind, otherwise it is no good signe. Furthermoze the egestion and excrementall matter being liquide and waterie, white, or pale, greatly red, or froathy, is dangerous: the most all is black, and liquide, or greene, vnsauory, and slimy. And if it be of diuers of the forenamed colours together, it is no lesse dangerous but of longer continuance: also when there is peeling of the guts or Carbuncles and little skinned, all such are most fall.

To prefage of Wind in the Intestines, and Matrice.

The ventositie and Wind enclosed in the belly issuing forth gently and voluntarily, without making noyse

Hippocrates.

or sound, and without straining or forcing the fundament and inferiour parts, is the best and most wholesome. That which cometh forth unconstrained, making a noyse, is better then to retaine it. But if it goeth out with sound & noyse against the Patients will, it signifieth dolorous tension in the belly, or alienation & confusion of reason.

To presage of *Ventositie* causing Inflation.

The dolours recent in the belly by Inflation and tumors, and the Inflation by burning, & heate, making noyse, rambling, and motion in the belly, are cured especially by the benefit of the belly, or by expulsion of wind downeward, or by Urine, or if they change the place and descend downeward.

To presage by the *Urine* in fevers.

The Urine that is healthfull in euerie Maladie, ought to haue the Residence in the bottome white or pyramidal, hauing the figure of a pearce or little fine apple, a good token, being thick, then it signifieth breuity of the sickness, and the more that it perseuereth, the more it is to be allowed & sure. And if sometime & for certaine daies in the Maladie it be such, and in some daies without Residence, it signifieth prolixitie of sickness & lesse securitie, and the more it differs from the first, the worse it is. The Urine being red or high coloured with the Hypostasie, or light and equall residence, signifieth the Maladie to be longer then the precedent where there is no Hypostasie, but lesse dangerous. Also when there is grosse Resolutions, as bran or dust in the bottome of the Urine, it is an euill signe, and worse where they are like scales of fishe. The Urine white and subtile, is exceeding bad, albeit the forementioned is worse where there is grosse resolutions. The cloud hanging in the Urine signifieth securitie if it be white, for the black is dangerous

Euill signe.

C

gerous

The Prefages of

Sure signe of
Death.
Mortal signes
in Children.

gerous ; moreover the Urine being yellow and very cleare and subtil in the Malady, sheweth continuitie of sicknesse, grosse in digestion and crudity. Therefore it is to be feared least the sick person decay before the humors come to perfect concoction, and least the Patient die. The Urine significative of certaine death and unfallible is unfavourie, slimy and muddy, as dirt and myze, and is fauny, browne, black, and thick. Furthermore the black as well in man as woman is alwaies bad : and the subtle and the cleare as water, is also mortall in little children. The Urine being raw, cleare, and undigested, persevering so long in the maladie without other euill signes, but with good and healthfull, sheweth a future Apostume lower then the Diaphragme or ribbes : The Urine hauing as it were a cobweb swimming aboue, signifieth that the person shall die. Dry & thick it sheweth consumption of the body : you must also consider the place and colour of the cloude, for if it bee nere the bottome of the Urine, it is a good signe, hauing the colour nere vnto white. And if it be swimming aboue and the top blacke, it is dangerous, and vncertaine. Finally as for the Iudgement of Urines, take heede aboue all, that you be not deceiued by the Bladder: For they may appeare such by the diseases of it : And if the Bladder bee not diseased, thy iudgement shalbe certaine, therefore take heed.

To prefage of Vomiting good and bad in feuers.

Mortall signe
in vomiting.

As for Vomiting, the most healthfull and allowable is composed of Phlegme and collic not too thicke or too viscus nor superfluous : the chollerick or phlegmatick onely, is viscus : the vomiting being green, liuide, or black, is dangerous, and if it be compounded of greene, liuide, & black altogether, it is mortall. Likewise if it be unfavourie with one of these forenamed colours, it signifieth death approaching : For the Pus is viscus in all vomiting and also euerie excrement.

To

Hippocrates.

To presage by the *Spittle* in feuers.

As for *Spittle*, it is sayd to be commendable in all pulmonick diseases & Maladies vnder the Ribs when it cometh earely in the first dayes, and beginning after the maladie without great paine and labour, beinge of a redde couloꝝ oꝝ mingled with blood and well digested not viscos. But if it come not in the first dayes, but afterward with a vehement cough, it is no good signe; also the red not being mingled with the healthfull and commendable, is perniti-ous. The white spittle viscos & knotty is dangerous, but the pure red is worse. The Greene and fleshie giueth notice of a dangerous and bad malady. The black aboue all is mortall: mozeouer when the matter which ought to be purged by spitting, remaineth within the Lights & troubleth the wind-pipe, there is no sucritie. The spittle also being cleare oꝝ red, sanguinolent in apostume & pulmonick infla-tion coming in the beginning of the malady, promiset in the first dayes security & health to the patient. But if such egestion continue to the seauenth day oꝝ moze, it is suspiti-ous & vncertaine. Also spittle whereby the dolour doth not cease but perseuer, is not commendable, but viscos. And although the black as wee haue shewed before is mortall, notwithstanding if the dolor doe thereby cease, it is lesse da-gerous, and moze healthfull.

To presage of *Neesing* in feuers.

The *Neesing* in all hot Maladies, & other how dange-rous soeuer they be (except they proceed of the Lungs) at any time is commendable & profitable. But being with rume & distillation at the nose in Maladies of the Lungs, whether it cometh in the malady, oꝝ presently after it, is dangerous

The Presages of

To presage of *Suppuration* or matter in
Apostumes.

The dolour aboue mentioned which ceaseth not by spit-
ting, nor by the benefit of the belly, nor by phleboto-
mie, nor by laxative Medicines, or good Regiment, signi-
fieth that the Apostume commeth to Suppuration, and
Matter. And when the Apostume breaketh and purgeth,
the Spittle being cholericke, whether the matter of the
Apostume come with the Spittle, or issueth out after, it is
perillous; especially when it commeth and beginneth in
the 7. day or after, it is to be feared that the Patient shall
die on the 14. day, if there happen no other healthfull and
commendable signes.

To presage by signes of good hope and commen-
dable in the foresaid Maladies and others.

When the sick person doth strongly endure the griefe,
and if hee draw his breath lightly and at ease, and
breatheasily without dolour, and feele not any paine, but
spit without difficultie, and remoue his whole body and
all his members at his pleasure, without griefe or weari-
nesse, and that hee hath no exceeding and superfluous heate
in him without great thirst and dinesse, they be good signes:
Moreouer if the Urine and excrements in all the conduits
are in due quantitie, & qualitie, & of a commendable coloure
and substance, as the matter fecall, also being of good con-
sistence & not too hard, but as in health: the sweat vniuer-
sall, hot, with ease, also the spittle gentle and commenda-
ble, and sleepe in the night and so of others as we haue spo-
ken, are good signes.

To presage of the signes opposite of despaire.

If the sicknesse be intollerable, and doloure insupportable
with burning heate, & extreame thirst, continuall cough,
stiffnesse

Hippocrates.

Stiffnesse of members, languishing, thort aspiration, filthy spittle, and vnfauorie, Urine of a small quantitie, the matter fecall, liuide, liquide, or watery and slimy, and often particular sweat and cold without rest of the day or night, the hands, feet, and forehead cold, tossing to & fro, and all other euill signes taken in the face : By all which, or many of them, thou shalt prognosticate suddain or lingring death without discredit or dishonour, but shalt be in great reputation and estimation.

To presage by the signes of the time and day of
the Rupture of the *Apostume*.

Some Apostumes breake and appeare on the 20 day, or Difference of
Others differ vnto 40. others to 90. daies. Therefore to Apostumes.
presage well, thou shalt enquire out the first day, and the beginning of the Malady, viz. when the Patient did firste feele heate and the feuer, also stiffnesse and standing vp of the haire, heauines, also dolour and pricking : Then thou shalt begin to reckon the daies, and by this meanes thou maist prognosticate infallibly of the euent. Thou shalt also presage if there be Apostume on the one side, or both, by this meanes : aske the Patient if he feele dolour on the one side more then the other, then cause him to lie on the side which is sound, and if he feele heauinesse and ponderositie, it followeth, that the same side where the ponderositie is, is Apostumed, and there is the collection and matter : and if he feele dolour, heate and heauines on both, it will follow, that both sides are Apostumed : Thou shalt knowe the Apostume and collection to be ripe and broken, and the matter retained in the part Apostumed, when the feuer doth not cease, and it is lesse by day then night, and that the Patients sweats abundantly, and ceaseth not to cough, and voides not almost any thing : likewise if his eyes sinck in his head, and cheekes are red, the nailes crookes, and the ends and extremities of the fingers turne, and the appetite
C 3 decayeth,

The Prefages of.

decayeth, and the sette swell, and there is almost through all the body pimples and pustules, these signes do appeare when the matter and Apostume is of longe continuance, & are certaine signes of future health. Therefore to prognosticate whether the Apostume will breake soone or late, consider that spoken of before : for if the cough in the beginning and first dayes doe oppresse the sicke person with colour and often spitting, and egestion, with difficultie of breath, you may Judge that the Apostume will break within 20. dayes, and if the contrarie happen that the signes be hindered, the rupture will be prolonged : & as the signes be strong or feeble, so the ruption is inveterated or shortened. And to know if there be perill or danger, or probability of health, consider the day whereon the Apostume breakes if the feuer and thirst cease, and the appetite returne, and if the fecall matter be solide, & if the matter of the Apostume be white and equally soft. and come forth without colour and without coughing : these things are present signes of health. Otherwise when the feuer doth not cease, or presently retourne with great thirst, without appetite, and the fecall matter be watery, the spittle liuide, Greene, and slimy, and in part phlegmatick, thou mayest prognosticate death. And if there happen some good signes, and some bad, compare the one with the other, and diligently advise before thou presage, to the end thou maiest auoyd infamy. For some die presently, others are prolonged and then die in the end, others at length retourne to their health.

Be well advised in prognosticating.

To presage of *Apostumes* that come about the *Eares* in pulmonick passions, or diseases of the lungs.

When the Apostume happeneth about or under the Eares, of the sicke person with difficultie of breath, & that the same Apostume cometh to maturation, and purgeth and ingendereth a Fistule, it saueth the Patient. And

Hippocrates.

to prognosticate when it will come, ye shall note this which followeth: when the Feuer continueth in the sayd malady, and the colour is permanent, the Spittle impertinent and not commendable, and the belly doth not his dutie, euacuating the choller or liquide matter, and the Urine is in small quantitie with abundance of Residence, but all other good signes shewing securitie, then thou shalt presage the future Apostumes to be neere the Care, especially when there is Inflammation vnder the sides and Diaphragme. And if there be no Inflammation nor dolour in the said place, but the Patient hath difficultie of breath, the which goeth away without manifest cause, then the Apostume comes aboue the Care.

To presage of *Pustules* or *Apostumes* that come in the *Feet*.

In vehement and perillous Maladies of the Lungs, there happeneth for the view and health of the Patient little pustules in the Feet, and especially when the spittle is sodainly changed from red to white, it is a most certaine signe of health, for by such spittle the pustule and dolour ceaseth, but if the spittle turne not from red to white, and that the Urine be not good, nor the residence commendable, the Patient shall be in danger to become lame by contraction of the nerues and ioyntures where the same pustule is. If the said pustule or little Apostume in the fete be hidde and vanish away, or that it goe and come without purgation or maturation: Or else if the Apostume in the side called *Peripneumonia* (for it is in the Lungs) be not purged by commendable spittle, and that the Feuer remaine, the Patient is in daunger to lose his vnderstanding, & thereafter to die. Furthermore of the aforesaid pulmonick maladies those which are aged, but not very old (as of 50. yeares) die more often then they who are yonger. And

The Prefages of.

And young persons die most commonly of another kinde of Apostume: Moreover the person hauing great dolour in the belly lower then the Navel, or drawing neere vpon the thigh with any feuer: and the dolour leauing his place, doe ascend vp towards the Ribbes, it is very dangerous. For then one or two euill signes doe foreshew death, but if there be many good signes, as easie spitting, white, and not vnsauourie, it is a signe of euasion: the red and vnsauourie is mortall: and if there be not any euill signe, there is hope that the euill will come to suppuration and matter.

To prefage by the signes of the Bladder, in feuers.

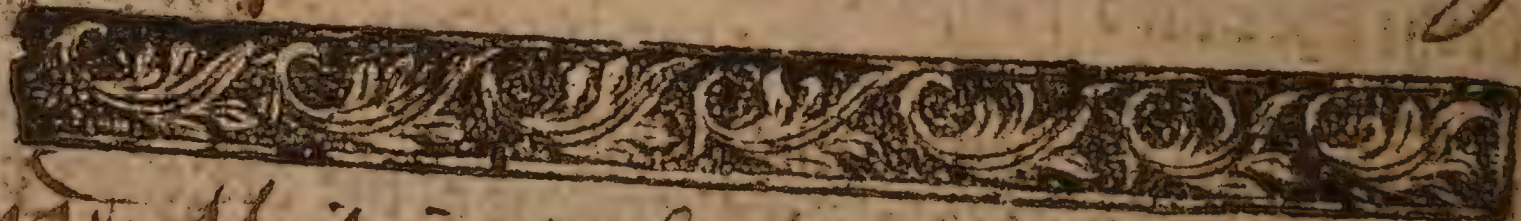
The hardnesse and great dolour of the Bladder is mortall, specially with quotidian feuer. It happeneth often with constipation, therfore it is mortall without remission: But if the Urine be like the matter of the Apostume, with Residence white and pointed, and thereby the dolour ceaseth, there is hope. But if the dolour be not allwaged, and the bladder mollified, and the feuer taken away by such Urine, iudge present death: and this happeneth moze to Children of Seauen or Fourtene yeares of age, than to any others of elder age.

Mortall signe.

Some hope.

Heere endeth the second Booke.

I am well Robert the miller and
his wife and sonne are well and you



and it is to tell you
that we have been
when we were in the
and the The



The third Booke of Presages of Diuine Hippocrates;

How to presage of Feuers.

THE End of the Feuer happeneth to one, and that with death, and to an other with life in the same day. And if it tende vnto life, all good signes doe appeare in the first dayes, whereby thou shalt prognosticate the end in the 4. day, or before. And if the Feuer be mortal, all euill signes giue notice of death in the 4. day or before the first period and day of Iudgement or critation, and the end or tearme of the Feuer is (as we haue said) in the 4. day: the second on the seauenth: the 4. on the 20. day, the which number doth augment by quaternaries, and is produced to the 20. day in the Feuer and hotte maladies, and they ought to be nombred by whole quaternaries. For the yeere and moneth cannot be counted by number of whole & complete daies, as by this computation, wee make three weekes of 20. daies, which is called one moneth or yeere of the Moone. So after this computation and augmentation, the first shall be the 20. day, the second the 40. day, the third the 60. day, and it is to be noted, that the trouble maladies are of long continuance, and of more difficile indication, knowledge and prognostication. Therefore it must be looked vnto more exactly. For their beginnings are secret, and shew no signe of digestion. If therefore you will diligently contemplate it, you shall be able to prognosticate to what end the Feuer shall come. Likewise the quartan Feuer obserueth the foresaid matter in his critations and indications, or weekes of Iudgement. For that which is done in others by number of daies, in this is done

The Prefages of

Healthfull
signes,

Euill signes.

Flux of blood
in the begin-
ning.

A dangerous
token.

done by number of fittes and periods. The short & brieue maladies are of more easie presagement and knowledge: For it changeth presently, & in the first dayes from good to better, or from badde to worse. The healthfull signes are known by this, that the patient hath good easie breath, and feels no dolour, and sleepest in the night, and other holosome signes. The mortall or dangerous are knowne, when the patient hath difficultie of breath & great dolour, and resteth not in the night, with other badde signes, whereby one may prognosticate death. To the end thou mayest presage well, thou shalt consider all the signes of digestion, the time, houres, and dayes, in which the sick are most afflicted. And if the Malady happen to women in child-birth or some after they be deliuered, beginne to reckon from the day of her deliuerie, and not from the day wherein the feuer began. Also to speake generally, when one feels vehement dolour in the head & continue with any feuer. If there happen any euill signe with the foresayd, it is a signe of death. But if the dolour and feuer continue and perseuer to the 20. day, thou maist presage fluxe of blood at the nose, or apostumes in the inferiour parts of the body, if there be no other signe. Sometime also there happeneth in the beginning & first daies, fluxe of blood at the nose, or apostumes, principally when the dolour is in the forehead & parts nere adjoining. And it is to be noted, that the said fluxe of blood happeneth most often to persons of 30. or 35. yeeres of age. And apostumes or collections to those which are elder. Also if the patient in the continuall feuer hath great dolour and apostumes in the eare, it is a dangerous signe. For oftentimes the person loseth his vnderstanding, and dyeth. Therefore one ought well to speculate the good and euill signes in the beginning of the maladie: for young persons sicke of this maladie, doe often die in seven dayes: But olde persons die not so soone. For the Feuer cannot be so hotte in them, nor the alienation of the spirit so vehement. Therefore the Apostume cometh to maturation, suppuration

Hippocrates.

ration and matter : But if olde persons haue the relapse, they commonly die. And the young die befoze that the Apostume of the eare come to maturation, except that which cometh forth be white & digested with other good signes, then they recouer their health. Also if there happen in the continuall feuer and hotte Maladie, vlcration of the throat or windpipe, it is most dangerous and badde, especially when there happeneth other maligne and mortall signes.

To presage of the Squinancie in the Throat.

ALL manner of Squinancie is dangerous, for it killeth the person presently, especially when there is no appearance of apostume, or tumor vpon the neck, or in the throat, and that he suffereth grievous dolour, and cannot aspire, nor respire, nor drawe his breath. When it killeth the patient in the first, second, third, or fourth day at the furthest. Also when eminence and great rednesse appeareth with vehement dolour, it is no lesse dangerous, but more tardy and of longer continuance. But where there is eminence and rednesse vpon the necke or throat, but especially in the breast, it is more tardy and lesse dangerous, then the superiour kinds. And if it doe not hie it selfe and goe in againe, it is a good signe. But if the said Squinancie & tumor doth augment in the day of crification, & that it do not purge outwardly, or by the spittle, although the diseased person feele himselfe eased, and without great dolour : it is an euill signe and mortall, or signe of Relapse. It is then a better signe and lesse dangerous, when the tumor and rednesse appeareth outwardly. For if it descend vnto the lungs, the patient is in danger to lose his vnderstanding, although sometimes the said collection come to suppuration, matter, and purgation.

The Prefages of

To prefage of the *Inula*, *Gargarion*, or *Collumella*.

IT is a thing daungerous and mortall to incise the *Inula*, *Gargarion*, or *Collumella* being swollen, grosse or red. For eyther it is found in the *Apostume* and inflammation, or else there followeth great flux of blood. Therefore one must labour to heale and cure the patient by some other meanes. And if he cannot, and that it be liuide or pale, and that the superiour part be little, and not tumified nor swollen, but the inferiour part tumified and rounde, you may without danger incise and open it, and so cure it. And if you know that the Patient is not in daunger to fall into suffocation, and so die, the chiefe thing shall be to purge the belly, if you haue the oportunitie and time.

Heere doth diuine *Hippocrates* returne to speake of feuers.

When the hot feuer doth not cease, nor giue rest to the Patient in one or moe daies of cricitatio, without other good signes thou mayst prognosticate Relapse. And the feuer with healthfull Signes is when the patient is not molested with great dolour, nor labour, and that there is no other manifest cause, thou mayst prognosticate apostume and inflammation in the winters and inferiour parts, and specially to those who do not exceed 30. or 35. yeres. Neuerthelesse the same apostume doeth not often happen befoze the 20. day of the feuer, specially to those who are aged : although that the feuer continue longer to old persons, then to young : such apostume also doth happen commonly in continuall feuers, which keepeth no order nor manner of accesse or fittes, called wandering or vncertaine feuers. viz. afflicting easely twice or thrise a day, then ceasing as long, and afterward returning without obseruing any order : Oftentimes they change into quartan feuers, especially about haruest. And as the foresaid apostume doth happen most often to young persons, so the quartan feuer happeneth to men and women that are in yeres. And as for the nature of the *Apostumes*, they doe most vsually and commonly

Signe of *Apostume*.

Hippocrates.

commonly happen in winter, but are most slow, and prolix, and lesse subject to relaxe.

To presage by signes of vomiting in Feuers.

When it seemes to y^e sebeditant that there are flies & black things appeare befoze his eyes, with dolor in the head, without other bad signes or mortall, thou mayest presage vomiting of yellow chollos, especially when the patient feelles dolor at the mouth, or opening of the stomack. And if he feeles stiffenes, chilnes, or cold with it, in the inferior parts, & vnder the *Hypochondria*, the vomiting shall be so much the more hastened. And if the patient doe then eate and take repast, he shall presently vomit. And to presage most apparantly when the dolor of the head molesteth the person in the first day of the feuer, & be augmented the fourth or fift day, the feuer will end on the seauenth, & the person shall be cured. And if the dolor begin the third day, and augment in the fift or seauenth, the feuer shall end the synth or eleauenth day. And if the dolor begin the fift day with conuenient urine, and other good signes it shall end the 24. day, and this happeneth aswell in women, as in men, and especially in tertian feuers to persons of 30. yeeres of age, & to young persons in continuall feuers, and perfit tertians. And when there doe not appeare flies in the feuer with dolor of the head, nor black things coruscant and resplendent, or shining as lampes, and splendor, or brightenes, & that the patient feelles torsion, or tumor or inflation vnder on of the sides, he shall haue in place of vomiting, inflammation, and of dolor, flux of blood at nose, and this happeneth chiefly to yong persons vnder 30. yeeres, and to older most commonly vomiting. And yong children vnder 7. yeares olde fall into a swoond be hot feuers, specially when they are bound or constipated in the belly, and sleepe & change color, sometime pale, then red, greene, or liuide: but those which excede 7. or 8. yeeres, they fall most often into a swoond, if there happen not some perillous & dangerous signes, as of Phrensie.

The Prefages of,

The Conclusion of the whole Booke of the Prefages
of *Hippocrates*.

To preface
life or death.

Now then for finall conclusion, let the Mediciner, Chirurgion or Physitian labour to know the sick persons and maladies: also the good and wholesome, and the euill and mortall accidents of them, as well in young folkes, as old, and in all infirmities, especially feuers, to the end to preface life to one, and death to another: also the breuitie and prolixitie of euery malady, and the transmutations and other inconueniences, collecting & accumulating all signes good and bad, and considering and comparing the superiour and inferiour, which are able to ouerthrowe, or saue the patient, and that by vrine, fecall matter, spittle, sweate, and other excrements & superfluities comming out of the body. Moreover let him practise to consider, & speculate, or note as well the time of dayes present, as past, viz. the variation of weather by winds, colde, heate, drought and humiditie, and the condition of the whole yeere, and foure parts: as the Spring, Sommer, Haruest, & Winter. For although that all maladies may happen at all times, yet some doe more commonly happen at one time then another. And some signes that be good or badde, come and happen rather in one day, houre, or moment, then in another. And to the end thou mayst not doubt to preface and prognosticate according to the doctrine and prescribed instructions, know that we haue here experimented these things in Ethiopia, Mauritania, Lybia, in the Ile of Delos, in Hesperia and Scythia, chiefly in the Orient, Occident South & North: and haue found it true as wee haue shewed. And therefore doe not despaire, but take courage, and endeavour thy selfe to knowe the said things, and thou shalt easily attain to greater knowledge of things, then thou canst imagine, and shalt maruaile howe these thinges can so well concurre, and succede so rightly. And if thou doest well ponderate my principles, doubt not at last that there can happen

1687

Town

O. JOSEPH TAYLOR 1687

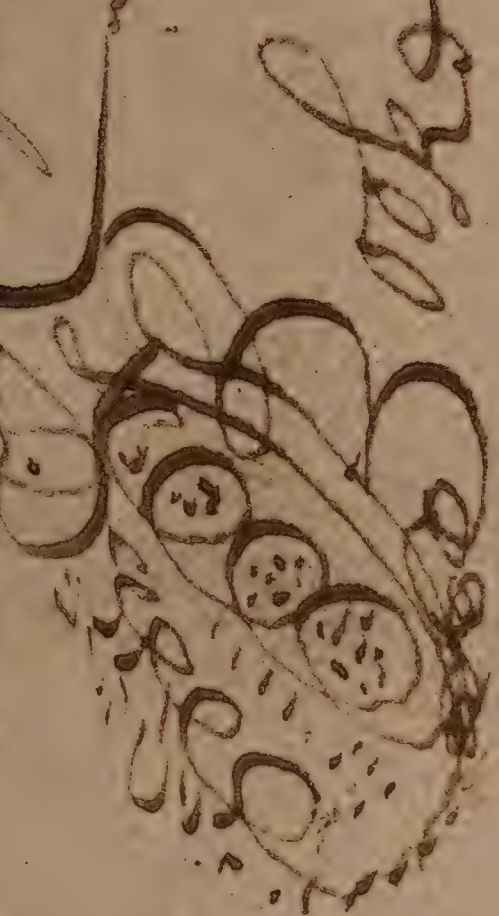
33 Conc Samuel Sykes - 1687
and for you I shall be gone

note as the other
book is the work
I put in the window
why take the book

May 25th 1736
Chas Taylor
Chas Taylor

John Russell His

Homone 1728



John Russell his Book

JOHN RUSSELL
HIS BOOK

Take not this book

upon fear of shame

for he it has the account of

and when he sees the Lord will say

where is the book you took

from

If thou know it not
I will tell thee else thou knowest

Joseph Russell

2. Oct 1750

Samuel Sykes

John

John Russell

John Russell

John Russell
his Books

Handwritten text, possibly a signature or title, written vertically on the left side of the page.

